

The New Cambridge Shakespeare

# Macbeth

*Edited by A.R. Braunmuller*





Cover design by Paul Oldman, based  
on a drawing by David Hockney.  
reproduced by permission of the artist.

# The New Cambridge Shakespeare

An international team of scholars offers:

- modernised, easily accessible texts
- ample but unobtrusive academic guidance
- attention to the theatrical qualities of each play and its stage history
- informative illustrations, including reconstructions of early performances

## *Macbeth*

This is the most extensively annotated edition of *Macbeth* currently available, offering a thorough reconsideration of one of Shakespeare's most popular plays.

A full and accessible introduction studies the immediate theatrical and political contexts of *Macbeth*'s composition, especially the Gunpowder Plot and the contemporary account of an early performance at the Globe. An extensive, well-illustrated account of the play in performance examines dramatic and cinematic adaptations.

Several possible new sources are suggested, and the presence of Thomas Middleton's writing in the play is proposed. Appendixes contain additional text and accompanying music.

CAMBRIDGE  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

ISBN 0-521-29455-X

9 780521 294553

## THE NEW CAMBRIDGE SHAKESPEARE

GENERAL EDITOR: Brian Gibbons, *University of Münster*

ASSOCIATE GENERAL EDITOR: A. R. Braunmuller, *University of California, Los Angeles*

From the publication of the first volumes in 1984 the General Editor of the New Cambridge Shakespeare was Philip Brockbank and the Associate General Editors were Brian Gibbons and Robin Hood. From 1990 to 1994 the General Editor was Brian Gibbons and the Associate General Editors were A. R. Braunmuller and Robin Hood.

### MACBETH

This is the most extensively annotated edition of *Macbeth* currently available, offering a thorough reconsideration of one of Shakespeare's most popular plays.

A full and accessible introduction studies the immediate theatrical and political contexts of *Macbeth's* composition, especially the Gunpowder Plot and the contemporary account of an early performance at the Globe. It treats such celebrated issues as whether the Witches compel Macbeth to murder; whether Lady Macbeth is herself in some sense a witch; whether Banquo is Macbeth's accomplice in crime; and what criticism is levelled against Macduff. A well-illustrated account of the play in performance examines several cinematic versions, such as those by Kurosawa and Roman Polanski, and other dramatic adaptations.

Several possible new sources are suggested, and the presence of Thomas Middleton's writing in the play is proposed. Appendixes contain additional text and accompanying music.

## THE NEW CAMBRIDGE SHAKESPEARE

- All's Well That Ends Well*, edited by Russell Fraser  
*Antony and Cleopatra*, edited by David Bevington  
*The Comedy of Errors*, edited by T. S. Dorsch  
*Hamlet*, edited by Philip Edwards  
*Julius Caesar*, edited by Marvin Spevack  
*The First Part of King Henry IV*, edited by Herbert Weil and Judith Weil  
*The Second Part of King Henry IV*, edited by Giorgio Melchiori  
*King Henry V*, edited by Andrew Gurr  
*The First Part of King Henry VI*, edited by Michael Hattaway  
*The Second Part of King Henry VI*, edited by Michael Hattaway  
*The Third Part of King Henry VI*, edited by Michael Hattaway  
*King Henry VIII*, edited by John Margeson  
*King John*, edited by L. A. Beaurline  
*The Tragedy of King Lear*, edited by Jay L. Halio  
*King Richard II*, edited by Andrew Gurr  
*Measure for Measure*, edited by Brian Gibbons  
*The Merchant of Venice*, edited by M. M. Mahood  
*The Merry Wives of Windsor*, edited by David Crane  
*A Midsummer Night's Dream*, edited by R. A. Foakes  
*Much Ado About Nothing*, edited by F. H. Mares  
*Othello*, edited by Norman Sanders  
*The Poems*, edited by John Roe  
*Romeo and Juliet*, edited by G. Blakemore Evans  
*The Sonnets*, edited by G. Blakemore Evans  
*The Taming of the Shrew*, edited by Ann Thompson  
*Titus Andronicus*, edited by Alan Hughes  
*Twelfth Night*, edited by Elizabeth Story Donno  
*The Two Gentlemen of Verona*, edited by Kurt Schlueter

## THE EARLY QUARTOS

- The First Quarto of King Lear*, edited by Jay L. Halio  
*The First Quarto of King Richard III*, edited by Peter Davison  
*The First Quarto of Hamlet*, edited by Kathleen O. Irace  
*The Taming of a Shrew*, edited by Stephen Roy Miller

# MACBETH

*Edited by*

A. R. BRAUNMULLER

*University of California, Los Angeles*



CAMBRIDGE  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

PUBLISHED BY THE PRESS SYNDICATE OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE  
The Pitt Building, Trumpington Street, Cambridge, United Kingdom

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 2RU, UK      [www.cup.cam.ac.uk](http://www.cup.cam.ac.uk)  
40 West 20th Street, New York, NY 10011-4211, USA      [www.cup.org](http://www.cup.org)  
10 Stamford Road, Oakleigh, Melbourne 3166, Australia  
Ruiz de Alarcón 13, 28014 Madrid, Spain

© Cambridge University Press 1997

This book is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception  
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,  
no reproduction of any part may take place without  
the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1997

Reprinted 1998, 1999

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

*A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library*

*Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication data*

Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616.

Macbeth / edited by A. R. Braunmuller.

p. cm. – (New Cambridge Shakespeare)

Includes bibliographical references

ISBN 0 521 22340 7 (hardback) – ISBN 0 521 29455 x (paperback)

i. Macbeth, King of Scotland, 11th cent. – Drama. i. Braunmuller, A. R., 1945-. ii. Title  
iii. Series: Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616. Works. 1984. Cambridge University Press.

PR2823.A2B73 1997

822.3'3 – dc20 96-23374 CIP

ISBN 0 521 22340 7 hardback

ISBN 0 521 29455 x paperback

## CONTENTS

List of illustrations	<i>page</i> vii
Acknowledgements	ix
List of abbreviations and conventions	xi
Introduction	1
<i>Macbeth in legend, Macbeth in history</i>	2
Topical <i>Macbeth</i>	5
Occasional <i>Macbeth</i>	8
Documents	13
<i>Macbeth in the mind</i>	15
Succession, time, and families	15
Master of his time: ‘doubly redoubled strokes’	23
Prospect of belief: witches, women, and mediated knowledge	29
‘What do you mean?’: the languages of <i>Macbeth</i>	43
<i>Macbeth in performance</i>	56
Performance and adaptation before 1800	57
Later stagings and versions	67
Further variations: Kurosawa, Polanski, Ninagawa	84
<i>Macbeth in the mind and in performance:</i> Act 4, Scene 3	88
Note on the text	95
Note on the Commentary	97
List of characters	100
THE PLAY	102
Supplementary notes	239
Textual analysis	245
Appendix 1: Casting <i>Macbeth</i>	264
Appendix 2: Additional text and music	268
Appendix 3: Relineation of the Folio	275
Reading list	279



## ILLUSTRATIONS

1	Banquo and his descendants. From John Leslie, <i>De Origine, moribus, et rebus gestis Scotorum</i> (1578)	page 3
2	<i>The Witches of 'Macbeth'</i> , by Henry Fuseli (Heinrich Füssli). Oil, after 1783	18
3	Title page from Robert Fludd, <i>Utriusque cosmi historia</i> (1617–19)	21
4	London Bridge. Detail from a facsimile (c. 1885) of J. C. Visscher, <i>Londinium Florentiss[is]ma Britanniae Urbs</i> (1616)	31
5	'Sueno's Stone'. Plate 49 in <i>Vetusta monvmenta</i> (1747–1835)	36
6	Chart of the Mediterranean, c. 1555, by Sebastão Lopes	39
7	'Head of the Cumæan sibyl'. Drawing by Michelangelo	41
8	Two limbecks. From <i>The Works of Geber</i> (Jabir ibn Hayyan), trans. Richard Russell (1678), rpt. 1928, p. 102, reproducing an image from the Latin edition (Berne, 1545)	46
9	Fresco of hell-castle, formerly in the Chapel of the Holy Cross, Stratford-upon-Avon	50
10	'The King', by Hans Holbein the Younger (1538), in Francis Douce, <i>The Dance of Death</i> (1833)	52
11	Two witches with a cauldron. From Ulric Molitor, <i>Des Sorcières et des devineresses</i> , 1926, reproducing an image from the Latin edition (Cologne, 1489) of his <i>De Lamiis et phitonicis mulieribus</i>	55
12	The Great Seal of James I. From Francis Sandford, <i>A Genealogical History of the Kings of England</i> (1677), p. 514	59
13	David Garrick as Macbeth and Mrs Pritchard as Lady Macbeth. Watercolour by Henry Fuseli (Heinrich Füssli), c. 1766	65
14	William Charles Macready as Macbeth	73
15	Adelaide Ristori as Lady Macbeth	75
16	Lady Macbeth, Macbeth, and company in Glen Byam Shaw's production, Stratford Memorial Theatre, 1955. Photograph: Angus Macbean	80
17	The sisters and Macbeth in Trevor Nunn's 1976–8 RSC production. Photograph: Joe Cocks Studio	83

Map of Scotland, showing place names mentioned in the text

*page* 94

Illustrations 1, 3, 5, and 12 are reproduced by courtesy of the Henry E. Huntington Library; illustrations 2 and 13 by courtesy of the Kunsthaus, Zürich; illustration 4 by courtesy of the Folger Shakespeare Library, Washington, D.C.; illustration 6 by courtesy of the National Maritime Museum, Greenwich, London; illustration 7 by courtesy of the Biblioteca reale, Turin; and illustrations 16 and 17 by courtesy of the Shakespeare Centre Library, Stratford-upon-Avon.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

'If I have done well, and as fitting the story, it is that which I desired: but if slenderly and meanly, it is that which I could attain unto.'<sup>1</sup> Most of what I say about *Macbeth* must already have been said in the voluminous writings about the play, and anyone who reads Thomas Wheeler's excellent '*Macbeth*: An Annotated Bibliography', 1990, will understand how little there is that has not been said about this compelling play. I acknowledge debts I recall and apologise for failing to acknowledge those I do not.

A children's rhyme assures us that big fleas have little fleas to bite 'em; editors have editors, and even associate general editors have a general editor. For me, the editor's editor is Brian Gibbons, and his light touch and gentle bite made me always wish for the most succinct and clearest phrase, note, and collation. Paul Chipchase, Sue Gibbons, Judith Harte, and Sarah Stanton did more to improve this effort than they will ever say, or I will ever know.

Now I essay the impossible task of parsing my further indebtedness. Those creditors include R. A. Foakes, whose edition of *A Midsummer Night's Dream* helped me shape the Introduction here, students in the courses named English 247 and 142C (at the University of California, Los Angeles), and my research assistants – several of whom were supported by my university's Center for Medieval and Renaissance Studies under the direction of, first, Michael J. B. Allen and, latterly, Patrick Geary, and others of whom were supported, just as generously, by the Research Committee of my university's Academic Senate, who also supported my own work – (chronologically, as memory serves) Kari Schoening, Owen Staley, Margaret Sullivan, Jerome Arkenberg, Karl Hagen, and Billy Phelan, who helped over several years. These individuals' compulsiveness, argumentativeness, and learning often equalled my own, and I thank them, as I also thank the institution, UCLA, that supported them and me.

Michael Cohen, David Stuart Rodes, and I worked long and valuably on an electronic, multi-media version of *Macbeth*, now published as a CD-Rom ('The Voyager *Macbeth*', 1994), and I learned much from our joint venture. A fragment of Michael Cohen's effort appears here in Appendix 1; David Rodes's beneficent influence has pervaded not just this edition and our electronic version, but all my university service. Our joint effort also allowed me to be instructed (but not convinced) by Lisa Harrow. Many colleagues at UCLA – Charles A. Berst, Robert W. Dent, Claire McEachern, Donka Minkova, Alan Roper, Norman J. W. Thrower, Robert N. Watson – taught me things (from maps to philology, Shaw to annotation to Davenant) I needed to know and did not. The Sheriff's Department of Los Angeles County retrieved my stolen automobile and the edition it contained with remarkable dispatch, and I thank those public servants.

<sup>1</sup> 2 Maccabees 15.38, cited by Gordon Crosse, *Shakespearean Playgoing 1890–1952*, 1953, p. 159.

My debts extend, geographically, far beyond Los Angeles to: Lee Bliss (Santa Barbara, California), Constance Jordan (Claremont, California), Stephen Orgel (Stanford, California), F. J. Levy (Washington), Thomas L. Berger (Canton, N.Y., and London), Leonard Tennenhouse (Providence, Rhode Island), for a remark he has probably now forgotten, Barbara Mowat (Washington, D.C.), Alan Dessen (North Carolina), John Astington (Ontario), Randall McLeod (or any passing cloud), Alan Somerset and his extraordinary computer program, 'Feste', and Paul Werstine (also Ontario), Pauline Croft, J. P. Ferris, G. R. Proudfoot, the Tivoli Research Group, Joanna Udall (all in London), Robert Baldwin (Greenwich), Peter Holland (Cambridge), Jenny Wormald and the generous folk of the Oxford Text Archive (Oxford), Mary White Foakes and Sylvia Morris of the Shakespeare Centre Library (Stratford-upon-Avon), Niky Rathbone and the Birmingham Public Library's Shakespeare Library's staff and their unfailing good humour (Birmingham), Gareth Roberts for help with matters alchemical (Exeter), Akiko Kusunoki (Tokyo).

To heap one Pelion on another and also to repeat, I should say I am especially grateful to Thomas L. Berger, Pauline Croft, Brian Gibbons, Victoria Hayne, Gail Kern Paster, Linda Levy Peck, Billy Phelan, G. R. Proudfoot, Sarah Stanton. And, again, my work has been generously assisted by the following organisations: the Research Committee, Academic Senate, University of California, Los Angeles; the National Endowment for the Humanities; the Folger Shakespeare Library, Washington, D.C.

All were generous, and, even more important, all were patient.

A.R.B.

*Los Angeles, Washington, Stratford, London*

## ABBREVIATIONS AND CONVENTIONS

### 1. Shakespeare's plays

Shakespeare's plays, when cited in this edition, are abbreviated in a style slightly modified from that used in the *Harvard Concordance to Shakespeare*. Other editions of Shakespeare are abbreviated under the editor's surname (Furness, Hudson) unless they are the work of more than one editor. In such cases, an abbreviated series title is used (Cam., Oxford). When more than one edition by the same editor is cited, later editions are discriminated with a raised figure (Theobald<sup>2</sup>). All quotations from Shakespeare, except those from *Macbeth*, use the lineation of *The Riverside Shakespeare*, under the general editorship of G. Blakemore Evans.

<i>Ado</i>	<i>Much Ado About Nothing</i>
<i>Ant.</i>	<i>Antony and Cleopatra</i>
<i>AWW</i>	<i>All's Well That Ends Well</i>
<i>AYLI</i>	<i>As You Like It</i>
<i>Cor.</i>	<i>Coriolanus</i>
<i>Cym.</i>	<i>Cymbeline</i>
<i>Err.</i>	<i>The Comedy of Errors</i>
<i>Ham.</i>	<i>Hamlet</i>
<i>1H4</i>	<i>The First Part of King Henry the Fourth</i>
<i>2H4</i>	<i>The Second Part of King Henry the Fourth</i>
<i>H5</i>	<i>King Henry the Fifth</i>
<i>1H6</i>	<i>The First Part of King Henry the Sixth</i>
<i>2H6</i>	<i>The Second Part of King Henry the Sixth</i>
<i>3H6</i>	<i>The Third Part of King Henry the Sixth</i>
<i>H8</i>	<i>King Henry the Eighth</i>
<i>JC</i>	<i>Julius Caesar</i>
<i>John</i>	<i>King John</i>
<i>LLL</i>	<i>Love's Labour's Lost</i>
<i>Lear</i>	<i>King Lear</i>
<i>Mac.</i>	<i>Macbeth</i>
<i>MM</i>	<i>Measure for Measure</i>
<i>MND</i>	<i>A Midsummer Night's Dream</i>
<i>MV</i>	<i>The Merchant of Venice</i>
<i>Oth.</i>	<i>Othello</i>
<i>Per.</i>	<i>Pericles</i>
<i>R2</i>	<i>King Richard the Second</i>
<i>R3</i>	<i>King Richard the Third</i>
<i>Rom.</i>	<i>Romeo and Juliet</i>
<i>Shr.</i>	<i>The Taming of the Shrew</i>
<i>STM</i>	<i>Sir Thomas More</i>
<i>Temp.</i>	<i>The Tempest</i>
<i>TGV</i>	<i>The Two Gentlemen of Verona</i>
<i>Tim.</i>	<i>Timon of Athens</i>
<i>Tit.</i>	<i>Titus Andronicus</i>

<i>TN</i>	<i>Twelfth Night</i>
<i>TNK</i>	<i>The Two Noble Kinsmen</i>
<i>Tro.</i>	<i>Troilus and Cressida</i>
<i>Wiv.</i>	<i>The Merry Wives of Windsor</i>
<i>WT</i>	<i>The Winter's Tale</i>

## 2. Editions, adaptations, other works of reference, and periodicals

Works mentioned once in the Commentary appear there with full bibliographical information; all others are cited by the shortened titles listed below.

Abbott	E. A. Abbott, <i>A Shakespearian Grammar</i> , 3rd edn, 1870; references are to numbered sections
Adams	J. Q. Adams (ed.), <i>Chief Pre-Shakespearean Dramas</i> , 1924
Adelman	Janet Adelman, <i>Suffocating Mothers: Fantasies of Maternal Origin in Shakespeare's Plays</i> , 'Hamlet' to 'The Tempest', 1992
<i>AEB</i>	<i>Analytical and Enumerative Bibliography</i>
Agate	James Agate, <i>Brief Chronicles</i> , 1943
Allen	Michael J. B. Allen, 'Macbeth's genial porter', <i>ELR</i> 4 (1974), 326–36
Armstrong	William A. Armstrong, 'Torch, cauldron and taper: light and darkness in <i>Macbeth</i> ', in Antony Coleman and Antony Hammond (eds.), <i>Poetry and Drama 1570–1700</i> , 1981, pp. 47–59
AV	The Holy Bible, 1611 (Authorised Version)
Barlow	Frank Barlow, 'The King's Evil', <i>EHR</i> 95 (1980), 3–27
Barrough	Philip Barrough, <i>The Methode of Phisicke</i> , 1583
Bartholomeusz	Dennis Bartholomeusz, ' <i>Macbeth</i> ' and the <i>Players</i> , 1969
Bate	Philip Bate, <i>The Oboe: An Outline of its History</i> , 3rd edn, 1975
BBC	British Broadcasting Corporation
<i>Belman</i>	Thomas Dekker, <i>The Belman of London</i> (1608), in Oliphant Smeaton (ed.), 'The Guls Hornbook' and 'The Belman of London', 1904
Bevington	David Bevington, <i>Action is Eloquence: Shakespeare's Language of Gesture</i> , 1984
Biggs	Murray Biggs et al. (eds.), <i>The Arts of Performance in Elizabethan and Early Stuart Drama</i> , 1991
Blackfriars	<i>Macbeth</i> , ed. R. W. Dent, 1969 (Blackfriars Shakespeare)
Bloch	Marc Bloch, <i>The Royal Touch</i> (1923), trans. J. E. Anderson, 1973
<i>Blurt</i>	Thomas Dekker (?), <i>Blurt, Master Constable</i> (1602), ed.
Booth	Thomas L. Berger, 1979
Bradley	Stephen Booth, 'King Lear', 'Macbeth', <i>Indefinition, and Tragedy</i> , 1983
Braunmuller, <i>Letter-Book</i>	A. C. Bradley, <i>Shakespearean Tragedy</i> (1904), rpt. 1955
Brennan	A. R. Braunmuller (ed.), <i>A Seventeenth-Century Letter-Book</i> , 1983
	Anthony Brennan, <i>Onstage and Offstage Worlds in Shakespeare's Plays</i> , 1989

- Brooke *The Tragedy of Macbeth*, ed. Nicholas Brooke, 1990 (Oxford Shakespeare)
- Brooks Cleanth Brooks, *The Well Wrought Urn*, 1947
- Bullough Geoffrey Bullough (ed.), *Narrative and Dramatic Sources of Shakespeare*, 8 vols., 1957–75
- Burnim Kalman A. Burnim, *David Garrick, Director*, 1961
- Byrne Muriel St Clare Byrne, ‘Fifty years of Shakespearian production: 1898–1948’, *S. Sur.* 2 (1949), 1–20
- c. *circa* ('about', used for an uncertain date or dates)
- Cam. *Macbeth* in *The Works of William Shakespeare*, ed. W. G. Clark and W. A. Wright, '2nd edn', 9 vols., 1891–93, vii (1892) (Cambridge Shakespeare)
- Camden William Camden, *Remains Concerning Britain* (1605), ed. R. D. Dunn, 1984
- Campbell, *Life* Thomas Campbell, *Life of Mrs Siddons*, 2 vols., 1834
- Capell *Macbeth* in *Mr William Shakespeare, his Comedies, Histories, and Tragedies*, ed. Edward Capell, 10 vols., 1767–8, iv
- Capell, *Notes* Edward Capell, *Notes and Various Readings to Shakespeare*, 3 vols., 1779–80; references are to vol. ii (1780), first pagination-sequence, unless otherwise noted
- Caretti Laura Caretti (ed.), *Il Teatro del personaggio: Shakespeare sulla scena italiana dell'800*, 1979
- Carlisle Carol Jones Carlisle, *Shakespeare from the Greenroom*, 1969
- Carlson Marvin Carlson, *The Italian Shakespearians*, 1985
- Carter Thomas Carter, *Shakespeare and Holy Scripture*, 1905
- Cercignani Fausto Cercignani, *Shakespeare's Works and Elizabethan Pronunciation*, 1981
- Chambers *Macbeth*, ed. E. K. Chambers, 1893 (Warwick Shakespeare)
- Changeling* Thomas Middleton and William Rowley, *The Changeling* (1622), ed. George W. Williams, 1966 (Regents Renaissance Drama)
- Chapman *The Plays of George Chapman: The Tragedies*, gen. ed. Allan Holaday, 1987
- Clarendon William Shakespeare, *Select Plays: Macbeth*, ed. W. G. Clark and W. Aldis Wright, 1869 (Clarendon Press Series)
- Clark Arthur Melville Clark, *Murder Under Trust, or, The Topical 'Macbeth'*, 1981
- Clark, 'Inversion' Stuart Clark, 'Inversion, misrule and the meaning of witchcraft', *P&P* 87 (May 1980), 98–127
- Clarkson and Warren P. S. Clarkson and C. T. Warren, *The Law of Property in Shakespeare and the Elizabethan Drama*, 1942
- Coleridge Samuel Taylor Coleridge, *Coleridge's Criticism of Shakespeare*, ed. R. A. Foakes, 1989
- Collier *Macbeth* in *The Works of William Shakespeare*, ed. J. Payne Collier, 8 vols., 1842–4, vii (1843)
- Collier<sup>2</sup> *Macbeth* in *The Plays of William Shakespeare*, ed. J. Payne Collier, 1853

conj.	conjecture, conjectured by
corr.	corrected
Cotgrave	Randle Cotgrave, <i>A Dictionarie of the French and English Tongues</i> , 1611
Crosse	Gordon Crosse, <i>Shakespearean Playgoing</i> 1890–1952, 1953
<i>Daemonologie</i>	James VI and I, <i>Daemonologie</i> (1598), ed. G. B. Harrison, Bodley Head Quartos, 1924
<i>Damned Art</i>	<i>The Damned Art: Essays in the Literature of Witchcraft</i> , ed. Sydney Anglo, 1977
Davenant	<i>Macbeth, a Tragedy</i> [adapted by William Davenant] With all the alterations . . . and New Songs. As it's now acted at the Dukes [sic] Theatre, 1674
Davies, <i>Life</i>	Thomas Davies, <i>Memoirs of the Life of David Garrick</i> , 2 vols., 1780
Davies, <i>Micellanies</i>	Thomas Davies, <i>Dramatic Micellanies</i> [sic], 3 vols., 1783–4
De Quincey	Thomas De Quincey, 'On the knocking at the gate in <i>Macbeth</i> ' (1823), in <i>The Collected Writings of Thomas De Quincey</i> , ed. David Masson, 14 vols., 1889–90, x, 389–95
Dekker	<i>The Dramatic Works of Thomas Dekker</i> , ed. Fredson Bowers, 4 vols., 1953–61
Dent	Robert W. Dent, <i>Shakespeare's Proverbial Language: An Index</i> , 1981; reference is to proverbs by letter and number
Dent, <i>PLED</i>	Robert W. Dent, <i>Proverbial Language in English Drama Exclusive of Shakespeare</i> , 1984; reference is to proverbs by letter and number
Dessen	Alan Dessen, <i>Elizabethan Stage Conventions and Modern Interpreters</i> , 1984
Dessen, 'Problems'	Alan Dessen, "'Taint not thy mind . . .': problems and pitfalls in staging plays at the New Globe', in Franklin J. Hildy (ed.), <i>New Issues in the Reconstruction of Shakespeare's Theatre</i> , 1990, pp. 135–57
Dolan	Frances E. Dolan, <i>Dangerous Familiars: Representations of Domestic Crime in England 1550–1700</i> , 1994
Donohue, <i>Dramatic Character</i>	Joseph W. Donohue, Jr, <i>Dramatic Character in the English Romantic Age</i> , 1970
Donohue, 'Mrs Siddons'	Joseph W. Donohue, Jr, 'Kemble and Mrs Siddons in <i>Macbeth</i> : the Romantic approach to tragic character', <i>ThN</i> 22 (1967–8), 65–86
Doran	Madeleine Doran, 'The <i>Macbeth</i> music', <i>S.St.</i> 16 (1983), 153–73
Downer	Alan S. Downer, <i>The Eminent Tragedian: William Charles Macready</i> , 1966
<i>Dutch Courtesan</i>	John Marston, <i>The Dutch Courtesan</i> (1605), ed. M. L. Wine, 1965 (Regents Renaissance Drama)
Dyce	<i>Macbeth</i> in <i>The Works of William Shakespeare</i> , ed. Alexander Dyce, 6 vols., 1857, v
Dyce <sup>2</sup>	<i>Macbeth</i> in <i>The Works of William Shakespeare</i> , ed. Alexander Dyce, 9 vols., 1864–7, vii (1866)

ed., eds.	editor(s), edited by
Edelman	Charles Edelman, <i>Brawl Ridiculous: Swordfighting in Shakespeare's Plays</i> , 1992
Edmonton	Thomas Dekker <i>et al.</i> , <i>The Witch of Edmonton</i> (1621) in Peter Corbin and Douglas Sedge (eds.), <i>Three Jacobean Witchcraft Plays</i> , 1986 (Revels Plays)
edn	edition
Edward III	<i>Edward III</i> , ed. Giorgio Melchiori, NCS (forthcoming)
EHR	<i>English Historical Review</i>
ELH	<i>ELH: A Journal of English Literary History</i>
ELN	<i>English Language Notes</i>
ELR	<i>English Literary Renaissance</i>
Everett	Barbara Everett, <i>Young Hamlet: Essays on Shakespeare's Tragedies</i> , 1989
F	<i>Mr. William Shakespeares Comedies, Histories, and Tragedies</i> , 1623 (First Folio)
F2	<i>Mr. William Shakespeares Comedies, Histories, and Tragedies</i> , 1632 (Second Folio)
F3	<i>Mr. William Shakespear's Comedies, Histories, and Tragedies</i> , 1663–4 (Third Folio)
F4	<i>Mr. William Shakespear's Comedies, Histories, and Tragedies</i> , 1685 (Fourth Folio)
Farnham	Willard Farnham, <i>Shakespeare's Tragic Frontier</i> (1950), rpt. 1963
Fidele and Fortunio	Luigi Pasqualigo, <i>Il Fedele</i> , trans. Anthony Munday (?), <i>Fidele and Fortunio</i> (1585), ed. Percy Simpson, MSR, 1909
Foakes	<i>The Tragedy of Macbeth</i> , ed. R. A. Foakes, 1968 (Bobbs-Merrill Shakespeare)
Focus	John Russell Brown (ed.), <i>Focus on 'Macbeth'</i> , 1982
Folger	<i>The Tragedy of Macbeth</i> , ed. Barbara A. Mowat and Paul Werstine, 1992 (New Folger Library Shakespeare)
Forman	Simon Forman, <i>Booke of Plaies</i> (Bodleian Library MS. Ashmole 208, folios 207r–v), in E. K. Chambers, <i>William Shakespeare: A Study of Facts and Problems</i> , 2 vols., 1930, II, 337–8
Furness	<i>Macbeth</i> , rev. edn, ed. H. H. Furness, Jr, 1903 (New Variorum)
Gardner	Helen Gardner, 'Milton's "Satan" and the theme of damnation in Elizabethan tragedy', in F. P. Wilson (ed.), <i>English Studies 1948</i> , 1948, pp. 46–66
Garner	Bryan A. Garner, 'Shakespeare's Latinate neologisms', <i>S.St. 15</i> (1982), 149–70
Geneva	The Holy Bible, 1560 (Geneva translation)
Gerard	John Gerard, <i>The Herball, or Generall Historie of Plantes</i> , 2 vols. [continuously paginated], 1597
Globe	<i>The Works of William Shakespeare</i> , ed. W. G. Clark and W. Aldis Wright, 1865 (Globe Edition)
Golden Age	Thomas Heywood, <i>The Golden Age</i> , 1611
Greg	W. W. Greg, <i>The Shakespeare First Folio</i> , 1955

Grey	Zachary Grey, <i>Critical, Historical, and Explanatory Notes on Shakespeare</i> , 2 vols., 1754
Hhalio	<i>Macbeth</i> , ed. Jay L. Halio, 1972 (Fountainwell Drama)
Halliwell	<i>Macbeth in The Works of William Shakespeare</i> , ed. James O. Halliwell, 16 vols., 1865, xiv
Hanmer	<i>Macbeth in The Works of Mr William Shakespear</i> , ed. Thomas Hanmer, 6 vols., 1743–4, v (1744)
Harbage	Alfred Harbage, <i>Theatre for Shakespeare</i> , 1955
Harcourt	John B. Harcourt, ‘I pray you, remember the porter’, <i>SQ</i> 12 (1961), 393–402
Heal	Felicity Heal, <i>Hospitality in Early Modern England</i> , 1990
Heath	Benjamin Heath, <i>A Revision of Shakespear's Text</i> , 1765
Henslowe	<i>Henslowe's Diary</i> , ed. R. A. Foakes and R. T. Rickert, 1961
<i>Hierarchie</i>	Thomas Heywood, <i>The Hierarchie of the Blessed Angells</i> , 1635
Hinman	Charlton Hinman, <i>The Printing and Proof-Reading of the First Folio of Shakespeare</i> , 2 vols., 1963
<i>HLQ</i>	<i>Huntington Library Quarterly</i>
<i>Honest Mans</i>	<i>The Honest Mans Fortune</i> , ed. J. Gerritsen, 1952
Houlbrooke	Ralph A. Houlbrooke, <i>The English Family 1450–1700</i> , 1984
Hudson	<i>Macbeth in The Works of Shakespeare</i> , ed. H. N. Hudson, 11 vols., 1851–59, IV (1852)
Hughes	Alan Hughes, ‘Lady Macbeth: a fiend indeed?’, <i>Southern Review</i> (Adelaide) 11 (1978), 107–12
Hughes, <i>Irving</i>	Alan Hughes, <i>Henry Irving, Shakespearean</i> , 1981
Hunter	<i>Macbeth</i> , ed. G. K. Hunter, 1967 (New Penguin Shakespeare)
Hunter, <i>New</i>	Joseph Hunter, <i>New Illustrations of the Life, Studies, and Writings of Shakespeare</i> , 2 vols., 1845
Jackson	Zachariah Jackson, <i>Shakspeare's Genius Justified</i> , 1819
Jaech	Sharon L. Jansen Jaech, ‘Political prophecy and Macbeth's “sweet bodements”’, <i>SQ</i> 34 (1983), 290–7
Jenkin	H. C. Fleeming Jenkin, ‘Mrs Siddons as Lady Macbeth. From contemporary notes by George Joseph Bell’, <i>The Nineteenth Century</i> 3 (1878), 296–313, as rpt. in Fleeming Jenkin, <i>Papers on Acting</i> , III (1915), 25–68
<i>JHI</i>	<i>Journal of the History of Ideas</i>
Johnson	<i>The Plays of William Shakespeare</i> , ed. Samuel Johnson, 8 vols., 1765, VI
Jones, <i>Origins</i>	Emrys Jones, <i>The Origins of Shakespeare</i> , 1977
Jones, <i>Scenic</i>	Emrys Jones, <i>Scenic Form in Shakespeare</i> , 1971
Jonson	Ben Jonson, <i>The Complete Plays of Ben Jonson</i> , ed. G. A. Wilkes, 4 vols., 1981–2
Keightley	<i>Macbeth in The Plays of William Shakespeare</i> , ed. Thomas Keightley, 6 vols., 1864, VI
Knight	<i>Macbeth in The Pictorial Edition of the Works of Shakespeare</i> , ed. Charles Knight, 6 vols., <i>Tragedies</i> , II, 1841

Knight, <i>Imperial</i>	G. W. Knight, <i>The Imperial Theme</i> (1931), 3rd edn, corr. rpt., 1954
Knights	L. C. Knights, 'How many children had Lady Macbeth?' (1933), rpt. in Knights, <i>Explorations</i> , 1946, pp. 1–39
Knowles	[Anonymous,] <i>Sheridan Knowles' Conception and Mr Irving's Performance of Macbeth</i> , 1876
<i>Lancashire</i>	Thomas Heywood and Richard Brome, <i>The Late Lancashire Witches</i> , 1634
Langham	Robert Langham (or Lanham), <i>A Letter</i> (1575), ed. R. J. P. Kuin, 1983
Larner	Christina Larner, <i>Witchcraft and Religion</i> , 1984
Leiter	Samuel L. Leiter et al. (comp.), <i>Shakespeare Around the Globe: A Guide to Notable Postwar Revivals</i> , 1986
<i>Lexicon</i>	Alexander Schmidt, <i>Shakespeare Lexicon</i> , 3rd edn rev. Gregor Sarrazin, 1901; reissued, 1968; references are adapted to the forms used by <i>OED</i>
Linthicum	M. C. Linthicum, <i>Costume in the Drama of Shakespeare and his Contemporaries</i> , 1936
Long	John H. Long, <i>Shakespeare's Use of Music: The Histories and Tragedies</i> , 1971
<i>Macbeth Onstage</i>	Michael Mullin (ed.), 'Macbeth' Onstage: An Annotated Facsimile of Glen Byam Shaw's 1955 Promptbook, 1976
Mackinnon	Lachlan Mackinnon, <i>Shakespeare the Aesthete</i> , 1988
Macready, <i>Diaries</i>	<i>The Diaries of W. C. Macready, 1833–1851</i> , ed. William Toynbee, 2 vols., 1912
Mahood	M. M. Mahood, <i>Shakespeare's Wordplay</i> , 1957
<i>Maid's Tragedy</i>	Francis Beaumont and John Fletcher, <i>The Maid's Tragedy</i> , ed. Howard B. Norland, 1968 (Regents Renaissance Drama)
Malone	<i>Macbeth</i> in <i>The Plays and Poems of William Shakespeare</i> , ed. Edmond Malone, 10 vols., 1790, iv
Marlowe	Christopher Marlowe, <i>The Complete Works of Christopher Marlowe</i> , ed. Fredson Bowers, 2nd edn, 2 vols., 1981, except <i>Tamburlaine</i> (see below)
Mason	John Monck Mason, <i>Comments on the Last Edition of Shakespeare's Plays</i> , 1785
Massinger	Philip Massinger, <i>The Plays and Poems of Philip Massinger</i> , ed. Philip Edwards and Colin Gibson, 5 vols., 1976
<i>MED</i>	<i>Middle English Dictionary</i> ; references are adapted to the forms used by <i>OED</i>
Milton	<i>Poetical Works of John Milton</i> , ed. Helen Darbishire, 2 vols., 1952–5
<i>Mirror</i>	J. C. Gray (ed.), <i>Mirror up to Shakespeare: Essays in Honour of G. R. Hibbard</i> , 1984
<i>MLN</i>	<i>Modern Language Notes</i>
<i>MLR</i>	<i>Modern Language Review</i>
Morley	Henry Morley, <i>The Journal of a London Playgoer, from 1851 to 1866</i> , 1866

<i>MSC</i>	<i>Malone Society Collections</i>
<i>MSR</i>	<i>Malone Society Reprints</i>
Muir	<i>Macbeth</i> , ed. Kenneth Muir (1951), rev. edn, 1984 (Arden Shakespeare)
Mullin	Michael Mullin, 'Strange images of death: Sir Herbert Beerbohm Tree's <i>Macbeth</i> , 1911', <i>Theatre Survey</i> 17 (1976), 125–42
Mulryne	Ronnie Mulryne, 'From text to foreign stage: Yukio Ninagawa's cultural translation of <i>Macbeth</i> ', in <i>Shakespeare from Text to Stage</i> , ed. Patricia Kennan and Mariangela Tempera, 1992, pp. 131–43
n., nn.	note, notes
<i>N&amp;Q</i>	<i>Notes and Queries</i>
Nashe	Thomas Nashe, <i>The Works of Thomas Nashe</i> , ed. R. B. McKerrow, rev. edn, F. P. Wilson, 5 vols., 1958
<i>Newes</i>	<i>Newes from Scotland</i> (?1591) in <i>Daemonologie</i>
Norbrook	David Norbrook, 'Macbeth and the politics of historiography' in Kevin Sharpe and Steven N. Zwicker (eds.), <i>Politics of Discourse</i> , 1987, pp. 78–116
Nosworthy	J. M. Nosworthy, <i>Shakespeare's Occasional Plays: Their Origin and Transmission</i> , 1965
NS	<i>Macbeth</i> , ed. J. D. Wilson, rev. edn, 1950 (New Shakespeare)
<i>OED</i>	<i>Oxford English Dictionary</i> , 2nd edn
Oxford	<i>William Shakespeare: The Complete Works</i> , gen. eds. Stanley Wells and Gary Taylor, 1986; collations and apparatus for this edition appear in <i>Textual Companion Past and Present</i>
<i>P&amp;P</i>	Promptbook of F (University of Padua Library) prepared c. 1625–35, in G. Blakemore Evans, <i>Shakespearean Prompt-Books of the Seventeenth Century</i> , 7 vols., 1960–89, 1, i, and 1, ii
Padua	William Patten, <i>The Expedicion into Scotlande of... Edward, Duke of Somerset</i> , 1548
Patten	Henry N. Paul, <i>The Royal Play of Macbeth</i> , 1950
Paul	<i>The Life and Works of George Peele</i> , gen. ed. C. T. Prouty, 3 vols., 1952–70
Peele	<i>The Diary of Samuel Pepys</i> , ed. Robert Latham and William Matthews, 11 vols., 1970–83
Pepys	<i>Publications of the Modern Language Association</i> (of America)
<i>PMLA</i>	Macbeth in <i>The Works of Mr William Shakespear</i> , ed. Alexander Pope, 6 vols., 1723–5, v (1723)
Pope	Macbeth in <i>The Works of Mr William Shakespear</i> , ed. Alexander Pope, 10 vols., 1728, vii
Pope <sup>2</sup>	<i>Philological Quarterly</i>
<i>PQ</i>	Edward Capell, <i>Prolusions; or, Select Pieces of Antient Poetry</i> , 1760
<i>Prolusions</i>	<i>The Whole Prophesie of Scotland, England, and some part of France</i> , 1603
<i>Prophesie</i>	

Q	quarto
Q1673	<i>Macbeth: a Tragedy</i> . Acted at the Dukes-Theatre, 1673 (a quarto)
<u>Queens</u>	<i>The Masque of Queens</i> in <i>Ben Jonson: Complete Masques</i> , ed. Stephen Orgel, 1969
r	recto (the right-hand page when a manuscript or book is opened)
<i>Reader</i>	Vivian Salmon and Edwina Burness (ed.), <i>A Reader in the Language of Shakespearean Drama</i> , 1987
<i>RenD</i>	<i>Renaissance Drama</i>
rev.	revised, revised by
Ritson	Joseph Ritson, <i>Remarks, Critical and Illustrative</i> , 1783
Riverside	<i>The Riverside Shakespeare</i> , text ed. G. B. Evans, 1974
Robbins	Rossell Hope Robbins, <i>Encyclopedia of Witchcraft and Demonology</i> , 1957
Rosen	Barbara Rosen, <i>Witchcraft in England, 1558–1618</i> , 1969
Rosen and Porter	David Rosen and Andrew Porter (eds.), <i>Verdi's 'Macbeth': A Sourcebook</i> , 1984
Rosenberg	Marvin Rosenberg, <i>The Masks of 'Macbeth'</i> , 1978
Rothwell and Melzer	Kenneth S. Rothwell and Annabelle Henkin Melzer, <i>Shakespeare on Screen: An International Filmography and Videography</i> , 1990
Rowe	<i>Macbeth</i> in <i>The Works of Mr William Shakespear</i> , ed. Nicholas Rowe, 6 vols., 1709, v
Rowe <sup>2</sup>	<i>Macbeth</i> in <i>The Works of Mr William Shakespear</i> , ed. Nicholas Rowe, 6 vols., c. 1710, v
Rowe <sup>3</sup>	<i>Macbeth</i> in <i>The Works of Mr William Shakespear</i> , ed. Nicholas Rowe, 9 vols., 1714, vi
rpt.	reprint, reprinted
SB	<i>Studies in Bibliography</i>
Schäfer	Jürgen Schäfer, <i>Shakespeares Stil: Germanisches und Romanisches Vokabular</i> , 1973; unpaginated citations refer to Appendix 3
Schanzer	Ernest Schanzer, ‘Four Notes on “Macbeth”’, <i>MLR</i> 52 (1957), 223–7
Scot	Reginald Scot, <i>The Discoverie of Witchcraft</i> (1584), ed. Brinsley Nicholson, 1886; reference is by book and chapter
<i>Scotland</i>	‘Historie of Scotland’ in Raphael Holinshed <i>et al.</i> , <i>The . . . Second Volume of Chronicles</i> , 1587; reference is by page number and column (a = left-hand column, b = right)
Scouten	Arthur H. Scouten, ‘The premiere of Davenant’s adaptation of “Macbeth”’, in <i>Shakespeare and Dramatic Tradition</i> , ed. W. R. Elton and William B. Long, 1989, pp. 286–93
SD	stage direction
SH	speech heading
Shaheen	Naseeb Shaheen, <i>Biblical References in Shakespeare’s Tragedies</i> , 1987

<i>SHR</i>	<i>Scottish Historical Review</i>
sig., sigs.	signature, signatures (printers' indications of the ordering of pages in early modern books, often more accurate than page numbers)
Singer	<i>Macbeth</i> in <i>The Dramatic Works of William Shakespeare</i> , ed. Samuel Weller Singer, 10 vols., 1826, iv
Singer <sup>2</sup>	<i>Macbeth</i> in <i>The Dramatic Works of William Shakespeare</i> , ed. Samuel Weller Singer, 2nd edn, 10 vols., 1856, ix
Sisson	C. J. Sisson, <i>New Readings in Shakespeare</i> , 2 vols., 1956
Slater	Ann Pasternak Slater, <i>Shakespeare the Director</i> , 1982
<i>SP</i>	<i>Studies in Philology</i>
Spenser	<i>The Poetical Works of Edmund Spenser</i> , ed. J. C. Smith and E. De Selincourt, 1912
Sprague	Arthur Colby Sprague, <i>Shakespeare and the Actors: The Stage Business in his Plays 1660–1905</i> , 1944
<i>SQ</i>	<i>Shakespeare Quarterly</i>
<i>S.St.</i>	<i>Shakespeare Studies</i>
<i>S.Sur.</i>	<i>Shakespeare Survey</i>
Staunton	<i>Macbeth</i> in <i>Routledge's Shakespeare</i> , ed. Howard Staunton, 50 parts in 3 vols., 1857–60, parts 42–3 (September–October 1859)
Steevens	<i>Macbeth</i> in <i>The Plays of William Shakespeare</i> , ed. Samuel Johnson and George Steevens, 10 vols., 1773, iv
Steevens <sup>2</sup>	<i>Macbeth</i> in <i>The Plays of William Shakespeare</i> , ed. Samuel Johnson and George Steevens, 10 vols., 1778, iv
Steevens <sup>3</sup>	<i>Macbeth</i> in <i>The Plays of William Shakespeare</i> , ed. George Steevens and Isaac Reed, 15 vols., 1793, viii
Stone	George Winchester Stone, Jr, 'Garrick's handling of <i>Macbeth</i> ', <i>SP</i> 38 (1941), 609–28
Stratford	Shakespeare Memorial Theatre, later the Royal Shakespeare Theatre, Stratford-upon-Avon, England
subst.	substantively
Sugden	E. H. Sugden, <i>A Topographical Dictionary to the Works of Shakespeare and his Fellow Dramatists</i> , 1925
Swander	Homer Swander, 'No exit for a dead body: what to do with a scripted corpse?', <i>Journal of Dramatic Theory and Criticism</i> 5 (1991), 139–52
<i>Tamburlaine</i>	Christopher Marlowe, <i>Tamburlaine the Great</i> (Part 1 and 2), ed. J. S. Cunningham, 1981 (Revels Plays)
<i>Textual Companion</i>	Stanley Wells et al., <i>William Shakespeare: A Textual Companion</i> , 1987
Theobald	<i>Macbeth</i> in <i>The Works of Shakespeare</i> , ed. Lewis Theobald, 7 vols., 1733, v
Theobald <sup>2</sup>	<i>Macbeth</i> in <i>The Works of Shakespeare</i> , ed. Lewis Theobald, 8 vols., 1740, vi
<i>ThN</i>	<i>Theatre Notebook</i>
Thomas	Keith Thomas, <i>Religion and the Decline of Magic</i> , 1971
Tieck	Dorothea Tieck (trans.), <i>Macbeth</i> in <i>Shakespeare's dramatische Werke</i> , ix, 1833

TLN	Through Line Number(s) in <i>The First Folio of Shakespeare</i> , ed. Charlton Hinman, 1968; each line within each play is numbered
TLS	<i>The Times Literary Supplement</i>
Topsell	Edward Topsell, <i>The Historie of Foure-Footed Beasts</i> , 1607
TQ	<i>Theatre Quarterly</i>
Travers	<i>The Tragedy of Macbeth</i> , ed. Charles Travers [i.e. Tweedie ?], 1844
True Lawe	<i>The True Lawe of Free Monarchies</i> (1598) in <i>Minor Prose Works of King James VI and I</i> , ed. James Craigie, 1982
uncorr.	uncorrected
Upton	John Upton, <i>Critical Observations on Shakespeare</i> , 1746
Utopia	<i>Utopia</i> in <i>The Complete Works of St Thomas More</i> , iv, ed. Edward Surtz, S.J., and J. H. Hexter, 1965
v	verso (the left-hand page when a manuscript or book is opened)
Waith	Eugene M. Waith, 'Manhood and valor in two Shakespearean tragedies', <i>ELH</i> 17 (1950), 262–73
Warburton	<i>Macbeth</i> in <i>The Works of Shakespear</i> , ed. William Warburton, 8 vols., 1747, vi
Warning	<i>A Warning for Faire Women</i> , 1599
Watson	Robert N. Watson, <i>Shakespeare and the Hazards of Ambition</i> , 1984
Webster	John Webster, <i>The Duchess of Malfi</i> (c. 1613–14), ed. J. R. Brown, 1964 (Revels Plays), and <i>The White Devil</i> (c. 1612), ed. J. R. Brown, 2nd edn, 1966 (Revels Plays)
Werstine	Paul Werstine, 'Line division in Shakespeare's dramatic verse: an editorial problem', <i>AEB</i> 8 (1984), 73–125
Whately	Thomas Whately, <i>Remarks on Some of the Characters of Shakespeare</i> , 1785
White	<i>Macbeth</i> in <i>The Works of William Shakespeare</i> , ed. R. G. White, 12 vols., 1857–66, x (1861)
White <sup>2</sup>	<i>Macbeth</i> in <i>Mr William Shakespeare's Comedies Histories Tragedies and Poems</i> , ed. R. G. White, 3 vols., 1883, iii
Wickham, 'Castle'	Glynne Wickham, 'Hell-castle and its door-keeper', in <i>Aspects of 'Macbeth'</i> , ed. Kenneth Muir and Philip Edwards, 1977, pp. 39–45
Wickham, 'Fly'	Glynne Wickham, 'To fly or not to fly? The problem of Hecate in Shakespeare's <i>Macbeth</i> ', in <i>Essays on Drama and Theatre: Liber Amicorum Benjamin Hunningher</i> , 1973, pp. 171–82
Widow's Tears	George Chapman, <i>The Widow's Tears</i> (c. 1605), ed. Akihiro Yamada, 1975 (Revels Plays)
Williams	Gordon Williams, <i>A Dictionary of Sexual Language and Imagery in Shakespearean and Stuart Literature</i> , 3 vols., 1994
Williams, 'Play'	George Walton Williams, 'Macbeth: King James's play', <i>South Atlantic Review</i> 47.2 (1982), 12–21

Winter	William Winter, <i>Shakespeare on the Stage</i> , series 1 (1911)
Witch	Thomas Middleton, <i>The Witch</i> (c. 1613–15?), ed. W. W. Greg, MSR, 1950
Woodstock	<i>Woodstock: A Moral History</i> (c. 1591–4), ed. A. P. Rossiter, 1946

Unless otherwise noted, quotations from the Bible are taken from the Bishops' Bible (1568).

## INTRODUCTION

Violent in action and memorably written, difficult to perform and yet extraordinarily popular on stage, granted by actors and audiences its own special ‘curse’,<sup>1</sup> William Shakespeare’s *Macbeth* strongly resists critical and theatrical exposition. Despite these manifest contradictions, an early-twentieth-century critic asserts that the play ‘is distinguished by its simplicity . . . Its plot is quite plain. It has very little intermixture of humour. It has little pathos except of the sternest kind. The style [of the play’s language] . . . has not much variety . . .’<sup>2</sup> Like many speeches in *Macbeth*, each of these apparently straightforward claims is paradoxical: each is true and at the same time misleading. Further, these claims are both true and false to the play’s life in the theatres of early Jacobean London and in the theatres of many times and many places since. Moreover, these claims are often false to the play’s complex relation with the social and political circumstances in which it was first written and first performed. As I understand my introductory task, it is to give an account of a magnificent early-seventeenth-century English play as it was originally conceived and as it might have been first played in a faraway and impossible-to-retrieve moment or series of moments in Jacobean London. It is also my task to present its afterlife in times and places very distant from the historical William Shakespeare, from his extraordinary acting company, and from their once living, now irretrievably lost, social, commercial, political, theatrical world.

To that end, I consider here: the play in its Jacobean, early-seventeenth-century moments – especially its possible political meanings – and its likely relation to documentary sources; the play’s treatment of time and of time’s varied evocations (family, succession, birth and death); the many ways in which the play allows or withholds knowledge and belief for the characters and the audience; the ways the play affects the audience through language; the ways the play has been performed in early and later times and in other places and media.

<sup>1</sup> See Iona Opie and Moira Tatem (eds.), *A Dictionary of Superstitions*, 1989, p. 396, and Richard Huggett, *The Curse of ‘Macbeth’ and Other Theatrical Superstitions*, 1981. The nature of the play’s ‘curse’ (which derives at least partly from its representation of the demonic and, practically, from its many sword-fights and the consequent physical danger to the actors) and the remedies for that curse, especially for quoting it outside the theatre, are elaborate. My favourite version is that of the distinguished actor Patrick Stewart, who taught me this remedy when I made the mistake of quoting one of the sisters’ lines in the play: to remove the curse of quoting *Macbeth* outside the theatre, one must immediately speak an equal number of lines from Shakespeare’s *A Midsummer Night’s Dream*. Other recorded remedies include walking around the theatre building three times.

<sup>2</sup> A. C. Bradley, *Shakespearean Tragedy*, 1904, rpt. 1955, p. 309. Later critics have, sometimes justly, derided Bradley’s version of *Macbeth*, but the issues he identified – history, identity, violence, sovereignty, for example – have not gone away. See, among many, Francis Barker, *The Culture of Violence: Tragedy and History*, 1993, pp. 51–92; Sheldon P. Zitner, ‘*Macbeth* and the moral scale of tragedy’, *Journal of General Education* 16 (1964), 20–8; and Robert B. Heilman, ‘The criminal as tragic hero: dramatic methods’ (1966), rpt. in Kenneth Muir and Philip Edwards (eds.), *Aspects of ‘Macbeth’*, 1977, pp. 26–38.

### Macbeth in legend, *Macbeth* in history

James Stewart or Stuart (1566–1625), the sixth king of that name to rule Scotland, believed, or claimed to believe, that he descended from one Banquo, Thane of Lochaber in the eleventh century when Scotland's king was Macbeth (see illustration 1). In late March 1603, the same King James VI became the first of that name to rule England. Barely two years later, Samuel Calvert commented on political drama, public response to it, and official failure to react:

The Plays [i.e. the players?] do not forbear to present upon their Stage the whole Course of this present Time, not sparing either King, State or Religion, in so great Absurdity, and with such Liberty, that any would be afraid to hear them.<sup>1</sup>

Calvert assumes that audiences would be 'afraid' to hear or see plays representing a living monarch, secrets of state, and controversial religious matters ('King, State or Religion'), and that such plays should be treated specially and usually censored.

Samuel Calvert was probably right, or at least conventional for his time. Queen Elizabeth I's first proclamation seeking to control the subject and content of drama (16 May 1559) used words that were regularly repeated and echoed in official and unofficial documents: 'her majestie doth . . . charge [her officers] . . . that they permty none [i.e. no 'common Interludes'] to be played wherin either matters of religion or of the governaunce of the estate of the common weale shalbe handled or treated . . .', and thirty years later the Privy Council sought closer theatrical control because the companies had 'handle[d] in their plaies certen matters of Divinitye and of State unfitt to be suffred'.<sup>2</sup> To offer the public a play representing living monarchs almost always drew official attention and usually censorship. Less than eighteen months after James's accession, his newly patented London acting company, the King's Men, twice performed a now-lost play, 'the tragedie of Gowrie'. *The Tragedy of Gowrie* presumably dealt with the alleged attempt by the Earl of Gowrie and others to assassinate James on 5 August 1600, when he was still King of Scotland only.<sup>3</sup> *The Tragedy of*

<sup>1</sup> Samuel Calvert to Ralph Winwood, 28 March 1605, in Winwood, *Memorials of Affairs of State*, 3 vols., 1725, ii, 54. Calvert may refer specifically to the controversy *Eastward Ho* caused; see p. 12 below. The Comte de Beaumont, the French ambassador, an observer admittedly grinding a diplomatic and political axe, vividly noted: 'what must be the state and condition of a prince [King James], whom the preachers publicly from the pulpit assail, whom the comedians of the metropolis bring upon the stage, whose wife attends these representations in order to enjoy the laugh against her husband' (letter, 14 June 1604, quoted from E. K. Chambers, *The Elizabethan Stage*, 4 vols., 1923, i, 325), and Henry Crosse, a fairly temperate critic of the theatre, complains that 'there is no passion wherewith the king, the soveraigne majestie of the Realme was possest, but is amplified, and openly sported with, and made a May-game to all the beholders, abusing the state royll' (*Vertues Commonwealth* (1603), sig. p3).

<sup>2</sup> Quoted from Chambers, *The Elizabethan Stage*, iv, 263 and 306, respectively. Matters of religion and state were the most frequently censored dramatic subjects throughout the Tudor and Stuart period.

<sup>3</sup> See W. F. Arbuckle, 'The "Gowrie Conspiracy"' [in two parts], *SHR* 36 (1957), 1–24 and 89–110. Scottish public opinion immediately doubted official claims about the events (Arbuckle, pp. 13–14), and an Edinburgh pamphlet, *Gowries Conspiracie* (1600), supporting James's version, appeared less than a month later, soon enough for George Nicolson, the English agent in Scotland, to send a copy south on 3 September (Arbuckle, p. 18). Valentine Simmes's London edition of this text, *The earle of Gowries conspiracie*, was entered in the Stationers' Register on 11 September 1600 and published, possibly soon after, with the date '1600'. Such speedy printing and reprinting may indicate a propaganda war and/or contemporary anxieties about attacks on monarchs.



<sup>1</sup> Banquo and his supposed descendants, including King James VI of Scotland; from John Leslie, *De Origine . . . Scotorum* (1578). Banquo is at the base of the tree, James at the crown

*Gowrie* was quickly suppressed,<sup>1</sup> and its fate suggests how politically and practically difficult it was to write and perform plays concerning the Stuart monarchy and its well-known vicissitudes in Scotland and in England. Many years later, the British monarchy, now Hanoverian, faced an effort to restore the Stuarts, and after the Battle of Falkirk (1746), when Scottish troops, supported by the French, won a temporary advantage, ‘The king was advised to go to the theatre and to command the tragedy of Macbeth’, and the play was performed.<sup>2</sup> In the anxious times of a largely Scottish insurrection against the British (or English) central government in 1746, *Macbeth* was considered a pro-English, pro-monarchical, anti-rebel, and (curiously) anti-Stuart play.

Given even this brief context, it is a nice understatement to say that ‘Shakespeare’s task in writing *Macbeth* was . . . extremely problematic.’<sup>3</sup> From a very different perspective, another critic agrees: ‘*Macbeth* is a play about Scotland, seized at a crucial moment of transition in its history . . .’<sup>4</sup> However distant these early-seventeenth-century debates and problems may seem, they were living difficulties for the King’s Men, for William Shakespeare as playwright, and for their audiences at the Globe theatre and elsewhere. Those difficulties entailed not only who might have rightfully ruled Scotland in the eleventh century, but who might justly rule Scotland and, more controversially, England, in the seventeenth.

Looking back to early Jacobean London, we recognise that these early-seventeenth-century debates affect our understanding of *Macbeth*’s origins. Reversing the telescope of time, we must suppose that those debates shaped the play’s creation. The problems of situating the composition and earliest performances of *Macbeth*, and of determining its sources in written documents, contemporary events, and early Jacobean culture, are interdependent matters, often with no certain answers. One place to start is with the often-remarked ‘connection’ between the play and the accession of the Scottish King James VI as England’s King James I, whose family provided England’s and Scotland’s native monarchs until the death of Queen Anne in 1714. Arguments linking *Macbeth* with King James or with specific events in the early seventeenth century divide into the ‘topical’ *Macbeth* and the ‘occasional’ *Macbeth*. First, the play may be studied as a ‘topical’ or general repository of references to events, ideas, or persons in the years immediately after James’s accession,<sup>5</sup> second, as a more specific response to the unprecedented ‘occasion’ of a Scottish king becoming England’s king, third, as a response to an even more precise ‘occasion’, when James’s brother-in-law, the Danish King Christian IV, first visited England.

<sup>1</sup> For these performances and their suppression, see John Chamberlain to Ralph Winwood, letter, 18 December 1604, in N. E. McClure (ed.), *The Letters of John Chamberlain*, 2 vols., 1939, I, 199.

<sup>2</sup> See Thomas Davies, *Memoirs of the Life of David Garrick*, 2 vols., 1780, II, 136.

<sup>3</sup> David Norbrook, ‘*Macbeth*, and the politics of historiography’, in Kevin Sharpe and Steven N. Zwicker (eds.), *Politics of Discourse: The Literature and History of Seventeenth-Century England*, 1987, p. 93.

<sup>4</sup> John Turner, ‘*Macbeth*’, in Graham Holderness et al. (eds.), *Shakespeare: The Play of History*, 1988, p. 120. Just before this remark, Turner says: ‘two rival Scottish traditions of interpreting relations with England, the unionist and the nationalist . . . have been brought together . . . in *Macbeth* . . . to problematise our understanding of historical progress by the theatrical experience of tragedy’.

<sup>5</sup> For extensive, sometimes persuasive, arguments about the play’s topicality, see Arthur Melville Clark, *Murder Under Trust: The Topical ‘Macbeth’*, 1981.

## TOPICAL MACBETH

Claims for a topical *Macbeth* cannot be substantiated and may be circular. There are some striking pieces of what may be 'evidence'. Consider the Porter in *Macbeth*:

Here's a farmer that hanged himself on th'expectation of plenty. Come in time – have napkins enough about you, here you'll sweat for't. (*Knock*) Knock, knock. Who's there in th'other devil's name? Faith, here's an equivocator that could swear in both the scales against either scale, who committed treason enough for God's sake, yet could not equivocate to heaven. O, come in, equivocator. (2.3.3–10)<sup>1</sup>

Critics have linked the Porter's words with the notorious imprisonment, trial, and execution (1606) of the Gunpowder plotters, who had sought to blow up Parliament, along with the king and his family, and many aristocrats and judges on 5 November 1605. Among those executed was the Superior of the English Jesuits, Father Henry Garnet, who espoused the doctrine of 'equivocation' ('here's an equivocator that could swear in both the scales . . .') and used the alias 'Farmer' ('Here's a farmer that hanged himself . . .').<sup>2</sup>

Among other topical evidence, there is Matthew Gwinne's brief Latin pageant, 'Tres Sibyllae' (Three Sibyls), welcoming King James to St John's College, Oxford, on 27 August 1605, apparently drawing upon chronicle accounts of Macbeth and Banquo meeting the three witches, and pandering to James's belief that he was descended from Banquo.<sup>3</sup> Gwinne's pageant, recited by 'tres quasi Sibyllae' (three persons like sibyls), is quite conventional. Although the repeated uses of 'Salve' (Hail) in addressing king, queen, and royal prince seem close to the witches' words in *Macbeth* Act 1, Scene 3, they do in fact duplicate a sibyl's prophetic greeting that Queen Elizabeth had heard thirty years earlier, when one 'Sibylla' intercepted her as she rode through the Earl of Leicester's park at Kenilworth Castle with the words, 'All hayle, all hayle, thrice happy prince, / I am *Sibilla* she / Of future chaunce, and after happ, / foreshewing what shalbe.'<sup>4</sup> Gwinne's seemingly significant language may 'prove' only that he could read Raphael Holinshed's *Chronicles* (see pp. 13–15 below) as well as any other author eager to please the new king.<sup>5</sup> Most of the proposed links

<sup>1</sup> For the contemporary socio-economic resonances of 'plenty', see Richard Wilson, *Will Power: Essays on Shakespearean Authority*, 1993, chapter 4, esp. pp. 83 ff., and the authorities there cited.

<sup>2</sup> See also 5.5.42–3. Prosecutors repeatedly emphasised the various names ('false appellations' in Sir Edward Coke's words) used by the Gunpowder Plot conspirators and the doctrine of equivocation at Garnet's trial, 28 March 1606; see T. B. Howell (comp.), *A Complete Collection of State Trials*, 33 vols., 1809–26, II, columns 225 (multiple names), 234 (Garnet as 'Farmer'), 234–5, 238–9 (equivocation).

<sup>3</sup> See Geoffrey Bullough (ed.), *Narrative and Dramatic Sources of Shakespeare*, 8 vols., 1957–75, VII, 470–2, for the Latin text (published with Gwinne's *Vertumnus sive Annus recurrens* in 1607) and an English translation. On equivocation in the play, see Frank L. Huntley, 'Macbeth and the background of Jesuitical equivocation', *PMLA* 79 (1964), 390–400, and, more generally, Lowell Gallagher, *Medusa's Gaze: Casuistry and Conscience in the Renaissance*, 1991, pp. 1–120. Another possible topical reference would place at least some of the play's composition after mid 1606: see 1.3.6 n.; see also p. 15 below.

<sup>4</sup> 'The princely pleasures at Kenelworth Castle', in *The Whole woorkes of George Gascoigne* (1587), sig. A1r, following p. 352.

<sup>5</sup> Anthony Nixon's account of James's visit to Oxford, *Oxfords Triumph* (1605), mentions (sig. B1r) 'three little Boyes comming foorth of a Castle, made all of Ivie, drest like three Nimpes'; Nixon thus 'echoes' Macbeth's history in Raphael Holinshed's *Chronicles* (1587) and anticipates Simon Forman's eyewitness account of a Jacobean performance of *Macbeth*. See pp. 13–15 and 57–8 below.

between *Macbeth*, the Gunpowder Plot, and Gwinne's pageant prove to be vague, circumstantial, or undatable.<sup>1</sup>

If *Macbeth* contains allusions to the Gunpowder Plot, some of its text must have been composed after 5 November 1605; if the play alludes to the conspirators' trials, convictions, and executions, some of its text must have been composed about the first quarter of 1606. If the First Witch's mention of a sailor who is 'master o'th'Tiger' (1.3.6) refers to one specific historical ship, as her eerily precise reference to that historical ship's tumultuous voyage might suggest, then her lines could not have been written before that particular *Tiger* returned to England (27 June 1606) and the ship's travails became known.<sup>2</sup> If William Warner's additions to *Albions England*, published at an unknown date in 1606 (see p. 10 below), echo, rather than anticipate, *Macbeth*, the play must have been publicly performed or its subject-matter and perhaps its text have become publicly known before Warner composed his text.

Verbal similarities between *Macbeth* and *Antony and Cleopatra* suggest that the two plays may have been written at about the same time. *Macbeth*, awaiting the murderers, compares himself and Banquo with Mark Antony and Octavian (Shakespeare's Octavius), the man who became Augustus Caesar, the first Roman emperor:

There is none but he [Banquo],  
Whose being I do fear; and under him  
My genius is rebuked, as it is said  
Mark Antony's was by Caesar. (3.1.55–8)

Yet these verbal similarities say nothing certain about priority or proximity of composition.<sup>3</sup> *Macbeth*, although its general style is very different, has many linguistic and imaginative links with Shakespeare's *The Rape of Lucrece*, published in 1593, many years before *Macbeth* seems to have been written and performed.<sup>4</sup> Around the same supposed time of *Macbeth*'s original composition, Volumnia in *Coriolanus* powerfully compares mother's milk and blood, two of *Macbeth*'s most evocative liquids:

The breasts of Hecuba,  
When she did suckle Hector, looked not lovelier  
Than Hector's forehead when it spit forth blood  
At Grecian sword, contemning – (Coriolanus 1.3.40–3)

<sup>1</sup> See J. Leeds Barroll, *Politics, Plague, and Shakespeare's Theater*, 1991, pp. 133–52.

<sup>2</sup> See 1.3.6n. It is impossible to know how widespread the knowledge of the *Tiger*'s voyage might have been.

<sup>3</sup> *Antony and Cleopatra* and *Macbeth* are also dramaturgically similar; see p. 24 below and p. 28 n. 1. The plays also have similar 'arming scenes' (*Macbeth* 5.3 and *Antony* 4.4), where love, or memories of love, interrupt preparations for war. More generally, the Shakespearean tragedies that probably preceded and succeeded *Macbeth* – *King Lear* and *Antony and Cleopatra*, respectively – follow what may be a psychologically or authorially explicable treatment of time. In *King Lear*, time is memorably expressed as ageing, or the coming-into-being of a past; in *Antony and Cleopatra*, time is treated as a present past, as nostalgia (see e.g. Michael Neill (ed.), *Ant.*, 1994, pp. 94–8); in *Macbeth*, time is treated as a future-in-the-present (see 1.5.54–6 and pp. 20–3 below) or as the future made a changeless present.

<sup>4</sup> See e.g. 2.1.55n. For the many links between *The Rape of Lucrece* and *Macbeth*, see G. W. Knight, *The Imperial Theme*, 1931, 3rd edn, corr. rpt., 1954, p. 133, and Kenneth Muir (ed.), *Mac.*, 9th edn, 1962, Appendix D.

These lines are part of Volumnia's reply to Virgilia's anxious worry – 'O Jupiter, no blood!' – for her husband's safe return from war. They also rewrite in Shakespearean 'Roman' terms Lady Macbeth's willingness to dash out the brains of the child she suckled (1.7.54–9; see p. 36 below). Blood for milk, in Shakespeare's Rome and Shakespeare's Scotland.<sup>1</sup> The plot of *Coriolanus* also puts ambiguous 'heroes', Coriolanus and Aufidius, into conflict, as does the plot of *Macbeth*: Macbeth *versus* Banquo, who acknowledges 'cursèd thoughts' (2.1.8) which might be thoughts of usurpation; later, Macbeth *versus* Macduff, who disastrously abandons his family and becomes at least technically a regicide; still later, Macbeth *versus* Malcolm, who also flees and whose royal claim rests on Duncan's nomination (1.4.37–9) and remains at best arguable.<sup>2</sup> By joining an attractive hero-villain with ambiguously moral or ambiguously 'good' opponents, *Macbeth* resembles *Richard III* among Shakespeare's earlier plays.<sup>3</sup>

Further, Shakespeare's Roman plays and English history plays emphasise *shame* as a motive for royal and aristocratic acts. Macduff cannily manoeuvres Macbeth, who supposes himself invincible ('I bear a charmèd life which must not yield' (5.8.12)), into battle by threatening public humiliation:

Then yield thee coward,  
And live to be the show and gaze o'th'time.  
We'll have thee, as our rarer monsters are,  
Painted upon a pole and underwrit,  
'Here may you see the tyrant.'

(5.8.23–7)

Social and political humiliation and near-raucous comedy are closely joined here, as they are in *Antony and Cleopatra* (see p. 28 below); earlier in *Macbeth* (Act 2, Scene 3), the Porter insistently if unself-consciously combines 'high' political events with 'low' bodily functions. Before choosing suicide, Cleopatra imagines public humiliation were she to submit to Roman power (*Antony and Cleopatra* 4.12.33–9, 5.2.108–24); Richard III uses his physical deformity as ambition's spur (*Richard III* 1.1.14–51); and Aufidius cleverly names Coriolanus a 'boy of tears' (*Coriolanus* 5.6.100) when the political, deadly moment is right.

Although traditional chronologies place *Macbeth* after *King Lear* and before *Antony and Cleopatra* and *Coriolanus*, those chronologies are uncertain.<sup>4</sup> Amidst these uncer-

<sup>1</sup> R. B. Parker (ed.), *Cor.*, 1994, p. 52, compares Volumnia's behaviour in general and Lady Macbeth's "unsexing" herself (with a comparable distortion of breast-feeding to child-murder) . . . Dying, Cleopatra links death and sucking when she compares the fatal asp to a child: 'Dost thou not see my baby at my breast, / That sucks the nurse asleep?' (*Ant.* 5.2.309–10).

<sup>2</sup> Critical suspicion of Banquo begins with Bradley, pp. 304 and 306–8; for the play's ambivalent treatment of Macduff and Malcolm, see pp. 88–93 below.

<sup>3</sup> Emrys Jones, *Scenic Form in Shakespeare*, 1971, pp. 199–224, discusses *Macbeth*'s structural (and some verbal) links with Shakespeare's earlier plays, especially *Richard III* and (more surprisingly) *Henry VI*, Parts 2 and 3. For *Richard III*'s relation with *Macbeth*, see also p. 71 below and n. 3.

<sup>4</sup> For the traditional argument, see E. K. Chambers, *William Shakespeare: A Study of Facts and Problems*, 2 vols., 1930, I, 249–50 and 271, and for *Macbeth*, *ibid.*, I, 471–6, but Chambers admits (I, 251) that *Lear*, *Macbeth*, and *Antony and Cleopatra* come 'in no certain order'. A counter-claim appears in Barroll, *passim*, but esp. chapters 5–6. Barroll speculates that *Macbeth* was written 'by the end of 1606' (p. 177) and may have been first performed 'at court, December–February 1606–7' (p. 153); Barroll's argument for both

tainties, there is one highly probable claim. When Scotland's King James became England's King James in March 1603, his accession made a Shakespearean Scottish play commercially viable and creatively attractive. King James and his Scottishness created an occasion, and at some point Shakespeare and the King's Men apparently seized the popular, commercial moment, as they had less successfully done in performing *The Tragedy of Gowrie*.

#### OCCASIONAL MACBETH

*Macbeth* has been called an 'occasional' play in two senses: first, the argument runs, Shakespeare would not have composed a play on a Scottish subject had not a Scottish king come to the English throne. This claim seems very probable. Second and more specific, some scholars believe Shakespeare composed the play as a 'compliment' to King James, perhaps even as an entertainment when King Christian IV of Denmark, James's brother-in-law, visited his fellow monarch from 17 July to 11 August 1606.<sup>1</sup> James's interest in witchcraft and the King's Evil (compare 4.3.141–61),<sup>2</sup> and his belief that he was descended from Banquo, have been claimed, plausibly, as links between the new king and Shakespeare's play, but the more specific claim that *Macbeth* was written to honour the Danish king's visit, or that the play was performed before James and Christian – who did not speak English<sup>3</sup> – lacks any proof. The royal visit included many dramatic performances – three unnamed plays by the King's Men, another by the company that had recently been punished for anti-Scottish satire in *Eastward Ho*, another by the Children of Paul's – as well as bear-baitings and demonstrations of fencing and wrestling.<sup>4</sup> Yet John Heminge of Shakespeare's company received the customary £10 per play,<sup>5</sup> and the records mention no extraordinary costs, as we might have expected if *Macbeth* had been performed, since in a full-blown royal performance it would probably have required some unusual costumes, props, and machinery. Unlike masques and other courtly entertainments, few public theatre plays (such as *Macbeth*) were premièred at court and/or written for a specific royal occasion. In 1606,

composition and performance partly depends upon the frequent theatre-closures for the plague (see p. 9 below, n. 1), and it is weakened by the unargued assumption (pp. 17 and 19) that in the Jacobean period Shakespeare did not continue to write plays when London performances were forbidden. Equally uncertain is *Macbeth*'s chronological relation with *Pericles* (1609), a play deeply interested in birth, death, and parenthood.

<sup>1</sup> See e.g. C. C. Stopes, *Shakespeare's Industry*, 1916, pp. 95–109; J. W. Draper, "'Macbeth' as a compliment to James I", *Englische Studien* 72 (1937–8), 207–20; Henry N. Paul, *The Royal Play of Macbeth*, 1950; J. M. Nosworthy, *Shakespeare's Occasional Plays, Their Origin and Transmission*, 1965, chapter 1; Clark, esp. chapters 5 and 7.

<sup>2</sup> On James's interest in witchcraft, see *Newes from Scotland* and *Daemonologie*, in James VI and I, *Daemonologie*, ed. G. B. Harrison, 1924; for the topicality of James's ambivalent attitude toward healing the King's Evil, see F. David Hoeniger, *Medicine and Shakespeare in the English Renaissance*, 1992, chapter 16, esp. pp. 276 and 281–2.

<sup>3</sup> See Michael Hawkins, 'History, politics and *Macbeth*', in John Russell Brown (ed.), *Focus on 'Macbeth'*, 1982, pp. 155–88; p. 186. Hawkins's entire article is essential for the study of *Macbeth*, and Hawkins's Appendix, pp. 185–8, powerfully refutes the claims of Henry N. Paul.

<sup>4</sup> See David Cook and F. P. Wilson, 'Dramatic records in the declared accounts of the Treasurer of the Chamber, 1558–1642', *MSC* 6 (1962 for 1961), 44–6, and W. R. Streitberger, 'Jacobean and Caroline Revels accounts, 1603–1642', *MSC* 13 (1986), 15.

<sup>5</sup> Cook and Wilson, 'Dramatic records', p. 44.

plague had closed the theatres for many months. Economic necessity, therefore, as well as the commercial value of performing at court, might have led the King's Men to present *Macbeth* there first.<sup>1</sup>

Nothing stronger than hypothesis and circumstantial evidence joins *Macbeth* with either James's accession or Christian's visit, yet no English tragedy (as opposed to comedies and histories) on Scottish subjects earlier than *Macbeth* has survived. Four Scottish tragedies are known to have been written; they are for us only titles: 'a Tragedie of the Kinge of Scottes' (1567–8), 'Robart the second Kinge of scottes tragedie' or 'the scottes tragedi' (September 1599), 'malcolm Kynge of scottes' (April 1602), and 'the tragedie of Gowrie' (already mentioned).<sup>2</sup> A satiric remark in Will Kemp's *Nine Daisies Wonder* (1600) implies that Macbeth and what Kemp calls 'Prophetesses' (possibly the beings who later became the 'sisters' of *Macbeth*) had already appeared in a ballad.<sup>3</sup> Kemp had been the principal comic actor in the Lord Chamberlain's Men (the earlier name of the King's Men), and he might therefore have known a now-lost *Macbeth*-play.<sup>4</sup>

Before *Macbeth*, English dramatists and their audiences generally understood Scotsmen as a comical, alien, dangerous, and uncivilised people – as Frenchmen who spoke a form of English, perhaps.<sup>5</sup> The historic Franco-Scottish alliance, the 'auld

<sup>1</sup> Among likely plays and entertainments, George Peele's *Arraignment of Paris* requires Queen Elizabeth as a participant and was advertised as having been performed at court; one version of Ben Jonson's *Every Man Out of His Humour* ends with an address to Elizabeth and was apparently performed at court, perhaps before it appeared at the Globe. Jonson's *Sejanus* may also have been performed first at court; see Philip Ayres (ed.), *Sejanus*, 1990, p. 9, citing E. K. Chambers. A few other plays may have been designed for royal performance before appearing in public theatres: see e.g. Glynne Wickham, 'The Two Noble Kinsmen or *A Midsummer Night's Dream, Part II?*', in G. R. Hibbard (ed.), *Elizabethan Theatre VII*, 1980, pp. 167–96. Generally, however, plays were performed publicly and then performed (sometimes adapted) at court. For the effort and expenses required by dramatic productions at court, see Glynne Wickham, *Early English Stages*, 3 vols., II, pt. 1 (1963), chap. 8. For a different view about *Macbeth*, see Barroll, p. 153; he notes (p. 144): 'Beginning in June 1606, there would be no public presentations of plays in London for seven or eight months' because of the plague 'and thus no performances of *Macbeth* at the Globe'; such a long closure might make original performance at court more likely. Parker (ed.), *Coriolanus*, pp. 86–7, argues that *Coriolanus* may have been written and rehearsed, perhaps before paying audiences, under similarly difficult conditions. If Parker's guess is accurate, both writing and rehearsal of *Coriolanus* contradict Barroll's assumptions about *Macbeth* (see p. 7 above, n. 4).

<sup>2</sup> For the first and second, see Clark, pp. 11–12; on the second, see Henslowe, p. 124, and James Shapiro, 'The Scot's Tragedy and the politics of popular drama', *ELR* 23 (1993), 428–49; on the third, see Henslowe, pp. 199–200.

<sup>3</sup> Bullough, VII, 429.

<sup>4</sup> David Wiles, *Shakespeare's Clown: Actor and Text in the Elizabethan Playhouse*, 1987, p. 34. Dover Wilson (NS, pp. xli–xlii) thought a *Macbeth*-play existed in Elizabeth's reign, and G. B. Evans (private communication, 30 May 1994) has noted many verbal similarities between F *Macbeth* and A *Warning for Faire Women* (printed 1599), a Lord Chamberlain's Men's play.

<sup>5</sup> Typically, Scots and Scotland were material for comedies (such as Robert Greene's *James IV*, which includes an English invasion to rectify Scottish royal abuses, or the anonymous *Pinner of Wakefield*), or for history plays concerning the long medieval wars against Scotland (e.g. Peele's *Edward I*, Marlowe's *Edward II*, and the anonymous *Edward III*, in which Shakespeare probably had a hand and which includes a 'treacherous' Scottish invasion of northern England, repulsed by Edward III in person and involving the capture of David, King of Scots), or for national stereotypes and comic effects, as in *Henry V* and the quarto versions (1600, 1619) of Portia's ridiculed suitors in *The Merchant of Venice*. In the last instance, the Folio discreetly changes a satiric reference to a 'Scottish lord' to 'other lord'; perhaps similarly, Shakespeare transferred the Hero–Claudio plot in *Much Ado* from the Scottish setting of his source (Ariosto) to Italy (see Bullough, II, 62). *Edward III* in particular, and very unlike *Macbeth*, draws

alliance', made these two countries seem especially likely to take advantage of any English internal dissension: 'If Lincolnshire seke to distroye Englande, what wonder is hit if Fraunce and Scotlande sometime have fought [i.e. sought?] to offend me?', one English propagandist wrote.<sup>1</sup> And the possibly Shakespearean *Edward III* (?1593) dramatises an earlier period, the fourteenth century, when English ambitions in France coincided with the designs of the Scots (England's 'everlasting foe'<sup>2</sup>) and the French on England. In *Edward III*, David, King of Scots, promises the French ambassador, 'That we with England will not enter parley, / . . . nor take truce' (*Edward III* 1.2.22–3). The text of *Henry V* alludes to this episode, where Westmoreland succinctly gives the English view:

But there's a saying, very old and true,  
*'If that you will France win  
 Then with Scotland first begin.'*  
 For once the eagle England being in prey,  
 To her unguarded nest the weasel Scot  
 Comes sneaking, and so sucks her princely eggs,  
 Playing the mouse in absence of the cat  
 To 'tame and havoc more than she can eat.<sup>3</sup>

Unmentioned in *Henry V* are England's frequent attacks upon and invasions of Scotland. Queen Elizabeth engaged in very few independent foreign military adventures, but her first (1560) was against Scotland, when she intervened in Scottish factional struggles, hoping to install a puppet-régime or even to conquer the country.<sup>4</sup>

Lamenting Queen Elizabeth's death and praising King James as the first monarch to unite 'Britaine', William Warner's *A Continuance of Albions England* (1606) adds to a work first published in 1586 and often republished and enlarged; Warner's 1606 additions include a chapter (94) 'Of Makbeth the Tyrant . . .', perhaps alluding to Shakespeare's *Macbeth*, another (95) on the Gunpowder Plot, and one (90) 'Of the long continued League and Confedracie betweene the French and Scots against the English . . .'.<sup>5</sup> Although Andrew Boorde practised medicine in Glasgow, his *Fyrst Boke of the Introduction of Knowledge* (?1547) is a compendium of the stereotypes that English popular and political writing kept alive for Shakespeare's audience:

I Am a Scotyshe man, and trew I am to Fraunce;  
 In every countrey, myselfe I do avaunce;  
 I wyll boost myselfe, I wyll crake and face;

attention to Scottish speech, using such conventional stage-Scots as 'whinyards' (thought to be an especially Scottish weapon; see Supplementary Note 4.3.162, p. 244 below), 'Jemmy' (for 'Jimmy'), and 'bonny' (see Giorgio Melchiori (ed.), *Edward III* (forthcoming), 1.2.33 and 57, respectively; subsequent quotations cite this edition). Later, King Edward specifically compliments the Countess of Salisbury for her ability to imitate King David's speech: "Even thus", quoth she, "he spake" – and then spoke broad, / With epithets and accents of the Scot, / But somewhat better than the Scot could speak' (2.1.29–31).

<sup>1</sup> Richard Morrison, quoted in Anthony Fletcher, *Tudor Rebellions*, 3rd edn, 1983, p. 5.

<sup>2</sup> *Edward III* 1.2.15.

<sup>3</sup> Andrew Gurr (ed.), *H5*, 1992, 1.2.166–73; Westmoreland's 'saying' has been found as early as 1548.

<sup>4</sup> For a wry, knowledgeable account, see C. G. Cruickshank, *Elizabeth's Army*, 2nd edn, 1966, pp. 207–36; for English fears of French intervention, see esp. p. 211.

<sup>5</sup> William Warner, *A Continuance of Albions England* (1606), sig. b2r.

I love to be exalted, here and in every place.  
 an Englyshe man I cannot naturally love,  
 Wherfore I offend them, and my lorde above . . .  
 I am a Scotyshe man, and have dissymbled muche,  
 and in my promyse I have not kept touche.  
 Great morder and theft in tymes past I have used . . .<sup>1</sup>

We cannot completely reimagine sixteenth- or early-seventeenth-century English attitudes toward Scotland and its people, or even contemporary English knowledge of them, but surviving documents tell an ominous tale.

English fear and prejudice had deep roots. Raphael Holinshed's *Chronicles* (see pp. 13–15 below) begin with William Harrison's 'Description of Britaine' where chapter 4 comments on the Scots:

How and when the Scots, a people mixed of the Scithian and Spanish blood, should arrive here out of Ireland, & when the Picts should come unto us out of *Sarmatia*, or from further toward the north & the Scithian Hyperboreans, as yet it is uncereteine . . . the Scots did often adventure hither [i.e. into the British Isles] to rob and steale out of Ireland, and were finallie called by them Meats or Picts (as the Romans named them, because they painted their bodies) to helpe them against the Britains, after the which they so planted themselves in these parts, that unto our time that portion of the land cannot be cleansed of them. I find also that as these Scots were reputed for the most Scithian-like and barbarous nation, and longest without letters . . . For both Diodorus lib. 6. and Strabo lib. 4. doo seeme to speake of a parcell of the Irish nation that should inhabit Britaine in their time, which were given to the eating of mans flesh, and therefore called Anthropophagi . . . it appeareth that those Irish, of whom Strabo and Diodorus doo speake, are none other than those Scots of whom Jerome speaketh *Adversus Jovinianum*, lib. 2 who used to feed on the buttocks of boies and womens paps, as delicate dishes.<sup>2</sup>

Cannibalistic, violent, unlettered – these are qualities English audiences associated with the Celts whom their supposed ancestors and Roman armies had forced to the margins of the British Isles; similar fear and prejudice appear elsewhere in plays and other documents, public and private.<sup>3</sup> For instance, Henry Percy, Earl of Northumberland, wrote to James VI about Anglo-Scottish hostility shortly before his accession as England's king: 'the name of scotts is harche in the earres of the wulgar . . . [but] the memoriss of the ancient woundis betuene england and scotland will sounbe be cancelled when conscience in there harts sall proclaime your ryght'.<sup>4</sup> James I himself and his

<sup>1</sup> Andrew Boorde, *Fyrst Boke*, ed. F. J. Furnivall, Early English Text Society, extra series 10 (1870), pp. 135–6.

<sup>2</sup> Raphael Holinshed et al., *The First . . . Volumes of Chronicles*, 1587, pp. 5b–6a. The claim that the peoples of Ireland and Scotland were related seems historically correct: migration and invasion from the Continent forced peoples from the north of Britain across the Irish Sea, and close connections (both friendly and unfriendly) between Ireland and Scotland persisted into Jacobean times.

<sup>3</sup> See, e.g., A. R. Braunmuller, *George Peele*, 1983, chapter 6 (on *Edward I*), and Phyllis Rackin, *Stages of History*, 1990, pp. 170–5.

<sup>4</sup> John Bruce (ed.), *Correspondence of King James VI. of Scotland*, Camden Society 78 (1861), 56. Both the English and the Lowland Scots considered Highlanders, denizens of the parts of Scotland where *Macheth* is imagined to take place, especially savage and uncivilised: see John Major (Mair), *A History of Greater Britain*, ed. and trans. Archibald Constable, 1892, pp. 48–9. For early modern perceptions of the Highlander, see T. C. Smout, *A History of the Scottish People 1560–1830*, 1969, pp. 42–6.

royal predecessors and successors found Highlanders a difficult, recalcitrant, independent people.<sup>1</sup>

James was enthusiastically welcomed on his accession, not least because he had a male heir, but the king and his Scottish entourage quickly became objects of courtly envy and theatrical derision,<sup>2</sup> as they did, for instance, in *Eastward Ho* by George Chapman, Ben Jonson, and John Marston. Chapman and Jonson went to prison and Marston into hiding for various offences including a passage where one of their slightly criminal characters described life in the new Virginian colony as free of the usual impediments to larceny except for the criminal competition of

a few industrious Scots, perhaps, who, indeed, are dispersed over the face of the whole earth. But as for them, there are no greater friends to Englishmen and England, when they are out on't, in the world, than they are. And for my part, I would a hundred thousand of 'em were there [Virginia], for we are all one countrymen now, ye know; and we should find ten times more comfort of them there than we do here [in London] . . .<sup>3</sup>

In short, better 100,000 Scots in Virginia than any Scot in London.

Shakespeare's audiences probably had a crude and garish image of Highlanders, but English readers might have known a more generous view of the Scots as fighting men. Before the Battle of Pinkie (or Musselburgh), an English writer noted:

Thoughe they [Scottish warriors] me[a]nt but small humanit[i]e, yet shewed thei . . . much civilit[i]e, both of fayre play . . . & of formall order to chyde [the English force] ear [ere] they fought.<sup>4</sup>

In the 1550s, an English listing of national stereotypes ambivalently named 'the Scots for boldness', but several decades later William Camden recalled the Scottish alliance with France and less ambiguously notes:

with manlike courage and warlike prowesse, they [the Scots] have . . . maintained [their kingdom] at home, [and] . . . also hath purchased great honour abroad. For the French cannot but

<sup>1</sup> In *Basilikon Doron* (1598), James VI, who five years later became James I of England, repeated Mair's views (see preceding note) when he cautioned his infant son, Prince Henry, about the Highlands and advised him on how he should deal sternly with the Highlanders when he became king; see C. H. McIlwain (ed.), *The Political Works of James I*, 1918, p. 22. *Basilikon Doron* was reprinted in London (1603), along with many other of James's writings, when he ascended the English throne. For James's Highland policy, see Maurice Lee, *Great Britain's Solomon*, 1990, pp. 196–203, and for the availability of *Basilikon Doron* in the theatrical community, see p. 15 below, n. 1. Prince Henry died young, in November 1612. Just before the prince's death, Henry Peacham envisaged Highlanders (or 'redshanks') among the national enemies that the future king of a united Scotland and England might face: 'whether TURKE, SPAINE, FRAUNCE, or ITALIE, / The REDSHANKE, or the IRISH Rebell bold, / Shall rouze thee up, thy Trophees may be more, / Than all the HENRIES ever liv'd before' (Henry Peacham, *Minerva Britannia*, 1612, p. 17; I have slightly modernised the spelling).

<sup>2</sup> For courtly resistance to James and his Scottish followers, see e.g. Neil Cuddy, 'Anglo-Scottish union and the court of James I, 1603–1625', *Transactions of the Royal Historical Society*, 5th series, 39 (1989), esp. pp. 110–15; for public theatrical responses, see George Chapman, Ben Jonson, and John Marston, *Eastward Ho*, ed. R. W. Van Fossen, 1979, pp. 4–7, and A. R. Braunmuller (ed.), *A Seventeenth-Century Letter-Book*, 1983, pp. 370–89 and 452–6.

<sup>3</sup> *Eastward Ho* 3.3.44–52. The play contains other anti-Scot satire, and the actors may have been even more satirical (e.g. accents, costumes) in performance. For the playwrights' fates, see Braunmuller, *Letter-Book*, pp. 452–3.

<sup>4</sup> William Patten, *The Expedicion into Scotlande of . . . Edward, Duke of Somerset*, 1548, sig. H1r.

acknowledge they have seldom achieved any honourable acts without Scottish hands, who therefore are deservedly to participate [share] the glorie with them.<sup>1</sup>

Camden's remark may be as much anti-French as pro-Scot, yet his preference is a telling one.

Camden shows an admirable judiciousness, but popular – or at least recorded – hostility to James and his Scottish entourage spread from court gossip and the theatre, where topicality then as now sold places, to the floor of Parliament. In February 1607, Sir Christopher Piggott astonished the House of Commons when he interrupted a debate on the union of Scotland and England, a union James dearly sought; this outburst sent Piggott to the Tower:

let us not join murderers, thieves, and the roguish Scots with the well-deserving Scots. As much difference between them as between a judge and a thief . . . They ['the roguish Scots', presumably] have not suffered above two kings to die in their beds, these 200 years.<sup>2</sup>

Piggott only slightly exaggerated the violence of Scottish history and all too accurately recalled the political weakness of her kings. That weakness included most recently James VI, who had often found himself the announced or virtual captive of various aristocratic factions. The violence and the weakness both appear in *Macbeth*.

#### DOCUMENTS

Although Shakespeare's own writings were one of his main sources – he 'copied from himself'<sup>3</sup> – the principal printed source for the plot of *Macbeth* also served as a source for Shakespeare's English history plays: the massive *Chronicles* (first published in 1577 and later expanded (1587) into the version Shakespeare read) compiled by Raphael Holinshed and others. The text of this work is divided into three 'volumes' (though published as two separately bound books); the histories of Scotland and Ireland in 'volume' II serve to separate the histories of pre- and post-Conquest England in 'volumes' I and III, respectively. The 'Historie of Scotland' contains two accounts Shakespeare unquestionably appropriated, one of the reign and murder of King Duff, the other of Macbeth's rise and reign.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See Thomas Wilson, *Arte of Rhetorique* (1553) as quoted in A. J. Hoenselaars, *Images of Englishmen and Foreigners in the Drama of Shakespeare and His Contemporaries*, 1992, p. 20, and William Camden, *Remains Concerning Britain* (1605), ed. R. D. Dunn, 1984, pp. 15–16.

<sup>2</sup> For the incident and its aftermath, see *Journals of the House of Commons*, 95 vols., 1803–57, I, 333, 335–6, and 344; for Piggott's alleged words, see William Cobbett, *Parliamentary History of England*, 36 vols., 1806–20, I, column 1097. Of the historical period *Macbeth* deals with, John Dover Wilson notes, 'Out of the nine kings who reigned between 943 and 1040 all but two were killed, either in feud or directly by their successors' (NS, p. viii).

<sup>3</sup> G. K. Hunter, 'Shakespeare's reading', in Kenneth Muir and S. Schoenbaum (eds.), *A New Companion to Shakespeare Studies*, 1971, p. 59; see p. 6 above, n. 3 and p. 7 n. 1. On internal borrowings in *Macbeth*, see Jonathan Goldberg, 'Speculations: *Macbeth* and source', in Jean E. Howard and Marion F. O'Connor (eds.), *Shakespeare Reproduced: The Text in History and Ideology*, 1987, pp. 242–64. More generally, see Jones, *Scenic*, chapter 7.

<sup>4</sup> Holinshed and his collaborators consulted numerous sources; the main ones for Macbeth's reign seem to have been Hector Boece, *Scotorum historiae* (1526, 1575), and John Bellenden's Scots translation of it (?1540). For other sources of Scottish history available to Holinshed (and therefore possibly to Shakespeare), see Norbrook, and Supplementary Note 1.3.30, pp. 239–40 below. R. A. Law, 'The composition of *Macbeth* with reference to Holinshed', *Texas Studies in English* 31 (1952), 35–41, provides tabular summaries of where *Macbeth* parallels and deviates from Holinshed.

In the first narrative, the wife of 'Donwald', a hitherto loyal nobleman in whom Duff placed 'a speciall trust', urges her husband 'to make . . . awaie' King Duff 'and shewed him the meanes wherby he might soonest accomplish it'; 'kindled in wrath by the words of his wife',<sup>1</sup> Donwald secretly murders the king, smuggles the body out of the castle, and buries the corpse in a river bed. During Duncan's 'fained treatie' with the invading Sueno, drugged drinks stunned the Danish soldiers, and the army fell 'into a fast dead sleepe, that in manner it was unpossible to awake them'.<sup>2</sup> Similarly, Lady Macbeth promises to make Duncan's 'two chamberlains', his most intimate guards, 'spongy [drunken] officers' (1.7.63, 71). Holinshed stresses that Duff trusted Donwald, that the king had frequent difficulties with witches, and that louring darkness and bizarre events (including equine cannibalism and strange contests between birds of unequal ferocity)<sup>3</sup> pestered Scotland until Duff's body was found and properly buried.

In Holinshed's account, Macbeth's career is influenced by his ambitious spouse: his wife 'lay sore upon him to attempt' regicide 'as she that was verie ambitious, burning in unquenchable desire to beare the name of a queene'.<sup>4</sup> According to Holinshed, Banquo is a fully committed co-conspirator; he is murdered after the passage of some time because Macbeth fears 'he should be served of the same cup, as he had minstred to his predecessor',<sup>5</sup> but Banquo's ghost does not interrupt a royal banquet, and Lady Macbeth does not walk in her sleep. Holinshed elaborately details Macbeth's ten-year-long reign as a good and responsible ruler, his trust in witches and wizards, the 'testing' of Macduff by Malcolm, and the coming of Birnam Wood to Dunsinane, and includes many other events and even phrases that were transmuted into *Macbeth*. At one point, Holinshed interrupts his narrative to give a detailed genealogy of 'the originall line of those kings, which have descended from . . . Banquo',<sup>6</sup> and the list, ending with the then King James VI of Scotland, would have made the 'show of kings' in Act 4, Scene 1, easier to invent.

One of the kings who reigned between Duff and Duncan was Kenneth, a good king who none the less secretly poisoned Duff's son in order to ensure his own son's succession. Conscience, however, 'pricked' Kenneth:

And (as the fame [rumour, tale] goeth) it chanced that a voice was heard as he was in bed in the night time to take his rest, uttering unto him . . . 'Thinke not Kenneth that the wicked slaughter of Malcome Duffe by thee contrived, is kept secret from the knowledge of the eternall God: thou art he that didst conspire the innocents death . . . even at this present are there in hand secret practises to dispatch both thee and thy issue out of the waie . . .' The king with this voice being striken into great dread and terror, passed that night without anie sleepe comming in his eies.<sup>7</sup>

King Kenneth's torment, so similar to Macbeth's imaginings (Act 2, Scene 2), is elaborated still further in a volume Shakespeare may have known, and which his

<sup>1</sup> *Scotland*, p. 150a; the whole narrative appears on pp. 149a–152. <sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 170a.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 152a: 'horsses in Louthian, being of singular beautie and swiftnesse, did eat their owne flesh . . . There was a sparhawk also strangled by an owle.' Compare 2.4.10–20.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 171a.

<sup>5</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 172b; compare 1.7.10–12.

<sup>6</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 172b–174a.

<sup>7</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 158a.

theatrical colleague, the actor Edward Alleyn, possessed, *Rerum Scoticarum historia* (1582). Its author was the distinguished scholar and neo-Latin dramatist George Buchanan, who tutored the young King James.<sup>1</sup> For at least one incident – the death of Siward's son and his father's reaction to it – Shakespeare could have consulted two known sources: the very end of Holinshed's 'volume' 1, concerning the period just before the Norman invasion, and William Camden's *Remains Concerning Britain* (1605).<sup>2</sup>

Aside from Holinshed's *Chronicles* and the dramatist's possibly direct use of Holinshed's own sources, such as Hector Boece's *Scotorum historiae* (1526, 1575) and Buchanan's *Rerum Scoticarum historia*, many other texts may have contributed to the language of *Macbeth* – Seneca's Latin tragedies, for instance, and Samuel Daniel's *Arcadia Reformed* (performed during the royal visit to Oxford in 1605 and published as *The Queenes Arcadia* the next year).<sup>3</sup> Yet 'when all is said, Shakespeare's main source was Holinshed'.<sup>4</sup> 'What he [Shakespeare] did not find in Holinshed was any indication how to shape this narrative material for the stage',<sup>5</sup> and that shaping must be our main concern.

### *Macbeth* in the mind

#### SUCCESSION, TIME, AND FAMILIES

The historical era of Macbeth's reign was as controversial in Scottish political debate and historiography as the reigns of John or of Henry IV were in England.<sup>6</sup> In both

<sup>1</sup> See Bullough, vii, 509–17, and Norbrook, who seems confident (pp. 87–8) that Shakespeare knew Buchanan's history. King James and Buchanan held deeply divergent views of monarchical authority; see e.g. Pauline Croft, 'Sir John Doddridge, King James I, and the antiquity of Parliament', *Parliaments, Estates and Representation* 12 (1992), 103. For Edward Alleyn's ownership of Buchanan's *Rerum Scoticarum historia*, see J. R. Piggott, 'Edward Alleyn's books', in Aileen Reed and Robert Maniura (eds.), *Edward Alleyn: Elizabethan Actor, Jacobean Gentleman*, 1994, pp. 63–5. Buchanan's book, printed in Edinburgh and later on the Continent but not in London (see I. D. McFarlane, *Buchanan*, 1981, pp. 512–14, and John Durkan, *Bibliography of George Buchanan*, Glasgow University Library Studies, 1994, pp. 218 ff.), had been recalled for censorship in Scotland and prohibited in England (see McFarlane, pp. 414–15, 437, and 437 n. 55). The book was, however, well known in the Sidney circle and approvingly mentioned in Spenser's *A View of the Present State of Ireland* (written c. 1598); see James E. Phillips, 'George Buchanan and the Sidney circle', *Huntington Library Quarterly* 12 (1947–8), 23–55, esp. pp. 49–55. Given Alleyn's interest, Buchanan's *Rerum Scoticarum historia* might have been a common theatrical source like Holinshed's *Chronicles*. Alleyn also owned King James's *Basilikon Doron* and *Daemonologie*, both potentially relevant to *Macbeth's* composition, and many of James's published speeches.

<sup>2</sup> 'The Historie of England' in Holinshed, *The First . . . Volumes of Chronicles*, p. 192a. A nearby page (p. 195a) gives an account of King Edward's ability to prophesy and to cure the King's Evil (see *Macbeth* 4.3.148–61). Lee Bliss suggested to me that Shakespeare drew this incident from Camden, and it has not been noted before; see Camden, p. 216 (sig. 2B2v in the 1605 edn). Camden's *Remains* are probable sources for *King Lear* (see Bullough, vii, 274, 288, 322) and *Coriolanus* (see Parker (ed.), *Coriolanus*, p. 3).

<sup>3</sup> See Bullough and, for other sources and possible influences, Kenneth Muir, *The Sources of Shakespeare's Plays*, 1977, chapter 29. In addition to the possible source mentioned in the previous note, the present edition suggests new sources and analogues to the play's language, or elaborates upon earlier suggestions, in 2.3.75 n., 5.1.64 n., and the Supplementary Note to 3.1.91–107, p. 242 below.

<sup>4</sup> Muir, *Sources*, p. 215.

<sup>5</sup> Jones, *Sceneic*, p. 199.

<sup>6</sup> See R. J. Adam, 'The real Macbeth: King of Scots, 1040–1054', *History Today* 7 (1957), 381–7; R. James Goldstein, *The Matter of Scotland: Historical Narrative in Medieval Scotland*, 1993, chap. 4; and

countries, the past and its most notably disputed successions fostered, if censorship did not intervene, discussion of legitimate sovereignty, tyranny, usurpation, and deposition. Entering this simultaneously 'historical' and contemporary debate, *Macbeth* was indeed 'extremely problematic'.

Holinshed makes clear enough that the Duncan–Macbeth–Malcolm period saw Scotland begin to move from its traditional system of royal succession – tanistry – to primogeniture, the system which later became common and which was by Shakespeare's day long-established.<sup>1</sup> Under tanistry, a ruler's successor was elected from a parallel family line, so that, for example, nephew (and not necessarily eldest nephew) succeeded uncle.<sup>2</sup> When Duncan nominates (1.4.35–9) his eldest son, Malcolm, as his successor, he abruptly introduces a system half-way between tanistry and primogeniture. In this instance, Duncan wishes eldest son to succeed father, excluding any younger brothers (e.g. Donaldbain) or cousins, but the very nomination indicates that eldest son succeeding father (primogeniture) is not established practice.<sup>3</sup> Henry VIII's controversial attempts to settle the royal succession made such questions vivid for an English audience, as did the recent, much-debated succession of James himself.<sup>4</sup> The system in early Scotland has been described as 'circulation with elimination' where 'Tension between incumbent and successor is relieved at the expense of increased conflict between the potential successors themselves',<sup>5</sup> as indeed we see in *Macbeth*.

Primogeniture, tanistry, and Duncan's intermediate proposal all attempt to assure a monarchy's and therefore a family's continuity, its triumph over time, but primogeniture and Duncan's *ad hoc* proposal both value father-to-eldest-son successions exclusively and thus strongly imply the age-old metaphor of the king as 'father' to his subjects (*pater patriae*), making a complex association linking royal progenitor, royal authority, and royal succession.

Here, experiences and words in which all people share to some degree – parenthood

Norbrook. All three emphasise how later Scottish and English political developments may have distorted the historical accounts on which Shakespeare's own documentary sources drew. Norbrook concentrates on sixteenth-century issues, Adam and Goldstein discuss earlier ones.

<sup>1</sup> Primogeniture became settled English law in the 'last years of Henry II' (Frederick Pollock and F. W. Maitland, *The History of English Law before the Time of Edward I*, 2nd edn with new introduction by S. F. C. Milsom, 2 vols. (1898; 1968), II, 274). For tanistry's implications in Scottish historiography and Jacobean political thought and debate, see Norbrook, pp. 86–8. Hawkins, 'History, politics and *Macbeth*', in *Focus*, p. 175, citing an earlier scholarly debate, rightly says 'Shakespeare refers [in the play] neither to the law of tanistry nor to Duncan's own unlawful tenure of the throne', but the dialogue's silence says nothing about what knowledge shaped the play and nothing about what the audience might know of arcane (and therefore interesting?) Scottish practice.

<sup>2</sup> I have simplified tanistry and its possible permutations. For its operation and anthropological functions in Ireland, Scotland, and elsewhere, see the Introduction to Jack Goody (ed.), *Succession to High Office*, 1966, and J. H. Stevenson, 'The law of the throne – tanistry and the introduction of the law of primogeniture', *SHR* 25 (1927–8), 1–12; for tanistry and primogeniture in sixteenth-century Scottish political debate and Shakespeare's and Holinshed's sources, see Norbrook.

<sup>3</sup> On this important point, see Michael Hawkins, 'History, politics and *Macbeth*', in *Focus*, p. 175. Hawkins goes on, unhappily, to imagine what happens off-stage to produce Macbeth's selection as king after Duncan's death, but notes that the unseen, unspoken, events are 'the nearest the play comes to tanistry'.

<sup>4</sup> Hawkins, 'History, politics and *Macbeth*', p. 175, and A. R. Braunmuller (ed.), *John*, 1989, pp. 56–60.

<sup>5</sup> Goody, *Succession to High Office*, pp. 33 and 45.

and birth, adolescence, maturation and death – metaphorically legitimate a particular political structure. Shakespeare makes these metaphors, extended to include ‘servants’ as ‘children’ of the father–king, pervasive in the play. They explain Macbeth’s succinct avowal, ‘our duties / Are to your [Duncan’s] throne and state, children and servants’ (1.4.24–5), and his later self-accusing lines on why he should not murder Duncan. Duncan’s status as kinsman, ruler, and guest all argue ‘against the deed’:

First, as I am his kinsman and his subject,  
Strong both against the deed; then, as his host,  
Who should against his murderer shut the door,  
Not bear the knife myself. (1.7.13–16)

So also, to take two rather disparate examples, Macbeth agonises over the ‘unilineal hand’ (3.1.64) which will deny his (possibly imaginary)<sup>1</sup> son the crown, and his wife says she cannot kill King Duncan because he resembles her father (2.2.12–13) – as the metaphorical argument of royal authority insists he must.

The sisters (or ‘witches’) attack this tight, mystifying association of parents and children with rulers and subjects when they predict that one adult male, Macbeth, will become king while another adult male, Banquo, will not be king but a begetter of kings. What they represent as paradoxical, that Banquo is ‘lesser’ and ‘greater’ than Macbeth and ‘Not so happy, yet much happier’ (1.3.63–4), is a paradox only under the assumptions of both primogeniture and an unfailing succession of male heirs, generation upon generation. So construed, Macbeth’s kingship – or his hope of it – is itself deeply paradoxical, since he is not son to a king, and Banquo’s line will reign in Scotland only if Macbeth’s line, as well as Duncan’s, fails or is deposed. Succession entails mortality. As Macbeth casually says, ‘By Finel’s death, I know I am Thane of Glamis’ (1.3.69): by the death of my (or the) father I (the son) am who I am.<sup>2</sup>

The crisis of succession in *Macbeth* is expressed as a crisis of metaphor. When Macbeth first speaks of regicide explicitly rather than figuratively, he treats father–son succession, the quasi-primogeniture of Duncan’s naming Malcolm Prince of Cumberland, as the obstacle: ‘that is a step / On which I must fall down, or else o’erleap, / For in my way it lies’ (1.4.48–50). Duncan the metaphorical father–king has created a metaphorical son–successor – has combined fatherhood with political succession. If primogeniture and metaphor combined lead Macbeth to contemplate regicide, the same union of patrilineal succession and thinking-through-metaphor leads him to kill Lady Macduff and her children:

<sup>1</sup> Whether Lord and Lady Macbeth have (or have had) children in the play’s fictional world is a long-lasting theatrical and critical question, much debated as a practical and thematic issue and much ridiculed as a non-existent one. See e.g. Knights, ‘How many children had Lady Macbeth’, and Marvin Rosenberg, *The Masks of Macbeth*, 1978, Appendix, ‘Lady Macbeth’s indispensable child’, pp. 671–6, calling for a cradle and the sound of a child in 1.5 and the cradle’s return in 5.1. This demand has to my knowledge only once been even partly met: Bengt Ekerö’s 1955 Stockholm production included ‘a cradle next to which the Lady read her husband’s letter [in 1.5]. There was no other sign of the baby . . .’ (Ann Fridén, ‘*Macbeth* in the Swedish Theatre 1838–1986’, 1986, p. 235).

<sup>2</sup> Compare Katharine Eisaman Maus, ‘Transfer of title in *Love’s Labor’s Lost*: language, individualism, gender’, in Ivo Kamps (ed.), *Shakespeare Left and Right*, 1991, pp. 210–11.



2 *The Witches of 'Macbeth'*: Henry Fuseli's eighteenth-century interpretation of the sisters in Act 1, Scene 3

From this moment,

The very firstlings of my heart shall be  
 The firstlings of my hand. And even now  
 To crown my thoughts with acts, be it thought and done.  
 The castle of Macduff I will surprise;  
 Seize upon Fife; give to th'edge o'th'sword  
 His wife, his babes, and all unfortunate souls  
 That trace him in his line.

(4.1.145–52)

While ‘firstlings’ most plainly conveys ‘first things’ – here, Macbeth’s immediate impulses or thoughts – an archaic meaning of ‘firstlings’ is children, ‘firstborn’. Macbeth’s reflection moves from one meaning to the other, from the sudden joining of heart and hand, the unreflective joining of thoughts and acts, to generational murder, to giving ‘to th’edge o’th’sword’ Macduff’s ‘wife, his babes, and all unfortunate souls / That trace him in his line’. The same metaphorical extensions and ‘arguments’ that pertained when he earlier vowed loyalty to Duncan’s ‘throne and state, children and servants’ now lead Macbeth to murder Macduff’s family and retainers. Loyalty and tyranny each follow ‘naturally’ from the play’s controlling familial-political metaphors.

As Macbeth understands the sisters’ words, deceptive words ‘That palter with us in a double sense’ (5.8.20), they suggest he will gain the throne through interrupting generation, through stopping human continuation in time, though he rarely reflects

upon the corollary that he himself would or might thus lack a lineal successor. Consequently, he first envisages, and then undertakes to create, a world in which acts have no consequences, no duration beyond the moment of their enactment, no reach in time and beyond time into eternity:

If it were done when 'tis done, then 'twere well  
 It were done quickly. If th'assassination  
 Could trammel up the consequence and catch  
 With his surcease, success, that but this blow  
 Might be the be-all and the end-all – here,  
 But here, upon this bank and shoal of time,  
 We'd jump the life to come.

(1.7.1-7)

For a moment, these hypothetical thoughts dissuade him:

But in these cases,  
 We still have judgement here that we but teach  
 Bloody instructions, which being taught, return  
 To plague th'inventor. This even-handed justice  
 Commends th'ingredience of our poisoned chalice  
 To our own lips.

(1.7.7-12)

Lady Macbeth soon ridicules (1.7.35 ff.) her husband's anxiety about the consequences of his actions and persuades him to 'screw' his 'courage to the sticking-place' (1.7.60) because she has already accepted (in Act 1, Scene 5) that regicide is necessarily an attack on time's progression and duration.

'Rapt' by witch-inspired (or witch-encouraged) royal visions, Macbeth writes an account of his meeting that similarly inspires his wife.<sup>1</sup> He serves her as the witches served him, and she responds as he did:

Thy letters have transported me beyond  
 This ignorant present, and I feel now  
 The future in the instant.

(1.5.54-6)

This extraordinary remark, anachronistically condensing the future into the present, hints how time and human experience in time will be compressed and squeezed later in the play, so squeezed and compressed that the be-all *will* be the end-all, and time itself a syllable:

Tomorrow, and tomorrow, and tomorrow  
 Creeps in this petty pace from day to day  
 To the last syllable of recorded time . . .

(5.5.18-20)

For Macbeth, repeated syllables ('Tomorrow, and tomorrow, and tomorrow') represent time's slowing and, at 'the last syllable', time's end. For Lady Macbeth, repeated acts – 'It is an accustomed action with her, to seem thus washing her hands; I have

<sup>1</sup> See Barbara Everett, *Young Hamlet*, 1989, p. 104: 'One of the play's most touching and subtle moments is that which brings Lady Macbeth before us for the first time, and she is reading Macbeth's letter: he exists for her when he isn't there. He exists too much for her when he isn't there, she plans and thinks ahead too much for him, she too much connives, putting her image of Macbeth's future where her conscience should be . . .'

known her continue in this a quarter of an hour' (5.1.24–6)<sup>1</sup> – and repeated words – 'Out, damned spot! Out, I say! . . . No more o'that, my lord, no more o'that' (5.1.30, 37–8) – represent the same collapse of change (and of hope and ambition) into a repetition where automatic words and acts eerily imitate life:

DOCTOR You see her eyes are open.

GENTLEWOMAN Ay, but their sense are shut.

(5.1.21–2)

Many actors and many critics have taken Lady Macbeth's behaviour here as a lightly rationalised version of demonic possession; for them, Act 5, Scene 1, is the final result of her invocation of the 'spirits / That tend on mortal thoughts' (1.5.38–9). The effect of Macbeth's letter upon Lady Macbeth, so similar to the effect upon him of the sisters' even more ambiguous words, suggests that he is (or becomes) a witch, just as a confusion of ends with means, 'trifles' with 'deepest' consequences, transforms Lady Macbeth into a witch in Act 5, Scene 1 (see pp. 33–5 below).

If, in *Macbeth*, kings are fathers of son-successors and of children-subjects and if, 'In *Macbeth* . . . usurpation is imagined as an attack on the order of time itself',<sup>2</sup> it follows that the play must consider the impossible possibility of unparented children because through procreation, through becoming parents, humanity ordinarily takes its revenge on time's passing and on the inevitability of any generation's death and every generation's replacement by another generation also destined for death and replacement. If 'the order of time itself' is to be attacked, so must the order of procreation also become vulnerable and put in question. Macbeth's need to make the moment the be-all and end-all, to condense future and hence duration into the instant, means human procreation must cease – in fact, cannot exist. Lady Macbeth's ambitious hope (1.5.54–6) compresses the future into the instant. Her husband's acts compress past, present, and future into one timeless, unchanging moment. Lady Macbeth's hope and Macbeth's acts are secular and, for the Christian audience, sacrilegious versions of the world's end:

Awake, awake!

Ring the alarum bell! Murder and treason!  
 Banquo and Donaldbain! Malcolm, awake,  
 Shake off this downy sleep, death's counterfeit,  
 And look on death itself. Up, up, and see  
 The great doom's image. Malcolm, Banquo,  
 As from your graves rise up and walk like sprites  
 To countenance this horror.

(2.3.67–74)<sup>3</sup>

In a moment, Donaldbain asks, 'What is amiss?' (2.3.90), and Macbeth describes the familial and the dynastic stalemate his regicide has created:

<sup>1</sup> The Gentlewoman's 'a quarter of an hour' insists upon the ordinary world's time-keeping, a systematic regularity destroyed by and denied to the Macbeths, who have adopted and promulgated a very different 'accustomed action'.

<sup>2</sup> Michael Neill, 'Remembrance and revenge: *Hamlet*, *Macbeth* and *The Tempest*', in Ian Donaldson (ed.), *Jonson and Shakespeare*, 1983, p. 41.

<sup>3</sup> For the biblical elements here, see 2.3.72n. and 2.3.75n. below.



<sup>3</sup> The bleeding Captain at 1.2.22 describes how Macbeth ‘unseamed’ an enemy ‘from the nave to th’chaps’: ‘nave’ might be either the umbilicus or (as in this image) the crotch. The engraving is from the title page of Robert Fludd’s *Utriusque cosmi historia* (1617–19). See G. L. Hersey, *Pythagorean Palaces: Magic and Architecture in the Italian Renaissance*, 1976, p. 99, on the difference between images of man-in-circle found in editions of Vitruvius, where the umbilicus is the centre of the circle, and man-in-circle-and-square by Leonardo da Vinci, where the umbilicus is the centre of the circle, but the base of the penis is the centre of the square

You are, and do not know't.

The spring, the head, the fountain of your blood  
Is stopped, the very source of it is stopped.

(2.3.90–2)

The sons' bloodline, the royal line, is 'stopped' and does not flow into the future through successive sons who become kings. Considering the possibility that Malcolm and Donaldbain have themselves killed their father, Ross sees a form of filial cannibalism and equates it with the sons' self-thwarting desire to become king: 'Thriftless ambition that will ravin up / Thine own life's means' (2.4.28–9).

Macduff and his family illustrate what Macbeth's attack on time and procreation might mean at the level of the person. Macduff himself fulfils the Second Apparition's seemingly impossible condition – 'none of woman born / Shall harm Macbeth' (4.1.79–80) – because Macduff was 'Untimely ripped' (5.8.16) from his dead or dying mother's womb. Macduff was born not of a 'woman' but of a near corpse.<sup>1</sup> Once Macduff flees to England, Lady Macduff continues the play's profound linking of family and state when she translates political act into familial terms. She describes her husband's son, now abandoned by Macduff, as 'Fathered he is, and yet he's fatherless' (4.2.27), asserting the paternal paradox (fathered/fatherless) that matches her husband's paradoxical birth (mothered/motherless). Moments later, Macbeth's dynastically inspired murders sweep away mother and son, 'Those precious motives, those strong knots of love' (4.3.27), whose abandonment later leads Malcolm to suspect Macduff, a man not of woman born.

These episodes and paradoxes express some of the play's most obsessive interests, if not exactly its 'values': the way political and dynastic succession-in-time depends upon a cycle (birth, death, birth); the importance of motherhood and fathering, and the unanticipated ways (Caesarean birth, 'unilineal' usurpation) each may become unpredictable; the echoing statements and restatements among the sisters or witches, Lady Macbeth, and Lady Macduff. Lady Macduff, ostensibly the play's single 'good' female character, speaks to Ross – albeit anxiously and domestically – much the same fatally equivocal language as the sisters offer Banquo and Macbeth in Act 1, Scene 3, and Macbeth alone in Act 4, Scene 1. Her human uncertainty here soon reappears when Malcolm and Macduff spar, circularly and inconclusively, in Act 4, Scene 3.

Macduff is as isolated in time as Macbeth. Macduff's paradoxical birth meets the Second Apparition's strange condition for one who might harm Macbeth, and Macduff does quell tyranny and restore, violently, Duncan's interrupted (but also dubiously legitimate) succession. Yet that same birth and the actions it entails place Macduff so far outside traditional genealogical or familial narrative that his wife denies him as husband, as father of their son, as, indeed, a wise, a loyal, or even a natural man

<sup>1</sup> Thus, the shade of Posthumus's mother describes his birth as having taken place after her death: 'Lucina lent me not her aid, / But took me in my throes, / That from me was Posthumus ript' (*Cymbeline* 5.4.43–5); compare the First Gravedigger's ingenuity on when suicide is not suicide (*Hamlet* 5.1.9–20), and Richard, Duke of Gloucester, who was a breech (or 'Agrippan') birth, whose mother 'coulde not bee delivered of hym uncutte', according to Thomas More (*The History of King Richard III*, ed. Richard S. Sylvester, in *Complete Works of St Thomas More*, II (1963), 7 and 167), and who was 'sent before [his] time / Into this breathing world, scarce half made up' (*R3* 1.1.20–1).

(see 4.2.1–27, discussed above). Macbeth initially claims a secure, explicable place in genealogy and succession: ‘By Finel’s death, I know I am Thane of Glamis’ (1.3.69). From this moment forward, however, that security melts away, dissolved by a complex acid of ambition, miscalculation, and murder, until – in a strange echo of Macduff – Macbeth ends outside lineal successions, stripped of family ties, helplessly wading in blood, finally treading-in-place without advance or retreat or change. The ‘good’ (2.4.20), but flawed revenger Macduff and the criminal hero mirror each other and confound empathy and interpretation. According to Ross, Macbeth’s rule melds birth and family with tyranny – under him, Scotland ‘cannot / Be called our mother, but our grave’ (4.3.167–8) – but of course Macduff’s mother’s body is also a place of birth and death, a place ‘untimely’. Macduff is thus ‘untimely’ in every possible way. He entered life, as his mother left it, in a temporally abnormal way; he enters Macbeth’s final moments in a time-destroying and fatally time-anticipating way; he installs Malcolm as king and thus makes Macbeth’s supposed line ‘untimely’.

#### MASTER OF HIS TIME: ‘DOUBLY REDOUBLED STROKES’

As Macbeth’s concern for the ‘be-all and end-all’ and Macduff’s unusual mothered/motherless condition demonstrate, *Macbeth* is deeply interested in the nature of time – time as experienced by the person (our individual progress from life to death), time as experienced by the family (an individual person’s perpetuation through child-bearing), time as experienced by the state (the succession of one monarch by another), and finally and most largely, time as we experience the play’s performance.

Dismissing his lords and ladies until evening comes and it is time for the banquet celebrating and validating his kingship, Macbeth orders:

Let every man be master of his time  
Till seven at night; to make society  
The sweeter welcome, we will keep ourself  
Till supper-time alone.

(3.1.42–5)

Characteristically and disastrously, he does not acknowledge that ‘A man is master of his liberty; / Time is their master’ (*Comedy of Errors* 2.1.7–8): time masters human beings (we die), but time also masters our disposition of our ‘free’ time, our liberty, our freedom of choice. Also characteristically, Macbeth now keeps and will keep himself ‘alone’, as he is now and will be: ‘why do you keep alone, / Of sorriest fancies your companions making’ (3.2.8–9), and ‘honour, love, obedience, troops of friends, / I must not look to have’ (5.3.25–6).

‘Style’ in *Macbeth* has been called ‘vehement to violence, compressed to congestion’,<sup>1</sup> but so also is the play’s very ordering as an audience experiences it. Verbal style and narrative arrangement are indistinguishable. The play’s more technical or dramaturgical handling of time makes the reader’s or spectator’s temporal experience unlike that in any other Shakespearean tragedy. *Macbeth* (about 2108 lines long) is the third shortest of the plays included in the First Folio; only *The Comedy of Errors* (approxi-

<sup>1</sup> Frederick J. Harries, *Shakespeare and the Scots*, 1932, p. 117. Harries’s chapter 10 collects nineteenth-century literary views of the play’s language and plot.

mately 1777 lines) and *The Tempest* (approximately 2062 lines) are shorter, and *Julius Caesar* (approximately 2477 lines) is the only other tragedy with fewer than 3000 lines. Brief as a play, *Macbeth* also has many brief scenes. Traditional division produces scenes which average about 75 lines: ‘This multiplicity of scenes must be a deliberate dramatic device to give an impression of rapid and bustling action, as in *Antony and Cleopatra*’, where scenes average ‘no more than 73 lines’. The ‘shortest scenes in *Macbeth* have 12 and 10 lines: *Antony and Cleopatra* has two scenes of 4 lines only’.<sup>1</sup>

How powerfully this brevity and rapidity may affect an audience appears in Maurice Morgann’s eighteenth-century comment on Shakespeare’s practice:

The Understanding must, in the first place, be subdued; and lo! how the rooted prejudices of the child spring up to confound the man! The Weird sisters rise, and order is extinguished. The laws of nature give way, and leave nothing in our minds but wildness and horror. No pause is allowed us for reflection: . . . daggers, murder, ghosts, and enchantment, shake and possess us wholly . . . we, the fools of amazement, are insensible to the shifting of place and the lapse of time, and till the curtain drops, never once wake to the truth of things, or recognise the laws of existence.<sup>2</sup>

Event and image – ‘daggers, murder, ghosts, and enchantment’ – crowd one another and subdue Enlightenment rationality. ‘[R]ooted prejudices’, here associated with the pre-rational child, domineer over adult understanding, which recognises ‘the laws of existence’, and make spectators ‘the fools of amazement’.

Since Shakespeare explores humanity-in-time through narratives of royal succession, birth and death in time, or since Shakespeare dramatises narratives of royal succession and thereby explores the paradoxes of humanity-in-time, the way Shakespeare orders those narratives has special importance, and the ordering of *Macbeth* proves rather strange. George Walton Williams claims that King James’s intellectual and dynastic interests influenced Shakespeare ‘in so commanding a manner as severely to strain the coherence of the play’.<sup>3</sup> Williams sees two conflicting narratives ('two parallel fables') and two conflicting political interests in *Macbeth*. One narrative is the kinging and unkinging of Macbeth; the other narrative is the attack on Banquo’s line and that line’s eventual accession and supposed Jacobean survival through Malcolm’s successful counter-attack on Macbeth.<sup>4</sup> The former narrative places our first view of King Macbeth at the play’s centre and in the middle of the audience’s temporal experience, the banquet scene (Act 3, Scene 4); untypically for Shakespeare’s dramaturgy, the regicide occurs quite early in *Macbeth* (Act 2, Scene 3), a subordinate dramatic position rather than in the ‘middle’ or at the ‘end’ of the play (as in *Julius Caesar* and *Richard II* respectively) – both more ‘important’ locations for Shakespeare’s dramaturgy.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Greg, *First Folio*, p. 389 and nn. 1 and 3; line counts and comparisons here are Greg’s. Knight, *Imperial*, pp. 327–42, extensively compares *Macbeth* and *Antony*.

<sup>2</sup> Maurice Morgann, *An Essay on the Dramatic Character of Sir John Falstaff*, 1777, sig. F3r.

<sup>3</sup> George Walton Williams, ‘*Macbeth*: King James’s play’, *South Atlantic Review* 47.2 (1982), 12–21; quotation from p. 13.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 14.

<sup>5</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 16. The earliest theatrical scripts of *Richard II*, *Julius Caesar*, and *Macbeth* almost certainly were not divided into ‘Acts’, but rather (at most) ‘Scenes’; the later, printed, act and scene divisions, however,

The second narrative emphasises Malcolm's revenging of Duncan's death, a revenging which (according to Holinshed's narrative and James's legendary descent from Banquo's son, Fleance) eventually led from Malcolm's kingship to a descendant of Fleance becoming the father of King Robert II, 'the first of the Stuart kings',<sup>1</sup> and therefore to James's ancestor. The new King James I of England, insecure as King of Scotland throughout his reign there, could hardly have enjoyed a narrative of eleventh-century Scottish king-killing, but he might have welcomed a competing narrative of his own supposed ancestry, leading to the 'show of kings', where Banquo's and Fleance's and James's line stretches out, as Macbeth fears, 'to th'crack of doom' (4.1.116) and culminates in Malcolm's final triumph and thus in James's dynastic claims and present rule. Though I doubt that Shakespeare very much tailored *Macbeth* to James's special interests – the play contains too many subversive possibilities for that – Williams identifies a central structural problem in *Macbeth*. There are two competing narratives. One subordinates Duncan's death to Macbeth's becoming king; the other, contradictorily, elevates (in the apparitions and kingly show of Act 4, Scene 1) the future greatness of Banquo and therefore of his descendants, the Stuarts.<sup>2</sup>

Williams's proposals are literary and historical, readerly and source-influenced. Emrys Jones's study of *Macbeth* stresses theatrical 'rhythms' (the prosodic or musical metaphor is at once appropriate and distracting) and finds a 'three-part division' in the play:

Part One ('Duncan') occupies Acts One and Two, Part Two ('Banquo') Act Three, and Part Three ('Macduff') Acts Four and Five. The first and second of these three parts are followed by a marked pause . . . Act Three forms a fairly short unit in itself . . . the opening of Act Four has an inevitable recapitulatory effect, taking us back to the beginning of the play with its similar witchcraft concerns . . .<sup>3</sup>

Jones here mixes structural or rhythmical insights with unprovable suggestions about intermissions or 'intervals' in Jacobean performances (that is, moments when the play ceases and non-dramatic or more everyday events – having a drink, eating an orange or some nuts, going to the toilet, hearing a musical interlude – can occur). Nevertheless, Jones's insights do identify a tripartite theatrical structure or rhythm that valuably counterpoints Williams's equally persuasive bipartite narrative structure. And the play's language seems to endorse both views through its constant counterpoint of

merely number a spatial and temporal sequence: however artificial '*Macbeth* Act 3, Scene 4' is as a reference, the text it delimits is still about the 'middle' of a knowledgeable audience's temporal experience of the play, just as '*Julius Caesar* Act 2, Scene 3' is earlier than the 'middle' of an audience's experience of the entire play. Here and elsewhere I assume an audience, presumably Shakespeare's own earliest audience, long accustomed to the rhythms of early modern London theatre.

<sup>1</sup> Williams, 'Play', p. 18.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 19: 'By inserting the legend of Banquo into the middle of the legend of Macbeth, Shakespeare has strained the traditional structure of this sort of play. He has transferred the murder of the king from its accustomed position in the middle of the play to a location of secondary significance, and he has inserted the murder of Banquo in the king's rightful and central place.'

<sup>3</sup> Jones, *Scenic*, pp. 195–6; Jones's chapter 7 contributes essentially to the study of *Macbeth*. Mark Rose, *Shakespearean Design*, 1972, pp. 160–2, claims that the banquet scene (3.4) divides the play into two 'movements' and 'each movement has its own centerpiece, the murder scene [which Rose, pp. 39–43, regards as an undivided 2.1–2.3] coming just in the center of the first and the England scene [4.3] in the second' (p. 161).

doubleness and triplicity. When Macbeth reminds himself that Duncan is his guest in ‘double trust’, he cites three, not two, relations of trust:

He’s here in double trust:

First, as I am his kinsman and his subject,  
Strong both against the deed; then, as his host,  
Who should against his murderer shut the door,  
Not bear the knife myself.

(1.7.12–16)

And then he immediately says, ‘Besides, this Duncan / Hath borne his faculties so meek . . .’ Having made ‘double’ into three reasons, he now adds a fourth.

Multiples – doubles, triples, quadruples – are deeply characteristic of the play’s language, most famously in the sisters’ ‘Double, double toil and trouble’ (4.1.10), but multiplying verbal play with singles and doubles also appears in a highly polite, emotionally charged moment when Lady Macbeth turns an excessively arithmetical compliment to the man and king she has already prepared to kill:

All our service,  
In every point twice done and then done double,  
Were poor and single business . . .

(1.6.15–17)

‘Twoness’ – multiples of ‘two’ (here, ‘twice done’, ‘done double’) – appears often in *Macbeth*; James Nosworthy also identifies triadic elements – the three sisters themselves, for instance, and their ‘Thrice to thine . . .’ (1.3.33–4) or their three threes in ‘nine times nine’ (1.3.21) – ‘in contexts that are evil, and usually satanic’.<sup>1</sup> In an early, apparently straightforward narrative moment, we hear a ‘report’ confounding easy mathematics where ‘double’ becomes ‘doubly redoubled’ and more:

If I say sooth, I must report they were  
As cannons over-charged with double cracks;  
So they doubly redoubled strokes upon the foe.

(1.2.36–8)

Are the cannons ‘over-charged’ twice, or four times, or eight times, or sixteen times (‘double’, ‘doubly’, ‘redoubled’)? These numberings are faint echoes of the sisters’ doublings and of the equivocal double meanings of

these juggling fiends . . .  
That palter with us in a double sense,  
That keep the word of promise to our ear  
And break it to our hope.

(5.8.19–22)

Numbers and numbering recur throughout *Macbeth*. How many times does a bell ring for Macbeth or Lady Macbeth, how many kings stretch out before Macbeth in Act 4, Scene 1, how many gashes are enough to kill a man, how often will the dead rise up in Act 3, Scene 4, and after? Each of these timings and each of these numberings finally reduces to a character’s (especially Macbeth’s) linguistic attempt to make time numerable. Were time or timing (an actor’s and a dramatic character’s special need)

<sup>1</sup> J. M. Nosworthy, ‘*Macbeth*, *Doctor Faustus*, and the juggling fiends’, in *Mirror*, p. 221. See also e.g. 1.2.37–8 n., 1.6.16 n. and 4.1.2 n. below.

so submissive to number, they might also submit to a human ordering or even to human control. Time, however, can be neither numbered nor controlled, as *Macbeth* manifests.

Like literary critics, theatrical critics have puzzled over the structure of *Macbeth* and its special challenges for actors. Without the language of rhythm or of bipartite or tripartite structure, James Agate shouldered the journalist's burden of instant criticism and identified a capital problem:

I have to admit that for the first time in my experience Macbeth [here, John Gielgud] retained his hold upon this play till the end. There is a technical reason for the difficulty, the fact that Macbeth is given hardly anything to grip the play with. With the banqueting scene [Act 3, Scene 4], which is only half-way, the part is almost over. After that we have the apparition scene [Act 4, Scene 1], in which Macbeth is virtually a spectator. Then comes the murder of Lady Macduff [Act 4, Scene 2], the long business about Malcolm, the revelation to Macduff [i.e. Act 4, Scene 3], and the sleep-walking scene. Macbeth's next appearance is with Seyton, and whether the play is to stand or fall depends upon the power of the actor to suggest the ravages of mind, soul, and even body endured since we saw him last.<sup>1</sup>

From an actor's point of view, Michael Redgrave echoed Agate's worries,<sup>2</sup> but critics have found Act 5 'a carefully thought out and superbly rhythmical solution to a large structural problem'. This 'solution' is 'a ritualistic unfolding: everything is taken in its due time', a structure 'which gives this final phase a movement suggestive of pre-ordained ceremony'.<sup>3</sup> The *Macbeth* here rhythmically and structurally described is also a play deeply committed to order, the order of refined dramatic structure and the order of political and historically endorsed orthodoxy.

Most unusually for a Shakespearean tragedy, *Macbeth* contains little overt comedy (principally the Porter in Act 2, Scene 3) and little bawdy (principally the Porter, again, and the sisters in Act 1, Scene 3, and in Act 4, Scene 1, where the lines may not be Shakespeare's at all).<sup>4</sup> The absence of comedy may result from the absence of a subplot. While it is true, and consonant with Renaissance learned theory, that Shakespeare's tragedies often contain but do not develop stunted or stifled gestures toward sub-plots, and while *Macbeth* is also arguably Shakespeare's most history-play-like tragedy, his 'true' histories spawn additional plots great and small. Here are no

<sup>1</sup> James Agate, review of *Macbeth*, directed by Harcourt Williams, 19 March 1930, Old Vic (London), rpt. in Agate, *Brief Chronicles*, 1943, p. 227. Agate goes on to praise Gielgud's Macbeth in Act 5. To some degree, Agate here complains about a fact of early Stuart drama: Antony is absent from the final act of *Antony and Cleopatra* and the Duchess is missing from the last act of Webster's *The Duchess of Malfi*; Coriolanus has relatively few lines in the last act of *Coriolanus*.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 56 below.

<sup>3</sup> Jones, *Scenic*, pp. 223–4.

<sup>4</sup> On theatrical attempts to introduce comedy, see p. 68 below, and for the original Porter, see Appendix 1, p. 264. Very rarely, Macbeth himself is a successful comic. In Adrian Noble's RSC production (with Sinead Cusack as Lady Macbeth), a 'Freudian study in childlessness' (Michael Billington, *The Guardian*, 27 September 1995), for instance, one critic found Jonathan Pryce (Macbeth) 'a bogeyman, a joker, a card, a childless husband who delights in the company of children. In the banquet scene [3.4], flailing his hands and shaking his head like a dog coming out of water, he clowns his way out of a real fit into a false one so plausibly that though we know the jest will be shattered on the third [*sic*] appearance of Banquo's ghost, the foaming fury of Macbeth's reaction prickles the scalp when it comes' (*The Observer*, 16 September 1986). For a general view of this production, see Roger Warren, 'Shakespeare in England, 1986–87', *SQ* 38 (1987), 363.

tavern roisterers (Falstaff, Poins, Bardolph, and their ilk), hardly any common, non-aristocratic characters, no sybaritic hangers-on, no bastards, few talkative, satirical soldiers, no brawlers of whatever social status, no social or cultural outsiders.

Except for the three sisters, the reporting soldier of Act 1, Scene 2, the Porter (briefly), and the Old Man of Act 2, Scene 4 (also briefly), *Macbeth* largely lacks the commonsensical, humorous, salacious, scatological, 'foreign' or non-naturalised voices that typically diminish and thereby evaluate the speech, values, and behaviour of high-status, 'heroic' characters in Shakespeare's other tragedies and histories.<sup>1</sup> When Macduff threatens to make dead or captured Macbeth 'the show and gaze o'th'time', a 'rarer monster . . . / Painted upon a pole' (5.8.24–6),<sup>2</sup> he offers a humiliation Cleopatra fears (see p. 7 above), but not a 'popular' re-evaluation of Macbeth's deeds. Macduff's imagined carnivalesque display diminishes Macbeth without judging and therefore without valuing his acts: the victim (*Macbeth*) is diminished, the audience amused but unenlightened.

'Except for the three sisters'. The sisters – only once named 'witch' (1.3.5) in the dialogue, though always *Witch* and *Witches* in speech headings and stage directions – provide the ironic and satiric, the unconventional or demystifying, views otherwise almost absent from *Macbeth*, barring the highly personal, psychological modes of Lady Macbeth's somniloquy (Act 5, Scene 1) and her husband's increasingly grim reflections on what he has done and has to do.<sup>3</sup> Terry Eagleton declares 'that positive value in *Macbeth* lies with the three witches' and that 'The witches are the heroines of the piece', because they 'expose a reverence for hierarchical social order for what it is' and inhabit 'their own sisterly community' on that social order's 'shadowy borderlands', though he does not explain what 'positive value' or the sisters' status as 'heroines' might mean.<sup>4</sup> These imagined 'sisters', with their communal and anti-militaristic values, may be contrasted with the comic (or perhaps anxiously dismissive) treatment of witches and witchcraft in other early modern English plays and with Samuel Johnson's view of the comic, 'ridiculed' witches that prevailed in the

<sup>1</sup> Among Shakespeare's other tragedies, Cleopatra's conversation (*Ant.* 5.2.242–79) with the countryman-clown who provides the asp that poisons her most nearly approaches the dramatic effect – high seriousness clashing with humdrum concerns laconically expressed – of the Porter's monologue with himself. That the Porter's speeches are monologue rather than dialogue, however, forces the audience to join disparate verbal and emotional registers and, as so often in *Macbeth*, denies the audience even minimal guidance from the dramatist; see Appendix 1, p. 264 below. In the handling of comic viewpoints that both deflate high seriousness and evaluate it, *Macbeth* and *Antony and Cleopatra* represent one range of dramaturgical choices, *Lear* (with the Fool) and *Coriolanus* (with the Citizens and tribunes) another.

<sup>2</sup> On this speech, see 5.8.25–7n.; see also Halio and p. 7 above.

<sup>3</sup> Lady Macbeth's actions have been found a 'sub-plot': 'In *Macbeth* there is a great deal of focus devoted to the actions of the tyrant to the exclusion of any sub-plot activity, but we are concerned also with the power of Lady Macbeth in urging on her husband and then with the decline of her influence and its consequences as he isolates himself from her' (Anthony Brennan, *Onstage and Offstage Worlds in Shakespeare's Plays*, 1989, p. 308).

<sup>4</sup> Terry Eagleton, *William Shakespeare*, 1986, p. 2. Frances E. Dolan, *Dangerous Familiars: Representations of Domestic Crime in England 1550–1700*, 1994, pp. 224–5, agrees that 'the drama frequently locates witches in a space apart, a female-dominated world placed both outside of the household and at the margins of dramatic representation' but argues that 'in *Macbeth*, unlike [Thomas Middleton's] *The Witch* or [John Marston's] *Sophonisba*, the boundary between the world of the witches and the world of the other characters is indistinct'.

eighteenth-century theatre Johnson knew.<sup>1</sup> One way of dealing with a real or perceived fear of witchcraft is to make witches not fearsome but silly, comic, and ridiculous; the eighteenth-century English theatre typically took this course, perhaps unthinkingly, perhaps out of the practical need to provide work for the company's comic actors. In nineteenth-century productions, the witches eventually achieved both respectful and terrific treatment.

#### PROSPECT OF BELIEF: WITCHES, WOMEN, AND MEDIATED KNOWLEDGE

For most audiences of *Macbeth*, the ideas of witchcraft, more particularly the violent and sometimes socially pervasive persecutions of the 'witch' those ideas sponsored (and that prevailed in Europe and North America from the fifteenth to the eighteenth century), are incomprehensible, repellent, temporally 'foreign' and even alien. And yet rural and/or unlettered people and the most intellectually sophisticated European élites accepted the existence of witches and witchcraft and proceeded, more often legally than illegally, to impose their beliefs, with fatal results. Stuart Clark eloquently rebukes the unthinking modern view:

The idea of witchcraft was not then a bizarre incongruity in an otherwise normal world; like all manifestations of misrule it *was* that world mirrored in reverse, and the practices of the alleged witches were no less (and no more) meaningful than those of ordinary men and women.<sup>2</sup>

Persecution of the witch and of witchcraft made 'meaningful' the ordinary, seemingly natural, daily practice of the great mass of individuals – learned or not, poor or rich, influential or powerless, or somewhere among these classifications – who defined themselves as not-witch, not practising witchcraft, not politically and socially aberrant or, in Clark's terms, not 'inverted'.

In early modern England, witches and witchcraft were political matters as well as personal, familial, and communal ones. Biblical precedent identified witchcraft with treason: 'For rebellion is as the sinne of witchcraft' (1 Sam. 15.23). Following that precedent as well as their own self-interested desire for public order, Tudor and Stuart governments sought to regulate and, if possible, extirpate various practices labelled 'witchcraft' by common folk, local magistrates, the legal apparatus, and learned authorities.<sup>3</sup> Ordinary people, scholars, courtiers, and royalty all considered witches or other figures associated with a hard-to-define 'magic' or supernatural – 'cunning' or 'wise' women and men, magicians, sorcerers, etc. – to be sometimes useful, but often threatening, to a variety of familial, social, and political structures, assumptions, and values.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See Dolan, pp. 217 and 220–3, and headnote to 1.1 below.

<sup>2</sup> Stuart Clark, 'Inversion, misrule and the meaning of witchcraft', *P&P* 87 (1980), 98–127; quotation from p. 127.

<sup>3</sup> See Stuart Clark, 'King James's *Daemonologie*: witchcraft and kingship', in Sydney Anglo (ed.), *The Damned Art: Essays in the Literature of Witchcraft*, 1977, pp. 156–81, esp. p. 176, where Clark quotes a passage from William Perkins's *Discourse of the Damned Art of Witchcraft* comprehensively identifying enmity to the state with the witch's acceptance of the devil. Clark, 'Inversion', esp. pp. 117–19, elaborates this view.

<sup>4</sup> The Introduction in Barbara Rosen, *Witchcraft in England, 1558–1618*, 1969, and Dolan, *Dangerous Familiars*, pp. 171–210, provide helpful guides to, and summaries of, contemporary, especially English,

Historians find it difficult to decide whether the witch-persecutions of the late sixteenth century in England and Scotland were driven by popular or élite anxieties and purposes, varied as those anxieties and purposes were, and shifting, perhaps imponderable, as such designations as 'popular' and 'élite' prove to be.<sup>1</sup> What seems undebatable, however, is that post-Reformation Scottish beliefs about and attitudes toward witches, and conceptions of their supposed practices, were quite different from English ones, especially during the 1590s, a period when witch-prosecutions increased in both Scotland and England and a period that must have influenced Shakespeare and the audiences of the first performances of *Macbeth*. The main difference between Scotland and England in these matters 'was not in the content, but in the relative significance of diabolism in the two countries and in the relative ferocity of the punishments for convicted witches'.<sup>2</sup>

English 'witches' were typically old women without familial or communal support; their supposed 'crimes' were practical and often economically destructive – causing a cow to stop giving milk or some other domestic beast to die, causing butter not to churn properly, crops to fail – or highly personal – causing a family member to die inexplicably, or a man to become sexually incapable, or a woman to be infertile. According to both popular belief and legal claims, accused witches contracted their souls to the devil in return for a 'familiar', usually a common animal such as a toad, cat, fly, or dog, which assisted her (only rarely 'his') demonic designs.

In 1590, King James VI visited Denmark to meet and marry King Christian IV's daughter, Anna. During that visit James may have learned and certainly debated continental European witch-theories, which were much more virulent and lurid than contemporary English ones. He apparently took these ideas back to Scotland and there introduced them to public circulation.<sup>3</sup> These beliefs included not merely the witch's contracting her or his soul to the devil, but a demonic 'pact' that involved sexual intercourse with Satan ('the witches' Sabbath'), the 'black Mass' and other inverted religious practices, and numerous activities such as stealing and eating children, exhuming bodies, parodying baptism using cats and other animals, flying through the air, and sailing the sea in sieves.<sup>4</sup>

How the play's 'sisters' are to be portrayed and understood has proved a continuing problem for both producers and readers of *Macbeth*. Indeed, critics and producers have puzzled over precisely why the sisters appear in the play. For much of the play's performance history, they have been comic figures, wearing 'blue-checked aprons' and 'high crowned black hats' even early in the twentieth century, and providing spectacle

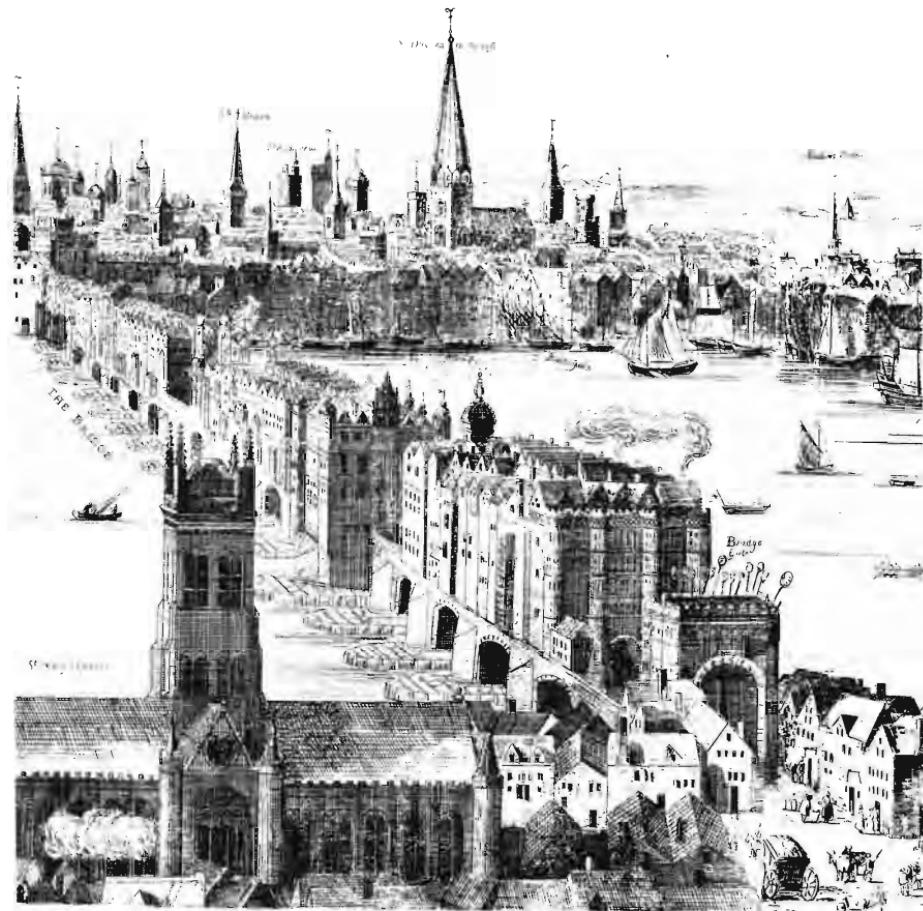
witch-beliefs and practices and details of witch-persecutions. For the more general ambivalence towards magical thought and practices, see Keith Thomas, *Religion and the Decline of Magic*, 1971, *passim*.

<sup>1</sup> See e.g. Dolan, pp. 178–80, for an inconclusive summary and citations of the debate.

<sup>2</sup> Christina Larner, *Witchcraft and Religion*, 1984, p. 77; on increased prosecutions, see *ibid.*, p. 18.

<sup>3</sup> Clark, 'King James's *Daemonologie*', p. 157, and Larner, p. 10. See also Jenny Wormald, 'James VI and I: two kings or one?', *History* 68 (1983), 187–200.

<sup>4</sup> On how the relatively benign, or at least less socially threatening, English 'pact' differed from that in continental witch-belief, see Rosen, pp. 15–17. Clark, 'Inversion', offers an elegant study of witchcraft and the discourses of inversion; for 'political' inversion, especially relevant to *Macbeth*, see *ibid.*, pp. 111–17.



4 The exhibiting of an enemy's severed head is an ignominious punishment that figures twice in *Macbeth*: see 1.2.23 and 5.9.20 sd. This engraving from J. C. Visscher, *Londinium Florentissima Britanniae Urbs* (1616), shows the heads of traitors displayed on London Bridge. A Swiss visitor who saw the bridge counted 'more than thirty skulls', boiled and tarred for preservation, 'of noble men who had been executed and beheaded for treason and other reasons' (*Thomas Platter's Travels in England*, 1599, trans. Clare Williams, 1937, p. 155)

(they gave the performance song, dance, and occasions for ever more elaborate demonstrations of 'flying' and other forms of 'vanishing').<sup>1</sup> Gradually, however, the theatre's witches grew more fearsome and demonic and consequently harder to integrate into conceptions of 'heroic' behaviour and tragic responsibility. By the mid nineteenth century, they had achieved psychological status, at least for critics.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Kalman A. Burnim, *David Garrick, Director*, 1961, p. 100.

<sup>2</sup> See William Wetmore Story, cited at p. 71 below. Hazlitt had earlier recognised how important a 'serious' treatment of the witches was: 'The Witches . . . are indeed ridiculous on the modern stage, and we doubt if the Furies of Aeschylus would be more respected' (William Hazlitt, *The Characters of Shakespear's Plays* (1817), ed. A. W. Pollard, 1903, p. 19).

Later critics unfamiliar with the theatre and without, seemingly, much interest in theatrical history have also puzzled over the witches. Willard Farnham's learned account finds them 'demons of the fairy order . . . fiends in the shape of old women who do evil wherever and however they can', though they do not 'resemble human witches' (i.e. the supposed 'witches' of Elizabethan and Jacobean prosecutions),<sup>1</sup> and W. C. Curry, equally learned, imagines – from an arm-chair, not a place in the theatre – a stage-spectacle where beings he calls the 'Weird Sisters' (who have 'a dark grandeur, and a terror-inspiring aspect') 'surmise with comparative accuracy' Macbeth's 'inmost thoughts' 'from observation of facial expression and other bodily manifestations'.<sup>2</sup> For G. L. Kittredge, 'The Weird Sisters . . . are the Norns of Scandinavian mythology. The Norns were goddesses who shaped beforehand the life of every man . . . for their office was not to prophesy only, but to determine'.<sup>3</sup>

Notoriously, Tyrone Guthrie cut the play's first (Folio) scene from his 1934 Old Vic production on the joint grounds that the scene was not by Shakespeare (an improbable claim) and that 'by making the three Weird Sisters open the play, one cannot avoid the implication that they are a governing influence of the tragedy . . . Surely the grandeur of the tragedy lies in the fact that Macbeth and Lady Macbeth are ruined by precisely those qualities which make them great . . . All this is undermined by any suggestion that the Weird Sisters are in control of events',<sup>4</sup> and directors no less than critics<sup>5</sup> have struggled with the sisters' part in the dramatic architecture as well as in the moral and tragic meanings of the play. Are the sisters, for instance, subordinate to other, still more powerful, demonic forces? Hecate, who clearly arrives to rebuke them as their superior in Act 3, Scene 5, may not have been part of the play's original conception, but what of 'our masters' (4.1.62), perhaps the Apparitions or perhaps some force or forces sending the Apparitions? Glen Byam Shaw (Stratford, 1955) and Peter Hall (Stratford, 1967) sternly rejected the sisters and Lady Macbeth as determining forces. In Hall's words,

It has been said that he [Macbeth] wouldn't have done it if he hadn't met the witches; but the witches are not the three Fates saying go and do it, they see into the seeds of time, they know what can happen and what Macbeth wants to happen, but they certainly don't make him do it.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Willard Farnham, *Shakespeare's Tragic Frontier*, 1950, rpt. 1963, p. 99; Farnham's discussion of the play's possible sources (pp. 79–91) is valuable.

<sup>2</sup> Walter Clyde Curry, *Shakespeare's Philosophical Patterns*, 2nd edn, 1959, pp. 77–8.

<sup>3</sup> George Lyman Kittredge (ed.), *Macbeth*, 1939, p. xviii.

<sup>4</sup> Programme note quoted in James Agate's *Sunday Times* review, 8 April 1934, rpt. in *Brief Chronicles*, 1943, p. 229; Agate comments acidly 'that the play is not a tract by Samuel Smiles but a tragedy by William Shakespeare'.

<sup>5</sup> Farnham, *Shakespeare's Tragic Frontier*, p. 81: 'The witches . . . never, even by suggestion, bind him [Macbeth] to evil-doing . . . they tempt him to commit crimes for which he is to assume full moral responsibility . . .'

<sup>6</sup> Peter Hall, rehearsal talk with the company, quoted in the programme, p. 3, of his heavily Christianised 1967 RSC production; see also Samuel L. Leiter (ed.), *Shakespeare Around the Globe*, 1986, p. 377. Contradicting centuries of stage practice, Hall continues: 'It has also been said that without Lady Macbeth he wouldn't have done it; but if you take that view you must endorse a weak vacillating Macbeth with a tough virago of a lady booting him from behind. I do not believe that either.' For Byam Shaw's view, see p. 82 below.

Spectators of *Macbeth* will probably agree, however, that ‘he wouldn’t have done it’ – Macbeth would not have killed Duncan – without Lady Macbeth’s urgent sexual taunts and insinuations:

Was the hope drunk  
Wherein you dressed yourself? Hath it slept since?  
And wakes it now to look so green and pale  
At what it did so freely? From this time,  
Such I account thy love. Art thou afraid  
To be the same in thine own act and valour,  
As thou art in desire? Wouldst thou have that  
Which thou esteem’st the ornament of life,  
And live a coward in thine own esteem,  
Letting I dare not wait upon I would,  
Like the poor cat i’th’adage? . . .

What beast was’t then  
That made you break this enterprise to me?  
When you durst do it, then you were a man.  
And to be more than what you were, you would  
Be so much more the man.

(1.7.35–45, 47–51)<sup>1</sup>

As motivation, these lines ally Lady Macbeth with the sisters, and early audiences might have understood Lady Macbeth as a witch, or as possessed by the devil, long before her sleepwalking in Act 5, Scene 1. Her extraordinary invocation of the ‘spirits / That tend on mortal thoughts’ (1.5.38–9) especially pleads:

make thick my blood,  
Stop up th’access and passage to remorse  
That no compunctionous visitings of nature  
Shake my fell purpose nor keep peace between  
Th’effect and it. Come to my woman’s breasts  
And take my milk for gall, you murd’ring ministers,  
Wherever in your sightless substances  
You wait on nature’s mischief.

(1.5.41–8)

Here Lady Macbeth invokes two ‘unnatural’ conditions: stopping up the circulation (or in Jacobean scientific terms, the ebbing and flowing) of blood that makes her more compassionate (‘compunctionous’) than a male, and ending her menstruation (‘visitings of nature’), the shedding of blood that typified a female in contemporary English culture and signified her ability to bear children.<sup>2</sup>

Pierre Le Loyer’s French treatise on fantasy, translated into English and published (1605) about the time of *Macbeth*’s composition, discusses the unusual psychological state male doctors supposed a woman underwent when menstruation ceased:

the blood of their monthly disease [i.e. unease, discomfort] being stopped from his course, through the ordinary passages and by the matrix dooth redound and beate backe again by the heart . . . Then the same blood, not finding any passage, troubleth the braine in such sorte,

<sup>1</sup> Lady Macbeth’s reference to ‘the poor cat i’th’adage’ is proverbial and ‘common’; see p. 47 n. 2 below.

<sup>2</sup> See 1.5.41–2 n. and *OED* Visit sb 4; Alice Fox, ‘Obstetrics and gynaecology in *Macbeth*’, *S.S. 12* (1979), 127–41; Jenjoy La Belle, ‘“A strange infirmity”: Lady Macbeth’s amenorrhoea’, *SQ 31* (1980), 381–6.

that . . . it causeth many of them to have idle fancies and fond conceipts, and tormenteth them with diverse imaginations of horrible specters, and fearefull sights . . . with which being so afflicted, some of them doe seeke to throwe and cast themselves into wells or pittes, and others to destroy themselves by hanging, or some such miserable end.'

Like Le Loyer's normative amenorrhreal woman, Lady Macbeth suffers 'diverse imaginations of horrible specters, and fearefull sights' in Act 5, Scene 1, and the play's most unreliable narrative moment claims that Lady Macbeth destroyed herself 'by hanging, or some such miserable end' (Le Loyer): the 'fiend-like queen', Malcolm says, 'as 'tis thought, by self and violent hands / Took off her life' (5.9.37–8).<sup>2</sup>

This same physical condition, or its absence, also linked women with witches. The valiantly sceptical Reginald Scot records medical scholars' claim that amenorrhea, the absence of menstruation that might mark menopause, also defines female witches, who constitute a sub-category of 'melancholike' persons:

Now, if the fansie of a melancholike person may be occupied in causes which are both false and impossible; why should an old witch be thought free from such fantasies, who (as the learned philosophers and physicians saie) upon the stopping of their monethlie melancholike flux or issue of bloud, in their age must needs increase therein [i.e. in melancholy], as (through their weaknesse both of bodie and braine) the aptest persons to meeete with such melancholike imaginations: with whome their imaginations remaine, even when their senses are gone.<sup>3</sup>

King James, sometimes notably rationalist, recognised and was puzzled by the fact modern scholars stress: accused witches were overwhelmingly female and usually old.<sup>4</sup>

Shakespeare's earliest audiences might thus associate Lady Macbeth's invocation in Act 1, Scene 5, with an aberrant desire to be both a fantast (a 'melancholike') and a witch, a woman seeking to deny what her culture understood as a woman's defining 'nature' – her ability to bear children – and a woman seeking to become what established doctrine most feared, a renegade or 'wayward' woman, a witch or uncontrolled wife.<sup>5</sup>

Post-menopausal women – 'some of them beyng a while frutefull, but after widowes, and for that suppressed of naturall course [menstruation]' – were also, according to the surgeon-anatomist John Banister, supposed to 'have beardes . . .

<sup>1</sup> Pierre Le Loyer [Loier], *Treatise of Specters*, trans. Z. Jones, 1605, ff. 110r–v. See Patricia Crawford, 'Attitudes to menstruation in seventeenth-century England', *P&P* 91 (1981), 47–73.

<sup>2</sup> Malcolm's 'as 'tis thought' is an extraordinary qualification, marking the narrative's uncertainty and, perhaps, Malcolm's politically motivated effort to portray the previous régime as insane or despairing.

<sup>3</sup> Reginald Scot, *The Discoverie of Witchcrafte* (1584), ed. Brinsley Nicholson, 1886, iii, 9. I owe this reference to Billy Phelan. For a sapient analysis of Scot's work, especially in comparison with Johan Weyer's *De Praestigiis Daemonum*, see Sydney Anglo, 'Reginald Scot's *Discoverie of Witchcraft*: scepticism and sadduceeism', in *Damned Art*, pp. 106–39.

<sup>4</sup> *Daemonologie*, pp. 43–4; years later, when James questioned Sir John Harington on the point, Harington could only offer a coarse joke (see N. E. McClure (ed.), *The Letters and Epigrams of Sir John Harington*, 1930, p. 110; letter 35 (?December 1603)). For contemporary views of post-menopausal women as 'witches', see G. R. Quaife, *Godly Zeal and Furious Rage: The Witch in Early Modern Europe*, 1987, p. 163, and, more significantly, Ralph A. Houlbrooke, *The English Family 1450–1700*, 1984, p. 213.

<sup>5</sup> '[T]he play [Macbeth] also offers, in the figure of Lady Macbeth, the drama's most vivid manifestation of the witch as a dangerous familiar and her witchcraft as "malice domestic," as an invasion of the household and its daily life' (Dolan, p. 226).

being then [as widows and non-menstruating women] bearded, hearie [hairy], and chaunged in voyce'.<sup>1</sup> The description may only hypothetically suit Lady Macbeth, but its most provocative claim – ‘bearded, hearie’ – concerning women whose ‘naturall course’ has been ‘suppressed’ anticipates Banquo’s view of the sisters:

You seem to understand me,  
By each at once her choppy finger laying  
Upon her skinny lips; you should be women,  
And yet your beards forbid me to interpret  
That you are so.

(1.3.41–5)

According to one popular play, ‘the women that / came to us, for disguises must weare beardes, / & thaths they saie the token of a witch’.<sup>2</sup> Melancholy, fantasy, amenorrhea, bearded women form what seems a conventional series of cultural assumptions. They suggest that Lady Macbeth seeks to become, or is, what her culture considered a witch. She has also sought, or been associated with, characteristics traditionally ‘male’ – lack of compunction, a beard, no menstruation.

Macbeth makes some of these associations clear:

Bring forth men-children only,  
For thy undaunted mettle should compose  
Nothing but males.

(1.7.72–4)

Another Shakespearean character explicitly joins ideas of witchcraft with a woman’s ‘unfeminine’, ‘masculine’ behaviour when Leontes angrily derides Paulina as ‘A mankind witch’ (*Winter’s Tale* 2.3.67). Leontes’ epithet combines humanity (‘mankind’) with a woman’s ‘male’ (‘mankind’) aggressiveness and with demonhood (‘witch’). Closer in time to Lady Macbeth’s creation, the characterisation of Volumnia, Coriolanus’s mother, shows a similarly complex – and arguably for Shakespeare and at least the male spectators a similarly disturbing – mixture of stereotypical gender-types, though the added demonising quality of ‘witch’ does not appear in *Coriolanus*.<sup>3</sup> Rather surprisingly, given the frequent application of ‘witch’ to Cleopatra and the word’s use elsewhere as opprobrium (see 1.3.5.n.), no speaker calls Volumnia ‘witch’. Indeed, ‘witch’ does not occur in *Coriolanus*; there, the only ‘witchcraft’ is Coriolanus’s own:

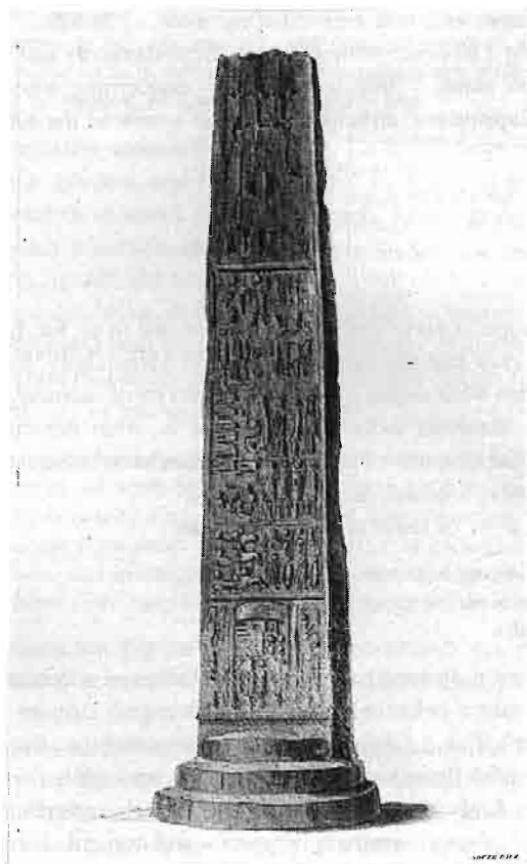
I do not know what witchcraft’s in him [Coriolanus], but  
Your [Aufidius’s] soldiers use him as the grace fore meat,  
Their talk at table, and their thanks at end,  
And you [Aufidius] are darkened in this action, sir,  
Even by your own . . .

(Coriolanus 4.7.2–6)

<sup>1</sup> John Banister, *The Historie of Man*, 1578, sig. b2v. Banister is never very original and cites pseudo-Hippocrates (*Epidemics* vi) here. On how hair might discriminate masculine from feminine, see Joan Cadden, *Meanings of Sex Difference in the Middle Ages*, 1993, pp. 181–3. I owe these two references to Billy Phelan.

<sup>2</sup> *The Honest Mans Fortune*, ed. J. Gerritsen, 1952, 2.1.23–5.

<sup>3</sup> For a survey, see Parker (ed.), *Coriolanus*, pp. 48–53, and Janet Adelman, *Suffocating Mothers: Fantasies of Maternal Origin in Shakespeare’s Plays*, ‘Hamlet’ to ‘The Tempest’, 1992, pp. 147–9.



5 Sweno, the 'Norwegian lord' whose invasion of Scotland fails at the beginning of *Macbeth*, is remembered in the name 'Sueno's Stone', which is given to this pillar (dating from some time between the ninth century and the eleventh) which still stands near Forres in Scotland. See 1.2.58–63 and the Commentary at 1.2.31–62. This engraving from *Vetusta monvmenta* (1747–1835), plate 49, shows the south face of the stone

For some members of *Macbeth*'s earliest audiences, another of Lady Macbeth's claims would have been memorable and unusual, to say the least. Urging Macbeth to kill Duncan, she invokes a terrible analogy:

I have given suck and know  
How tender 'tis to love the babe that milks me:  
I would, while it was smiling in my face,  
Have plucked my nipple from his boneless gums  
And dashed the brains out, had I so sworn  
As you have done to this.

(1.7.54–9)

Special terror here depends upon the nursing mother's closeness to, and tenderness for, the suckling child. While '[c]ontemporary opinion was strongly in favour of a

'mother feeding her own child',<sup>1</sup> English royal, aristocratic, and 'gentle' women (i.e. members of the gentry) did not typically nurse their own children. Instead, they employed wet-nurses, lactating (usually lower-class) women who nursed the child.<sup>2</sup> Elizabeth Clinton, dowager Countess of Lincoln, described and attacked the snobbery such nursing practices encouraged:

And this unthankfulnesse [not breast-feeding], and unnaturalnesse is oftner the sinne of the Higher, and the richer sort, then of the meaner, and poorer, except some nice and proud idle dames, who will imitate their betters, till they make their poore husbands beggars. And this is one hurt which the better ranke doe by their ill example; egge, and imbolden the lower ones to follow them to their losse . . .<sup>3</sup>

We may suppose that the countess's remarks are deeply influenced by her elevated social class and its attendant privileges and contempts, not to mention her regretful admission that she did not breast-feed her own eighteen children.<sup>4</sup> Still and yet, Elizabeth Clinton's concern for babies remains, along with her stiletto dissection of upward mobility.

Upper-class English women did not nurse their children, unlike the majority of mothers. The presumably wide knowledge of this practice – it marked social distinction (as Elizabeth Clinton demonstrates) and therefore must have been emphasised and publicised – supports Coleridge's independent, critical, unhistoricised comment when he disagreed with the then-prevailing view of Lady Macbeth as a monster.<sup>5</sup> A possibly singular bequest may suggest the culture's general attitude. John Greene, a lawyer who eventually became Recorder of London, specified in his will that his daughters should have £1000 apiece 'except Margaret who was to have a further £100 "because her mother nursed her"'.<sup>6</sup> Whatever the aristocracy's practice, indeed whatever the practice of those lower in the social order, a mother's nurturing attachment to her child affected in this single instance how a father bequeathed his wealth.

In William Harrison's 'Description of Scotland' we read, as Shakespeare almost certainly did:

sith it was [in ancient Scotland] a cause of suspicion of the mothers fidel[i]tie toward hir husband, to seeke a strange nurse for hir children (although hir milke failed) each woman would

<sup>1</sup> Patricia Crawford, 'The sucking child: adult attitudes to child care in the first year of life in seventeenth-century England', *Continuity and Change* 1 (1986), 31.

<sup>2</sup> Regular playgoers would have been reminded of this aristocratic practice: see e.g. Giovanni of his mother, Isabella: 'I have often heard her say she gave me suck, / And it should seem by that she dearly loved me, / Since princes seldom do it' (Webster, *White Devil* 3.2.336–8), and Dekker, *Westward Ho* 1.2.117–20, for the supposed damage suckling did to a woman's beauty. In *The White Devil*, Richard Burbage, who may have been the first Macbeth, acted Ferdinand (see Appendix 1, p. 264 below, and Edwin Nungezer, *A Dictionary of Actors*, 1929). See, generally, Valerie Fildes, *Breasts, Bottles and Babies: A History of Infant Feeding*, 1986.

<sup>3</sup> [Elizabeth Clinton], *The Countesse of Lincolnes Nursurie*, 1622, sig. c2r.

<sup>4</sup> See *ibid.*, sigs. D1v and C4r–v.

<sup>5</sup> Lady Macbeth's assertion (1.7.54–9, quoted above), Coleridge said, 'though usually thought to prove a merciless and unwomanly nature, proves the direct opposite; she brings it as the most solemn enforcement to Macbeth of the solemnity of his promise'; she tries 'to bully conscience'. See Samuel Taylor Coleridge, *Coleridge's Criticism of Shakespeare*, ed. R. A. Foakes, 1989, pp. 105–6.

<sup>6</sup> E. M. Symonds, 'The Diary of John Greene (1635–57 [sic, for 1659]), Part III', *EHR* 44 (1929), 116.

take intollerable paines to bring up and nourishe hir owne children . . . nay they feared least [lest] they should degenerat[e] and grow out of kind, except they gave them sucke themselves . . .<sup>1</sup>

Here, Harrison translates and distorts John Bellenden's Scots translation of Hector Boece's *Scotorum historiae* (1526, 1575), where Scottish mothers are specifically distinguished from English mothers. Bellenden writes:

Ilk moder wes nurice to hir awin barne [Each mother was nurse to her own child]. It was ane suspicion of adultere [adultery] aganis ony woman quhare hir milk failzeit, the wemen thocht yair barnis war not tender nor kyndly to thaym, bot gif thay war nurist als weill with the mylk of thair breist, as thay war nurist afore with the blude of thair wambe. Attoure [Moreover] thay held that thair barnis war degenerat fra thair nature and kynd, gif thay war nurist with uncouth mylk.<sup>2</sup>

Harrison omits Boece's claim that where the mother's milk 'fails' ('quhare hir milk failzeit'), the failure signals the mother's adultery. Further, Boece and Bellenden claim, milk from any woman other than the biological mother made the child so nursed 'degenerate from their nature and kind' – that is, wet-nursing made the child non-natural and from a genealogical or dynastic point of view invalid, a failed heir.

However distortedly information about Scottish maternal practice may have descended to Shakespeare and his audiences, Lady Macbeth's claim was at once terrible and unusual. An aristocratic, a royal, woman had 'given suck' and that nurturance would have been foreign to English aristocratic practice and her rejection of the 'babe' repulsive. Considered within the play's arguments over various lineal successions – 'proper' dynastic orderings – Lady Macbeth's vow and threat (1.7.54–9) violate not only a local, 'strange' Scottish practice, but also invalidate possibly royal succession from her body. Her language and that of Boece and Bellenden return the audience to the succession-crises in Act 1, Scenes 3 and 4, where the political conflicts with the familial and biological.

Words and images of birth enter the play's dialogue often, but nowhere so complicatedly as in the chorric Act 2, Scene 4:

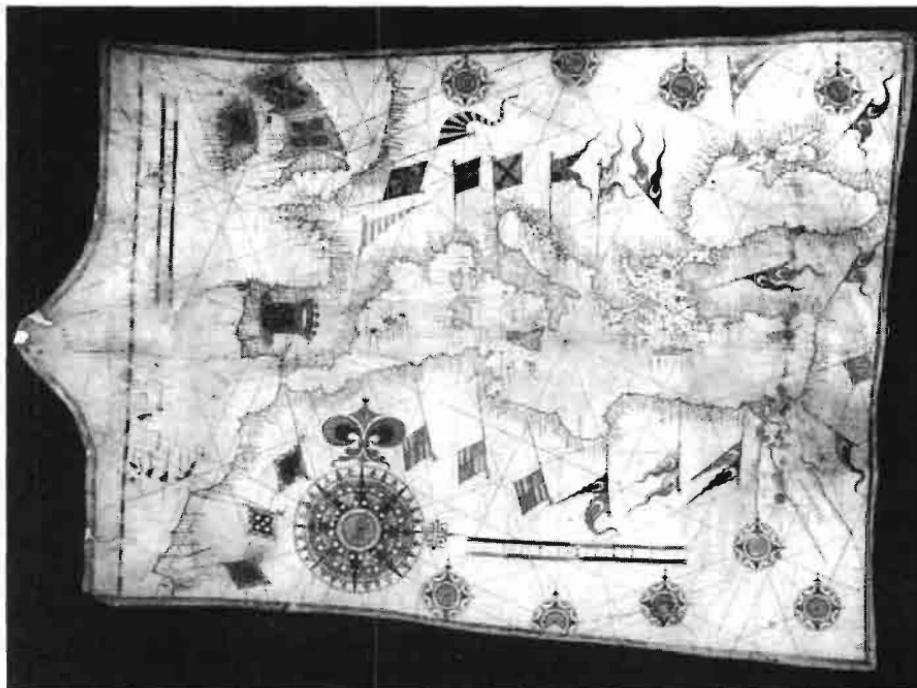
Thou seest the heavens, as troubled with man's act,  
Threatens his bloody stage. By th' clock 'tis day  
And yet dark night strangles the travelling lamp.  
Is't night's predominance, or the day's shame,  
That darkness does the face of earth entomb  
When living light should kiss it?

(2.4.5–10)

The heavens' 'bloody stage' is, of course, the theatre where we learn of Duncan's murder and the theatre where the murderous battles of Acts 1 and 5 take place, but it is also the 'bloody' moment of birth: 'travelling lamp' (the sun) puns through the Folio's spelling ('trauailing') on 'travailing' (labouring), a word that includes the

<sup>1</sup> *Scotland*, p. 21a; for Shakespeare's knowledge of this Harrison text, see 3.1.91–107n. below. In his dedicatory epistle, Harrison claims (*ibid.*, p. 4) that 'the skilfull are not ignorant' of Hector Boece's *Scotorum historiae* (1526, 1575), but that Bellenden's Scots translation is known to 'verie few Englishmen . . . because we [English readers] want [lack] the books'.

<sup>2</sup> John Bellenden, *Hystory and Croniklis of Scotland* (?1540), sig. D1r [first sequence] (headed: 'Ane prudent doctryne maid be [by] the auctoure concernyng baith the new maneris and the auld [old] of Scottis').



6 A sixteenth-century 'card of the sea' by Sebastião Lopes, c. 1555, showing sea-routes and landmarks for voyages around the Mediterranean: see the First Witch's mention of 'th'shipman's card' at 1.3.16. Here, 'Aleppo' (1.3.6) is marked, and a castle at the western end of the Mediterranean, indicating the mapmaker's native land, Portugal

'labour' or 'travail' of giving birth.<sup>1</sup> Here, the 'travelling [or 'trauailing', birthing] lamp', the sun (or son), contends with strangling night. Soon, murderous dark kills the light – 'Who did strike out the light?' (3.3.22) – and the witches later invoke a 'birth-strangled babe', a child strangled in labour ('travail') or just after birth.<sup>2</sup> In Act 3, Scene 3, Macbeth's hired murderers attack Fleance, a son who may grow up to be the 'sun' to darkened Scotland; so, too, 'dark night' strangles the moving ('travelling') light of the sun, which is also the 'travailing' source, the mother-giving-birth, and son/sun of hope for the future.

Prophecy is perhaps the sisters' most significant contribution to the play's intellectual complexity and at the same time one of the play's most memorable theatrical and emotional effects. And the prophecies they offer are not only of future kingship ('All hail Macbeth, that shalt be king hereafter' (1.3.48)), but of secure future kingship:

Be bloody, bold, and resolute; laugh to scorn  
The power of man, for none of woman born  
Shall harm Macbeth.

(4.1.78–80)<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See *OED* *Travail v* and *Travel v*.

<sup>2</sup> On the two possibilities, see 4.1.30 n. below.

<sup>3</sup> Discussing similar political prophecies in 2H6, Jean E. Howard, *The Stage and Social Struggle in Early Modern England*, 1994, p. 135, appropriately cites Howard Dobin, *Merlin's Disciples: Prophecy, Poetry and*

Tragic plots deeply involved with prophecy – the plots of Sophocles' *Oedipus Rex* or *Macbeth*, for example – paradoxically confound tragedy and human speculation about the tragic.<sup>1</sup> Macbeth himself early and late understands prophetic irony:

If chance will have me king, why chance may crown me  
Without my stir.

(1.3.142–3)

And be these juggling fiends no more believed  
That palter with us in a double sense,  
That keep the word of promise to our ear  
And break it to our hope . . .

(5.8.19–22)

To recognise irony is not to escape either irony or the temptations of prophecy, as Macbeth's response to the sisters' display in Act 4, Scene 1, shows:

Then live, Macduff, what need I fear of thee?  
But yet I'll make assurance double sure  
And take a bond of fate: thou shalt not live,  
That I may tell pale-hearted fear it lies,  
And sleep in spite of thunder.

(4.1.81–5)

Macbeth instantly acts to confirm what he believes needs no confirmation. His planned and accomplished action, the murder of Lady Macduff and her children, makes fatal reality out of his over-confidence and his insecurity. Doubt and deaths are the paradoxical result of prophecy and paltering.

Macbeth's perceptions prove otherwise diminished and diminishing. The destructive actions they justify make Macbeth a destructive fool, or a dupe, or the self-aware automaton who says:

I am in blood  
Stepped in so far that should I wade no more,  
Returning were as tedious as go o'er.

(3.4.136–8)

and

Tomorrow, and tomorrow, and tomorrow  
Creeps in this petty pace from day to day  
To the last syllable of recorded time;  
And all our yesterdays have lighted fools  
The way to dusty death.

(5.5.18–22)

Macbeth's reflections are trapped at the level of human agency. He understands, but understands only, the tactics needed to become king and fulfil what he construes as prophecy. He castigates himself not for seeking the murderous ends he sought but for seeking them in an ineffective way, as he had in lamenting the failure of 'our poor malice' (3.2.14).

*Power in Renaissance England*, 1990; Dobin makes only passing reference to *Macbeth*. For the numerous and savage Tudor statutes attempting to control political prophecy and specifically prophecies concerning the monarch's death, see John Bellamy, *The Tudor Law of Treason: An Introduction*, 1979, *passim*.

<sup>1</sup> For the issue in Sophocles' play and a summary of critics' puzzlement, see Richard A. McCabe, *Incest, Drama and Nature's Law*, 1993, pp. 71 ff.; for a most un-oracular oracle, one suited to romance rather than tragedy, see *WT* 3.2.132–6.



7 Michelangelo's drawing of the 'Head of the Cumaeian sibyl', depicting a legendary, aged, prophetic woman, was in fact modelled on an old man (see Michael Hirst, *Michelangelo Draughtsman*, 1988, p. 40). Compare Banquo's puzzlement when he meets the bearded, ambiguous sisters at 1.3.43–5

Unexpressed in Macbeth's seemingly helpless ironic perceptions is a larger difficulty the prophecies pose – choice, or intended action, and hence responsibility for one's acts. If the prophecies are true before the play begins, or before Macbeth and Banquo hear them, or before Macbeth and Banquo have acted, where is the willed action that allows the audience to discover responsibility and hence to experience guilt? If Macbeth could never act otherwise, could never *not* choose to murder Duncan, and if, putatively, Banquo could never resist thoughts of usurpation, 'the cursed thoughts that nature / Gives way to in repose' (2.1.8–9), where is the tragedy, the dire consequence of an ignorant or misunderstood act, of these events? If, alternatively, the prophecies only become true when they are enacted by responsible and hence arguably tragic and guilty human agents, how may they be called 'prophecies' at all?

From a Christian perspective, the likely perspective of both Shakespeare and most of the original audiences, this conundrum represents 'the great debate of the [European] sixteenth and seventeenth centuries on the freedom of the will being turned into drama', as Helen Gardner remarked in a classic essay.<sup>1</sup> According to Gardner, 'It never occurs to us that Macbeth will turn back, or indeed that he can . . . [A]long with this incapacity for change to a better state, or repentance, go two other closely related ideas':

The initial act [i.e. the murder of Duncan] is an act against nature, it is a primal sin . . . and its author knows that it . . . [is] so. It is not an act committed by mistake; it is not an error of judgment, it is an error of will. The act is unnatural and so are its results; it deforms the nature which performs it. The second idea is the irony of retributive justice. The act is performed for an imagined good . . . but a rigorous necessity reigns and sees to it that . . . the desire is only granted ironically . . . [because] the desire is for something forbidden by the very nature of man.<sup>2</sup>

While we should not unthinkingly assent to Gardner's Christian assertion (or assumption) of 'the very nature of man', it seems unquestionable that Macbeth has not, as Gardner says of Marlowe's Dr Faustus, 'escaped the necessity of choice'.<sup>3</sup>

Questions of the individual's freedom or boundedness in action and questions of the individual's responsibility or submission to some external agent (God, Fate, Necessity) are the basic but not simple questions any prophetic act raises.<sup>4</sup> By incorporating

<sup>1</sup> Helen Gardner, 'Milton's "Satan" and the theme of damnation in Elizabethan tragedy', in F. P. Wilson (ed.), *English Studies 1948*, 1948, pp. 46–66; quotation from p. 50 n. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Gardner, pp. 48–9. King-Kok Cheung, 'Shakespeare and Kierkegaard: "dread" in *Macbeth*', *SQ* 35 (1984), 430–9, considers Macbeth's and Lady Macbeth's fascinated compulsion to perform deeds they know are wrong, citing Kierkegaard's 'dread of sin produces sin' (p. 435). Macbeth's purported inability to turn back is one version of the deadly Christian sin of despair; see Bettie Anne Doeblir, '*Rooted Sorrow*': *Dying in Early Modern England*, 1994, *passim*, but esp. pp. 173–80.

<sup>3</sup> Gardner, 'Milton's "Satan"', p. 53. See Robert N. Watson, *The Rest Is Silence: Death as Annihilation in the English Renaissance*, 1994, chapter 4, esp. pp. 149 and 152.

<sup>4</sup> See Jones, *Scenic*, p. 206, citing Susanne Langer's distinguished *Feeling and Form* (1953): 'in the case of *Macbeth*, at any rate in this first part of the play, the "virtual future" is not only the mode of the dramatic genre to which *Macbeth* belongs: it is also its *subject*. The early scenes of *Macbeth* are "about" the immediate future . . .' Compare G. K. Hunter's excellent discussion of the complex word 'security' (3.5.32) in his edition of the play, pp. 21–3, and the more general issue of whether the sisters act independently or as subordinates to still larger demonic energies.

prophecy in what the First Folio termed a ‘Tragedie’, Shakespeare, like Sophocles, presents but does not solve ageless human anxieties about how freely we may act in time. These anxieties are especially present for a Christian audience. A great deal of the play’s emotional power derives from raising these complex anxieties and denying them resolution. Trying to decide whether the effect is ‘tragic’ or the play a ‘tragedy’ is beside the point. The point lies in the effort to resolve those questions, the effort to tame into thought and language what remains wild, inexplicable, compellingly disturbing. Indeed, the play achieves its effects by *not* solving its questions and by conveying their undecidability through a brutal plot, magnificent language, and above all, the sisters.

#### ‘WHAT DO YOU MEAN?’: THE LANGUAGES OF *MACBETH*

At least since the Restoration diarist Samuel Pepys recorded attending *Macbeth* – ‘a pretty good play, but admirably acted’<sup>1</sup> – on the fifty-ninth anniversary of the Gunpowder Plot, 5 November 1664, and undoubtedly long before that, audiences have enjoyed its theatrical spectacle, its marvels and magic – what Pepys later called ‘variety’ and ‘divertisement’.<sup>2</sup> Shakespeare’s play has equal pleasures for the listening imagination.

Despite the play’s exciting linguistic variety, hostile comments from the seventeenth and the twentieth century attack its language. On unknown authority, John Dryden cited Ben Jonson, Shakespeare’s greatest rival and (at least by the time he wrote a fine commendatory poem for the 1623 First Folio) eloquent admirer: ‘In reading some bombast speeches of *Macbeth*, which are not to be understood, he [Jonson] used to say that it was horror; and I am much afraid that this is so.’<sup>3</sup> Dryden himself asserted:

he [Shakespeare] often obscures his meaning by his words, and sometimes makes it unintelligible . . . the fury of his fancy often transported him beyond the bounds of judgement, either in coining of new words and phrases, or racking words which were in use into the violence of a catachresis. “I is not that I would explode the use of metaphors from passions . . . but to use ‘em at every word, to say nothing without a metaphor, a simile, an image, or description, is I doubt to smell a little too strongly of the buskin.”<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Robert Latham and William Matthews (eds.), *The Diary of Samuel Pepys*, 11 vols., 1970–83, v, 314. On this anniversary of the Gunpowder Plot, Pepys almost certainly saw William Davenant’s adaptation, quite possibly its première; see Arthur H. Scouten, ‘The premiere of Davenant’s adaptation of *Macbeth*’ in W. R. Elton and William B. Long (eds.), *Shakespeare and Dramatic Tradition*, 1989, pp. 286–93.

<sup>2</sup> Pepys, VII, 423 (28 December 1666), and VIII, 7 (7 January 1667); Pepys describes William Davenant’s adapted text which indeed contained, as he said, ‘variety of dancing and music’ (VIII, 171; 19 April 1667).

<sup>3</sup> John Dryden, ‘Defence of the epilogue’, in George Watson (ed.), *Of Dramatic Poesy and Other Critical Essays*, 2 vols., 1962, I, 173. Dryden may be putting words in an elder and deeply respected playwright’s mouth here, but ‘it was horror’ is none the less a peculiar phrase, allowing one to imagine Dryden’s ‘Jonson’ saying that the play’s occasional linguistic confusion conveys ‘horror’ rather than that the play’s language is horribly confused.

<sup>4</sup> ‘The grounds of criticism in tragedy’, prefixed to *Troilus and Cressida* (1679), in Watson (ed.), *Of Dramatic Poesy*, I, 257. Dryden gives no examples, but *Macbeth* is full of evocative but logically confusing (and therefore neo-classically offensive) figurative language: ‘Was the hope drunk / Wherein you dressed yourself? Hath it slept since? / And wakes it now to look so green and pale / At what it did so freely?’ (1.7.35–8), for example.

A. C. Bradley, a sympathetic late-Victorian reader of *Macbeth*, partly agrees: 'The diction has in places a huge and rugged grandeur, which degenerates here and there into tumidity.'<sup>1</sup> Almost two-and-a-half centuries after Dryden's death, James Thurber imagined himself marooned in a hotel with reading matter as random and ill-assorted as that found in a dentist's waiting-room. One fellow-resident was stuck with *Macbeth*, which she found, Thurber says, 'a Murder Mystery'. She especially notes the moment when Macduff describes finding Duncan's body:

'Macduff discovers it,' she said, slipping into the historical present. 'Then he comes running downstairs and shouts, "Confusion has broke open the Lord's anointed temple" and "Sacrilegious murder has made his masterpiece" and on and on like that.' The good lady tapped me on the knee. 'All that stuff was *rehearsed*,' she said. 'You wouldn't say a lot of stuff like that, offhand, would you – if you had found a body? . . . You wouldn't! Unless you had practiced it in advance. "My God, there's a body in here!" is what an innocent man would say.'

The lady's complaint echoes Dr Johnson on Milton's *Lycidas*: 'Where there is leisure for fiction there is little grief.' Here, Thurber's reader concludes, where there is leisure for personification there is little personal feeling.

Dryden's possibly fictitious Jonson, and Dryden himself, and Bradley, and Thurber's imaginary reader all hear the play's linguistic, especially metaphorical, volatility, a volatility that sometimes reaches near-incomprehensibility in marvellous but unparaphrasable language:

this Duncan  
Hath borne his faculties so meek, hath been  
So clear in his great office, that his virtues  
Will plead like angels, trumpet-tongued against  
The deep damnation of his taking-off.  
And pity, like a naked newborn babe  
Striding the blast, or heaven's cherubin horsed  
Upon the sightless couriers of the air,  
Shall blow the horrid deed in every eye,  
That tears shall drown the wind.

(1.7.16–25)

Come, seeling night,  
Scarf up the tender eye of pitiful day  
And with thy bloody and invisible hand  
Cancel and tear to pieces that great bond  
Which keeps me pale. Light thickens,  
And the crow makes wing to th'rooky wood;  
Good things of day begin to droop and drowse,  
Whiles night's black agents to their preys do rouse.

(3.2.46–53)

Writers bold enough to comment on these speeches have generally admitted both defeat and admiration. Of the first passage, Dr Johnson said, 'the meaning is not very

<sup>1</sup> Bradley, p. 265; in a later (p. 310) comparison of *Macbeth* with Seneca, Bradley describes some of the play's language as 'turgid bombast'.

<sup>2</sup> James Thurber, *My World – And Welcome To It*, 1942, pp. 35–6. George Bernard Shaw achieves a similar effect in a burlesque of Act 1, Scenes 5 and 7, where Lady Macbeth's lines are mostly intact and Macbeth's are modern and colloquial (e.g. 'What the devil is a limbec?'); see Bernard Dukore (ed.), George Bernard Shaw, 'Macbeth Skit', *Educational Theatre Journal* 19 (1967), 343–8.

clear; I have never found the readers of Shakespeare agreeing about it'.<sup>1</sup> The play has language to puzzle not only Johnson, but anyone.

Rather than offer yet another interpretation of Macbeth's extraordinary speech on 'pity, like a naked newborn babe', a speech eloquently discussed by Cleanth Brooks and Helen Gardner among many others,<sup>2</sup> I offer a shorter example, equally condensed and equally typical of the play's most complex way with words. When Ross and Angus ceremonially announce that Duncan has granted Macbeth a new title, 'Thane of Cawdor' (1.3.87–105), Macbeth divides into a public man, publicly acknowledging a deliberately public honour – 'Thanks for your pains', 'I thank you, gentlemen' (1.3.116, 128) – and into a musing, reflective mind seeking the links among sudden, new honour and the sisters' earlier predictions:

Two truths are told,  
As happy prologues to the swelling act  
Of the imperial theme. (1.3.126–8)

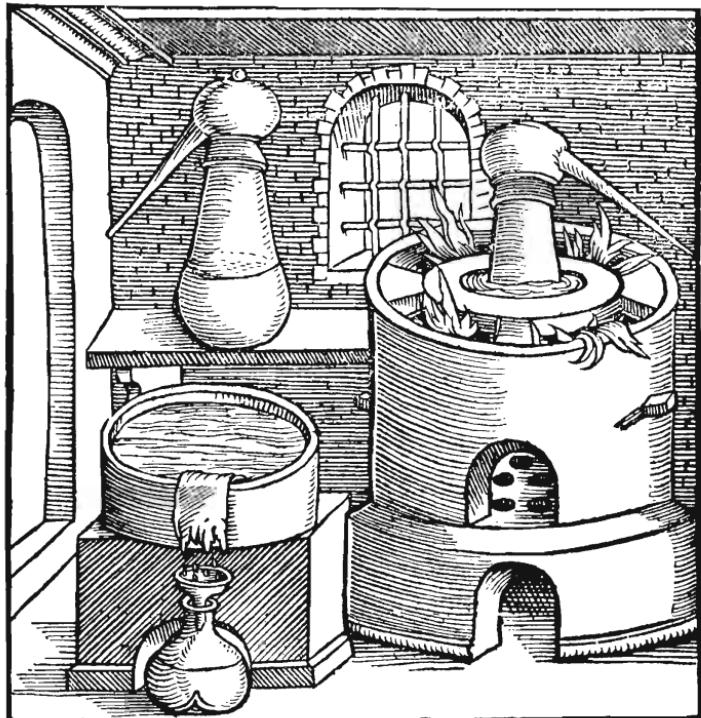
This small portion of Macbeth's speech shows the way the play's language, or, more precisely, the way this character's language, shifts from one verbal register or matrix to another. One matrix is the language of the theatre: 'prologues' are familiar introductory or explanatory figures who preface an entire play or an 'act' of one; after the prologue, an audience would expect the stage to fill (or 'swell') with other actors representing the persons and enacting the events the prologic character predicted or promised. Another matrix is the language of rhetoric and of music: 'theme' is a speaker's or thinker's subject or topic, or possibly (the meaning is barely established in the late sixteenth century) a recognisable – 'hearable' – set of repeated or varied notes.<sup>3</sup> 'Two truths', Macbeth says, introduce an extended passage (of thought, argument, music) leading metaphorically to empery or kingship, and the 'imperial theme' turns from static to active, from contemplation to incitement. From mentally debating what it might be like to be king, Macbeth's reflection (or rather the highly compressed language Shakespeare gives the character) now introduces the possibility of acting to achieve kingship.<sup>4</sup> A final linguistic matrix arises from the 'swelling' of a pregnant woman's body. Speaking to Banquo – 'Thou shalt get kings, though thou be none' (1.3.65) – the sisters raise the play's most intractable and profound issue, the questions of generation, children, inheritance, the prolonging of a familial line. Their emphasis is almost but not quite unremarked – 'Do you not hope your children shall be kings,

<sup>1</sup> On the first speech, see also Cleanth Brooks, *The Well Wrought Urn*, 1947, pp. 21–46. On the second speech, see William Empson, *Seven Types of Ambiguity*, 1930, 3rd edn, 1953, pp. 18–20 and 81–2, and R. A. Foakes, 'Poetic language and dramatic significance in Shakespeare', in Philip Edwards *et al.* (eds.), *Shakespeare's Styles*, 1980, pp. 79–83. On their Hebridean walking tour, Samuel Johnson had to endure James Boswell's numerous quotations of *Macbeth*; see James Boswell, *Journal of a Tour to the Hebrides*, ed. Frederick A. Pottle and Charles H. Bennett, 1961, *passim*, but esp. the entry (29 August 1773) recording their visit to 'Macbeth's Castle'.

<sup>2</sup> See Brooks, pp. 21–46, and Helen Gardner, *The Business of Criticism*, 1959, pp. 52–61.

<sup>3</sup> On the musical meaning of 'theme', dated to 1597, see *OED* Theme 4; the rhetorical meaning (see 1.3.128 n.) is far older.

<sup>4</sup> This shift or glide from a more or less abstract and static mental consideration to an active intention occurs often in the play; see, e.g., 1.5.14–23 and n.



8 ‘memory . . . Shall be a fume, and the receipt of reason / A limbeck only’ (1.7.65–7). The two limbecks shown here illustrate alchemical distillation in *The Works of Geber* (1678), reproducing an image from the Latin edition of 1545. The limbeck on the right is set on a furnace. See Gareth Roberts, *The Mirror of Alchemy*, 1994.

/ When those that gave the Thane of Cawdor to me / Promised no less to them?<sup>1</sup>  
(1.3.117–19) – but with ‘swelling’ (of pregnancy or of impregnating penis) this brief passage acknowledges the possibility that the ‘imperial’ or royal goal might be barren, that the sisters ‘Upon my head . . . placed a fruitless crown / And put a barren sceptre in my gripe’ (3.1.62–3).

In these passages, the play’s language moves rapidly among many images and many linguistic possibilities; this shifting brings together the eloquent, the homely, the proverbial, and the brilliantly theatrical helter-skelter. Among many extraordinary verbal effects in Macbeth’s reflection upon killing Duncan (1.7.12 ff.), for example, ‘naked newborn babe’ subtly patterns the sounds of *n* and of *b*, making a rhetorical chiasmus of the middle term, ‘newborn’, where the sounds ‘cross’ and coexist.<sup>1</sup>

This later passage, when Macbeth has determined to kill Banquo and Fleance, begins with Macbeth’s intimate endearment, ‘Be innocent of the knowledge, dearest

<sup>1</sup> A similar, more extended antimetabole using *d* and *b* appears in ‘I will not be afraid of death and bane / Till Birnam Forest come to Dunsinane’ (5.3.60–1). Compare the different but similar auditory experience of ‘bear [bare?] the knife myself’ (16) and ‘borne his faculties’ (17).

chuck, / Till thou applaud the deed' (3.2.45–6). If a 'noble' hero may be so tender amidst the slaughter past and to come, and so bourgeois as to use 'chuck', a 'citizen' term,<sup>1</sup> then so too the man and child he would kill employ an innocently 'humble' diction:

BANQUO How goes the night, boy?  
 FLEANCE The moon is down; I have not heard the clock.  
 BANQUO And she goes down at twelve.  
 FLEANCE I take't, 'tis later, sir. (2.1.1–3)

And when Banquo dies, a single pentameter unites a passing comment about the weather with the command for his death:

BANQUO It will be rain tonight.  
 FIRST MURDERER Let it come down. (3.3.18)

With little help from the dialogue, the actor playing Lady Macbeth must shift the audience's imagination from plot-orientated fact to gnawing moral self-examination:

LADY MACBETH Is Banquo gone from court?  
 SERVANT Ay, madam, but returns again tonight.  
 LADY MACBETH Say to the king, I would attend his leisure  
     For a few words.  
 SERVANT Madam, I will. (Exit)  
 LADY MACBETH Nought's had, all's spent  
     Where our desire is got without content.  
     'Tis safer to be that which we destroy  
     Than by destruction dwell in doubtful joy. (3.2.1–7)

Almost at once, Lady Macbeth must turn from self-reflection and seek to assuage Macbeth's scorpion-filled mind.

Lady Macbeth's couplets (3.2.4–7) have a quasi-proverbial force, and many well-known lines quote proverbs or have a substratum of proverbial language or thought.<sup>2</sup> One proverb, 'Things done cannot be undone', contributes to three strategically placed moments, at the beginning, the middle, and the end of the play:

If it were done when 'tis done, then 'twere well  
 It were done quickly. (1.7.1–2)

Things without all remedy  
 Should be without regard; what's done, is done. (3.2.11–12)<sup>3</sup>

Come, come, come, come, give me your hand; what's done cannot be undone. To bed, to bed, to bed. (5.1.57–8)

Sedimented, even ossified, commonplaces of wisdom or observation, proverbs and proverbial language make ordinary the play's events and the speakers' reactions while

<sup>1</sup> For the social connotations of endearments, see Supplementary Note 3.2.45, p. 243 below.

<sup>2</sup> For the first act alone, see the notes to 1.2.67, 1.3.123 and 145, 1.4.11–12, 1.7.44–5.

<sup>3</sup> These lines include another proverb: 'Where there is no remedy it is folly to chide.'

simultaneously and starkly showing how far beyond the ordinary, the proverbial, the stony, these events and attitudes are: proverbs toll through important moments in Act 3 – ‘Men are but men’; ‘Fair face foul heart’; ‘And there’s an end’; ‘Blood will have blood.’

The language of *Macbeth* combines sublime magniloquence – which the neo-classical critics Ben Jonson, Dryden, and Dr Johnson found distasteful – with everyday language that also has great theatrical power. After Duncan’s murder is discovered, Macbeth has two speeches that certainly ‘say nothing without a metaphor, a simile, an image’:

Had I but died an hour before this chance,  
I had lived a blessed time, for from this instant,  
There’s nothing serious in mortality.  
All is but toys; renown and grace is dead,  
The wine of life is drawn, and the mere lees  
Is left this vault to brag of.

(2.3.84–9)

And then:

Who can be wise, amazed, temp’rate, and furious,  
Loyal and neutral, in a moment? No man.  
Th’expedition of my violent love  
Outran the pauser, reason. Here lay Duncan,  
His silver skin laced with his golden blood  
And his gashed stabs looked like a breach in nature,  
For ruin’s wasteful entrance. There the murderers,  
Steeped in the colours of their trade; their daggers  
Unmannerly breeched with gore. Who could refrain,  
That had a heart to love and in that heart  
Courage to make’s love known?

(2.3.101–11)

These speeches mix Macbeth’s sorrow, which may be genuine, or partly so, with the lies needed to conceal guilt and win the kingship.

In the brief interval between Duncan’s murder and its discovery, Shakespeare faced a different dramatic problem. As in the aftermath of the discovery, Macbeth must conceal and deceive, but here – before Duncan’s death is known – the problem is more acute because the moment (the porter with a hangover, the impatient noblemen) has a lower emotional temperature. Plainer, everyday language and rhetoric must convey the deceit. Thus, Macbeth’s simple answer to Macduff’s ‘Is the king stirring, worthy thane?’ so perfectly mixes deceit and truth that it deserves the gasp the line sometimes earns: ‘Not yet’ (2.3.38). ‘Not yet’ means, of course, both ‘Duncan has not awokened until now’ and ‘Duncan will never again stir.’ (‘Not yet’ = ‘not so far’ and ‘no longer’.) The effect is repeated and intensified when Lennox asks, ‘Goes the king hence today?’, and Macbeth replies, ‘He does – he did appoint so.’<sup>1</sup> Once again, Macbeth deceives and tells the truth as the witches do. He is the serpent but looks like the flower. The nerve-wrenching sequence concludes with Lennox’s grand catalogue

<sup>1</sup> ‘Goes the king hence’ is a euphemism for ‘Does the king die’; see 1.5.57n.

of portents, to which Macbeth replies truthfully and laconically, ‘‘Twas a rough night’ (2.3.53).<sup>1</sup>

In the following act, similarly complex verbal simplicity greets the murderers: ‘Well then, now have you considered of my speeches?’ (3.1.77). Those first three words offer the actor an enormous range of possibilities.<sup>2</sup> Are they off-hand conversational filler (‘Stand at ease’, or ‘Please be seated’, or ‘Listen to me’, or ‘Thank you for coming’), or the hesitant stutters of a man ordering death, or the abrupt autocratic directions of a feared tyrant? At Stratford in 1955, Laurence Olivier

stood centre-stage . . . The murderers stood down-stage, left and right respectively. Olivier glanced arrogantly from one to the other, crooked the index finger of each hand in terrible invitation and made ‘well’ into a question. He paused. The murderers looked at one another. The index fingers swept downwards and pointed straight at the floor on each side of him. He said ‘then’ as a command. They moved slowly towards him like frightened stoats. Almost humorously, but with an edge of impatience, he said ‘now’, and an act of hypnosis was completed.<sup>3</sup>

Simple language, particularly euphemistic or indefinite language, continually counterpoints the play’s extravagant rhetoric and dense metaphor. Thus, murder appears as ‘it’ – ‘If it were done’ (1.7.1), ‘so, it will make us mad’ (2.2.37), ‘Thou canst not say I did it’ (3.4.50) – and the grooms’ guilt-dispelling drunkenness joins Lady Macbeth’s half-manic excitement at committing murder as ‘that’ – ‘That which hath made them drunk, hath made me bold’ (2.2.1). Later, death is ‘absence’ (3.1.135) and ‘safe’ (3.4.25), and ‘sent to peace’ (3.2.20), dead.

A related linguistic register makes such indefiniteness a source of comedy: millions of obscene jokes and hundreds of dramatic scenes turn upon double, triple, or uncertain referents for ‘it’, or ‘that’, or equally innocuous words and phrases. While *Macbeth* has few comic moments and its wordplay is more often grim than fanciful, the way language blurs rather than clarifies, confuses rather than makes plain, connects paltering sisters and self-deceiving criminals and jokey Porter. Thus, the Porter’s words – ‘come in’, ‘stealing out’, ‘it’ (again), ‘lie’ (and ‘lye’), ‘shift’ – duplicate, make more intense and trivial and painful, the same linguistic acts when Macbeth and his lady speak them.

Appropriately for a play where prophecy and misunderstanding propel the action, paradox, oxymoron, antithesis, and self-contradiction fill the dialogue:

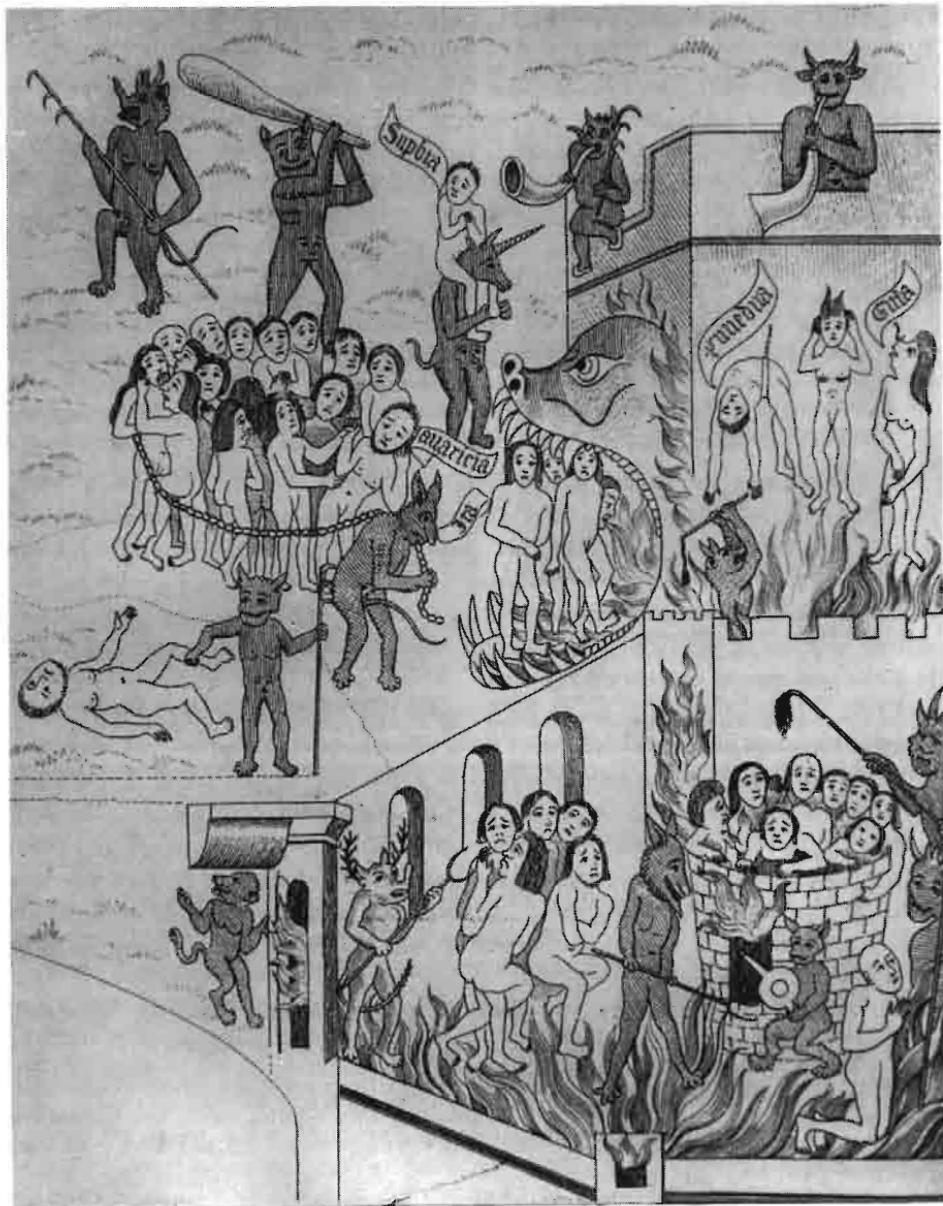
One of the play’s most haunting and pervasive stylistic characteristics is a speech-rhythm that constantly contracts into self-checking half-rhyming half-lines: a device, surely, that realizes the foreshortening, the terrible presentness which Macbeth forces on himself, an existence without breadth and without perspective.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Speaking this line, David Garrick ‘shew[ed] as much self-condemnation, as much fear of discovery, as much endeavour to conquer quietude and assume ease, as ever was infused into, or intended for, the character’ (Thomas Wilkes, *A General View of the Stage*, 1759, p. 249).

<sup>2</sup> Their punctuation, or editorial repunctuation, is therefore uncertain.

<sup>3</sup> Gareth Lloyd Evans, ‘Macbeth in the twentieth century’, *TQ* 1, 3 (1971), 39. After Olivier drew the Murderers to him, ‘the three figures stood in a black-cloaked huddle, looking as sinister a group as the three Witches of Act 1’ (R. A. Foakes (ed.), *Macbeth*, 1968, p. xxiv).

<sup>4</sup> Everett, p. 89. See also Eagleton, *William Shakespeare*, pp. 2–4; Margaret D. Burrell, ‘*Macbeth*: a study in paradox’, *Shakespeare Jahrbuch* 90 (1954), 167–90; Madeleine Doran, ‘The *Macbeth* music’, *S.S.* 16 (1983), 156. See Textual Analysis, pp. 251–5 below, for the play’s half-lines.



9 This fresco of hell imagined as a castle was formerly in the Chapel of the Holy Cross, Stratford-upon-Avon. It includes various devils, one of them perhaps a devil 'porter of hell-gate' as at 2.3.1-2. See Glynne Wickham, 'Hell-castle and its door-keeper', in Kenneth Muir and Philip Edwards (eds.), *Aspects of 'Macbeth'*, 1977, pp. 39-45

Macbeth echoes the ‘paltering’ sisters – ‘Fair is foul, and foul is fair’ (1.1.12) – when he observes that the pathetic fallacy has failed: ‘So foul and fair a day I have not seen’ (1.3.36). It is a stormy yet victorious day, but victory and storm has each its place, its category, and neither can influence or change the other. They coexist, but they do not interpenetrate, and only the musing mind would or could find sunshine and victory appropriate, if unpredictable, companions. By contrast, the words Macbeth unconsciously echoes are not a stable antithesis, a conversational *bon mot* as his remark is, but rather a worrying, endless, finally ‘tedious’ (3.4.138) and idiot-like (see 5.5.26) alternation: ‘Fair is foul, and foul is fair’ (1.1.12). For the witches, distinction exists only in its annihilation by or in alternation with its opposite. Categories – fair, foul – exist, but rather than being defined by difference or opposition, each is the other.

Macbeth’s speech absorbs the ‘sickening see-saw rhythm’ of witch-language – ‘This supernatural soliciting / Cannot be ill, cannot be good’ (1.3.129–30) – and he accurately echoes witch-thinking when he claims, ‘nothing is, / But what is not’ (1.3.140–1), a formulation precisely anticipating the Second Apparition’s promise that ‘none of woman born / Shall harm Macbeth’ (4.1.79–80) and encapsulating at this moment and the later one time, birth, imagination, ambition, and their various defects. The initial paradox (how can one predicate anything of ‘nothing’?) is explained by a further paradox (all that is, is not), and both are understood when we recognise that Macbeth speaks of the difference between ‘present’ conditions and ‘imaginings’ of the future, though the former are ‘fears’ and the latter ‘horrible’.<sup>2</sup> None the less, his phrase denies reality or existence to both that which is and that which is not, to what he fantasises and what he imagines, to killing the king and being the king. In a play where submitting to or commanding time becomes a dominant issue, rhetorical conflict invades even the act of telling the time: echoing Banquo (2.1.1), Macbeth asks, ‘What is the night?’, and his wife replies, ‘Almost at odds with morning, which is which’ (3.4.126–7). Struggling with time and its consequences – birth and death, usurpation and punishment – Lord and Lady Macbeth sense time ‘at odds’ with itself, time now conflicting with time *then* and time *to come*.

Lady Macbeth’s ‘which is which’ echoes the play’s varied use of repetition, ranging from alliteration and assonance to repeated words and phrases, and rhyme.<sup>3</sup> Rhymes are the most easily heard and most easily remembered repetitions. They fill the sisters’ speeches, which generally use trochaic tetrameter couplets, ‘the fairy dialect of English literature’, and *Macbeth* has more scenes that end with one or more couplets than any other Shakespearean play – both a higher proportion of such scenes, and the highest

<sup>1</sup> Knights, p. 20.

<sup>2</sup> Much later, Lady Macbeth speaks a similarly self-cancelling phrase, ‘Tis safer to be that which we destroy’ (3.2.6). Here, the word ‘present’, as in ‘Present fears’, has already been used once of death (1.2.64) and once of the honours Duncan bestows on Macbeth (1.3.53) and therefore represents both foul and fair. In *Poets’ Grammar*, 1958, pp. 48–57, Francis Berry argues that ‘the whole play is Future minded’ and that the future indicative, especially associated with Lady Macbeth, ‘drives the play’, while Macbeth in this speech and elsewhere (e.g. 1.7.1 ff.) employs the future subjunctive.

<sup>3</sup> On verbal repetition, see Maynard Mack, Jr, *Killing the King*, 1973, pp. 160–4, 173–4; Doran, pp. 159–60; G. W. Williams, “Time for such a word”: verbal echoing in *Macbeth*, *S.Sur.* 47 (1994), 153–9.



10 ‘The King’ by Hans Holbein the Younger (1538): an image from the ‘dance of death’, showing Death as a skeleton pouring wine for a king. Compare King Macbeth and Banquo’s Ghost in Act 3, Scene 4, and see the Commentary at 3.4.37 SD

absolute number of them.<sup>1</sup> As well as rhyming, witch-language also alliterates – ‘nine times nine . . . peak, and pine’ (1.3.21–2) – but so does Macbeth’s language:

I had else been perfect;  
Whole as the marble, founded as the rock,  
As broad and general as the casing air:  
But now I am cabined, cribbed, confined, bound in  
To saucy doubts and fears.

(3.4.21–5)

Beside the alliteration on *c* ('casing . . . cabined, cribbed, confined') and the abrupt tremor, *ck*, in 'rock', this passage exemplifies many of the play's more subtle verbal effects: the way 'doubts' echoes the *ds* of the past participles and the vowels of 'bound' and 'founded', for example, or the way the *s*-sound runs from 'else' to 'as' to 'casing' to 'saucy' and 'fears'.<sup>2</sup> The word 'perfect' repeats more largely in the play and weaves

<sup>1</sup> See Edwin Guest, *A History of English Rhythms*, ed. W. W. Skeat, 1882, p. 179, and D. L. Chambers, *The Metre of ‘Macbeth’*, 1903, pp. 19–23. On the witches' rhythms, see also 3.5.4 n.

<sup>2</sup> Alliteration, here in Macbeth's speech and later (5.1) in his wife's, is the verbal equivalent of a human's inability to change or evolve through time; the recurrence to a letter or a sound voices an inability to escape

solicitation and over-confidence with guilt and death: it begins in Macbeth's 'Stay, you imperfect speakers' (1.3.68), continues in his letter ('the perfectest report' (1.5.2)), reappears in Banquo's death, which will make Macbeth's health 'perfect' (3.1.107) and require 'the perfect spy o'th'time' (3.1.129), and concludes in the Messenger's assurance that he is 'perfect' in Lady Macduff's 'state of honour' (4.2.63).<sup>1</sup> 'Issue' also occurs frequently in the play. Before Act 5, Scene 4, we have heard it five times, each time with the meaning 'progeny' or 'children'; Siward then uses the word to mean 'result, outcome': 'But certain issue strokes must arbitrate. / Towards which, advance the war' (5.4.20–1). At once, varied meanings – children, the future, a dynasty's existence, the outcome of war against a tyrant – coalesce. Macbeth's fear of the 'unlineal hand' (3.1.64) depriving him of a 'fruitless crown' and Banquo's witch-inspired hope of 'children [who] shall be kings' (1.3.84) collide in 'issue', a word that now means not only 'children', but also victory or defeat, the result (the 'issue' and outcome) of an Anglo-Scottish war against Macbeth.

These rhetorical, sonic, and logical devices spin the mind, whirl it into endless oscillation, but the play, brief and with an angrily forceful plot, also imposes a kind of imagistic claustrophobia. A. C. Bradley identified important features of the play's figurative language:

Darkness . . . even . . . blackness, broods over this tragedy . . . it [gives] . . . the impression of a black night broken by flashes of light and colour, sometimes vivid and even glaring . . . above all, the colour is the colour of blood.<sup>2</sup>

Yet, like other critics eager to see bipolar oppositions in the play's language and structures, Bradley does not notice how complex the colour-associations are. Macbeth's famous

Will all great Neptune's ocean wash this blood  
Clean from my hand? No: this my hand will rather  
The multitudinous seas incarnadine,  
Making the green one red.

(2.2.63–6)

powerfully puns on 'incarnadine', which means 'make red' and 'make flesh' or 'make flesh-coloured'. For a murderer, his own flesh, or his victim's, might be blood-red, or bloody, whatever the colour of the skin that covered that flesh. No simple code will decipher the play's chromatic figures. Black and darkness may often be evil, white and light good, red bloody, but the white of lily and linen is also cowardly, brightness

a singular act – for Macbeth and Lady Macbeth, that act is murder – or move forward in time beyond or after the act. Compare Macbeth's soliloquy, 'Tomorrow, and tomorrow, and tomorrow . . .' (5.5.18–27).

<sup>1</sup> For a discussion of the play's uses of 'clear', see Doran, pp. 163–5. 'Present' is another repeated word; see e.g. 1.2.64, 1.3.53, 1.3.136. Jürgen Schäfer, *Shakespeares Stil: Germanisches und Romanisches Vokabular*, 1973, Appendix 2, details Shakespeare's characteristic pairing of Germanic and romance synonyms in the play. Among many other significantly repeated words in *Macbeth*, consider 'strange', used in *Macbeth* more frequently (sixteen times) than in any other Shakespearean text except *The Tempest* (eighteen times), and note that both *The Tempest* and *Macbeth* are unusually short Shakespearean plays (see pp. 23–4 above) and that the audience might therefore hear the word's repetition with unusual force. Only *Measure for Measure* (fifteen times), *Antony and Cleopatra* (fourteen times), and *Much Ado About Nothing* (eleven times) use 'strange' more frequently than ten times among the First Folio plays.

<sup>2</sup> Bradley, pp. 266–7.

Satanic, red the colour of courage and the ‘painting’ of a drunkard’s nose, and dark night the time of restorative sleep.<sup>1</sup> Shakespeare often uses repeated (or ‘iterative’) images and ‘image clusters’,<sup>2</sup> and *Macbeth* brims with images of light and dark, of contraction and expansion (dwarf and giant, for example), of liquids (water, wine, milk, urine, blood), of horses that throw their riders or eat each other, of birds good and bad (owls, ravens, wrens, sparrows, hawks, eagles, martlets), of clothing (robes, seams, linings, sleeves, breeches), of procreation (children, eggs), and of sounds (knells, crickets, owls, clocks, bells, trumpets, knockings).<sup>3</sup>

Verbal and non-verbal sounds are especially prominent as fact and image in Act 2, Scene 2, where Macbeth hallucinates, it seems, a voice murdering sleep and Lady Macbeth hears both the sounds of nature (the owl’s shriek, the crickets’ cry) and her husband’s steps as he returns from killing Duncan. The uncanny and indefinite ‘voice’ Macbeth hears (2.2.38) echoes the ‘voice’ of the crown Lady Macbeth hears, or says or thinks she hears, in Act 1, Scene 5. Later, with a gallantry both futile and ironic, Macduff tries to shield Lady Macbeth from knowledge of her crime:

O gentle lady,

’Tis not for you to hear what I can speak.

The repetition in a woman’s ear

Would murder as it fell.

(2.3.76–9)

‘Repetition in a woman’s ear’ murders as it falls again and again in Act 5, Scene 1, when Lady Macbeth repeats the echoing *Knock* of Act 2, Scene 3, and obsessively repeats words and actions:

No more o’that, my lord, no more o’that . . . To bed, to bed; there’s knocking at the gate. Come, come, come, come, give me your hand; what’s done cannot be undone. To bed, to bed, to bed.

(5.1.37–8, 56–8)

Sound-as-sound and sound-as-image make a brief moment wonderfully evocative. Macbeth reassures his wife:

ere the bat hath flown

His cloistered flight, ere to black Hecate’s summons

The shard-born beetle with his drowsy hums

Hath rung night’s yawning peal, there shall be done

A deed of dreadful note.

LADY MACBETH                                  What’s to be done?

MACBETH Be innocent of the knowledge, dearest chuck,

Till thou applaud the deed.

(3.2.40–6)

<sup>1</sup> Notable productions or adaptations of *Macbeth* in Africa and elsewhere demonstrate the imagery’s malleability; consider e.g. Adrian Stanley’s so-called ‘Zulu’ *Macbeth*, Glamis (*sic!*) Stadium, 1961, in what was then Salisbury, Southern Rhodesia (see *Johannesburg Star*, 5 April 1961, and *The Sphere*, 3 June 1961); *The Black Macbeth*, London, March 1972; Natal Theatre Workshop’s production of Welcome Msomi’s *UMabatha*, Aldwych Theatre, London, April 1972, which was revived at the Civic Theatre, Johannesburg, June 1995 (see Philip Revzin, ‘A Zuluized “Macbeth”’, *The Wall Street Journal*, 14 June 1995, p. A16). For U.S. examples, see Ruby Cohn, *Modern Shakespeare Offshoots*, 1976, pp. 60–73, starting with Orson Welles’s ‘voodoo’ *Macbeth* (New York, 14 April 1936).

<sup>2</sup> See Edward Armstrong, *Shakespeare’s Imagination*, rev. edn, 1963.

<sup>3</sup> See, generally, Caroline Spurgeon, *Shakespeare’s Imagery and What It Tells Us* (1935), Wolfgang Clemen, *The Development of Shakespeare’s Imagery* (1951), and M. M. Mahood, *Shakespeare’s Wordplay* (1957).



11 Two witches insert a cock and a snake into a cauldron, invoking thunder and rain: an image from Ulric Molitor's *De Lamiis et phitonicis mulieribus* (1489). See 4.1.1–34

Before Lady Macbeth may applaud, before she claps as a theatre audience might (or so Macbeth hopes), at the deaths of Banquo and Fleance, husband, wife, and audience must hear an insect's sleepy humming as the sound of a church bell ringing the death of a day's labour, or the death of a parishioner. Tolling, the bell's open 'mouth' seems a human yawn, but its sound – its 'note' – marks and invites murder, the dreadful deed, the 'dreadful note', and the notably infamous. Hearing another, not metaphorical, bell, Macbeth went to an earlier crime:

The bell invites me.  
Hear it not, Duncan, for it is a knell  
That summons thee to heaven or to hell.

(2.1.62–4)

The ‘knell’ returns twice more, tolling for the dead of Scotland, especially Macduff’s family and retainers (4.3.172–3), and then for Siward’s son (5.9.17).

With so much else that has become drained of meaning, sound loses its terror for Macbeth when he nears his end. Senses – taste, hearing, vision – marry in death:

I have almost forgot the taste of fears;  
 The time has been, my senses would have cooled  
 To hear a night-shriek and my fell of hair  
 Would at a dismal treatise rouse and stir  
 As life were in’t. I have supped full with horrors;  
 Direnness familiar to my slaughterous thoughts  
 Cannot once start me. Wherefore was that cry?

SEYTON The queen, my lord, is dead.

MACBETH She should have died hereafter;

There would have been a time for such a word.

(5.5.9–17)

Macbeth’s last phrase, ‘a time for such a word’, joins time with language, timing with speech, and directs us to the characters’ recurrent failures to synchronise their words with events. There never should have been a ‘time’ for a word so infective as ‘hail’ – ‘All hail Macbeth, that shalt be king’ nor, Macbeth wishes, should there ever have been a time for so profoundly weary a word – ‘She should have died’ – as ‘hereafter’. This moment’s ‘hereafter’ became inevitable once there was a time when Macbeth heard the word first: ‘All hail Macbeth, that shalt be king *hereafter*’ (1.3.48; my italics).

### *Macbeth* in performance

The history of *Macbeth* performed shows that there are only a few main production decisions. The answers make a performance taxonomy that persists through changes in costume and cast, changes in political and social emphases, changes in ideas of heroism, of the supernatural, and of the relation between women and men, parents and children, humankind and time. Equally, the history of *Macbeth* on stage shows how difficult theatrical interpretation, like dramatic criticism, has found those decisions. How should the sisters be represented? When did the idea of killing Duncan occur to Macbeth or Lady Macbeth? Which of the two is the stronger, the more resourcefully dedicated to death and supremacy? How should an actor perform what Michael Redgrave called the ‘notoriously’ difficult part of *Macbeth*? Redgrave specified the apparent contradiction that Macbeth ‘is described as noble and valiant’, although ‘during the whole play we see him do nothing that is either noble or valiant’.<sup>1</sup> Should the audience witness a palpable Ghost of Banquo in Act 3, Scene 4, or should the actor playing Macbeth in sheer imagination create the ghost as he created the dagger in Act

<sup>1</sup> Michael Redgrave, ‘Shakespeare and the actors’, in John Garrett (ed.), *Talking of Shakespeare*, 1954, p. 138. Compare Bradley, p. 291: ‘the first half of *Macbeth* is greater than the second, and in the first half Lady Macbeth not only appears more than in the second but exerts the ultimate deciding influence on the action’.

2, Scene 1? How is an actor to perform Macbeth after his long absence between Act 4, Scene 1, and Act 5, Scene 3?<sup>1</sup>

#### PERFORMANCE AND ADAPTATION BEFORE 1800

*Macbeth* seems always to have been a popular play on stage and in print. It is one of Shakespeare's most frequently performed plays since 1660 in England and later in other places and has been often revised, reimagined, and adapted to other media (opera, crime and historical novels, popular songs, silent and sound films, television, video, etc.), travestied, burlesqued, used as a starting point for satire, and employed in political cartoons and commercial advertising.<sup>2</sup>

Although no one can know how Jacobean professionals presented *Macbeth* (see Appendix 1, pp. 264–7 below), it is one of the handful of Shakespearean plays for which an early eyewitness account survives. Dr Simon Forman – astrologer, quack, accomplice in the poisoning of Sir Thomas Overbury, adviser to the Privy Council during the investigation of the Gunpowder Plot<sup>3</sup> – claims he witnessed a Globe performance of *Macbeth*, most likely in 1611:

In Mackbeth at the Glob[e], 1610 [i.e. 1611?], the 20 of Aprill . . . [Saturday], ther was to be observed, firste, howe Mackbeth and Bancko, 2 noble men of Scotland, Ridinge thorowe a wod [wood], the[re] stode before them 3 women feiries or Nimpes, And saluted Mackbeth, sayinge, 3 tyms unto him, haille Mackbeth, king of Codon; for thou shalt be a kinge, but shalt beget No kinges, &c. Then said Bancko, What all to Mackbeth And nothing to me. Yes, said the nimpes, haille to thee Bancko, thou shalt beget kinges, yet be no kinge. And so they departed & cam to the Courte of Scotland to Dunkin king of Scotes, and yt was in the dais of Edward the Confessor. And Dunkin bad them both kindly wellcome, And made Mackbeth forth with Prince of Northumberland, and sent him hom to his own castell, and appointed Mackbeth to provid for him, for he would sup with him the next dai at night, & did soe. And Mackebeth contrived to kill Dunkin, & thorowe the persuasion of his wife did that night Murder the kinge in his own Castell, beinge his guest. And ther were many prodigies seen that night & the dai before. And when Mack Beth had murdred the kinge, the blod on his handes could not be washed of[f] by

<sup>1</sup> Commenting on productions since 1955, Michael Billington offers this summary view: 'First, the play cannot work without a magnetic central pair: it is much more a star vehicle than a company show. Second, though it needs a consistent imaginative world, no amount of hectic design can compete with Shakespeare's poetic scene painting. Third[,] it is a play of breathless narrative excitement which appears broken-backed once you slice it in half [by introducing an interval]' (*The Guardian*, 27 September 1995).

<sup>2</sup> See, for example, Arthur Colby Sprague, *Shakespeare and the Actors: The Stage Business in His Plays 1660–1905*, 1944, chapter 5; Dennis Bartholomeusz, '*Macbeth*' and the Players, 1969; Rosenberg; Bernice Kliman, *Shakespeare in Performance: 'Macbeth'*, 1992; Cohn, chapter 2. There is no narrative history of *Macbeth*'s uses in song, novel, advertisement, etc., but see Thomas Wheeler, '*Macbeth*: An Annotated Bibliography', 1990, pp. 897–939. Kenneth S. Rothwell and Annabelle Henkin Melzer, *Shakespeare on Screen: An International Filmography and Videography*, 1990, pp. 147–71, lists film and video versions of *Macbeth*, which are second in number only to those of *Hamlet*. For actors' written discussions of the performed play, see Carol Jones Carlisle, *Shakespeare from the Greenroom*, 1969, chapter 5. Among many treatments see such novels (historical and mystery or thriller) as Marvin Kaye, *Bullets for Macbeth* (1976), Nigel Tranter, *MacBeth the King* (1978), Dorothy Dunnett, *King Hereafter* (1982), Ngaio Marsh, *Light Thickens* (1982), Nicolas Freeling, *Lady Macbeth* (1988), and such plays as Gordon Bottomley, *Gruach* (1921), Barbara Garson, *MacBird* (1966), Charles Marowitz, *A Macbeth* (1971), Eugene Ionesco, *Macbett* (1972), Tom Stoppard, *Dogg's Hamlet, Cahoot's Macbeth* (1980).

<sup>3</sup> See Beatrice White, *Cast of Ravens*, 1965, *passim*, and Mark Nicholls, *Investigating Gunpowder Plot*, 1991, p. 13.

Any meanes, nor from his wifes handes, which handled the bloddi daggers in hiding them, By which means they became both moch amazed & Affronted. The murder being knownen, Dunkins 2 sonns fled, the on[e] to England, the [other to] Walles, to save them selves, they being fled, they were supposed guilty of the murder of their father, which was nothinge so. Then was Mackbeth crowned kinge, and then he for feare of Banco, his old companion, that he should beget kinges but be no kinge him selfe, he contrived the death of Banco, and caused him to be Murdred on the way as he Rode. The next night, beinge at supper with his noble men whom he had bid to a feaste to the which also Banco should have com, he began to speake of Noble Banco, and to wish that he wer ther. And as he thus did, standing up to drincke a Carouse to him, the ghoste of Banco came and sate down in his cheier behind him. And he turninge About to sit down Again sawe the geste of Banco, which [af]fronted him so, that he fell into a great passion of fear and fury, Utterynge many wordes about his murder, by which, when they h[e]ard that Banco was Murdred they Suspected Mackbet.

Then MackDove fled to England to the kinges sonn, And soe they Raised an Army, And cam into Scotland, and at Dunston Anyse overthruе Mackbet. In the meantyme whille Macdovee was in England, Mackbet slewe Mackdoves wife & children, and after in the battelle Mackdove slewe Mackbet.

Observe Also howe Mackbetes quen did Rise in the night in her slepe, & walke and talked and confessed all, & the docter noted her wordes.<sup>1</sup>

Forman's description deviates from the Folio narrative (e.g. Macbeth as 'Prince of Northumberland' rather than Malcolm as Prince of Cumberland; Macbeth as 'king of Codon' rather than Thane of Cawdor; a scene of bloody handwashing after the murder) and records some questionable details – Raphael Holinshed's account of Macbeth's reign (read or remembered) apparently 'contaminates' Forman's diary-entry – but there can be little doubt that Forman saw *Macbeth*, probably on the day, month, and year (adjusted for an easy error)<sup>2</sup> he says he did.

Aside from Forman's account and the probable early revision of the play by Thomas Middleton (see Textual Analysis, pp. 255–9 below), evidence of the play's history before 1660 is mostly speculative: John Webster echoes *Macbeth* 2.2.57–8, 4.3.221, and 5.1.37 in *The White Devil* (c. 1612); ghost-scenes in Thomas Middleton's *The Puritan* (1607) and Francis Beaumont's *The Knight of the Burning Pestle* (c. 1608, printed 1613) may record other dramatists' responses to Banquo's Ghost in *Macbeth* Act 3, Scene 4; the anonymous *Thorny Abbey, or The London Maid* (c. 1615, first printed in *Gratiae Theatrales*, 1662) uses Holinshed's King Duff narrative, probably because *Macbeth* did; Middleton's *A Game at Chess* (1624) imitates *Macbeth* Act 4, Scene 3; Henry Killigrew's *The Conspiracy* (1635) may imitate the use of the Murderers in

<sup>1</sup> Simon Forman, *Booke of Platies* (Bodleian Library MS. Ashmole 208, folios 207r–v), as edited in E. K. Chambers, *William Shakespeare: A Study of Facts and Problems*, 2 vols., 1930, II, 337–8, slightly modernised. A facsimile of Forman's entry appears in S. Schoenbaum, *William Shakespeare: Records and Images*, 1981, illustration 3.

<sup>2</sup> 20 April was a Saturday in 1611, not 1610 (as Forman's manuscript has it): the error (if it is one) is plausible because Jacobean dated the new year in two ways, from 1 January, the modern practice, and from 25 March (the legal year); if Forman thought about years in the latter style, '1611' would have been less than a month old on 20 April, and he might have made what is still a common mistake after the 'new' year begins. Forman's probable borrowings from Holinshed are discussed by Leah Scragg, 'Macbeth on horseback', *S. Sur.* 26 (1973), 81–8, and the critical significance of Forman's 'errors' by Stephen Orgel, 'Acting scripts, performing texts', in Randall McLeod (ed.), *Crisis in Editing: Texts of the English Renaissance*, 1994, pp. 268–72.



<sup>12</sup> The Great Seal of King James I, from Francis Sandford, *A Genealogical History of the Kings of England* (1677), p. 514: the seal illustrates James I's ceremonial accoutrements: sceptre, ball, mound. See 4.1.120 and Supplementary Note, pp. 243–4 below. Sandford describes the ‘Sceptre of the Flower-de-Lize . . . and . . . the Ball or Mound with a Cross on the top thereof’ in his *History*, p. 519

*Macbeth*.<sup>1</sup> The possible ‘echo’ in *The Knight of the Burning Pestle* is particularly interesting because Jasper’s entrance as a fake ghost may suggest how Richard Burbage, the actor who probably first played Macbeth (see Appendix 1, p. 264 below),

<sup>1</sup> For the Webster echoes, see the respective Commentary notes; the Puritan ‘reference’ – ‘weele ha the ghost ith white sheete sit at upper end a’t Table’ (*The Puritan*, 1607, sig. H1v) – has been firmly disputed in R. V. Holdsworth, ‘*Macbeth* and *The Puritan*’, *N&Q* 235 (1990), 204–5, because similar material in other texts by Thomas Middleton seems to ‘explain’ the incident better than an allusion to *Macbeth*; for *Thorny Abbey*, see William M. Baillie (ed.), *A Choice Ternary of English Plays*, 1984, pp. 26–30 (date), 33–6 (links with *Macbeth*), 270–5 (Holinshead in *Macbeth* and *Thorny Abbey*); for *A Game at Chess*, see R. C. Bald’s edn, 1929, p. 16, and Margot Heinemann, *Puritanism and Theatre*, 1980, p. 164; for Killigrew, *The Conspiracy*, see Martin Wiggins, *Journeymen in Murder: The Assassin in English Renaissance Drama*, 1991, p. 202.

or another early actor of the part reacted to Banquo's Ghost, or how an early audience expected an actor to react upon seeing a stage-ghost:

When thou art at thy Table with thy friends  
 Merry in heart, and fill'd with swelling wine,  
 I'll come in midst of all thy pride and mirth,  
 Invisible to all men but thy selfe,  
 And whisper such a sad tale in thine eare,  
 Shall make thee let the Cuppe fall from thy hand,  
 And stand as mute and pale as Death it selfe.<sup>1</sup>

About 1639–42, John Milton jotted notes on subjects for plays or poems, including – after a detailed outline of ‘Adam unparadiz’d’ – ‘Scotch [hi]stories or rather brittish of the north parts’. Among his proposed subjects were:

Duffe, & Donwald

a strange story of [*deleted*: revenging] witchcraft, & murder discover'd, & reveng'd. Scotch [hi]story. 149. &c.

Kenneth

who having privily poison'd Malcolm Duffe, that his own son might succeed is slain by Fenela. Scotch hist[ory]. p. 157. 158. &c.

Macbeth

beginning at the arrivall of Malcolm at Mackduffe. The matter of Duncan may be express't by the appearing of his ghost.<sup>2</sup>

Milton's numerals refer to pages in Holinshed's *Chronicles* (1587), and Milton's subjects include the three Holinshed-narratives Shakespeare apparently consulted in writing *Macbeth*. The note on ‘Macbeth’ envisages a Greek-derived tragedy, like Milton's *Samson Agonistes*, in which the action would begin with *Macbeth* Act 4, Scene 3, and use Duncan's ghost as a narrator of prior events.<sup>3</sup> While these notes do not mention Shakespeare's *Macbeth*, Milton could certainly have known the performed and printed play; he wrote a splendid commendatory poem for the Second Folio (1632), and in his *Poems* (1645) famously described ‘the well-trod stage’ where ‘sweetest Shakespear fancies childe / Warble[s] his native Wood-notes wilde’ (*L'Allegro*, lines 131 and 133–4). Milton's knowledge of both Shakespeare performed and the theatre may have been direct: his father (also John Milton) apparently served as a trustee of the King's Men's Blackfriars theatre property for Richard Burbage's widow Winifred and her children after the famous actor's death in 1619.<sup>4</sup>

From the period of Milton, two important promptbooks of *Macbeth* have been identified: the ‘Padua’ promptbook of c. 1625–35 (a copy of the 1623 Folio named for

<sup>1</sup> *The Knight of the Burning Pestle*, 1613, sig. 13r, slightly modernised.

<sup>2</sup> *John Milton Poems: Reproduced in Facsimile from the Manuscript in Trinity College, Cambridge*, 1972, p. 41. See e.g. ‘Milton's “Macbeth”’, in John W. Hales, *Folia Litteraria*, 1893, pp. 198–210; E. E. Kellett, ‘*Macbeth* and Satan’, *London Quarterly and Holborn Review*, July 1939, pp. 289–99; W. R. Parker, *Milton: A Biography*, 2 vols., 1968, I, 190–1, and II, 843 n. 15.

<sup>3</sup> Hales, *Folia Litteraria*, pp. 211–12, infers from Milton's separate notes on ‘Duffe & Donwald’ that Milton would not have combined that story with Macbeth's as Shakespeare did.

<sup>4</sup> See Herbert Berry, ‘The stage and boxes at Blackfriars’ (1966), rpt. in Berry, *Shakespeare's Playhouses*, 1987, pp. 70–1.

its present custodian, the University of Padua library) and the ‘Smock Alley’ promptbook of c. 1674–82 (a copy of the 1663–4 Folio named for the Dublin theatre in which it was performed).<sup>1</sup> Although the Padua promptbook may not report the earliest public theatre-practices, it fascinatingly records a performance text predating those that the Restoration’s very different cultural and professional circumstances created. Remarkably, the Padua promptbook anticipates later acting texts by reducing the Folio’s verbal density: the ‘hard’ language of Macbeth’s speeches in Act 1, Scenes 3 and 7, is trimmed; the Porter’s part is cut entirely, as is Macbeth’s interview with the murderers in Act 3, Scene 1; in Act 4, Scene 2, Ross loses his most impenetrable language (from ‘I dare not speak’ to ‘Each way and none’); Macbeth’s powerful soliloquy (Act 5, Scene 3) on ‘the sere, the yellow leaf’ is cut; *the other three Witches* of Act 4, Scene 1, disappear, though Hecate may remain.

Political or religious concerns may have motivated some of these and other cuts: Macbeth’s soliloquy on royal *pathos* (‘To be thus is nothing . . .’) in Act 3, Scene 1, is harshly treated, and his now celebrated soliloquy, ‘I have lived long enough . . .’ (5.3.22 ff.), implying a desire for death, may have been cut for the same reason; concerns about blasphemy, profanity or simply ‘inappropriate’ comedy might account for the Porter’s disappearance here as they seem to do in later theatrical versions. Padua also makes more obviously practical (and later very popular) cuts: Act 3, Scene 6, is deleted, for instance, and Act 4, Scene 3, loses more than sixty lines, though part of the English Doctor episode remains. The Padua promptbook is also the first known document to specify a ‘Cauldrone’ in the opening stage direction for Act 4, Scene 1, and interestingly directs Macbeth to enter before the last line of Lady Macbeth’s opening speech of Act 2, Scene 2, ‘Whether they [the comatose grooms] live or die’.<sup>2</sup> The Smock Alley promptbook has been influenced by William Davenant’s Restoration adaptation, possibly as seen in the theatre rather than read in the 1674 text. Like Davenant, the persons who marked the Dublin promptbook reduced the Jacobean text’s verbal complexity, cut or combined several of Shakespeare’s thanes and messengers, and severely reduced the Porter’s rôle, but allowed Lady Macbeth to appear in Act 2, Scene 3, as many later theatre texts did not. The adapters ‘Clearly . . . have one aim in mind: entertainment at any cost’.<sup>3</sup>

The quarto *Macbeth* published in 1673 may represent a revised version performed before the theatres were closed in 1642 or just after professional playing legally resumed about 1660. William Davenant’s adaptation, published posthumously in

<sup>1</sup> See G. Blakemore Evans (ed.), *Shakespearean Prompt-Books of the Seventeenth Century*, 7 vols., 1960–89, 1, i (General Introduction, Introduction to Padua *Macbeth*, collations), 1, ii (facsimile of Padua *Macbeth*), and v, i (Introduction and collations to Smock Alley *Macbeth*) and v, ii (facsimile of Smock Alley *Macbeth*). My discussion depends upon Evans’s superb work. Evans has also identified a 1664 version of *Macbeth*, based on F2 and probably prepared for amateur performance at an English Roman Catholic foundation in France; see G. Blakemore Evans, ‘The Douai Manuscript – six Shakespearean transcripts (1694–95)’, *PQ* 41 (1962), 158–72, esp. pp. 171–2.

<sup>2</sup> For a more comprehensive discussion of ‘Padua’, its cuts, and their significance, see Orgel, ‘Acting scripts’, pp. 255–8.

<sup>3</sup> Evans, *Shakespearean Prompt-Books*, v, i, p. 19; for further details of the Smock Alley changes, see Evans *passim*.

1674, but probably performed in 'December 1666 or . . . [in] November 1664',<sup>1</sup> supplanted the Folio version until 1744, when David Garrick offered London audiences a text closer to the Folio.<sup>2</sup> Thereafter, Davenant's version gave way slowly (Spranger Barry used it at Covent Garden in the 1750s, for example), and some of Davenant's lines and stage business have persisted into twentieth-century productions.<sup>3</sup> Colley Cibber, who knew only Davenant's adaptation on stage, thought that Mrs Betterton, 'tho' far advanc'd in Years', outstripped her younger competitor Mrs Barry – superior in 'Strength, and Melody of Voice' – because Mrs Betterton commanded 'quick and careless Strokes of Terror, from the Disorder of a guilty Mind'.<sup>4</sup> Samuel Pepys, also knowing only Davenant's adapted spectacle, identified a singular oddity: the play 'appears a most excellent play in all respects, but especially in divertisement, though it be a deep tragedy; which is a strange perfection in a tragedy, it being most proper here and suitable'.<sup>5</sup>

An anonymous pamphlet, *An Essay on Acting . . . of a certain fashionable faulty actor . . . [with] A short criticism on his acting of Macbeth* (1744), apparently David Garrick's effort to promote his own first appearance in the part (7 January 1744),<sup>6</sup> satirises the acting tradition as Garrick found it. Garrick's contemporary rival was James Quin, and the pamphlet attacks Quin's Macbeth – a 'Man . . . out of his Depth' – in Act 2, Scene 2, by pretending to criticise Garrick's performance:

he [the actor playing Macbeth] should not rivet his Eyes to an *imaginary* Object [the dagger], as if it *really* was there, but should shew an *unsettled Motion* in his Eye, like one not quite awak'd from some disordering Dream; his *Hands* and *Fingers* should not be *immoveable*, but *restless* . . . *Come let me clutch thee!* is not to be done by *one* Motion only, but by several *successive Catches* at it, first with one Hand, and then with the other, preserving the same Motion, at the same Time, with his Feet, like a Man, who out of his Depth, and half drowned in his Struggles, *catches at Air for Substance*: This would make the Spectator's Blood run cold, and he would almost feel the Agonies of the Murderer himself.<sup>7</sup>

Whatever any spectator felt then, my blood runs as cold as Quin's must have done at this savaging of a style now found over-declamatory and over-acted. Garrick's own performance of the dagger soliloquy – when he 'rivet[ed] his Eyes to an *imaginary*

<sup>1</sup> See Scouten, 'The premiere of Davenant's adaptation of *Macbeth*', pp. 290–1, though Q1673 is not quite 'Shakespeare's play' (Scouten, p. 290), since it makes some 'editorial' changes and includes two additional witch song-routines; see Appendix 2, pp. 268–70 below. Some of Davenant's changes are discussed in Appendix 2, but they are too extensive and interesting for easy summary; see, in part, Hazelton Spencer, 'D'Avenant's *Macbeth* and Shakespeare's', *PMLA* 40 (1925), 619–44, esp. pp. 628–41, and Richard Kroll, 'Emblem and empiricism in Davenant's *Macbeth*', *ELH* 57 (1990), 835–64.

<sup>2</sup> By G. W. Stone's counts, Folio *Macbeth* has approximately 2341 lines, Davenant's version 2198, Garrick's 2072; see George Winchester Stone, Jr, 'Garrick's handling of *Macbeth*', *SP* 38 (1941), 609–28, esp. 621. For a slightly different count, see p. 23 above.

<sup>3</sup> Bartholomewz, p. 94; Burnim, *David Garrick*, p. 110; Rosenberg, pp. 111–12. As late as W. C. Macready's farewell *Macbeth* in 1851, for example, all of Q1673's and Davenant's witch-song and witch-spectacle still appeared; see Alan S. Downer, *The Eminent Tragedian: William Charles Macready*, 1966, pp. 318–38.

<sup>4</sup> Colley Cibber, *An Apology for the Life of Mr Colley Cibber, Comedian*, 1740, p. 96.

<sup>5</sup> Pepys, VIII, 7 (7 January 1667).

<sup>6</sup> For the attribution to Garrick, see Davies, *Life*, I, 163–4.

<sup>7</sup> [David Garrick?] *An Essay on Acting*, 1744, sigs. D1r–v.

Object, as if it *really* was there' – became a kind of hallmark and travelling party-piece which received extravagant praise.<sup>1</sup>

Satire obscures Garrick's complaints, but he apparently attacks a traditional piece of business when he pretends to praise the way Macbeth first toasts the absent Banquo and then recognises the Ghost:

the Glass of Wine in his Hand should not be dash'd upon the Ground, but it should fall *gently* from him, and he should not discover the least Consciousness of having such a Vehicle in his Hand, his Memory being quite lost in the present Guilt and Horror of his Imagination.<sup>2</sup>

This passage seemingly means that Garrick found Quin's nerveless 'Horror' inappropriate and preferred a violent dashing of the glass. Later anecdote records Quin's reactions to his young rival's performance, including surprise at the 'new' (actually Shakespearean and newly restored) imprecation, 'The devil damn thee black, thou cream-faced loon. / Where got'st thou that goose-look?' (5.3.11–12).<sup>3</sup>

Through superb talent, assiduous amateur scholarship, and adroit self-promotion, Garrick made himself a star not only in the theatre but among an Enlightenment constellation – Samuel Johnson, David Hume, Joshua Reynolds – that equalled any in the continental European galaxy. One contemporary is wholly adulatory and, significantly, praises Garrick's performance of the later acts:

Garrick could alone comprehend and execute the complicated passages of *Macbeth*. From the first scene, in which he was accosted by the witches to the end of the part, he was animated and consistent.<sup>4</sup>

While Garrick's *Macbeth* exploited the best contemporary scholarship (that of Theobald, Johnson, Warburton, and Styan Thirlby),<sup>5</sup> his text also made many of the same cuts as Davenant and included a good deal of Davenant's supposedly unacceptable writing.<sup>6</sup> Davenant had Macbeth die on-stage with a single line, 'Farewell vain

<sup>1</sup> On Garrick's second Parisian visit in July 1765, 'en chambre, dans son habit ordinaire, sans aucun secours de l'illusion théâtrale', Garrick delivered the speech to a rapt audience; see F. A. Hedgecock, *Un Acteur cosmopolite: David Garrick et ses amis français*, 1911, p. 25. On the same tour, Charles Collé's diary records another semi-private performance of the dagger-scene as 'une espèce de pantomime tragique' (Hedgecock, p. 65). Such recital-demonstrations, including scores of dagger-scenes where Garrick's powers before a non-English-speaking audience were especially praised, became common during his continental visits; see Hedgecock, pp. 115–19, for France, and Thomas Davies, *Dramatic Micellanies [sic]*, 3 vols., 1783–4, II, 141, for Italy.

<sup>2</sup> *An Essay on Acting*, sig. D3r. The 'business' Garrick attacks may be Jacobean; see the quotation from *Knight of the Burning Pestle*, p. 60 above.

<sup>3</sup> 'And when he [Quin] heard Garrick declaiming: "The devil damn . . . that goose-look?" he asked him where he had found such strange language' (Percy Fitzgerald, *A New History of the English Stage*, 2 vols., 1882, II, 162). Garrick's promptbook omits the oath, though it keeps the 'undignified' goose-reference (Bartholomeusz, p. 74).

<sup>4</sup> Davies, *Micellanies*, II, 133–4; even more fulsome descriptions appear in a work dedicated to Garrick: [Francis Gentleman,] *The Dramatic Censor*, 2 vols., 1770, I, 107–8.

<sup>5</sup> See Stone, pp. 615–17, and Bartholomeusz, p. 46. What most scholars consider Garrick's 'promptbook', a marked copy of *Macbeth* in Bell's *Editon of Shakespeare's Plays*, 9 vols. (1773–4), I (1773), is now in the Folger Shakespeare Library, Washington, D.C. (Burnim, p. 108).

<sup>6</sup> Like Davenant, Garrick omitted the Porter of *Macbeth* 2.3, most of 4.2 (Lady Macduff and her son), most of Malcolm's self-accusation in 4.3, and 5.2; see Stone; Burnim, chap. 6, esp. p. 104; Bartholomeusz, chap.

4. Garrick also retained many of Davenant's genteelisms – e.g. replacing 'stool' (3.4.68) with 'chair', a change that remained in Macready's text (Downer, p. 332).

World, and what's most vain in it, *Ambition'*, which Garrick replaced with his own execrable pastiche – a blend of Dryden and Marlowe:

'Tis done! the scene of life will quickly close.  
 Ambition's vain, delusive dreams are fled,  
 And now I wake to darkness, guilt and horror;  
 I cannot bear it! let me shake it off –  
 'Two' not be; my soul is clogg'd with blood –  
 I cannot rise! I dare not ask for mercy –  
 It is too late, hell drags me down; I sink,  
 I sink – Oh! – my soul is lost for ever!  
 Oh!'

David Garrick's performances as Macbeth were supported by those of Hannah Pritchard as Lady Macbeth – he effectively abandoned the rôle after her retirement – and he remains perhaps the only English actor to have conquered the part (see illustration 13). Almost two centuries later, a distinguished critic succinctly praised and faulted Laurence Olivier by comparing him to Garrick: 'Since it would seem that with the exception of Garrick a great Macbeth has never been in the calendar, it is reasonable to expect that the new one should be lacking in perfect adequacy.'<sup>2</sup>

John Philip Kemble, eighteenth-century London's other memorable Macbeth, was, like Garrick, a distinguished actor-manager; like Garrick, Kemble rejoiced in a superb Lady Macbeth (Sarah Siddons, his sister); like Garrick, Kemble cultivated a reputation as a scholarly exponent of the 'true', as opposed to the adapted or revised, Shakespearean text. Contemporary accounts and Kemble's promptbook show that his performances, also like Garrick's, kept much of Davenant's adaptation and even further reduced the material which neo-classical taste found unacceptable. Kemble's performances also increased the spectacle: though Shakespeare's three witches were treated fairly seriously, Kemble deployed a chorus of fifty or more singing, dancing, comic witches from at least 1794 onward.<sup>3</sup> Lady Macduff and her son vanish, and their deaths are reported only; the Porter is omitted. And, continuing long theatrical practice, the dialogue's coruscating metaphor is reduced yet further.<sup>4</sup>

Kemble was 'An actor whose style combined an unswerving, even regularity with occasional outbursts of great emotion'; his manner and physique made him an exceptional Coriolanus but a less exceptional Macbeth. Since, however, he 'specialized in

<sup>1</sup> Bell's Edition of Shakespeare's Plays, 1, *Macbeth* pagination sequence, p. 69.

<sup>2</sup> James Agate, reviewing Michel Saint-Denis's Old Vic production, 26 November 1937; see Agate, *Brief Chronicles*, 1943, p. 241.

<sup>3</sup> See Joseph W. Donohue, Jr, 'Kemble's production of *Macbeth* (1794): some notes on scene painters, scenery, special effects, and costumes', *ThN* 21 (1966–7), 69, and J. C. Trewin, 'Macbeth in the nineteenth century', *TQ* 1, 3 (1971), 28.

<sup>4</sup> Kemble cut 'in 1, 7 five lines developing the metaphor of "pity, like a naked new-born babe"; in 11, 2 five lines around the metaphor of "Sleep that knits up the raveled sleeve of care"; in 111, 1 seventeen lines of the comparison of men to dogs; in 1V, 2 nine lines of meteorological violence culminating in "nature's germens tumble all together" . . .' (Charles H. Shattuck (ed.), *John Philip Kemble Promptbooks*, 11 vols., 1974, V, *Macbeth* promptbook, p. ii). Siddons's misquotations in her 'Remarks on the character of Lady Macbeth', in Thomas Campbell, *Life of Mrs Siddons*, 2 vols., 1834, II, 10–34 – e.g. 'I would scorn' for 'I shame' (2.2.67) – probably reflect the text she performed rather than a poor memory.



<sup>13</sup> Henry Fuseli's representation, c. 1766, of David Garrick as Macbeth entering to Hannah Pritchard as Lady Macbeth after the murder of King Duncan, Act 2, Scene 2. For a discussion of this watercolour and another contemporary painting of the same performers, see Stephen Leo Carr, 'Verbal-visual relationships: Zoffany's and Fuseli's illustrations of *Macbeth*', *Art History* 3 (1980), 375–85

the subjective presentation of excited mental states in characters whose grip on exterior reality was at best tenuous',<sup>1</sup> his Macbeth complemented Sarah Siddons's famous Lady Macbeth:

Macbeth in Kemble's hand is only a co-operating part. I can conceive Garrick to have sunk Lady Macbeth as much as Mrs Siddons does Macbeth, yet when you see Mrs Siddons play this part you scarcely can believe that any acting could make her part subordinate . . . She turns Macbeth to her purpose, makes him her mere instrument, guides, directs, and inspires the whole plot. Like Macbeth's evil genius she hurries him on in the mad career of ambition and cruelty from which his nature would have shrunk.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Joseph Donohue, 'Macbeth in the eighteenth century', in *TQ*, 1, 3 (1971), 23; for an extended analysis of Kemble's performance, see Donohue, 'Kemble and Mrs Siddons in *Macbeth*: the Romantic approach to tragic character', *ThN* 22 (1967–8), 65–86, and Donohue, *Dramatic Character in the English Romantic Age*, 1970, pp. 253–69.

<sup>2</sup> H. C. Fleeming Jenkin, 'Mrs Siddons as Lady Macbeth. From contemporary notes by George Joseph Bell', *The Nineteenth Century* 3 (1878), 296–313, on Siddons's performance in Edinburgh c. 1809, as reprinted in Jenkin, *Papers on Acting*, III (1915), 25–68; quotation from pp. 35–6. Decades later, the 'evil genius' interpretation prevailed in a discussion of Henry Irving's Macbeth; see the anonymous pamphlet, *Sheridan Knowles' Conception and Mr Irving's Performance of Macbeth*, 1876, p. 19.

The actor who – quite contrary to Garrick's lunging astonishment – greeted the sisters in Act 1, Scene 3, 'with marked inattention and indifference . . . in a *stately* posture, waving the hand with *studied* dignity', became at the end of Act 1, Scene 5, a much subdued figure, with Siddons's Lady Macbeth 'Leading him out, cajoling him, her hand on his shoulder clapping him'.<sup>1</sup>

Returning with the bloody daggers and uncertain of the Lady's whereabouts, Kemble's Macbeth spoke the lines from 'Didst thou not hear a noise?' (2.2.14) 'like a horrid secret – a whisper in the dark' and at the end of the scene stood 'motionless . . . his eye fixed . . . quite rooted to the spot', and Siddons's Lady Macbeth repeats some of the action from Act 1, Scene 5:

Then alarm steals on her, increasing to agony lest his reason be quite gone and discovery be inevitable. Strikes him on the shoulder, pulls him from his fixed posture, forces him away, he talking as he goes.<sup>2</sup>

Sarah Siddons's Lady Macbeth overshadowed her brother's Macbeth,<sup>3</sup> though the turning-point in the characters' relative 'strength' occurred, in their performances as in so many others, during the banquet scene (Act 3, Scene 4). More than 150 years later, Edith Evans commented on Lady Macbeth's 'usually inexplicable collapse' in Act 3, Scene 4 (or somewhere unseen by the audience between that scene and Act 5, Scene 1), and explained why she had never taken the part: 'there's a page missing' – that is, Shakespeare did not supply the character with a bridge or motivation for the change.<sup>4</sup> Kemble – repeating Garrick's business – violently threw his cup of wine when the Ghost first appears; one commentator sarcastically demanded a return to Quin's 'Horror of his Imagination'.<sup>5</sup> On the Ghost's second appearance, Garrick's

<sup>1</sup> A. B. G. [i.e. Augustus Bozzi Granville?], *Critical Observations on Mr Kemble's Performances at the Theatre Royal Liverpool, 1811*, p. 22, and G. J. Bell in Jenkin, p. 44 n. 19. For Garrick's reaction, see Bartholomeusz, p. 41. Nearly a century later, Ellen Terry repeated the gesture to her Macbeth, Henry Irving; see Alan Hughes, *Henry Irving, Shakespearean*, 1981, p. 100.

<sup>2</sup> G. J. Bell in Jenkin, pp. 56–7 n. 44. Going to replace the daggers in Duncan's chamber, Mrs Siddons 'turn[ed] towards him [Macbeth] stooping, and with the finger pointed to him with malignant energy sa[id] "If he do bleed," etc.' (Bell in Jenkin, p. 55 n. 43). Nearly two centuries later (1955), Vivien Leigh's Lady 'push[ed] her Lord off-stage here (see Michael Mullin (ed.), *Macbeth Onstage: An Annotated Facsimile of Glen Byam Shaw's 1955 Promptbook*, 1976, p. 91).

<sup>3</sup> Many observers commented on what one called Kemble's 'calm, slow, phlegmatic enunciation, oftentimes carried to affectation' and did not enjoy the way he spoke Macbeth's soliloquy opening Act 1, Scene 7: 'like a speech to be recited' and 'the sedate, determined reasoning of a cool logician . . . the serene and calm reflection of a metaphysical speculator'. See, respectively, for the first and third quotations, A. B. G., *Critical Observations*, pp. 21 and 24, and for the second, G. J. Bell in Jenkin, p. 45. The same criticism was made much later of Henry Irving's delivery of this soliloquy as 'calm, cold, over-logical . . . passionless' (*Sheridan Knowles' Conception*, p. 13).

<sup>4</sup> Edith Evans, quoted in Jack Tinker's review of the Dench–McKellen *Macbeth*, *Daily Mail*, 10 September 1976; Tinker continues: 'Miss Dench . . . lets us read that missing page. First, by exerting a powerful sexual sway over her husband . . . Then, finding her support brusquely rejected once he has come to power, she is a shattered ghost by the time she has to officiate at the otherwise ghostless feast.' The Edith Evans anecdote may well be apocryphal: another 'nice story' attributes her refusal to play Lady Macbeth to 'the lady's "lack of hospitality"' (Janet Suzman in Carole Woddis (ed.), *'Sheer Bloody Magic': Conversations with Actresses*, 1991, p. 105). For other twentieth-century testimony here, see Maxine Audley (Lady Macduff, Stratford, 1955), p. 81 below.

<sup>5</sup> A. B. G., *Critical Observations*, p. 25. Macready simply put his beaker down (Downer, p. 331).

practice seems to have been undecided, sometimes horrified and immobile, sometimes vigorously forcing the Ghost off-stage.<sup>1</sup>

The moment raises two further questions: does the audience see the Ghost? and how does Lady Macbeth respond to the Ghost? Literary and theatrical critics made the first choice turn on some over-realistic questions: if the Ghost of Act 3, Scene 4, is visible to Macbeth and the audience but not to the guests or to Lady Macbeth, then (critics agree) our awareness associates us with guilty Macbeth. Shakespeare was not so logically scrupulous. Both Banquo and Macbeth see the witches in Act 1, Scene 3, and the Folio text clearly expects the audience to see the witches in Act 3, Scene 5, and Act 4, Scene 1, though in the last case, Lennox has witnessed neither witches nor apparitions. If we believe Simon Forman's Jacobean account, the Ghost seems to have been visible from the earliest performances, but when Kemble reopened Drury Lane on 21 April 1794 with the young Edmund Kean, according to legend, as one of the many goblins, Kemble omitted a visible Ghost of Banquo and thus initiated a long theatrical and critical debate.<sup>2</sup> Kemble 'chid and scolded' the Ghost, imagined or not, 'and rose in vehemence and courage as he went on', but Mrs Siddons, defying contemporary critics – who generally maintained that Lady Macbeth does not here know of Banquo's death and supposes Macbeth is reliving the murder of Duncan – 'imagined that the last appearance of *Banquo's* ghost became no less visible to her [Lady Macbeth's] eyes than it became to those of her husband'.<sup>3</sup> Once the Ghost (invisible to the audience) is driven off and the guests are chaotically dismissed, Mrs Siddons's Lady Macbeth was 'Very sorrowful. Quite exhausted'. Kemble exited strongly, leaving her to follow.<sup>4</sup>

#### LATER STAGINGS AND VERSIONS

The theatrical and critical history of *Macbeth* often reflects changing social attitudes towards women and towards the relations between women and men.<sup>5</sup> Even after David

<sup>1</sup> See Bartholomeusz, pp. 67–8.

<sup>2</sup> For the possibility that Kemble was the first producer to omit the visible ghost, and for Kean as 'goblin', see William Winter, *Shakespeare on the Stage*, series 1, 1911, pp. 461 and 466, respectively. For Banquo's Ghost, see Mrs Siddons's account in Campbell, *Life*, II, 185–7. Kemble 'restored it [the Ghost] only some years later' (Donohue, 'Kemble and Mrs Siddons in *Macbeth*', p. 82); the Ghost does not enter in the late Siddons promptbook (Mrs Inchbald's *British Theatre*, 1808, vol. 4, p. 44; compare Bell in Jenkin, p. 35) until about 3.4.88, but the Ghost's two entrances (3.4.37 SD and 3.4.88 SD) had been fully restored by 1811 (Donohue, *Dramatic Character*, p. 265 n. 59). So far as I can find, the experiment of omitting a visible ghost was next tried in a Drury Lane (London) revival, 2 December 1876, when Joseph Knight (*Theatrical Notes*, 1893, p. 162) objected to it, although Irving used some sort of optical illusion in 1875, later replaced with a physical actor (Hughes, *Irving*, p. 107), and still later replaced with another illusion (see p. 78 below).

<sup>3</sup> See, respectively, G. J. Bell in Jenkin, p. 63, and Siddons, 'Remarks', in Campbell, *Life*, II, 30. Siddons prefacing her conclusion: 'it is not possible that she [Lady Macbeth] should hear all these ambiguous hints about *Banquo* [in Act 3, Scene 2] without being too well aware that a sudden, lamentable fate awaits him'. On whose ghost the on-stage audience imagines, see also Robert F. Willson, Jr, 'Macbeth the player king: the banquet scene as frustrated play within the play', *Shakespeare Jahrbuch* (Weimar), 114 (1978), 107–14. At Stratford in 1955, the Ghost exited at (3.4.71) by walking between Lord and Lady Macbeth, thereby demonstrating that it is invisible to her; see *Macbeth Onstage*, p. 147.

<sup>4</sup> See Bell in Jenkin, p. 65, and Donohue, 'Kemble and Mrs Siddons in *Macbeth*', p. 84. W. C. Macready used the same business (Downer, p. 333).

<sup>5</sup> On this approach to theatre history, see: 'to recognise the limited and culturally bound character of the

Garrick removed from the staged play some of Davenant's crowd-pleasing witch-business – they sang, they danced, they flew – the witches were still (in 1833) treated primarily as comic rather than as threatening, ominous, or indefinably evil:

It has been always customary, – heaven only knows why, – to make low comedians act the witches, and to dress them like old fishwomen . . . with as due a proportion of petticoats as any woman, letting alone witch, might desire, jocose red faces, peaked hats, and broomsticks.<sup>1</sup>

If theatrical or cultural conceptions or prejudices stipulate witches who do not somehow radiate danger or threaten evil, productions will stress Lady Macbeth as instigator or promoter of regicide and violence. Alternatively, the less comical the witches, the more they appear causative. And the more they seem to be causative agents, the more they will be associated with, or represented as, demonic women.<sup>2</sup> For more than 150 years after the Restoration, performances usually represented Lady Macbeth as a 'bloody-minded virago' or 'female fiend', driving her heroic, noble husband – 'even the dupe of his uxoriousness' – to more and more violent acts.<sup>3</sup> Hannah Pritchard and Sarah Siddons adopted this characterisation, or so those who saw them thought, though in retirement Mrs Siddons described the character quite differently.<sup>4</sup>

The necessarily twinned possibilities that Lady Macbeth might be a tender, companionate wife, eager to advance her husband's career and to please him, and that Macbeth himself is not an heroic dupe and/or a superstitious warrior but the main, controlling criminal, arose in the aftermath of the long-dominant Pritchard–Siddons tradition.<sup>5</sup> By the late 1830s and early 1840s, these ideas entered English-language criticism. William Maginn commented:

evidence is not to despair of theatre history. Rather it serves to rescue it from mere antiquarian accumulation of memorabilia, providing a point of access into cultural history, a means of exploring the dynamic created by the interaction of the culture of the past on the culture of the present' (John Webster, *The Duchess of Malfi*, ed. Kathleen McLuskie and Jennifer Uglow, 1989, p. 3), and for the wider implications of performances in the nineteenth century, see e.g. Nina Auerbach's characterisation of the Victorian woman-mythos: 'victim and queen, domestic angel and demonic outcast' (*Woman and the Demon: The Life of a Victorian Myth*, 1982, p. 9).

<sup>1</sup> Fanny Kemble, *Journal*, 18 February 1833, quoted in Sprague, p. 224. Laughable witches – almost always men – persisted in the theatre partly because *Macbeth* provides few opportunities for a company's comic specialists. Powerful as modern audiences find his contribution, the Porter may have originated as a practical concession to the King's Men's main comic actor (see Appendix 1, p. 264 below). Like the Padua promptbook, many post-Restoration productions cut the Porter (probably for his obscenity), but (as compensation?) Davenant's ludicrous witches continued well into the nineteenth century, though performances as early as that of Powell and Yates on 20 January 1768 and those of Macklin in the next decade presented the witches 'seriously' (Bartholomeusz, pp. 95 and 89).

<sup>2</sup> This latter reflection (not obvious to me), I owe to Christine Krueger; here, theatrical performance substantiates Adelman's critical approach to *Macbeth*.

<sup>3</sup> See, respectively, [Francis Gentleman,] *Dramatic Censor*, 1, 87 and 89, and William Hazlitt, 'Mr [Edmund] Kean's Macbeth', *The Champion*, 13 November 1814, rpt. in Hazlitt, *Dramatic Essays*, ed. William Archer and Robert W. Lowe, 1895, p. 30. Significant portions of Hazlitt's review are reprinted in his *Characters of Shakespear's Plays*, 1817. Notably, the two 'historical' narratives in Holinshed's *Chronicles* that Shakespeare most relies on, the reigns of King Duff and King Duncan, both contain wives who are labelled as ambitious and homicidal.

<sup>4</sup> See her 'Remarks' in Campbell, *Life*, II, 10–34; among others, J. Comyns Carr, *Macbeth and Lady Macbeth*, 1889, notes (p. 11) the discrepancy between Siddons's 'Remarks' and her recorded performances; see also G. J. Bell in Jenkin, *passim*.

<sup>5</sup> For an overview of how theatrical versions of the relation between Macbeth and Lady Macbeth changed, see Marvin Rosenberg, 'Macbeth and Lady Macbeth in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries', in

To a mind so disposed, temptation is unnecessary. The thing [the planned regicide] was done [in Act 1, Scene 3]. Duncan was marked out for murder before the letter [of Act 1, Scene 5] was written to Lady Macbeth, and she only followed the thought of her husband. Love for him is in fact her guiding passion . . . Bold was her bearing, reckless and defying her tongue, when her husband was to be served or saved . . .<sup>1</sup>

A few years later, presciently joining textual, critical, and theatrical insight, George Fletcher absolves the witches and Lady Macbeth and arraigns Macbeth, who has ‘the purpose, not suggested to him by any one, but gratuitously and deliberately formed within his own breast, of murdering his royal kinsman . . . to usurp his crown’.<sup>2</sup>

Fletcher’s essay is far more comprehensive, though less eye-catching, than Maginn’s similarly character-centred, moralistic analysis. Fletcher wrote at a major turning-point in conceptions of *Macbeth*, and he advocates controversial propositions that governed criticism and performance well into the twentieth century,<sup>3</sup> judging Macbeth a ‘moral coward’ given to ‘poetical whining’ (pp. 125 and 152). Lady Macbeth is a loving wife who ‘covets the crown for her husband even more eagerly than he desires it for himself’ and wants to make him ‘happier as well as greater’ (pp. 119 and 118); she goes mad when she discovers ‘that all she had mistaken in Macbeth for “the milk of human kindness” was but mere selfish apprehensiveness’ and ‘that he is capable of no true affection . . . even towards her’ (p. 157). The weird sisters are neither comedians nor the phantoms of superstition, but ‘spirits of darkness’ which Shakespeare uses to develop ‘the evil tendencies inherent in [Macbeth]’ (pp. 143 and 141). Splenetically, Fletcher inveighs against the Davenant–Garrick–Kemble textual tradition: cutting the Porter ‘destroys . . . the coherence and probability of the incident’ (p. 163); keeping Lady Macbeth off-stage in Act 2, Scene 3, produces ‘doubly gross improbability’ (p. 164);<sup>4</sup> suppressing ‘the scenes [sic] in Macduff’s castle’ – the murder of Lady Macduff and her son – is ‘most injurious of all’ (p. 166).

Fletcher admired Helen Faucit as Constance in *King John* and proposed her as a Lady Macbeth potentially greater than Sarah Siddons. London theatre-goers could have seen Faucit’s Lady Macbeth for one performance with William Charles

*Focus*, pp. 73–86; on changing theatrical versions of Lady Macbeth, see Rosenberg, pp. 158–205. Donohue, *Dramatic Character*, pp. 257 and 268, sees ‘conjugal love’ as motivating Mrs Siddons’s Lady; I do not.

<sup>1</sup> William Maginn, ‘Lady Macbeth’, *Bentley’s Miscellany* 2 (1837), 550–67, as reprinted in Maginn, *Miscellaneous Writings*, ed. Shelton MacKenzie, 5 vols., 1855–7, III (1856), 171–208; quotations from pp. 194 and 197.

<sup>2</sup> George Fletcher, ‘*Macbeth*: Shakespearian criticism and acting’, *Westminster Review* 41 (1844), 1–72, reprinted and slightly revised as ‘Characters in “Macbeth”’ in his *Studies of Shakespeare*, 1847, pp. 109–98; quotation from p. 113. Fletcher seems to be the first writer to claim that Macbeth planned usurpation prior to the action dramatised in the play.

<sup>3</sup> Character-analysis dominates Fletcher’s essay until its final sections on textual ‘corruptions’ and the acting tradition. Fletcher’s views of the sisters partly arise from moral anxiety: ‘we should not mistake him [Shakespeare] as having represented that spirits of darkness are here permitted absolutely and gratuitously to seduce his hero from a state of perfectly innocent intention . . . such an error . . . vitiates and debases the moral to be drawn from the whole piece. Macbeth does not project the murder of Duncan because of his encounter with the weird sisters; the weird sisters encounter him because he has projected the murder . . .’ (p. 143). Parenthetical references in this paragraph are to Fletcher’s *Studies in Shakespeare*. Fletcher’s views reappear at least as recently as Byam Shaw’s 1955 production; see p. 82 below.

<sup>4</sup> Eighteenth-century productions, including those with Sarah Siddons, and many nineteenth-century ones cut Lady Macbeth from this scene: see Davies, *Micellanies*, II, 152–3.

Macready at Drury Lane on 17 April 1843, but reports from Dublin, Paris, and Edinburgh allowed Fletcher to add a postscript (21 December 1846):

her possession of that *essentially feminine* person . . . together with that energy of intellect and of will, which this personation equally demands, – have enabled her to interpret the character with a convincing truth of nature and of feeling, more awfully thrilling than the imposing but less natural, and therefore less impressive grandeur of Mrs Siddons's representation. Her performance, in short, would seem to have exhibited . . . not the 'fiend' that Mrs Siddons presented to her most ardent admirers – but the far more interesting picture of a naturally generous woman, depraved by her very self-devotion to the ambitious purpose of a merely selfish man.<sup>1</sup>

Two decades later, Henry Morley confirmed these accounts: Faust's Lady Macbeth is 'essentially feminine, too exclusively gifted with the art of expressing all that is most graceful and beautiful in womanhood, to succeed in inspiring anything like awe or terror'; at the end of Act 3, Scene 4, she 'collapse[d] into [the] weariness of life-long torture'.<sup>2</sup> This production included the wholly unShakespearean but not entirely Victorian detail of Fleance's silent presence in Act 3, Scene 1, where Faust's Lady Macbeth played 'her fingers about the head of the child *Fleance* . . . The fingers of the woman who has been a mother, and has murder on her soul, wander sadly and tenderly over the type of her lost innocence'.<sup>3</sup>

Just what this Victorian conception of Lady Macbeth as 'essentially feminine' meant, appears from Henry Morley's admiring description of Faust's Imogen (in *Cymbeline*), 'the purest and most womanly of Shakespeare's women':

all the qualities that blend to form a womanly perfection, – simple piety, wifely devotion, instinctive, unobtrusive modesty, gentle courtesy, moral heroism, with all physical cowardice, – no thin ideal, but a very woman, who includes among her virtues aptitude for cookery.<sup>4</sup>

Stereotyped and culturally determined as this view of 'womanly perfection' is, Morley knew it deviated sharply from the Betterton–Barry–Pritchard–Siddons Lady Macbeth: Faust offered 'a most harmonious interpretation of the part according to that reading which finds all its womanhood in *Lady Macbeth's* character'.<sup>5</sup> Fletcher praised (9 October 1847) Samuel Phelps's then-new Sadler's Wells production for

<sup>1</sup> Fletcher, *Studies*, p. 198; 'fiend' had been used by Siddons ('Remarks' in Campbell, *Life*, II, 19) and her admirers. Other English-language critics found Faust's Lady Macbeth revolutionary: see William Carleton to William Stokes, letter, Dublin, 27 November 1846, quoted in Helen Faust, *On Some of Shakespeare's Female Characters*, enlarged edn, 1891, pp. 401–3, and Theodore Martin, *Helena Faust*, 2nd edn, 1900, pp. 159–60 (an anecdote not substantiated by 'Christopher North' [i.e. John Wilson], 'Dies Boreales. No. V', *Blackwood's Edinburgh Magazine* 66 (November 1849), 620–54).

<sup>2</sup> Henry Morley, *The Journal of a London Playgoer, from 1851 to 1866*, 1866, pp. 350 and 353, discussing a Faust–Samuel Phelps Drury Lane performance, 3 December 1864. Carol J. Carlisle, 'Helen Faust's Lady Macbeth', *S.S.* 16 (1983), 205–33, reprints many contemporary criticisms with a scene-by-scene reconstruction of Faust's performance; my account is independent of Carlisle's and sometimes disagrees with it.

<sup>3</sup> Morley, pp. 352–3. Faust apparently adopted the gesture from Macready (see Downer, p. 329). Sprague (pp. 247–8) reports that Kemble brought on Fleance in this scene, as did Herbert Beerbohm Tree (see Gordon Crosse, *Shakespearean Playgoing, 1890–1952*, 1953, p. 39), and Fleance appeared in 3.1 as recently as Byam Shaw's 1955 Stratford production (*Macbeth Onstage*, p. 118) and Roman Polanski's film of *Macbeth* (1971), where Macbeth tweaks Fleance's cheek at this moment. Late in her career, Faust seems to have been the first English actress since before Garrick's time to appear in Act 2, Scene 3 (Carlisle, 'Helen Faust's Lady Macbeth', pp. 218–19), and see headnote to Act 2, Scene 3.

<sup>4</sup> Morley, p. 355.

<sup>5</sup> Morley, p. 353, commenting on a return visit, 17 December 1864, to the Faust–Phelps production.

'dismissing *in toto* the operatic insertions, and restoring the suppressed characters, scenes, and speeches', though Fletcher still grumbled over Banquo's visible ghost and thought 'The "weird sisters," though divested in great part of their former grossness by Mr Phelps's treatment, still need a little more refining.'<sup>1</sup>

Theatre dotes on old tradition and new fashion. While some audiences, actors, and critics continued to espouse earlier ideas, theatrical and critical perception of the witches gradually changed in concert with Faucit's 'new', 'feminine' Lady Macbeth and the Lady's newly independent, criminal and/or cowardly husband. By the middle of the nineteenth century, William Wetmore Story's observations had become fairly conventional: Lady Macbeth, 'having committed one crime, dies of remorse'; Macbeth 'is a thorough hypocrite' and 'a victim of superstitious fears, and a mere coward'; 'The witches are a projection of his [Macbeth's] own desires and superstitions. They . . . prophes[y] in response to his own desires' and are therefore neither instigators nor determinants of his behaviour.<sup>2</sup>

Eighteenth- and nineteenth-century critics often compared Richard III with Macbeth – the two were the most notable Shakespearean villain–heroes – and Edmund Kean, the tragic actor whose brief career spanned the end of Kemble's and the beginning of Macready's, was an unsurpassable Richard III, but a relatively weak Macbeth, 'deficient in the poetry of the character'.<sup>3</sup> Macready, unremittingly competitive and relentlessly self-critical, probably spoke true when he complained that 'a newspaper . . . gave me very moderate praise for Macbeth, observing that though good, it was not so good as Kean's, which was a total failure'.<sup>4</sup>

Macready was one of the few to criticise Helen Faucit, 'whom I do not like; she wants heart';<sup>5</sup> he was also the earliest and finest Macbeth to play opposite her Lady Macbeth, and he generously recognised her new interpretation:

Rehearsed Macbeth; was very much struck with Miss Faucit's rehearsal of Lady Macbeth, which surprised and gratified me very much. Acted [that night] Macbeth as well as my harassed mind and worn-down body would let me. Called for [by the audience] and well received. Would have taken on [stage, for a curtain call] Miss Faucit, but she [had taken off her costume] . . . Spoke . . . afterwards . . . with her about her acting, which was *remarkably* good.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Fletcher, *Studies*, p. 383. Specifically, Phelps 'dropped the music and the interpolated words, restored Lady Maeduff and her son, killed Macbeth off-stage and brought on his head on a pole'; see Muriel St Clare Byrne, 'Fifty years of Shakespearian production: 1898–1948', *S.Sur.* 2 (1949), 2.

<sup>2</sup> William Wetmore Story, 'Distortions of the English stage as instanced in "Macbeth"', *National Review* 17 (1863), 292–322, as reprinted in his *Excursions in Art and Letters*, 1891, pp. 232–86; quotations from pp. 240, 241, 246, and 264. See the discussion of Henry Irving's performances, pp. 77–8 below.

<sup>3</sup> See Hazlitt, 'Mr Kean's Macbeth', pp. 30–1. For other comparisons of Richard III with Macbeth, see e.g. William Guthrie, *An Essay upon English Tragedy*, 1757, pp. 12–13; Elizabeth Montagu, *An Essay on the Writings and Genius of Shakespear*, 1769, p. 176; [Francis Gentleman,] *Dramatic Censor*, 1, 106; Thomas Whately, *Remarks on Some of the Characters of Shakespeare*, 1785; J. P. Kemble, *Macbeth and King Richard the Third*, 1786, enlarged edn, 1817; Winter, pp. 467–8; Farnham, *Shakespeare's Tragic Frontier*, pp. 104–5; Donohuc, *Dramatic Character*, chapter 8. The Richard III–Macbeth comparison is so ingrained that Davies, *Micellanies*, II, 168, attributes *Macbeth* 3.2.55 ('Things bad begun, make strong themselves by ill') to *Richard III*.

<sup>4</sup> William Toynbee (ed.), *The Diaries of W. C. Macready, 1833–1851*, 2 vols., 1912, I, 112 (11 March 1834).

<sup>5</sup> *Ibid.*, I, 322 (1 June 1836).

<sup>6</sup> *Ibid.*, II, 174 (Dublin, 6 June 1842), on Faucit's first public performance of Lady Macbeth; for other reactions to her performance, see p. 70 above, n. 1. Faucit and Macready had further successes in Edinburgh and Paris. Faucit's later Macbeth, Samuel Phelps, a manager justly honoured for recovering

Macready compromised between the 'old' heroic Macbeth and the 'new' weak but criminal Macbeth.<sup>1</sup> One 'judicious and effective innovation' was his 'air of bewildered agitation upon coming on the stage [in Act 1, Scene 5, presumably] after the interview with the weird sisters', and George Bell, an experienced playgoer, describes Macbeth facing Banquo's Ghost on its second appearance:

Macready plays this well. Even Kemble chid and scolded the ghost out! and rose in vehemence and courage as he went on. Macready began in the vehemence of despair, but, overcome by terror as he continued to gaze on the apparition, dropped his voice lower and lower till he became tremulous and inarticulate, and at last uttering a subdued cry of mortal agony and horror, he suddenly cast his mantle over his face, and sank back almost lifeless on his seat.<sup>2</sup>

It is noticeable that Macready, the unnerved and superstitious victim, was quite ready to use his hero's truncheon on other actors or impertinent members of the audience (see illustration 14).<sup>3</sup>

Macready, having played opposite Façit's 'new' Lady Macbeth, was also partner to one of his era's most violent (or 'most imperial')<sup>4</sup> Lady Macbeths, the American Charlotte Cushman, whose

style of acting, while it lacked imagination, possessed in a remarkable degree the elements of force . . . [s]he was intensely prosaic, definitely practical, and hence her perfect identity with . . . the materialism of Lady Macbeth . . . [Cushman exhibited] the coarse features and harsh voice of the heroine of a melodrama . . . Thus is one of Shakespeare's grandest dramatic conceptions dragged down to the lowest level of a mere sensational exhibition.<sup>5</sup>

After his first performance with Cushman in Boston, Macready commented: 'Miss Cushman . . . interested me much. She has to learn her art, but she showed mind and sympathy with me; a novelty so refreshing to me on the stage.'<sup>6</sup> Macready grew more critical of Cushman, especially after her first, highly successful visit to England, but she learned from him and seems to have repeated some of his technique, and even in these early performances an English observer could consciously compare the two:

Shakespeare's texts theatrically, was also, Façit said, a 'very inadequate successor' to Macready, who himself regarded Phelps as an actor who was 'afraid to play the first and averse to take the second characters'. See Façit, *Shakespeare's Female Characters*, p. 234, and Macready, *Diaries*, I, 427.

<sup>1</sup> See G. H. Lewes, *On Actors and the Art of Acting*, Leipzig, 1875 (not the '2nd edn' of London, also 1875), pp. 46–7: 'nothing could have been less heroic than his [Macready's] presentation of the great criminal. He [Macready] was fretful and impatient under the taunts and provocations of his wife; he was ignoble under the terrors of remorse; he stole into the sleeping-chamber of Duncan [2.2] like a man going to purloin a purse, not like a warrior going to snatch a crown.'

<sup>2</sup> See, respectively, *Morning Herald*, 10 June 1820 (a review of Macready's first *Macbeth*) quoted in Frederick Pollock (ed.), *Macready's Reminiscences*, 2 vols., 1875, I, 214, and G. J. Bell in Jenkin, p. 63 n. 58. Downer, pp. 318–38, reconstructs Macready's *Macbeth*, with its 'elaborate scenery and crowds of well-drilled supers' (Crosse, p. 35).

<sup>3</sup> For the truncheon used to strike another actor, see James E. Murdoch, *The Stage, or Recollections of Actors and Acting*, 1880, pp. 104–6; as an implement to threaten riotous audience members, Macready, *Diaries*, II, 425 (New York, 10 May 1849). At least once, the truncheon disconcertingly broke; see Macready, *Diaries*, I, 75 (4 November 1833). See also Sprague, pp. 229 and 406 n. 18.

<sup>4</sup> Winter, p. 500.

<sup>5</sup> Murdoch, *The Stage*, pp. 240 and 242.

<sup>6</sup> Macready, *Diaries*, II, 230 (Boston, 23 October 1843); in December, the two performed *Macbeth* in New York.



14 William Charles Macready (with heroic truncheon) as Macbeth

with this great and cultivated artist she held her own. She had not had his experience, but she had genius. There were times when she more than rivalled him; when in truth she made him play second . . . I have seen her throw such energy, physical and mental, into her performance, as to weaken for the time the impression of Mr Macready's magnificent acting.<sup>1</sup>

Macready seems to have been proudest of his performance in the fifth act (after Lady Macbeth is finally off the stage!), where he emphasised both 'pathos' and a kind of desperate physical heroism.<sup>2</sup>

*Macbeth* is not the only Shakespearean play to have provoked riots, but it has occasioned several, including the most deadly one of all. Chance or commercial shrewdness may explain why Kemble chose *Macbeth* for the first night (18 September 1809) when new prices were demanded for many places in the rebuilt Covent Garden Theatre: the 'O. P.' ('Old Price') disturbances ensued for seventy days. Earlier, in October 1773, Charles Macklin, an actor then in his seventies and famed for comedy and for an innovative Shylock, had played Macbeth at Covent Garden. Macklin's enemies, perhaps a pro-Garrick group, and the partisans of 'Gentleman' Smith (the actor of *Macbeth* whom Macklin had displaced) objected and hired a *claque* who fomented another destructive but non-fatal riot at a performance of *The Merchant of Venice* (18 November 1773).<sup>3</sup> If Charlotte Cushman was a throwback to earlier ideas of Lady Macbeth, her countryman Edwin Forrest, who also had a successful career in England, was 'the robust warrior'<sup>4</sup> Macbeth in the older mould. In New York in 1849, he and Macready (who was appearing at the Astor Place Opera House) offered two directly competing interpretations, and the ensuing public disagreements, fuelled by the actors' well-publicised antagonism and by jingoistic, xenophobic, and dimly 'patriotic' energies, produced the 'Astor Place riot' in which twenty or more people died (10 May 1849).<sup>5</sup>

Although Helen Faust's 'new' Lady Macbeth had been anticipated in Germany,<sup>6</sup> the older conception of the part remained, and remains today, a living theatrical possibility. In 1857, Adelaide Ristori (illustration 15), then Italy's greatest tragedienne

<sup>1</sup> Letter to a Boston, Massachusetts, newspaper, 1863, quoted without further identification in Emma Stebbins, *Charlotte Cushman: Her Letters and Memories of Her Life*, 1879, p. 32. On Cushman's learning from Macready, see Joseph Leach, *Bright Particular Star: The Life and Times of Charlotte Cushman*, 1970, pp. 120–1.

<sup>2</sup> For 'pathos', see the *Morning Herald* review cited at p. 72 above, n. 2; for Act 5, see Macready, *Diaries*, II, 495–6 (26 February 1851, his farewell).

<sup>3</sup> See William W. Appleton, *Charles Macklin: An Actor's Life*, 1960, pp. 178–86.

<sup>4</sup> Winter, p. 474. My account slights North American performances *in toto*; for some redress, see Charles H. Shattuck, *Shakespeare on the American Stage*, 2 vols., 1976–87, and the comprehensive list and knowledgeable commentary in Thomas Wheeler, *Macbeth: An Annotated Bibliography*, 1990, pp. 767–812, esp. pp. 807–12.

<sup>5</sup> See Richard Moody, *The Astor Place Riot*, 1958, and the slightly pro-Macready discussion in Downer, pp. 290–310. Lawrence W. Levine, *Highbrow/Lowbrow: The Emergence of Cultural Hierarchy in America*, 1988, considers the riot 'a struggle for power and cultural authority . . . simultaneously an indication of and a catalyst for the cultural changes that came to characterise the United States at the end of the [nineteenth] century' (p. 68). See also Richard Nelson, *Two Shakespearean Actors*, 1990, a play about the actors' rivalry and this incident.

<sup>6</sup> Rosenberg (pp. 175–8) finds the 'devoted wife' interpretation of Lady Macbeth several decades earlier in performances by Rosalie Nouseul and Frederike Bethmann and in criticism by Franz Horn and Ludwig Tieck in Germany.



15 Adelaide Ristori as Lady Macbeth

and first international star, and later to be mentioned by George Eliot and James Joyce, travelled to London with *Macbetto*, an Italian verse-adaptation by Giulio Carcano which Verdi used as a basis for his opera, *Macbeth*.<sup>1</sup> Ristori gave a traditional, Siddons-like performance, albeit underplayed and nuanced so that critics were struck by her subtle facial and postural acting and the way she ignored traditional actor's 'points':

Madame Ristori conceives *Lady Macbeth* as a woman who pens up her emotions, who is watchful, self-contained, who fights against compunctions visitings of nature without letting a stir be seen . . . [In Act 1, Scene 6,] [t]here is . . . a false expression playing faintly now and then across her face . . . When at the close [of Act 1, Scene 7] he [Macbeth], for the first time, speaks as an accomplice, her face brightens with exultation . . . and . . . she repeats the . . . exit [of Act 1, Scene 5].<sup>2</sup>

Having 'hurried over' Lady Macbeth's admission, 'Had he not resembled / My father as he slept, I had done' (2.2.12–13), Ristori reacted emotionally to Macbeth's description of Duncan's body (2.3.104–7): 'and then the point is made that ninety-nine actresses in a hundred would assuredly have tried to make before'.<sup>3</sup>

Ristori performed *Lady Macbeth* in English in London (Drury Lane, 3 July 1882) and, later, in New York and Philadelphia with Edwin Booth, but she made her earliest impression supported 'feeble enough' by a cast speaking Italian before an English audience (who could refer, like some modern opera audiences, to a parallel-text Italian–English libretto).<sup>4</sup> While that libretto by Carcano followed the Folio fairly closely, it was also severely cut: all of Lady Macbeth's scenes are present except Act 3, Scene 1; only the first seven lines of Act 3, Scene 2, remain. The libretto ends barely a page after Lady Macbeth's final appearance in Act 5, Scene 1.<sup>5</sup>

In this emphasis upon Lady Macbeth, in its consequent diminution of her husband's part, as well as in many other cuts and shifts of emphasis, the Ristori version echoes the greatest adaptation of *Macbeth* and the only one in which we may today

<sup>1</sup> On Giulio Carcano and Verdi, see Laura Caretti, 'La regia di Lady Macbeth', in Laura Caretti (ed.), *Il Teatro del personaggio: Shakespeare sulla scena italiana dell'800*, 1979, pp. 167–9. For Ristori's English and Irish tours, see Cristina Giorcelli, 'Adelaide Ristori sulle scene britanniche e irlandesi', *Teatro Archivio* 5 (September, 1981), 81–147, esp. pp. 103–8 and 128–9; pp. 142–5 identify Ristori in Eliot and Joyce. Tommaso Salvini and Ernesto Rossi also achieved considerable success as Macbeth in England and America; see Winter (an eyewitness of Salvini), pp. 486–9; Caretti; Marvin Carlson, *The Italian Shakespearians*, 1985, chapters 7 and 15. According to Henry James, Salvini was particularly effective because he did not rant; he also restored such frequently omitted characters as the Porter and Third Murderer (Carlson, pp. 94 and 96–7). For Rossi and Salvini, see Caretti and Giorcelli *passim*.

<sup>2</sup> Morley, pp. 186–8 (25 July 1857); for the similarity of Ristori's and Siddons's performances, see Adelaide Ristori, *Studies and Memoirs*, 1888, p. 258. Giorcelli, 'Adelaide Ristori', offers a full selection of contemporary accounts.

<sup>3</sup> Morley, p. 189; see 2.3.111 n. below.

<sup>4</sup> See Carlson, p. 35; Adelaide Ristori, *Memoirs and Artistic Studies*, trans. G. Mantellini, 1907, p. 107; Henry Knepler, *The Gilded Stage*, 1968, p. 113; Morley, p. 218. Tommaso Salvini and Ernesto Rossi also performed in bilingual productions in the United States (Carlson, pp. 54–5).

<sup>5</sup> See the Italian–French libretto, trans. Giulio Carcano and P. Raymond-Signouret, *Répertoire de Mme A. Ristori*, 1858; I have not seen the Italian–English 'libretto' Morley (p. 191) mentions, but it is likely to be identical with *Macbeth* (New York: Sanford, Harroun, 1866) 'adapted expressly for Madame Ristori'; the libretto published for the 1876 performances also survives (see William Weaver in David Rosen and Andrew Porter (eds.), *Verdi's 'Macbeth'*, 1984, p. 148 n. 16). For further details, see Carlson, chapter 3, and, for the later New York version, Caretti, p. 169 n. 51 and p. 170.

have a sense of the play's nineteenth-century, and perhaps earlier, form and appeal: Giuseppe Verdi's *Macbeth*. '[T]he first Italian opera to make a real attempt to be Shakespearean', Verdi's *Macbeth* is not his finest operatic response to 'a favorite poet of mine, whom I have had in my hands from earliest youth, and whom I read and reread constantly' – Verdi's *Otello* and *Falstaff* are undeniably greater and usually more beautiful – but '[staging] ideas from London, where this tragedy has been produced continually for over 200 years' influenced his first *Macbeth* (1847), and Verdi apparently knew Macready's London performance and, certainly, Ristori's later ones, and they influenced the revised version (Paris, 1865).<sup>1</sup> In Verdi's opera, along with the intensification of Lady Macbeth there went an immediately controversial treatment of the witches and other supernatural or 'grotesque' material, redolent of Victorian non-musical stagings.<sup>2</sup>

After W. C. Macready, only two Victorian–Edwardian English actor-managers, Sir Henry Irving (the first theatre knight) and Sir Herbert Beerbohm Tree (the second), contributed significantly to views of *Macbeth*. As a young actor, Irving had been 'instructed' by Charlotte Cushman,<sup>3</sup> and in 1875 he offered a controversial, anti-Cushman interpretation when Kate Bateman was an undistinguished Lady Macbeth. Though his Lyceum Theatre became 'a national institution', this first *Macbeth* was instantly attacked: 'the irresolution' Macbeth 'displays in the earlier scenes' of the play arises from 'personal fear', and Irving's Macbeth is a 'cowardly, remorseless villain . . . from the very first'.<sup>4</sup> In 1888 Irving played Macbeth again, in a fresh interpretation, with Ellen Terry as Lady Macbeth,<sup>5</sup> and Percy Fitzgerald reviewed the new production more positively: 'The Scotch chieftain and his lady are shown, not simply as mere human, but almost creatures of necessity, subservient to the pressure of a weak, nerveless nature in the one case, and of a devoted conjugal affection in the other'.<sup>6</sup> Some critical views changed between 1875 and 1888, and part of the reason must be the change from Kate Bateman to Ellen Terry, who had already established a reputation as 'feminine' and 'gentle' and claims in her diary that 'Those who don't like me in it [*Macbeth*] are those who don't want, and don't like to read it fresh from Shakespeare, and who hold by the "fiend" reading of the character'.<sup>7</sup>

Terry had no doubts about Irving's choices:

<sup>1</sup> See, respectively, the following in Rosen and Porter: William Weaver (p. 147); Verdi to Léon Escudier, 28 April 1865 (p. 144); Verdi to Alessandro Lanari, 22 December 1846 (p. 27), and (on later stagings) Verdi to Escudier, 23 January 1865 (p. 90); Weaver (p. 144, on Verdi and Macready); Verdi to Escudier, 11 March 1865 on Ristori (p. 110 and see p. 111).

<sup>2</sup> For early Italian responses, see especially Marcello Conati in Rosen and Porter, pp. 231–3, and, for the *genere fantastico*, see Verdi to Lanari, 17 May 1846 (*ibid.*, p. 4 and n. 1). For the emphasis on Lady Macbeth, see Jonas Barish, 'Madness, hallucination, and sleepwalking', *ibid.*, pp. 149–55.

<sup>3</sup> Leach, *Bright Particular Star*, p. 267.

<sup>4</sup> See Crosse, p. 18, and Sheridan Knowles' *Conception*, p. 7. The anonymous author goes on to complain that Irving's Macbeth 'has no genuine conscientious scruples. He never really hesitates in his purpose, but simply lacks the pluck or the nerve necessary for its execution. Lady Macbeth is the opposite of all this – the man irresolute and weak, the wife strong and determined' (p. 15).

<sup>5</sup> Hughes, *Irving*, p. 92.

<sup>6</sup> Percy Fitzgerald, 'Macbeth', *The Theatre* n.s. 13 (February 1889), 101.

<sup>7</sup> Ellen Terry, *The Story of My Life*, 1908, p. 306.

His view of 'Macbeth,' though attacked and derided and put to shame in many quarters, is as clear to me as the sunlight itself. To me it seems as stupid to quarrel with the conception as to deny the nose on one's face. But the carrying out of the conception was unequal. Henry's imagination was sometimes his worst enemy.'

All the old arguments over the relative strengths and relative heroisms of Lord and Lady Macbeth returned. 'The reading of the character [Macbeth] is robbed of one of its most effective dramatic elements in the loss of the contrast between a noble and ignoble side of Macbeth's nature'; Ellen Terry's performance, though beautiful, is 'the whitewashing of Lady Macbeth'.<sup>2</sup> Twenty years after she first played Lady Macbeth, Terry rebutted this view of Irving's Macbeth when she famously recalled him 'in the last act after the battle when he looked like a great famished wolf, weak with the weakness of a giant exhausted, spent as one whose exertions have been ten times as great as those of commoner men of rougher fibre and coarser strength'.<sup>3</sup>

After Macready withdrew from the stage, the nineteenth-century theatre saw increasingly tender, 'feminine', 'wifely' Lady Macbeths and increasingly criminal and violent Macbeths, in no small part because the play's spectacle was shifted from comic and mechanically equipped witches to witches, no less spectacular and no less equipped, but now having supernatural and demonic mystery. Whatever the complaints about Irving's cowardly Macbeth or Terry's too tenderly beautiful Lady Macbeth, critics agreed on the power of the witches in their performances:

they are always enveloped in awe-inspiring gloom . . . or by . . . ruddy glow . . . even the *nil admirari* materialist spectator of today is more inclined to shudder than to sneer.<sup>4</sup>

And Irving found, when he took his *Macbeth* to the United States in 1895, a 'solution' to the problem of Banquo's Ghost – 'a greenish light shining on an empty stool' – that satisfied his audience.<sup>5</sup>

Herbert Beerbohm Tree, 'rising into the second place [after Irving] as a producer of Shakespeare'<sup>6</sup> on the London stage, could have known A. C. Bradley's influential critical account (1904) of *Macbeth*. Tree is usually remembered for his elaborate and highly detailed illusionistic productions, in which he raised 'illustrative' Shakespeare to new and eventually self-defeating heights, taking hints from the text to produce finical, time-consuming, and unscripted *tableaux vivants*.<sup>7</sup> Yet Ellen Terry's son,

<sup>1</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 303. For a representative attack on Terry's performance, see *The Stage*, reprinted in *TQ* 1, 3 (1971), 34. Hughes, *Irving*, chapter 3, analyses Irving's *Macbeth* in detail, and I draw upon that discussion extensively and gratefully.

<sup>2</sup> *Illustrated Sporting and Dramatic News*, 5 January 1889.

<sup>3</sup> Terry, *Story*, pp. 303 and 306, respectively. According to William Poel's hostile account (*The Times*, 31 December 1888, quoted in W. Moelwyn Merchant, *Shakespeare and the Artist*, 1959, p. 139), Irving accepted Holinshed's chronology and played Macbeth as an old man in Act 5; the Byam Shaw production (Stratford, 1955) made the same choice (see p. 80 below, n. 3).

<sup>4</sup> *Illustrated Sporting and Dramatic News*, 5 January 1889.

<sup>5</sup> Shattuck, *Shakespeare on the American Stage*, II, 183; Shattuck's treatment (II, 176–83) of this production repays close attention. Compare Komisarjevsky's 1933 Stratford version of this episode (p. 79 below).

<sup>6</sup> Crosse, pp. 18–19.

<sup>7</sup> For the possibility that Bradley influenced Tree's production, see Michael Mullin, 'Strange images of death: Sir Herbert Beerbohm Tree's *Macbeth*, 1911', *Theatre Survey* 17 (1976), 125–42, pp. 140 and 142 n. 22. Tree's may have been the earliest (1916) largely unadapted cinematic *Macbeth*; Robert Hamilton Ball, *Shakespeare on Silent Film*, 1968, pp. 229–35, amusingly recounts how London's West End met Hollywood.

Edward Gordon Craig, who played Malcolm in Irving's tours in the 1890s and was himself an innovative artist ahead of his time, originally designed (1908) the sets for what became Tree's 1911 *Macbeth*.<sup>1</sup> Those designs never reached the stage, but they deeply influenced the production, helping to make it at least semi-expressionistic and to thrust the audience into an experience of the text as if from Macbeth's point of view: 'Our attempt . . . will be to create . . . that awe-inspiring atmosphere which is suggested by the poet.'<sup>2</sup>

Edward Gordon Craig, one hopes, had little to do with Tree's version of Act 1, Scene 7, where the dialogue 'was performed with the [audible accompaniment] . . . of Duncan and the court at dinner', or with Duncan's and his followers' silent appearance at the end of the scene, 'to give a blessing to his hosts and their house', followed by the cackling re-entrance of the witches.<sup>3</sup> (Off-stage sounds of revelry here have since become commonplace.) Tree's 'Cauldron scene' (Shakespeare's Act 4, Scene 1), however, recalls productions stretching back to Kemble and before; the witches, omnipresent if unShakespearean witnesses throughout the play, now multiply into a demonic, ghostly chorus surrounding this scene.<sup>4</sup> Weak, conventional, or unmemorable as Tree's performance as Macbeth may have been – few contemporary accounts even mention his Lady – his production did anticipate such theatrically important versions as Theodore Komisarjevsky's 1933 Stratford production, where the audience shared Macbeth's mental experience, including an Act 4, Scene 1, in which Macbeth spoke the Apparitions' prophecies during a dream-sequence.<sup>5</sup>

Following Irving's and Tree's, there are no enduringly important English-language stagings of *Macbeth* until Glen Byam Shaw's 1955 production at Stratford and Trevor Nunn's 1976–8 productions at Stratford and in London.<sup>6</sup> Byam Shaw's production, explicitly 'starring' Laurence Olivier and Vivien Leigh (illustration 16), was much anticipated and people agreed that, once the 'strangeness' of the 'unfamiliar stresses' that Olivier gave the verse had worn off, it was 'much the best performance of the part

<sup>1</sup> The fullest treatment of Craig's long interest in *Macbeth* is Paul Sheren, 'Edward Gordon Craig and *Macbeth*', Ph.D. dissertation, Yale, 1974; see Sheren's condensed discussion, *TQ* 1, 3 (1971), 44–7.

<sup>2</sup> See Mullin, pp. 126–7; I rely on this essay's treatment of Tree's production here. Tree cut about one-third of the Folio text; for details, see Mullin, p. 141 n. 8.

<sup>3</sup> See Cary Mazer, *Shakespeare Refashioned: Elizabethan Plays on Edwardian Stages*, 1981, p. 12; Crosse, p. 39.

<sup>4</sup> For a photograph of Tree's scene, see Mullin, figure 2; this production seems to have been the singing witch chorus's 'positively . . . last appearance' (Byrne, p. 2).

<sup>5</sup> See Crosse, pp. 97 and 136, and Michael Mullin, 'Augures and understood relations: Theodore Komisarjevsky's *Macbeth*', *Educational Theatre Journal* 26 (1974), 20–30.

<sup>6</sup> This sentence uncharitably passes over many significant productions. For instance, F. R. Benson's early-twentieth-century performances (see Crosse, p. 31); Barry Jackson's production (London, 1928), the first in modern dress, which also gave 'blasted heath' and 'bloody man' their modern British slang rather than their Jacobean resonances (see, in general, Michael Mullin, 'Macbeth in modern dress: Royal Court Theatre, 1928', *Theatre Journal* 30 (1978), 176–85); Komisarjevsky's production (Stratford, 1933), discussed above; Donald Wolfit's performances (see e.g. Crosse, p. 147); not to mention Christopher Plummer's widely admired performance (Stratford, Ontario, 1962; see Leiter, p. 375), or Maggie Smith's in the same place, 1978 (see Leiter, p. 385), or the Simone Signoret–Alec Guinness production (directed by William Gaskill, Royal Court, London, 1966), or Glenda Jackson's fascinating and Plummer's lamentable performances (New York and elsewhere in North America, 1988). Richard Eyre's otherwise undistinguished Royal National Theatre, London, production (1993) offered a fine Macduff (James Laurenson). For the remarkable changes in British Shakespearean productions from the mid nineteenth century to the mid twentieth, see Byrne and Crosse, *passim*.



16 Act 2, Scene 3, in Glen Byam Shaw's 1955 Stratford Memorial Theatre production. Macbeth (Laurence Olivier) attends the fainting Lady Macbeth (Vivien Leigh)

in our time', according to J. C. Trewin, who went on to say that it might even be 'the best since William Charles Macready's' (which Trewin could not possibly have seen); Olivier's 'interpretation of Macbeth met with the kind of consensus of approval among critics given in earlier years to players like Garrick and Mrs Siddons'.<sup>1</sup> Leigh's 'frail, porcelain beauty' (much admired) and her 'kind of coldness, even hardness' (much criticised) did not satisfy those who expected Siddons-like domination, though one critic praised her for showing 'that Macbeth and his Lady were lovers before they were criminals'.<sup>2</sup> Leigh's performance of Act 5, Scene 1, when, grey-haired and staring, she alternated 'senile and childish tones', was also effective.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See George Scott, *Truth* 155 (17 June 1955), p. 770; J. C. Trewin, *Birmingham Post*, 15 June 1955 (second notice); *Macbeth Onstage*, p. [249], citing Richard David, 'The tragic curve', *S. Sur.* 9 (1956), 122–31, where the remark does not appear. *Macbeth Onstage*, p. 11 n. 3, lists 48 periodical reviews of the production. Byam Shaw's text closely paralleled Henry Irving's (see Hughes, *Irving*, p. 91).

<sup>2</sup> See, respectively: *Daily Mail*, 8 June 1955; Patrick Gibbs, *Daily Telegraph*, 8 June 1955; Ivor Brown, *Drama*, Autumn 1955, p. 34. Leigh's performance of Lady Macbeth, like Ann Todd's (Old Vic, London, 1954, directed by Michael Benthall; see also David, 'Tragic curve') probably suffered from critics' assumptions or preconceptions based on the actress's cinematic appearances, especially in non-Shakespearean roles; see, generally, Byrne, p. 11.

<sup>3</sup> Patrick Gibbs, *Daily Telegraph*, 8 June 1955. Here Byam Shaw and Leigh duplicated the 1888 Irving–Terry production, where, more or less following Holinshed's account, many years were supposed to have passed between the end of the Folio's Act 3 and the beginning of its Act 5; see Hughes, *Irving*, pp. 109 and 112.

Maxine Audley (Lady Macduff), one of the few actors praised for a supporting performance here,<sup>1</sup> identifies a pattern that recalls many earlier productions:

what I thought was so clever of Olivier was to realize that the part of Macbeth is one long build up to the end . . . it's a long, straight line upwards, ending with the great fight . . . When he comes to his wife [in 1.5], she's up, she goes completely the other way. I always feel very strongly he's at his lowest ebb and she's absolutely at her peak and they completely change over. I think they cross at the end of the Banquet Scene. She's geared herself and steeled herself to get through this terrific ordeal, and by the time . . . [the guests have] all gone, she has already gone. She's finished.

And indeed Byam Shaw directed that Leigh ‘sinks down on her knees leaning against Kings [*sic*] throne’ before she manages to exit when Olivier, renewed, summoned her, ‘Come, we’ll to sleep . . .’<sup>2</sup> This pattern necessarily meant that Olivier’s Macbeth began quietly, with, for example, only a ‘slight start’ when all-hailed as ‘king hereafter’; critics complained about this restraint, which extended until the discovery of Duncan’s murder, the first great ‘explosion’ of this production, followed by two later peaks in the banquet scene and the final duel.<sup>3</sup> Byam Shaw exploited the actor’s great physical presence and gymnastic agility in these later climaxes. When the Ghost re-entered Act 3, Scene 4, upstage and between two royal thrones, immediately after Macbeth’s ‘Would he were here’, Olivier initially recoiled, but then, pushing Lady Macbeth and her excuses aside (‘Think of this, good peers, / But as a thing of custom’), Olivier jumped upon the banqueting table in a great swirl of robes and desperate bravery.<sup>4</sup>

Byam Shaw’s directorial notes stress how much he sought the audience’s admiration for Macbeth and Lady Macbeth:

After he has committed the crime . . . all that is bad in his character bursts out . . . but the magnificence & courage of his nature remain till the end. He never becomes a brutish villain like Iago [in *Othello*] or Aaron [in *Titus Andronicus*].

Her loyalty to her husband is magnificent. The way she behaves in the banquet scene is beyond praise. In spite of her complete lack of compassion & goodness of heart one cannot but have the greatest admiration for her courage & loyalty.<sup>5</sup>

Byam Shaw’s comment on Lady Macbeth has a Victorian flavour, and in performance Vivien Leigh made a relatively weak and certainly a subordinate impression, but Olivier managed to fascinate, rather than repel, the audience, or at least the critics, right through the final, dangerously violent battle with Macduff. This concentration

<sup>1</sup> Scott, *Truth*, p. 770.

<sup>2</sup> *Macbeth Onstage*, pp. [251] and 153. In the Irving–Terry production Macbeth and Lady Macbeth ‘crossed’ (i.e. their respective strengths changed) at the beginning of Shakespeare’s Act 3 (Hughes, *Irving*, p. 105) as they did in the 1996 Stratford production directed by Tim Albery with Bríd Brennan and Roger Allam.

<sup>3</sup> See, respectively: *Macbeth Onstage*, pp. 43 and [249], and Milton Shulman’s famous remark, ‘restraint run amok’ (*Evening Standard*, 8 June 1955).

<sup>4</sup> For the Ghost’s and Macbeth’s action, see *Macbeth Onstage*, p. 149; most contemporary critics praised Olivier’s extraordinary effects here.

<sup>5</sup> *Macbeth Onstage*, pp. 152–3. Commenting on Act 1, Scene 5, Shaw wrote: ‘She has . . . an extraordinary intensity of purpose. She adores her husband. Her ambition for him is beyond everything’ (*ibid.*, p. 59).

on flawed heroism meant in turn that the witches 'are certainly not the Fates. If we felt that Macbeth was, through them, fated to murder the King it would completely destroy the tragedy of the story'; yet, in keeping with Macbeth's paradoxical 'heroism', the witches 'should be terrible & yet strangely wonderful – because anything evil is, always, fascinating & wonderful in some way . . . They must have tragic stature.'<sup>1</sup> At the first rehearsal, Shaw spoke frequently of hell, damnation, and the devil, and generalised still further, 'this is the most moral play, & is the strongest possible warning against evil & sin'.<sup>2</sup>

Only one other English-language staging since 1945 merits comparison with the 1955 Stratford production, and it could not be more different. Following an unsuccessful Christian–demonic production of *Macbeth* with Helen Mirren (Lady Macbeth) and Nicol Williamson (Macbeth), where 'sex [was] the essence of' the Macbeths' 'tragedy' (Stratford and London, 1974–5),<sup>3</sup> Trevor Nunn directed Judi Dench (Lady Macbeth) and Ian McKellen (Macbeth) in a sternly 'ensemble', not 'star', production (1976–8), first at The Other Place (Stratford), later in Newcastle-upon-Tyne, later at the RSC's main house (also Stratford), and still later at the Warehouse, then a Royal Shakespeare Company London venue. Unlike most English-language productions since 1660, this one deployed a small cast, fourteen persons according to Nunn, but varying slightly from year to year.<sup>4</sup> Nunn's production expressed the demonic freshly and seriously, making witchcraft vital in a way Orson Welles's 'voodoo' *Macbeth* (New York, 1936) did not and replacing Welles's more than faintly racist view with an anthropologically sophisticated version.<sup>5</sup> These witches have true and complete powers. They cannot be distanced or ignored as 'primitive' or 'other'. They are at once psychologically explicable and irrational.

A strongly marked chalk circle circumscribed the playing space (barely visible at the top of illustration 17), and the audience saw a rehearsal studio rather than a formal stage: actors not needed for the moment sat or stood circumferentially, sometimes reacting to the events within the circled 'acting' space, sometimes simply awaiting their moments to perform.<sup>6</sup> Macbeth (McKellen) always traversed the circle anti-clockwise or 'widdershins' – a reversal traditionally thought of as Satanic or unlucky – whereas other characters moved in a 'moral' or 'virtuous' clockwise way to their places and eventually their exits.<sup>7</sup> Nunn's production made no attempt at realistic

<sup>1</sup> *Macbeth Onstage*, p. 30; compare Peter Hall's view, p. 32 above.

<sup>2</sup> *Macbeth Onstage*, pp. 16–17.

<sup>3</sup> See Leiter, pp. 380–1, quoting Benedict Nightingale, *New York Times*, 23 May 1975.

<sup>4</sup> '14 actors . . . involved in an intense debate . . . touching constantly on the question of whether there is a meaning to being alive' (Trevor Nunn, Royal Shakespeare Company newspaper, August 1976). Robert Cushman, *The Observer*, 12 September 1976, put the cast he saw at sixteen.

<sup>5</sup> Nunn's version here, so different from the generally Christian interpretation he earlier adopted (Stratford, 1974), may owe something to Charles Marowitz's radical adaptation (Wiesbaden, May 1969; see next note).

<sup>6</sup> Charles Marowitz's *A Macbeth* (1971), with a cast of eleven, including three Macbeths (representing 'the Timorous, the Ambitious, the Nefarious'), probably influenced this and other elements (e.g. the demonism permeating the cast) in Nunn's production. See 'Exercises to A Macbeth [sic]' in *The Marowitz Shakespeare*, 1978, pp. 70–9, and 'Introduction', p. 14; the quotation here is from 'Introduction', p. 15.

<sup>7</sup> See 1.3.33 n. and Clark, 'Inversion', pp. 122–5.



17 Act 4, Scene 1, in Trevor Nunn's 1976-8 RSC production. The sisters (Marie Kean, Judith Harte, Susan Dury) present figures of the Apparitions to a drugged, hallucinating Macbeth (Ian McKellen). A strongly marked black circle circumscribes the playing space, and the audience sees a rehearsal studio rather than a formal stage

illusion; when theatrical effects were needed, the audience saw how those effects – thunder, lightning – came about. A great ‘thunder-sheet’ was the stage’s backdrop, and when thunder was needed, the audience saw it made. Paradoxically, the sensation was the reverse of artificial. Seeing sounds and lightning made, the audience understood they were not ‘natural’ but created, created – violently and with an absolute evil

— by forces not theatrical but far beyond the theatre or indeed Shakespeare. These effects were not ‘effects’, but something, some *things*, happening outside human comprehension and beyond human explanation.

In a further paradox, this extraordinary production did not relieve Macbeth and Lady Macbeth of responsibility. They discussed, undertook, consciously chose to perform terrible acts, but while they did so from calculated ambition they were also seen to be environed by forces which no audience could understand and no character resist. They were at once responsible and unknowing, in a powerful and ultimately tragic fashion. And still, the acts were committed. In a way quite beyond the reach of rational explanation, but a way also full of theatrical energy and emotional power, Nunn’s production made Macbeth and Lady Macbeth simultaneously guilty agents and victims.

Theatrical tradition is a powerful drug, narcotic or ecstatic. Henry Irving having once hoisted Macbeth’s sword onto his shoulder in 1888, John Gielgud would consciously imitate him in 1930,<sup>1</sup> and more than a century after Irving and more than half a century after Gielgud, so would Alan Howard (Royal National Theatre, London, 1993). Less happily, Davenant’s spectacle and Davenant’s witches, however transmogrified, always trivialising and intrusive, long plagued even the most distinguished performances: Garrick–Pritchard, Kemble–Siddons, Macready–Faucit. Sometimes leading, sometimes following theatrical practice, literary critics have been likewise bemused, likewise puzzled. And always the simplest questions have proved the hardest to answer in both performance and criticism.

#### FURTHER VARIATIONS: KUROSAWA, POLANSKI, NINAGAWA

There have been two distinguished cinematic versions of *Macbeth*, one a medieval Japanese adaptation, *Kumonosu-ju* (*Throne of Blood* in English, but more accurately and revealingly, *The Castle of the Spider’s Web*) directed by Akira Kurosawa (1957), the other a film much closer to Shakespeare’s text, *Macbeth*, directed by Roman Polanski (1971).<sup>2</sup> The third ‘variation’ I consider here is Yukio Ninagawa’s theatrical production, also placed in a feudal Japanese milieu.

<sup>1</sup> See John Gielgud, *Early Stages*, 1939, p. 168, on his performance in the 1930 Harcourt Williams production at the Old Vic (London), and Sprague, p. 230.

<sup>2</sup> In Kurosawa’s film, Toshiro Mifune plays Macbeth and Isuzu Yamada, Lady Macbeth; in Polanski’s, the roles were taken by two actors untraditionally young for the parts, Jon Finch and Francesca Annis. Other notable cinematic and television versions include: Orson Welles’s *Macbeth* (1948), based on Welles’s earlier theatrical production mentioned above; *Joe Macbeth* (1955; directed by Ken Hughes with Paul Douglas as Macbeth and Ruth Roman as Lady Macbeth); the later of two (1954, 1960) Maurice Evans–Judith Anderson Hallmark Hall of Fame television versions (1960, directed by George Schaefer); the Eric Porter–Janet Suzman *Macbeth* (1970, BBC TV, directed by John Gorrie); the Thames Television version (directed by Philip Casson, 1978) of the Judi Dench–Ian McKellen RSC theatrical production discussed above (for staged *versus* televised versions, see Michael Mullin, ‘Stage and screen: the Trevor Nunn *Macbeth*’, *SQ* 38 (1987), 350–9); the Nicol Williamson–Jane Lapotaire television production in the BBC ‘The Shakespeare Plays’ series (1982, directed by Jack Gold); *Men of Respect*, ‘Written and directed by William Reilly adapted from the “Tragedy of Macbeth” by William Shakespeare’ (Columbia Pictures, 1990). For further details of, and a summary of critical reaction and printed responses to, all but the last, see Rothwell and Melzer, pp. 155ff. Both *Joe Macbeth* and *Men of Respect* transpose Shakespeare’s plot and characters into criminal environments roughly contemporary with the making of the two films

Kurosawa's subtle, learned adaptation of *Macbeth* is far too complex for summary, and I do not mention many of the film's extraordinary effects.<sup>1</sup> To the dismay of many critics, *Throne of Blood* does not use Shakespeare's text, often replacing the most verbally complex moments with tiny, silent gestures and absences of movement. The film's visual imagery exploits the play's metaphors (of birds and their cries, for example, of a horse wildly uncontrolled, of darkness and light), but its narrative deletes entirely Shakespeare's Malcolm and related matters, including the 'English Scene' (Act 4, Scene 3) and the Porter (conversing soldiers fill some of the expository gaps). Captain Washizu (the figure equivalent to Macbeth) and Captain Miki (the figure equivalent to Banquo) encounter a single androgynous witch, spinning thread like a Greco-Roman Fate, in the 'Cobweb Forest' near the 'Cobweb Castle' all seek to control, and Washizu much later returns to the witch and her/his environment to hear a prophecy – Washizu will reign until the Cobweb Forest moves – recalling the Third Apparition's prediction in *Macbeth* Act 4, Scene 1. Toshiro Mifune (Washizu) offers a superb performance, combining vocal range with superlative physical acting; he is matched (at least for a western audience) by Isuzu Yamada (Lady Asaji, Washizu's wife and the figure equivalent to Lady Macbeth). She persuades Washizu to murder Tsuzuki (the film's equivalent to Duncan) by voicing the film's emphatic view of human submission to fate and prophecy when she points out that Tsuzuki 'killed his own master to become what he is now'<sup>2</sup> (an observation true to Holinshed's narrative of Scottish history), and she persuades Washizu to persevere in killing Miki/Banquo and Yoshiteru/Fleance by telling him 'I am with child' when Washizu/Macbeth seeks to fulfil the witch's prophecy (and avoid any dire consequences) by appointing Yoshiteru/Fleance his heir. In a creative revision of *Macbeth*, Kurosawa finds the stillborn child of Asaji a source of the couple's political collapse and part of her subsequent madness. Kurosawa's film echoes Shakespeare's ghostly banquet (Act 3, Scene 4), but places the Murderer's announcement of Miki's death and Yoshiteru's survival after (not before, as in *Macbeth*) the gathered nobles have departed. Washizu

(compare Kurosawa's similar translation to a period in Japanese history more-or-less analogous to medieval Scotland and Jacobean England, when the Duncan figure is as violently regicidal as the Macbeth figure). In *Men of Respect*, for example, Macbeth becomes 'Mike Battaglia [= Battle]' (John Turturro), Lady Macbeth, 'Ruth' (Katherine Borowitz), and Duncan, 'Charlie D'Amico [= Friend]' (Rod Steiger); here, the conflict lies among an entirely criminal or near-criminal cast, and D'Amico (Duncan) is just another crime-boss to be toppled. Thus, the characters equivalent to Lady Macduff and her son die in a car-bombing while the husband is detained by a chance telephone call; the witches are a palm-reader/fortune-teller/tealeaf-reader and her husband (compare 'Rosie' in *Joe Macbeth* and see Rothwell and Melzer, p. 155); the Lady Macbeth character worries about cleanliness and walks madly around the restaurant the couple manage as a 'front' for their criminal activities, and she later commits suicide. Birnam Wood disappears, and the Shakespearean prophecy is changed to 'until the stars fall', which they do in a fireworks show.

<sup>1</sup> See James Goodwin, *Akira Kurosawa and Intertextual Cinema*, 1994, pp. 169–91, for a basic analysis of the relations between Shakespeare's play and Kurosawa's film. Useful studies of Kurosawa's film (with references to the substantial number of other critical works) are: Anthony Davies, *Filming Shakespeare's Plays*, 1988, pp. 152–66, and Peter S. Donaldson, *Shakespearean Films/Shakespearean Directors*, 1990, pp. 71–91.

<sup>2</sup> English quotations from the film's dialogue cite the sub-titles, translated by Donald Richie, of the videotape (see Goodwin, p. 242 n. 11). For an English translation of the script by Hisae Niki, see Akira Kurosawa, 'Seven Samurai' and Other Screenplays, 1992.

then kills the Murderer. Just as Kurosawa's later *Ran* (1985) combines Shakespeare's *King Lear* with *Macbeth*, *Throne of Blood* alludes momentarily to *Hamlet* when a Noh-like poet-dancer (in the scene that echoes *Macbeth* Act 3, Scene 4) tells an interrupted tale that anticipates or recalls or reveals Washizu's treasonable acts. Throughout the film, Lady Asaji's stillness of face and body and her almost mechanical movements, all of which recall or duplicate Noh conventions, are terrifying. Nearly silent, almost always inhumanly composed until the very end (though, for example, she dances frenziedly while Washizu kills Tsuzuki/Duncan out of the audience's view), she prompts Washizu to ever more horrific acts.

Critics originally dismissed Roman Polanski's *Macbeth* (1971) as a serious presentation of Shakespeare's play because the participation of Hugh Hefner, the executive producer, and of Playboy Productions, seemed to be sponsoring a vulgarisation of the play – naked witches (in the film's version of Act 4, Scene 1) and a nude Lady Macbeth (in the equivalent of Act 5, Scene 1) do indeed appear – but later reflection shows this film to be the most distinguished cinematic version of the play, as the presence of Kenneth Tynan as co-author of the screenplay (with Polanski) suggests.

Polanski and Tynan produce an illuminatingly creative revision and echo of theatrical performances, especially of the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, while also adapting the play to film. Thus, as in many earlier theatrical productions, we see enacted, often violently, moments the Folio's text represents only verbally: the execution of Cawdor; the stormy night that accompanies Duncan's arrival at, and death in, Macbeth's castle; the banquet of Act 1, Scene 7; the drugging of the grooms and the murder of Duncan (where Duncan awakes to see his murderer's indecision before the bloody moment); the wakening grooms, looking at their smeared hands and faces before the avenging Macbeth grasps Lennox's sword to kill them; Duncan's funeral cortège (only alluded to, if that, in Act 2, Scene 4, of Shakespeare's text); Macbeth's installation as king at Scone; the extraordinarily violent murders of Lady Macduff, her children, and her retainers. Soliloquies in Shakespeare's text are sometimes represented as spoken, sometimes as 'voice-over' (where the actor does not visibly speak but the audience hears the actor's voice), sometimes as a combination of 'spoken' and 'over-heard' sounds.

The film also reorders the play's scenes and the sequence of events within scenes. First Murderer self-satisfiedly reports his 'success' in killing Banquo (Shakespeare's Act 3, Scene 4) quite privately, for instance, before he and his murderous colleague are led away to incarceration, and, we assume, death, in an *oubliette*; the second appearance of Banquo's Ghost (in the Folio's Act 3, Scene 4) is omitted; Act 3, Scenes 5 and 6, are deleted from the Folio's sequence (the film moves directly from the banquet to Macbeth's last visit to the sisters) and lines from those scenes are inserted later; offering a cinematic, not theatrical, continuity, the film follows its version of Act 5, Scene 1, with Macbeth's medical-political conversation ('How does your patient, doctor?') from Act 5, Scene 3, and, reversing the Folio's order, the film then turns to an elaborate representation of the flight of the 'false thanes' (5.3.7). The film now introduces lines from the Folio's Act 4, Scene 3, including a powerful moment when Malcolm hands his own sword to the newly bereaved Macduff and says, 'Be this the

whetstone of your sword' (4.3.231), and a plangent moment in which Lady Macbeth, distraught, reappears (as, of course, she does not in the Folio) to speak the lines from her husband's letter (Act 1, Scene 5) she had not spoken earlier. Almost at once, the film presents Lady Macbeth's corpse, to which Macbeth speaks 'Out, out, brief candle . . .' (5.5.22 ff.). The film concludes with a sequence of violent, acrobatic, highly persuasive sword-fights, ending with Macbeth's decapitation and (in Grand Guignol style) the head's presentation on a pole. Macbeth remains resolute and, until his final moments, invulnerable, as the sisters and apparitions had promised.

Polanski's film, or Polanski and Tynan's script, should be noted for several other innovations. It introduces a young central couple (Jon Finch and Francesca Annis), whose sexuality is an important dramatic element. It treats the Thane of Ross (played by John Stride) as a thoroughly self-serving figure, whose political behaviour repeats, emphasises, and contrasts with that of others (Macbeth, Lady Macbeth, Macduff, for instance): in the film, Ross is the Third Murderer of the Folio's Act 3, Scene 3, an accomplice in the deaths of Lady Macduff and her family and retainers, and he is an overt time-server in following Macbeth and then siding with Malcolm and Macduff. The film concludes with Donaldbain turning back to the witches, in evident hope that they will help him gain the throne (and therefore overthrow Malcolm), as they had earlier led Macbeth to the kingship.

Yukio Ninagawa's Japanese adaptation of *Macbeth* came west in 1985 when Mikijiro Hira portrayed Macbeth and Komaki Kurihara Lady Macbeth at the Edinburgh Festival,<sup>1</sup> and in 1987, when Masane Tsukayama replaced Hira, at the National Theatre, London.<sup>2</sup> Ninagawa's 'achingly beautiful' production was not well received in Japan – it was regarded as a false version or translation of medieval Japanese culture – but in European theatres the production was greeted rapturously.<sup>3</sup> Ninagawa said, 'It [the play, *Macbeth*] is set within a Buddhist family altar and everything happens within that frame. There is such an altar in all Japanese houses, but that does not mean that it is a religious frame. The altar is where your ancestors dwell, and the Japanese will talk to their ancestors within this setting quite naturally. It is a link between the living and the world of death . . .'<sup>4</sup> This altar – 'a huge Butsudan . . . closed off downstage by a pair of slatted doors across the whole stage-width's – framed and enclosed the play's performance. The Butsudan's doors are moved 'by two aged

<sup>1</sup> See Peter Whitebrook, *The Scotsman*, 24 August 1985. The play was translated into Japanese by Yushi Odashima.

<sup>2</sup> See *The Guardian*, 18 September 1987. Pictures of this later production appear in Giles Gordon's thoughtful and not entirely complimentary review, *Plays and Players* 410 (November 1987), 18–19. Gordon notes (p. 18) that 'The musical score . . . is, somewhat deviously, derived from European composers . . .'

<sup>3</sup> Michael Billington, *The Guardian*, quoted in Ronnie Mulryne, 'From text to foreign stage: Yukio Ninagawa's cultural translation of *Macbeth*', in Patricia Kennan and Mariangela Tempera (eds.), *Shakespeare from Text to Stage*, 1992, pp. 131–43; quotation from p. 131. Mulryne's essay is the fullest western treatment of Ninagawa's production I have seen. For criticism of the production in Japan, see Tetsuo Kishi, "Bless thee! Thou art translated!": Shakespeare in Japan', in Werner Habicht *et al.* (eds.), *Images of Shakespeare*, 1988, pp. 245–50, esp. pp. 245 and 249.

<sup>4</sup> Michael Leech, interview with Yukio Ninagawa, *What's on in London*, 17 September 1987.

<sup>5</sup> Mulryne, p. 133.

crones', who sometimes respond to the play's events<sup>1</sup> and who are Ninagawa's version of the sisters and the Porter of Shakespeare's *Macbeth*, but the 'most pervasive visual image' of the production 'is cherry blossom'.<sup>2</sup> These blossoms, beautiful, fragile, transitory, '[combine] regret at human madness and folly with awareness of earthly beauty'<sup>3</sup> and also recall Kurosawa's cinematic emphasis upon fatality and Polanski's upon repetition.

### *Macbeth* in the mind and in performance: Act 4, Scene 3

*Macbeth* has some curious narrative discontinuities (or irregularities, or illogicalities), especially in the places – at the end of Act 3 and beginning of Act 4 – where material by another author (probably Thomas Middleton) has probably been inserted into a pre-existing and perhaps wholly Shakespearean text (see Textual Analysis, pp. 255–9 below). Such are the ills that any evolving theatrical text inherits as its producers seek to make it new, fashionable, and commercially attractive, but the dramatic rhythm here is also curious: first, a leisurely and cryptic conversation between Malcolm and Macduff, then an abrupt, even discontinuous, passage (the English Doctor and the King's Evil), followed by Ross's obliquely introduced and brutally announced news from Scotland concluded by the patently 'stirring' move to free Scotland from the tyrant's oppression.

Act 4, Scene 3, may have been maladroitly revised to include references to a disease, the King's Evil, and the English monarch's supposed ability to cure it. King James was interested in this 'magical' power; and it attracted his subjects' attention throughout his reign.<sup>4</sup> Whether or not it was revised, and whether or not it was well revised, *Macbeth* Act 4, Scene 3, poses some extraordinary theatrical, dramatic, and intellectual puzzles for producers, audiences, and critics.

Before this conversation in the English court (Act 4, Scene 3), Malcolm last appeared discussing his father's murder with Donaldbain:

MALCOLM [To Donaldbain] Why do we hold our tongues, that most may claim  
This argument for ours?

DONALDBAIN [To Malcolm] What should be spoken here,  
Where our fate hid in an auger hole may rush  
And seize us? Let's away. Our tears are not yet brewed.

MALCOLM [To Donaldbain] Nor our strong sorrow upon the foot of motion.

(2.3.113–17)

After this *sotto voce* conversation – the other characters are busy guessing at the murderer's identity and reacting to Macbeth's announcement that he has killed the grooms – the focus shifts to Lady Macbeth, who may faint here, or pretend to do so

<sup>1</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 135.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 136.

<sup>3</sup> Michael Billington, of Komaki Kurihara's performance as Lady Macbeth, *The Guardian*, 18 September 1987. On the performance of Kurihara – 'Young, beautiful, raven-haired' (*ibid.*), 'Her manner in the early scenes trembles uncontrollably between that of a coquettish sex-kitten and an unsmiling psychopath' (*The Independent*, 19 September 1987) – see Mulryne, pp. 139–40.

<sup>4</sup> See Supplementary Note 4.3.148, p. 244 below; Textual Analysis, pp. 262–3 below; Hoeniger, *Medicine and Shakespeare*, p. 8 above, n. 2.

(see 2.3.112 n.), and the other characters' decision to put on 'manly readiness'. The stage empties, leaving the two sons to make their decision.

This dialogue of unbrewed tears and unmoved sorrow may be a later interpolation (see Textual Analysis, pp. 259–61 below); whether it is a second thought or not, one of its evident purposes is to explain the sons' passivity, or their cowardice, which 'generally create[s] laughter', according to an eighteenth-century critic.<sup>1</sup> Their only previous contributions to the scene were two brief questions: Donaldbain's maladroit 'What is amiss?' (2.3.90) and Malcolm's grotesquely fatuous response to Macduff's 'Your royal father's murdered' – 'O, by whom?' (2.3.93). Malcolm and Donaldbain are otherwise silent, and some contributor to the Folio text apparently sought to explain that silence. Explanation paradoxically emphasises the passivity it would justify. What needs no excuse gets none; what does, does. True, the sons' pallid lines underscore the baroque imagery of blood, death, and Doomsday the other characters use, and true, they may indeed have awakened not from beds but graves as Macduff says (2.3.72–4), but it is true also that Donaldbain's fear over their 'fate hid in an auger hole' provides an adequate reason for their silence. As Lady Macbeth's sleepy remarks on knowledge and power suggest – 'Who knows it, when none can call our power to account?' (5.1.32–3) – it may be better to remain silent than to draw attention, even if, or especially if, one is Prince of Cumberland and Duncan's heir-designate (1.4.37–9).

With this ambiguous prelude, the royal sons, now alone on stage, share their last exchange:

MALCOLM What will you do? Let's not consort with them.

To show an unfelt sorrow is an office

Which the false man does easy. I'll to England.

DONALDBAIN To Ireland, I. Our separated fortune

Shall keep us both the safer. Where we are,

There's daggers in men's smiles; the nea'er in blood,

The nearer bloody.

MALCOLM This murderous shaft that's shot

Hath not yet lighted, and our safest way

Is to avoid the aim. Therefore to horse,

And let us not be dainty of leave-taking,

But shift away. There's warrant in that theft

Which steals itself when there's no mercy left.

(2.3.128–39)<sup>2</sup>

Here the issue of self-preservation is palpably central, while in the earlier conversation it is only arguably so. Indeed, the first exchange may have been inserted to explain the second and to diminish what looks suspiciously like cowardice or at least political indifference and a rather unusual failure of the Shakespearean child to mourn its

<sup>1</sup> See Francis Gentleman in *Bell's Edition of Shakespeare's Plays*, 1, *Macbeth* pagination sequence, p. 27: 'they [Malcolm, Donaldbain] generally create laughter, and their pusillanimous resolution of departure . . . deserves no better treatment'. Gentleman wrote in a theatrical era when Lady Macbeth's part (played by Sarah Siddons, no less) was cut from Act 2, Scene 3. Byam Shaw thought Malcolm and Donaldbain 'begin to panic' here (*Macbeth Onstage*, p. 103).

<sup>2</sup> This passage is not so textually suspect as the sons' earlier conversation; Brooke seems to find this passage textually puzzling (see his notes *ad loc.* and his Appendix A, pp. 220–1), but erroneous line numbers make his views uncertain.

parent.<sup>1</sup> Besides his ugly punning on ‘theft’ and ‘warrant’, Malcolm makes one particularly Janus-faced remark: ‘To show an unfelt sorrow is an office / Which the false man does easy.’ Some members of the audience (especially, perhaps, the students at the Inns of Court, ever watchful for fashionable phrases) may have reached for their notebooks to record the speech under ‘Hypocrisy’, but the sententious remark really challenges all shows of sorrow and indeed all absences of shows of sorrow. Where does its stress lie? On ‘unfelt’, on ‘false’, or on ‘easy’? Does the non-false man show an unfelt sorrow with great difficulty, but show it none the less? Does a son, like Malcolm, who is not showing sorrow for his father’s death therefore qualify as non-false because his unshown sorrow is in fact unfelt?<sup>2</sup>

I propose that someone involved in the making of *Macbeth* thought an audience seeing Act 4, Scene 3, for the first time might find both Malcolm and Macduff somehow suspect or unfixed, their traits either vague or unstable.<sup>3</sup> That ‘someone’ inserted two chorric scenes to stabilise the audience’s attitudes: in Act 2, Scene 4, we first hear Macduff characterised as ‘good’ (line 20), and the scene supports the adjective through his refusal to attend Macbeth’s coronation; in Act 3, Scene 6, Lennox and an anonymous Lord testify to Malcolm’s and Macduff’s goodness and applaud their alliance with England’s holy Edward. Unfortunately, this putative effort confuses the play’s narrative, and one desperate critic goes so far as to claim that the pertinent lines of Act 3, Scene 6, are ironic and that Lennox tests the Lord as Malcolm will test Macduff.<sup>4</sup>

As with the epithet ‘good Macduff’, Act 3, Scene 6, proposes that Malcolm and Macduff hold Scotland’s future hopes, but Macduff has fled under mysterious, if not morally ambiguous, circumstances, and his flight creates such extreme dramatic prob-

<sup>1</sup> A telling analogy, if it is one, might be Hal’s seizing the crown when he thinks Henry IV is dead; like Duncan’s sons, Hal reacts pragmatically first and mourns later. See Giorgio Melchiori (ed.), *2H4*, 1989, 4.2.167–73 and 211–16.

<sup>2</sup> Note, too, the use of ‘office’ with its plural significations: ‘That which one ought, or has, to do in the way of service; that which is required or expected’; ‘A position or place to which certain duties are attached’; ‘A ceremonial duty or service’ (*OED* Office *sb* 2, 4, 5, respectively). The dutiful and the potentially hypocritical elements in these definitions cut against both the ‘false man’ and the speaker.

<sup>3</sup> So Barbara Riebling finds Malcolm at least; see ‘Virtue’s sacrifice: a machiavellian reading of *Macbeth*’, *Studies in English Literature, 1500–1900*, 31 (1991), 277–9. What I have said and will say about Act 4, Scene 3, may seem no more than a footnote to the second section of Stephen Booth’s ‘King Lear’, ‘Macbeth’, *Indefinition, and Tragedy*, 1983; I hope not, but if so, it is an honourable estate. In Booth’s view, the audience believes, falsely but for a time comfortingly, ‘that the comprehensibility of the container [here, *Macbeth*] is of the nature of the thing [“tragedy”] contained’ (p. 89), and he then argues, a little equivocally, ‘that *Macbeth* is itself, as a whole, a kind of equivocation between the fact of limitlessness – indefiniteness, tragedy – and the duty of art to limit and define’ (p. 98). I propose that *Macbeth* represents or dramatises this equivocation and therefore smudges, however momentarily, the difference that Booth finds between the play and the experience of it, between tragedy represented or dramatic tragedy experienced in retrospect, and tragedy experienced in life – the fire that destroys a family Christmas, the golden wedding anniversary heart-attack. That is, *Macbeth* knows what it is doing and what Stephen Booth is thinking; on the other hand, ‘If audiences were led to take conscious notice of the inconsistency in their evaluations . . . they would presumably set about rationalizing . . . in an effort to make their responses consistent’ (p. 115), and I may be doing just that.

<sup>4</sup> See Paul, p. 276, where he claims that Lennox is ‘ironical’ in Act 3, Scene 6, because ‘Lennox knows that Macduff has fled to England but is cautiously trying to find out whether the other lord knows this, and what he thinks about it . . .’

lems that William Davenant rewrote this section of the play and inserted a scene elaborately justifying Macduff's abandonment of his family.<sup>1</sup> According to Davenant, regicide is the unacceptable alternative to flight, and his solution to the problem anticipated Nahum Tate's 1681 revision of *King Lear*, where Gloucester's good son (Edgar) and Lear's good daughter (Cordelia) fall in love, partly to give 'Countenance to Edgar's Disguise [as Tom o'Bedlam], making that a generous Design that was before [in Shakespeare's play] a poor Shift to save his Life'.<sup>2</sup> Davenant and Tate justify or palliate what they construe as the 'poor Shift[s]' Shakespeare's characters employ 'to save [their lives]' – that is, Davenant and Tate justify or palliate the characters' represented cowardice.

In *Macbeth* Act 4, Scene 3 – 'slow', 'perverse', 'irritating', 'frustrating', and 'unpleasant' as it is<sup>3</sup> – Malcolm elaborately indicts himself of hyperbolic evil:

there's no bottom, none,  
In my voluptuousness: your wives, your daughters,  
Your matrons, and your maids could not fill up  
The cistern of my lust, and my desire  
All continent impediments would o'erbear  
That did oppose my will . . .

With this, there grows  
In my most ill-composed affection such  
A stanchless avarice that, were I king,  
I should cut off the nobles for their lands,  
Desire his jewels, and this other's house,  
And my more-having would be as a sauce  
To make me hunger more, that I should forge  
Quarrels unjust against the good and loyal,  
Destroying them for wealth.

(4.3.60–5, 76–84)

Malcolm finally declares he has none of the 'king-becoming graces', but abounds

In the division of each several crime,  
Acting it many ways. Nay, had I power, I should  
Pour the sweet milk of concord into hell,  
Uproar the universal peace, confound  
All unity on earth.

(4.3.96–100)

Malcolm claims these evils, it seems, because he distrusts Macduff, particularly because Macduff abandoned 'Those precious motives, those strong knots of love' (4.3.27), his wife and children. Having answered Malcolm's earlier suspicions with blunt denial – 'I am not treacherous' (18) – and plaintive resignation – 'I have lost my

<sup>1</sup> Compare Adelman, pp. 143–4; Macduff and his flight are among the few embarrassments to Adelman's persuasive argument.

<sup>2</sup> Quoted from Tate's dedication to Thomas Boteler, Esq., in Christopher Spencer (ed.), *Five Restoration Adaptations of Shakespeare*, 1965, p. 203; I have converted Tate's italic to roman.

<sup>3</sup> Booth, pp. 107–10; John Munro (ed.), *The London Shakespeare*, 6 vols., 1957, vi, 1088, summarises earlier negative reactions. Many critics find the scene satisfactory; see, for example, Knights, pp. 27–9; Lily B. Campbell, 'Political ideas in *Macbeth* IV.iii', *SQ* 2 (1951), 281–6; Irving Ribner, *The English History Play in the Age of Shakespeare*, 1957, pp. 256–9; Richard S. Ide, 'The theatre of the mind: an essay on *Macbeth*', *ELH* 42 (1975), 361 n. 30.

hopes' (24) – Macduff now foresees a desperate, bloody, and tyrannical future. He prepares to go:

Fare thee well, lord,  
I would not be the villain that thou think'st  
For the whole space that's in the tyrant's grasp,  
And the rich East to boot.

(4.3.34–7)

Just as Macduff himself had earlier been carefully ambiguous about his attitudes toward the new king when talking with Ross and the Old Man (2.4.21 ff.), Malcolm here intersperses placating or exculpating remarks, remarks that will save him should Macduff prove either adherent or enemy to Macbeth: 'it may be so perchance' (11); 'Let not my jealousies be your dishonours' (29); 'Be not offended' (37).<sup>1</sup> Malcolm's most notable attempt to have it both ways confounds dramatic representation and the audience's credibility:

That which you are, my thoughts cannot transpose;  
Angels are bright still, though the brightest fell.  
Though all things foul would wear the brows of grace,  
Yet grace must still look so.

(4.3.21–4)

In one powerful sense, the sense the play would have us understand as the only sense, this remark is true: Macduff may be an honourable man whether or not Malcolm thinks he is, just as angels are bright though Lucifer fell. Unfortunately for trust and reason, the brightest did fall, and in life as in *Hamlet*, thinking makes it so. If Malcolm or the audience thinks Macduff dishonourable, an *agent provocateur*, then effectively Macduff is so, and the campaign to depose Macbeth ends before it starts, along with the audience's certitude. For the audience, the paradox of Act 4, Scene 3, is the flip side to Lady Macbeth's politically and epistemologically abhorrent confidence – 'Who knows it, when none can call our power to account?' (5.1.32–3) – because the audience has now been placed in the situation of those Scots who think they know but cannot speak and cannot therefore act on their knowledge and its implications.

In the end, Act 4, Scene 3 attacks not just the characters' represented capacity to know one another, but the audience's capacity to discriminate ethically and politically among the represented personages. The scene attacks the bases of drama and admits that attack when the unexpected reversal, equivalent to a sonnet's *volta*, finally arrives and Malcolm chooses to believe Macduff's honesty, his exasperated patriotism and his desperate disappointment:

Macduff, this noble passion,  
Child of integrity, hath from my soul  
Wiped the black scruples, reconciled my thoughts  
To thy good truth and honour.

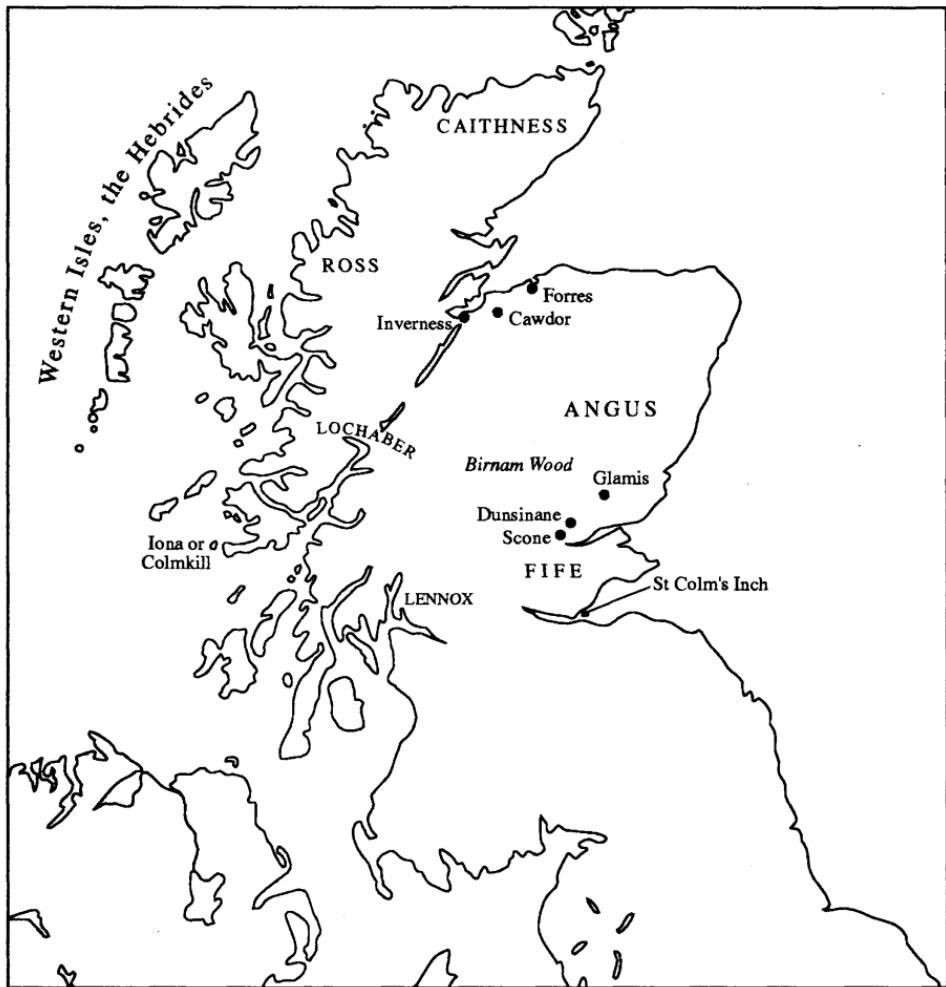
(4.3.114–17)

Malcolm believes 'this noble passion, / Child of integrity' on evidence no better than, nor different from, the grounds he had for doubting Macduff's earlier asseverations.

<sup>1</sup> Ian Richardson's brilliant performance in Peter Hall's 1967 Stratford production 'offered an unconventional Malcolm with an inkling of evil deep inside' (Leiter, p. 378).

The better the actors are at deceiving each other, the better they inevitably are at deceiving the audience, and *vice versa*, as some celebrated actors have acknowledged.<sup>1</sup> Suspicion and trust here both arise from a character's *ethos*, and Macduff justly remarks, 'Such welcome and unwelcome things at once / 'Tis hard to reconcile' (1.3.8–9). Indeed, 'tis. The scene has made every assertion, every trust, every doubt 'hard to reconcile'. Here, humans palter with each other just as Macbeth claims the 'juggling fiends' did with him, and just so the play palters in performance and on the page.

<sup>1</sup> Trader Faulkner, who played Malcolm in the 1955 Stratford production, recalls arguing with Keith Michell (Macduff), Laurence Olivier (Macbeth), and Byam Shaw (the director): 'They said, "You're too convincing in the two contradictory aspects of the character. You're convincing when you say you're true and you're totally convincing when you say I didn't mean a word of it"' (*Macbeth Onstage*, p. [252]).



Scotland, showing place names mentioned in the text of *Macbeth*

## NOTE ON THE TEXT

The First Folio (*F*) of Shakespeare's plays (1623) contains the earliest surviving text of *The Tragedie of Macbeth*, where it is sixth among the tragedies, printed between *Julius Caesar* and *Hamlet*; this text is probably derived from a Jacobean playhouse script rather than from a literary or reading text. The theatrical tradition produced two other important seventeenth-century printed texts: a quarto *Macbeth* in 1673 (Q1673) published without Shakespeare's name but generally following *F* with some additional material and several fascinating 'editorial' readings; and William Davenant's adaptation of *Macbeth*, printed in 1674 and here designated 'Davenant'. Appendix 2, pp. 268–72 below, discusses the relation of Q1673 to *F* and to Davenant's 1674 version. Q1673, Davenant's play, and Folio *Macbeth* almost certainly include the work of Thomas Middleton, a distinguished younger contemporary of Shakespeare. All modern editions of 'Shakespeare's' play, including this one, should therefore be considered editions of '*Macbeth* by William Shakespeare and adapted by Thomas Middleton', as the 1986 Oxford edition of the *Complete Works* puts it.

The Folio text of *Macbeth* contains many moments where the staging is debatable; this edition pays special attention to such moments. Modern editions differ principally on two matters: first, lineation, particularly in the first half of the play, and second, the treatment of passages almost certainly written by Middleton. Both subjects are discussed in the Textual Analysis, pp. 251–9 below, as are the questions of 'copy' for the Folio, the compositors and printing of *F*, and the possible revision of *F*. The Textual Analysis also describes the editorial procedures I have employed and, more important, explains this edition's silent (that is, uncollated) changes to the text as it appears in *F*.

Shakespeare's plays swoop disconcertingly from language and action that appear unconstrained by time or place to highly precise (and, we must admit, sometimes now unfathomable) references to particular words, customs, ideas, and preoccupations of early modern England. This oscillation especially characterises his tragedies, and *Macbeth* is a supreme example. I have reluctantly offered notes on the play's imaginary locations, which may be in a notional eleventh-century Scotland and England, but were once also on the Globe's stage and were therefore once part of early-seventeenth-century London. Only an Enlightenment editor or reader might guess where the witches are.

This text is a modernised one. For words that are now archaic, the modern equivalent appears if it does not disturb the metre, rhyme, or wordplay; where earlier editions have treated verbal changes as emendations, the collation records the change as a modernisation. Thus, at 1.7.6 this text reads 'shoal' and the collation records *F*'s

archaic form, ‘Schoole’ (which could, of course, at first seem to be the modern word ‘school’):

shoal] F (Schoole)

For more complicated changes, the collation begins with the reading accepted into the text followed by the source of that change, then by the Folio reading, and (in chronological order) any other plausible but rejected readings. Thus, a more complicated example (2.2.66) might read:

green one red] Q1673, F4 (Green one Red); Greene one, Red F; green, One red Johnson

which means that this text adopts a (modernised) reading shared by the theatrical quarto of 1673 and F4, the Fourth Folio (1685), that is the equivalent of the First Folio according to modern punctuation conventions, and that Samuel Johnson’s edition (1765) repunctuated the phrase and changed its meaning. Another example appears at 2.3.4–5:

Come in time – ] Brooke; Come in time, F; Come in, time, Q1673; Come in, Time; Staunton; come in, time-server; NS; Come in farmer, Blackfriars (*conj.* Anon. in Cam.)

This collation means: this text adopts Brooke’s reading, a modernisation of F’s text; Q1673 repunctuated the phrase; Howard Staunton, apparently unaware of Q1673, conjectured the same reading as Q1673 and made ‘time’ an abstraction; John Dover Wilson (in the New Shakespeare edition) offered an interesting emendation, as did Robert Dent in the Blackfriars edition, following an earlier conjecture. When this text follows F in a phrase longer than one or two words, but other editions have made different choices, the collation records only those places where F differs from the text offered here. Thus the collation for the stage direction at 4.1.131 reads:

F (Musicke . . . Dance . . .); Globe adds / with Hecate

indicating that this text differs from F only in the spelling and capitalisation of two words, but that the Globe editors appended a further direction to the original one.

## NOTE ON THE COMMENTARY

More frequently than any earlier edition, the Commentary here cites the *Oxford English Dictionary* (*OED*) and other lexical sources, using the *OED*'s terminology for parts of speech (*sb* for 'substantive', a noun; *v* for 'verb', *a* for 'adjective', *ppl a* for 'participial adjective', *vbl sb* for 'verbal substantive', etc.) and the numbered and lettered sub-divisions in its entries. Exploiting Jürgen Schäfer's and Bryan A. Garner's work on the *OED* and later texts antedating its citations and adding to these works, the Commentary draws attention to words that may be Shakespearean coinages and notes those places where *Macbeth* is the first text cited for a use or definition. Other editions and earlier students of Shakespeare's language have not always recorded the play's verbal inventiveness; where appropriate, glosses and citations from *OED* and of proverbial language therefore suggest where the play innovates or echoes earlier usage by remarking how frequently a word or phrase occurs, or the date of the first recorded use. This information may be wildly inaccurate, however, since much lexicographical work remains to be done.

When I cite *Macbeth*, references are to lines as numbered here unless otherwise noted; Shakespeare's other plays are cited from the Riverside edition, text ed. G. B. Evans, 1974. Other editors' references to Shakespeare are similarly normalised, as are their references to works where I cite different (and more accurate) editions. (See the List of Abbreviations and Conventions, pp. xi–xxii above, for the works and editions mentioned here, in the Commentary, and in the collation.) Greek and Latin texts are cited from the appropriate Loeb edition with only the translator's name mentioned; unattributed translations are mine. Unless otherwise noted, the Bible is quoted from the so-called 'Bishops' Bible' (1568).



*Macbeth*

## LIST OF CHARACTERS

Speaking characters in order of first appearance:

*Three WITCHES*

*DUNCAN, King of Scotland*

*MALCOLM, Duncan's elder son, later Prince of Cumberland, later King of Scotland*

*CAPTAIN in the Scottish forces*

*LENNOX, a thane*

*ROSS, a thane*

*MACBETH, Thane of Glamis, later Thane of Cawdor, later King of Scotland*

*BANquo, a thane*

*ANGUS, a thane*

*LADY MACBETH, Countess of Glamis, later Countess of Cawdor, later Queen of Scotland*

*ATTENDANT in the household of Macbeth*

*FLEANCE, Banquo's son*

*PORTRER in Macbeth's household*

*MACDUFF, Thane of Fife*

*DONALDBAIN, Duncan's younger son*

*OLD MAN*

*Two MURDERERS employed by Macbeth*

*SERVANT in the household of Macbeth*

*THIRD MURDERER employed by Macbeth*

*HECATE, goddess of the moon and of sorcery*

*A LORD, a Scot, opposed to Macbeth*

*FIRST APPARITION, an armed Head*

*SECOND APPARITION, a bloody Child*

*THIRD APPARITION, a Child crowned*

*LADY MACDUFF, Countess of Fife*

*SON to Macduff and Lady Macduff*

*MESSENGER, a Scot*

*Two MURDERERS, who attack Lady Macduff and her Son*

*DOCTOR at the English court*

*DOCTOR OF PHYSIC at the Scottish court*

*WAITING-GENTLEWOMAN who attends Lady Macbeth*

*MENTEITH, a thane opposed to Macbeth*

*CAITHNESS, a thane opposed to Macbeth*

*SERVANT to Macbeth*

*SEYTON, gentleman loyal to Macbeth*

*SIWARD, general in the Anglo-Scottish forces*

MESSENGER in *Macbeth's service*

YOUNG SIWARD, *Siward's son, in the Anglo-Scottish forces*

Silent characters:

Attendants in *Duncan's entourage*

Musicians (*players of hautboys*)

Torch-bearers

Sewer

Servants and Attendants

*Ghost of Banquo*

Three Witches, accompanying Hecate

Eight kings, appearing to Macbeth

Drummers and bearers of colours (*flags*) in the Anglo-Scottish forces

Soldiers in the Anglo-Scottish forces

Drummers and bearers of colours (*flags*) in Macbeth's forces

Soldiers in Macbeth's forces

## Notes

F does not provide a list. These notes principally concern the semi-legendary and historical individuals dramatised in *Macbeth*, along with information about how proper names might have been pronounced in Shakespeare's theatre.

**DUNCAN** Historically, Duncan I (reigned AD 1034–40).

**MALCOLM** Historically, Malcolm III (reigned AD 1057–93).

**LENNOX** His remark, 'my young remembrance' (2.3.54), may indicate his age.

**ROSS** Executed, according to Holinshed (*Scotland*, p. 171b), during the ten-year period of Macbeth's reign as a good king.

**MACBETH** Historically, Mormaer of Moray; reigned AD 1040–57. Simon Forman (see pp. 57–8 above) once spells the name 'Mackbet', despite the evidence of the Folio (which rhymes it with 'heath' at 1.1.7–8, and with 'death' at 1.2.64–5 and 3.5.4–5) that the final *th* was sounded; the rhymes with 'death' also strongly imply a short *e* in 'Macbeth' (Cercignani, pp. 76–7).

**BANQUO** Historically, Thane of Lochaber; Simon Forman's spellings (see pp. 57–8 above) – Bancko, Banko, Banco – may indicate Jacobean pronunciation.

**LADY MACBETH** Historically, 'Gruoch', a descendant of either King Kenneth II (reigned AD 971–5) or of King Kenneth III (reigned ?AD 997–1005).

**MACDUFF** Historically, Thane of Fife; Simon Forman (see pp. 57–8 above) spells this name MackDove and Macdouee (i.e. Macdove), perhaps indicating Jacobean pronunciation; the name rhymes with 'Enough' at 4.1.70–1.

**DONALDBAIN** The historical individual's name was also represented as Donaldbane, Donalbane, Donald Bane, or Donald Bán (i.e. 'Donald the Fair'). Reigned as Donald III AD 1093–7.

**CAITHNESS** Executed, according to Holinshed (*Scotland*, p. 171b), during the ten-year period of Macbeth's reign as a good king.

**SEYTON** For pronunciation of this name, see Supplementary Note on 5.3.19, p. 244 below.

**SIWARD** Historically, an Earl of Northumberland who died in AD 1055, two years before Macbeth.

# MACBETH

## 1.1 Thunder and lightning. Enter three WITCHES

FIRST WITCH When shall we three meet again?  
In thunder, lightning, or in rain?

SECOND WITCH When the hurly-burly's done,  
When the battle's lost, and won.

THIRD WITCH That will be ere the set of sun.

FIRST WITCH Where the place?

SECOND WITCH Upon the heath.

THIRD WITCH There to meet with Macbeth.

FIRST WITCH I come, Graymalkin.

Title] *The Tragedie of Macbeth* F (title page and in running titles throughout); *The Tragedy of Macbeth* F (table of contents)  
Act 1, Scene 1 1.1] F (*Actus Primus. Scena Prima.*) 1 SH FIRST WITCH] F (1.) throughout (sometimes as 1) 1 again?]  
F (again?); again *Hannmer* 3 SH SECOND WITCH] F (2.) throughout (sometimes as 2) 5 SH THIRD WITCH] F (3.)  
throughout (sometimes as 3)

### Act 1, Scene 1

Perhaps the most striking opening scene in Shakespeare. Coleridge saw a particular contrast with *Hamlet*: 'In the latter the gradual ascent from the simplest forms of conversation to the language of impassioned intellect, yet still the intellect remaining the seat of passion; in the *Macbeth*, the invocation is made at once to the imagination, and the emotions connected therewith' (Coleridge, p. 106). This romantic view diverged sharply from that of Johnson, who defended playwright and witches with a relativistic argument, 'however they may now be ridiculed'. The setting is unlocalised, but at least since Komisarjevsky's production (Stratford, 1933) the sisters (or 'witches', see o.s.n.) have sometimes been imagined as battlefield scavengers.

o SD *Thunder and lightning* Witches were popularly supposed to 'send raine, haile, tempests, thunder, lightening' (Scot, III, 13); see 1.3.10–13 n.

o SD **WITCHES** Only at 1.3.5 does the dialogue use the word *witch*; elsewhere they are named and name themselves 'weird sisters', although 'Witches' appears in many sbs. Male actors often play these parts (see C. B. Young in NS, p. lxxii, and e.g. Colin George's production, Sheffield Playhouse, October 1970). In his 1888 souvenir edn, Henry Irving claimed (p. 6), 'this is, I believe, the first time that the weird sisters have been performed by women';

on the eighteenth-century English stage, Ann Pitt was the only female witch (Carlisle, p. 338). See illustration 2, p. 18 above. For the witches' early costuming, see Supplementary Note, p. 239 below.

1 **When** The play's first word concerns time, a topic that will become increasingly important and is always more significant than place, 'Where' (6).

3 **hurly-burly** turmoil, tumult, especially of rebellion or insurrection. Reduplications with suffixed -y are common in English (e.g. topsy-turvy, handy-dandy, wishy-washy), but the see-saw childishness is here appropriate to the sisters' obscurely ominous way of speaking and the teetering confusion of opposites to follow.

4 **battle** conflict F's 'Battaile' could also mean 'body . . . of troops . . . composing an entire army, or one of its main divisions' (*OED* Battle sb 8a), a meaning appropriate to the slaughter soon described.

4 **lost, and won** Possibly proverbial (Dent w408.1); see 1.2.67 n.

7 **heath** wilderness; uninhabited and uncultivated ground.

9 **Graymalkin** A cat's name. 'Malkin' is a diminutive of 'Maud' or 'Matilda' (see *OED* Malkin and Mawkin); 'malkin' is also slang for 'slut, lewd woman' (Williams). It was a 'peculiarly English notion' (Thomas, p. 445) that cats and toads (see 10 n.), as well as dogs, rats, and some insects, were

SECOND WITCH Paddock calls.

10

THIRD WITCH Anon.

ALL Fair is foul, and foul is fair,

Hover through the fog and filthy air.

*Exeunt*

**I.2** *Alarum within. Enter King [DUNCAN], MALCOLM, DONALDBAIN, LENNOX, with Attendants, meeting a bleeding CAPTAIN*

DUNCAN What bloody man is that? He can report,

As seemeth by his plight, of the revolt

10-13 SECOND WITCH . . . air.] Singer<sup>2</sup> (*conj. Hunter, 'New'*, II, 165, subst.); All. Paddock calls anon: faire is foule, and foule is faire, / Houser through the fogge and filthie ayre. F O Act 1, Scene 2 1.2] F (*Scena Secunda.*) O SD.1 King DUNCAN, MALCOLM] Capell; King Malcome F O SD.1-2 DONALDBAIN] F (*Donalbaine* here and in SDS throughout) O SD.2 CAPTAIN] F (*Captaine*); Sergeant Cam. I SH DUNCAN] F (*King* here and in SHS throughout)

likely to be witches' 'familiars', non-human agents of their deeds; see Scot, I, 4; 'Familiar . . . a very quaint invisible devil' (Webster, *Duchess of Malfi* I.1.259-60); 'familiars in the shape of mice, / Rats, ferrets, weasels' (*Edmonton* 2.1.103-4).

10 Paddock Toad.

12 Fair is foul, and foul is fair Proverbially, 'Fair without but foul within' (Dent F29); see I.3.36 and 1.7.81-2 n.

13 fog An invitation to the audience's imagination, since fog-effects were not possible in early productions, though smoke (from burning resin) was.

13 filthy murky, thick (*OED* Filthy a 1b, quoting this line).

13 SD Precisely how the witches depart here and at I.3.76 (on foot, through a trap-door, or flying?) is complicated by Hecate's departure in 3.5, which may stipulate a flying exit but is also probably an addition by Thomas Middleton (see Textual Analysis, pp. 255-9 below); the sisters' departure in 4.1 – vanish (4.1.131 SD) – is also probably Middleton's. Wickham ('Fly', pp. 172-3, 177-8) concludes that Shakespeare's witches did not fly, but Middleton's (added) Hecate did. See also Textual Analysis, pp. 256-7. Eighteenth-century editors add SDS – fly away (Rowe), vanish (Malone) – recording later and certainly mechanised stage practice.

## Act 1, Scene 2

This scene condenses three conflicts – Macdonald's rebellion, and invasions by Sweno and by Canute – described in *Scotland*, pp. 168b–170b, where 'Norwegian' and 'Danish' are indiscriminately applied to the foreign forces; Shakespeare (or another author) leaves the third vaguest, perhaps because James VI and I's wife Queen Anne was

Danish. The setting may be imagined as Duncan's command post, near a battlefield (as *Alarum* (O SD.1) suggests), but distant enough from 'Fife' (48) to make that a plausible place of origin for Ross and Angus. Jones, *Scenic*, pp. 208-9, argues that this scene 'seems modelled on the opening scene of *1 Henry IV*', and Mark Rose, *Shakespearean Design*, 1972, pp. 83-8, finds several complex patterns in the first act; thus, e.g., this scene and the following two are all 'field' scenes, followed by three 'castle' scenes.

O SD.1 *Alarum* A call to arms; a warning to give notice of danger (*OED* Alarm sb 4a and 5). 'Normally, the term [a variant spelling of 'alarm'] . . . signifies a battle . . . and includes clashes of weapons, drumbeats, trumpet blasts, shouts – anything to make a tumult' (Long, p. 131). 'Every Souldier shall diligently observe and learne the sound of Drummes, Fifes, and Trumpets to the end he may knowe how to answer the same in his service' (Thomas and Leonard Digges, *An Arithmetical Warlike Treatise named Stratoticos*, rev. edn (1590), sig. 2c2r); see also Harbage, pp. 52-3.

O SD.1 *within* i.e. off-stage. In the Jacobean theatre, *within* indicates the tiring-house which formed the back wall of the stage. The actors entered from and exited to this space, where they also changed their costumes.

O SD.2 *meeting* This direction may not be Shakespeare's; it seems likely to mean that the wounded speaker is on stage and the king's company enters to him. See Supplementary Note, p. 239 below.

2 seemeth . . . plight The first of many inferences (note 'seemeth'), some incorrect, from appearances visual and verbal; see e.g. I.2.47 n. and I.4.11-12 n.

2 the revolt Macdonald's rebellion occurred in

The newest state.

MALCOLM This is the sergeant

Who like a good and hardy soldier fought  
'Gainst my captivity. Hail, brave friend;  
Say to the king the knowledge of the broil  
As thou didst leave it.

CAPTAIN Doubtful it stood,

As two spent swimmers that do cling together  
And choke their art. The merciless Macdonald –  
Worthy to be a rebel, for to that  
The multiplying villainies of nature  
Do swarm upon him – from the Western Isles  
Of kerns and galloglasses is supplied,  
And Fortune on his damnèd quarrel smiling,

<sup>7</sup> SH CAPTAIN] F (*Cap.*), and throughout scene; Ser. / Cam., throughout scene      <sup>9</sup> Macdonald –] Oxford (after Keightley);  
Macdonald F; Macdonnell F2–4; Macdonel / Capell      <sup>13</sup> galloglasses] F (Gallowglasses); Gallow glasses F2–4      <sup>14</sup>  
quarrel] Hammer; Quarry F

'Lochquhaber' (*Scotland*, p. 169a), modern Lochaber, the district including Ben Nevis in south Inverness-shire, many miles distant from Fife. See the map, p. 94 above, and headnote to this scene.

<sup>3</sup> newest state latest condition.

<sup>3</sup> sergeant A trisyllable (NS). 'In the 16th c. the title . . . appears . . . to have indicated a much higher rank than in later times' (*OED Sergeant sb* 9a), and two knights were 'Sargeants' at the Battle of Musselburgh (Patten, sig. H7v); 'captain' (as in o SD.2 and SIS throughout this scene) could be used rather vaguely: 'a military leader' (*OED Captain sb* 3). Holinshed mentions (*Scotland*, p. 168b) a 'sergeant at arms' killed by the rebels Macdonald commanded.

<sup>5</sup> captivity capture. (*OED* has no apposite sense.) Holinshed mentions (*Scotland*, p. 169a) another Malcolm, not Duncan's son, whom Macdonald captured and executed in this battle.

<sup>5</sup> Hail The word the sisters (1.3.46–8) and Lady Macbeth (1.5.53) will use when they greet Macbeth. See 1.3.46 n.

<sup>6</sup> broil tumult, quarrel (*OED Broil sb<sup>1</sup>* 1).

<sup>8–9</sup> two . . . art i.e. two exhausted ('spent') swimmers grasp each other ('cling together'), hoping to survive, but each thus defeats the other's skill ('choke their art'), and both, paradoxically, drown.

<sup>9–13</sup> The merciless . . . supplied Editorial repunctuation (including mine) here stipulates what F leaves fruitfully vague: how many clauses explain 'merciless' and whether 'swarm' ends a clause or anticipates one.

<sup>9</sup> Macdonald F2–4 provide another

modernisation–Anglicisation; the name means 'son of Donald'.

<sup>10</sup> Worthy . . . rebel The combination of worth and rebellion would have been paradoxical to the early audiences; there could be no merit in treason. Compare Satan in Pandemonium: 'by merit raised / To that bad eminence' (Milton, *Paradise Lost* II, 5–6).

<sup>10</sup> for to that to that end (Abbott 186); 'that' = Macdonald's 'worth' as a 'rebel'.

<sup>11</sup> multiplying villainies of nature proliferating evils within creation.

<sup>12</sup> swarm congregate, gather thickly. See *OED Swarm v<sup>1</sup>* 1–2, where the word is used concretely of bees and crickets.

<sup>12</sup> Western Isles The Hebrides. See the map, p. 94 above.

<sup>13</sup> kerns and galloglasses 'The Galloglass ar pycked and selected men of great and mightie bodies, crewell without compassion . . . the weapon they most use is a batle axe, or halberd . . . The kerne is a kinde of footeman, sleightly armed with a sworde, a targett [shield] of woode, or a bow and sheafe of arrows with barbed heades, or els 3 darteres . . .' (John Dymmok, 'A Treatise of Ireland' (c. 1600), ed. Richard Butler, in *Tracts Relating to Ireland*, II (1842), 7). Holinshed says the 'Kernes and Galloglasses' joined Macdonald 'in hope of the spoile' (*Scotland*, p. 169a).

<sup>14–15</sup> Fortune . . . whore Proverbially, 'Fortune is a strumpet' (Dent F603.1).

<sup>14</sup> quarrel dispute. F's 'quarry' is a variant spelling for many meanings of 'quarrel'; one meaning, 'a

Showed like a rebel's whore. But all's too weak,  
For brave Macbeth – well he deserves that name –  
Disdaining Fortune, with his brandished steel,  
Which smoked with bloody execution,  
Like Valour's minion carved out his passage  
Till he faced the slave,  
Which ne'er shook hands, nor bade farewell to him,  
Till he unseamed him from the nave to th'chaps  
And fixed his head upon our battlements.

DUNCAN O valiant cousin, worthy gentleman.

CAPTAIN As whence the sun 'gins his reflection,

16 Macbeth – well . . . name –] Keightley; *Macbeth* (well . . . name) F      21 ne'er] F (neu'r)      22 chaps] F (Chops)

short, heavy, square-headed arrow or bolt . . . used in shooting with the cross-bow' (*OED* Quarrel sb<sup>1</sup> 1), may be relevant.

15 rebel's whore i.e. Fortune is sexually promiscuous as her lover, Macdonald, is politically errant. The opprobrium of each term reinforces that of the other, so that the phrase almost becomes an epithet.

15 all's all is; all his.

18 smoked sprayed (blood), perhaps also the effect of 'steaming': see 'reeking' (39) and n.

19 minion dearest friend, favourite child (*OED* Minion sb<sup>1</sup> 1b, quoting 1*H4* 1.1.81, 83: 'A son who is the theme of honour's tongue . . . Who is sweet Fortune's minion and her pride'). The word was, however, often used opprobriously (= 'paramour, mistress') and could always have some negative connotation; see Williams sv.

19 carved out his passage sliced his way. Cutting a route through living flesh adumbrates Macduff's Caesarian birth and his action in the play; see Watson, p. 100.

20 This short line has been much emended; it may be the consequence of deliberate or accidental omission.

20–2 he . . . slave . . . him . . . he . . . him The referents are not clear until Duncan acknowledges Macbeth's victory (24). Then we understand that 'slave' and 'him' (20, 22) = Macdonald, and 'he' (20, 22) = Macbeth. Compositor A (see Textual Analysis, p. 250 below) may have erred, but the passage conveys breathlessly broken grammar and unfixed identities, thus anticipating Macbeth's drift into treason, into being like Macdonald and Cawdor.

21 shook hands Elizabethans customarily shook hands upon meeting as well as parting; see Dent ss6 and e.g. Peele, *David and Bethsabe* line 566 (meeting), and Webster, *Duchess of Malfi* 3.2.131–5 (parting). For civil Scots warriors, see p. 12 above.

22 unseamed him ripped him up. The image is from undoing a garment's seam and represents the body as clothing; the line offers an auditory pun (seem/seam) that may hint that Macbeth's violence defeated deception ('un-seemed').

22 nave navel (umbilicus), probably; this line is the sole support for nave = navel in *OED*. Both 'nave' and 'navel' could also mean 'central part or block of a wheel' (*OED* Nave sb<sup>1</sup> 1a); compare *OED* Navel sb 3 and Hal's description of Falstaff as 'this nave of a wheel' (2*H4* 2.4.255). Figuratively, then, 'nave' may here refer to the crotch rather than the navel *per se* (see 19 n.). See illustration 3, p. 21 above. For the unusual act of unseaming upward, Steevens<sup>3</sup> compared 'Then from the navell to the throat at once, / He [Neoptolemus] ript old *Priam*' (Marlowe, *Dido, Queen of Carthage* 2.1.255–6); as NS, p. xli, notes, Shakespeare apparently remembers this speech in writing the Player King's speech (see *Ham.* 2.2.471 ff.).

22 chaps jaws. F's 'chops' has been superseded.

23 fixed . . . battlements A common practice: Macbeth 'caused the head [of Macdonald] to be cut off, and set upon a poles end . . . The headlesse trunke he commanded to bee hoong up upon an high paire of gallowes' (*Scotland*, p. 169a). See 5.9.20 SD n. Traitors' heads could be seen, weathering, impaled on London Bridge. See illustration 4, p. 31 above.

24 valiant cousin, worthy gentleman Holinshed (*Scotland*, p. 168b) describes Macbeth as a 'valiant gentleman' and explains that Macbeth and Duncan were cousins. See 1.7.16–20 n.

25–8 As . . . swells A complicated and ambiguous passage, but the main meaning is clear: in circumstances that seem positive, a threat unexpectedly appears. Two interpretations have been offered: (1) storms and thunder, like the Scandinavian invasion, come from the east, where

Shipwrecking storms and direful thunders,  
 So from that spring whence comfort seemed to come,  
 Discomfort swells. Mark, King of Scotland, mark,  
 No sooner justice had, with valour armed,  
 Compelled these skipping kerns to trust their heels,  
 But the Norwegian lord, surveying vantage,  
 With furbished arms and new supplies of men  
 Began a fresh assault.

DUNCAN Dismayed not this our captains, Macbeth and Banquo?

CAPTAIN Yes, as sparrows, eagles, or the hare, the lion.

If I say sooth, I must report they were  
 As cannons over-charged with double cracks;  
 So they doubly redoubled strokes upon the foe.

**26** Shipwrecking] F (Shipwracking)    **26** thunders,] F (Thunders:); thunders breaking F2-4; thunders break; Pope

the comforting sun also rises ('gins his reflection'); (2) when the sun reaches the vernal equinox and returns ('reflection'), springtime storms (equinoctial gales) occur. The question turns on whether 'spring' = 'source of water' or = 'season of the year' and whether 'reflection' = 'shining' or = 'astronomical regression of the sun at the equinox'. There is no evidence for the last definition (first offered in Singer<sup>2</sup>), and 'swells' supports 'spring' = 'source of water'.

**25** 'gins begins (an aphetic form).

**25** reflection shining (*Lexicon*); return, regression (*OED* Reflection 4c, citing this line as the first of only two quotations).

**26** Shipwrecking Earliest known use of the participial adjective (Schäfer).

**26** direful dreadful, terrible.

**26** thunders The verb 'come' is understood here, though spoken only in 27. Many editors insert 'break'.

**28** Mark Heed, pay attention.

**28** King of Scotland The dialogue, for the first time, identifies Duncan as king.

**29** valour The word recalls 19 and makes Duncan analogous to personified Justice, Macbeth to Valour.

**30** skipping leaping in fright. See *Wiv.* 2.1.229 and *Lear* 5.3.278.

**30** trust their heels run away. 'To trust to one's heels' was quasi-proverbial (Dent, *PLED* H394.11).

**31-62** Historically, the 'Norwegian lord' (31) was Sweno (Svend Estridson), who invaded in AD 1041 (Sugden); Sweno's invasion began victoriously in Fife and extended over a period of time (*Scotland*, pp. 169a-170b). The so-called 'Sueno's Stone' (dating from some time between the ninth century and the eleventh), an extraordinary carved pillar

commemorating a battle, probably not this one, still stands just north-east of Forres. See illustration 5, p. 36 above.

**31** surveying observing, perceiving (*OED* Survey v 4c, quoting this line).

**31** vantage advantage, benefit (*OED* Vantage sb 1a).

**32** furbished renovated, revived (*OED* Furbish v 2); fresh, new.

**32** supplies additional troops (*OED* Supply sb 5).

**35** The sergeant, or captain, speaks ironically: Banquo and Macbeth were not 'dismayed', but the subsequent unexpected inversions anticipate the disorder Macbeth and Lady Macbeth will introduce into Scotland, where all 'natural' orderings are overturned.

**35** sparrows, eagles . . . hare, the lion In each pair the first is traditionally weak or fearful, the second, strong and brave; for the second pair, see Dent H147 and L307.1, respectively.

**36** sooth truth.

**36** report tell, state. The word is also a pun on the sound ('report') of the cannons as they fire.

**37-8** These lines seem to describe cannon loaded with four (or eight?) times the usual amount of powder and (?) shot, conditions that would have destroyed most Renaissance weapons, but the language echoes the play's insistence on doubling and doubleness. See pp. 25-7 above.

**37** cracks cannon-shots (*OED* Crack sb 1b, quoting this line as its earliest post-1400 example).

**38** So Thus.

**38** doubly redoubled strokes eightfold blows. Steevens cites 'doubly redoubled' (R2 1.3.80). Compare 'blows, twice two for one' (3H6 1.4.50) and see 1.6.16 n.

Except they meant to bathe in reeking wounds  
Or memorise another Golgotha,  
I cannot tell.

40

But I am faint, my gashes cry for help.

DUNCAN So well thy words become thee as thy wounds;  
They smack of honour both. Go get him surgeons.

[*Exit Captain, attended*]

*Enter ROSS and ANGUS*

Who comes here?

MALCOLM The worthy Thane of Ross.

45

LENNOX What a haste looks through his eyes! So should he look  
That seems to speak things strange.

ROSS God save the king.

DUNCAN Whence cam'st thou, worthy thane?

ROSS From Fife, great king,  
Where the Norwegian banners flout the sky  
And fan our people cold.

50

44 SD.1 *Exit Captain, attended*] Malone (subst.); not in F omitted by Steevens<sup>3</sup> and SD follows here (45)

44 SD.2] F; after strange (47) Dyce

44 SD.2 and ANGUS] F;

39 Except Unless.

39 reeking steaming or smoking with blood (*OED* Reek v<sup>1</sup> 2c, quoting *JC* 3.1.158: the assassins' bloodied 'hands do reek and smoke').

40 memorise another Golgotha commemorate a second Calvary (i.e. create a place like that where Jesus was crucified). See 'And he [Jesus] bare his crosse, & went forth into a place, which is called a ye place of dead mens skulles, but in Hebrue Golgotha: Where they crucified hym' (*John* 19.17-18) and 'The field of Golgotha and dead men's skulls' (*R2* 4.1.144).

42 gashes . . . help Shakespeare and other dramatists often represent wounds as mouths. For Antony, dead Caesar's wounds 'like dumb mouths do ope their ruby lips' (*JC* 3.1.260), a Roman citizen suggests, 'we are to put our tongues into those wounds and speak for them' (*Cor.* 2.3.6-7), and John Beane's many wounds are 'fifteene mouthes' accusing his murderer (*Warning*, sig. H1v). Here, the captain's wounds are speech, as Macbeth's words to his wife (in 1.5) and hers to him (in 1.7) will also be speeches, which are, or lead to, wounds.

44 smack savour, taste (*OED* Smack v<sup>1</sup> 2), mixed figuratively with the 'sharp noise' (*OED* Smack v<sup>2</sup> 1) the lips make in tasting, hence 'smack' = the sound of the wounds' words.

44 SD.2 For the placing of this SD, see Textual Analysis, pp. 246-7 below. Editors often delete Angus because Malcolm (45) identifies Ross only, and Angus does not speak; Ross and Angus jointly fulfil Duncan's command (64-5) in the next scene ('We are sent' (1.3.98)), however, and enter as a pair in 1.4 and 1.6.

45 Thane Head of a clan; a Scottish rank. A thane owed fealty to the king rather than to another noble, and held lands directly from the king.

46 looks through is visible through (*OED* Look v 2ob), appears. Ross, like the bleeding captain (1-2), seems easily interpreted from his appearance. Compare 'Her business looks in her / With an importing visage' (*AWW* 5.3.135-6) and 'There's business in these faces' (*Cym.* 5.5.23).

47 seems appears (*OED* Seem v<sup>2</sup> 4b). Ross has the appearance of a person whose looks portend strange matters.

48-58 From Fife . . . fell on us Ross's narrative recommences the battle; see 31-62 n.

48 Fife County on the east coast of Scotland between the Firths of Forth and Tay (Sugden). See the map, p. 94 above, and 2.4.36 n.

49 flout mock, jeer (*OED* Flout v<sup>1</sup>, quoting this line). The banners mock through waving, as 'fan' (50) makes clear.

Norway himself, with terrible numbers,  
 Assisted by that most disloyal traitor,  
 The Thane of Cawdor, began a dismal conflict,  
 Till that Bellona's bridegroom, lapped in proof,  
 Confronted him with self-comparisons,  
 Point against point, rebellious arm 'gainst arm,  
 Curbing his lavish spirit. And to conclude,  
 The victory fell on us –

55

DUNCAN Great happiness! –

ROSS That now Sweno,  
 The Norways' king, craves composition.  
 Nor would we deign him burial of his men  
 Till he disbursed at Saint Colm's Inch  
 Ten thousand dollars to our general use.

60

DUNCAN No more that Thane of Cawdor shall deceive  
 Our bosom interest. Go pronounce his present death  
 And with his former title greet Macbeth.

65

ROSS I'll see it done.

56 point, rebellious] F; point rebellious, *Theobald* 58 us –] Keightley (subst.); us. F 58 happiness! –] This edn;  
 happiness. F 59 Norways'] F (Norwayes) 61 Colm's] F (Colmes); Colum's Oxford

51 Norway The King of Norway.

52–3 traitor . . . Cawdor Holinshed's account merely notes that Cawdor was 'condemned at Fores of treason against the king' (*Scotland*, p. 171a), but does not involve him in the military rebellion.

54 Bellona Roman goddess of war.

54 bridegroom i.e. Macbeth, who has advanced in marital status from being Valour's minion (19).

54 lapped enfolded, wrapped (Clarendon).

54 proof armour.

55 self-comparisons comparisons with himself (Macbeth, 'Bellona's bridegroom' (54)). Cawdor is forced into an unequal competition ('a dismal conflict' (53)) with Macbeth, but the phrase 'self-comparisons' implies that some common basis exists for comparing the hero and his enemy.

56 Point Sword tip.

56 point, rebellious Editors have changed F's punctuation unnecessarily: one arm or one sword needs to be identified as belonging to the rebel Cawdor; no matter how punctuated, the line will always and ambiguously half-refer to Macbeth as 'rebellious'. Some editors identify 'him' as Norway in order to rationalise 1.3.70–1 (see n.) and 1.3.106, but 'rebellious' better suits the native Cawdor than the invading, and foreign, King of Norway. Compare 20–2 n.

57 Curbing Restraining, controlling. A rider controls a horse through the 'curb', part of the bridle and bit.

57 lavish unrestrained, impetuous (*OED* Lavish a 1b, quoting this line).

58 Duncan interrupts Ross's report extrametrically.

59 Norways' Norwegian's. F's form, retained here for the metre, is obsolete (see *OED* Norway<sup>2</sup>).

59 craves composition i.e. seeks to make peace, surrenders.

60 deign condescend to grant (*OED* Deign v 2a, quoting this line as its second instance after one in 1589).

61 Saint Colm's Inch Inchcolm, an island in the Firth of Forth near Edinburgh; see Patten, sigs. M1–IV, and the map, p. 94 above. 'Colm' (named for St Columba) is disyllabic; Oxford prints 'Colum's' to indicate that fact.

62 dollars 'The English name for the German thaler, a large silver coin' (*OED* Dollar 1).

64 bosom interest intimate or confidential concern (not quoted at *OED* Bosom sb 8d).

64 present instant, immediate.

65 former title i.e. Thane of Cawdor, but Ross has most recently named him 'most disloyal traitor' (52), as Macbeth will soon prove also.

DUNCAN What he hath lost, noble Macbeth hath won.

*Exeunt*

### 1.3 Thunder. Enter the three WITCHES

FIRST WITCH Where hast thou been, sister?

SECOND WITCH Killing swine.

THIRD WITCH Sister, where thou?

FIRST WITCH A sailor's wife had chestnuts in her lap

And munched, and munched, and munched. 'Give me',  
quoth I.

'Arint thee, witch', the rump-fed runnion cries.

Act 1, Scene 3 1.3] F (*Scena Tertia.*) 4 munched] F (mouncht) 4 'Give me',] Capell (subst.); Giue me F 5  
'Arint . . . witch'] Capell (subst.); Aroynt . . . Witch F 5 runnion] F (Ronyon)

67 lost . . . won Transfer of the title (and the treason) from Cawdor to Macbeth exemplifies how something may be both lost and won, the witches' paradox (1.1.4). The line elegantly varies the proverb 'No man loses but another wins' (Dent M337).

#### Act 1, Scene 3

As with all the witch-scenes, the location here is vague (a 'heath' (1.1.7)); Macbeth and Banquo seem to be travelling to 'Forres' (37), perhaps from 'Fife' (1.2.48), many miles distant geographically if not dramatically. For the intersection of human curiosity with prophecy, see *Ant.* 1.2.1–78. Forman (ii, 337) apparently says he saw Macbeth and Banquo on horseback, not an impossible stage effect (see *Woodstock* 3.2.132–73), but an unlikely one here (see Leah Scragg, 'Macbeth on horseback', *S. Sur.* 26 (1973), 81–8). See 3.3.11–14 n.

o SD *the F's article* (absent in 1.1.0 SD, but present at 3.5.0 SD and 4.1.0 SD) may suggest revision or a theatrical sense of the witches as a dramatic unit or force. Compare 2.1.20 and 4.1.38 SD.

2 Killing swine English witches were often accused of harming domestic animals.

4 munched 'A Scottish word signifying to eat with the gums when toothless' (Travers), but 'where shals all munch' (Dekker [and Thomas Middleton], *The Roaring Girl* 2.1.356), a question about where to eat, suggests a more general and English usage.

5 Arint The word's meaning is unknown, and Poor Tom's 'aroynt thee Witch, aroynt thee' (*Lear* TLN 1903) is the only other early recorded instance (Schäfer); contextually, it seems to mean 'avault! be gone!' Dent w584 cites John Ray, *Collection of Eng-*

*lish Proverbs* (1679): 'Arint thee, witch, quoth Besse Locket to her mother.'

5 rump-fed A puzzling phrase whose literal meaning is 'fed on rump'. 'Rump' = the hind quarter of both humans and the animals they eat, and the 'rumpe or buttocke peece of meat' (John Florio, *A Worlde of Words* (1598), under Groppone, antedating *OED* Buttock sb 2 by twenty-five years) was a desirable cut. Shakespeare elsewhere imagines the 'devil Luxury [Lechery], with his fat rump' (*Tro.* 5.2.55); given the sexual innuendo of the next lines, 'rump-fed' might thus also mean 'fed [i.e. fattened] in the rump, lecherous' (compare Marston's *The Dutch Courtesan* (1605), where the title's courtesan is described as 'a plump-rump'd wench' (*Dutch Courtesan* 4.3.2)), and by the Restoration 'rump' had numerous bawdy meanings (whore, genitals, copulate: see the article 'Rump' in Williams), and scatological vocabulary frequently blurs and exchanges words for fundament and genitals (see e.g. the article 'Arse' in Williams). A link between feeding and lechery has strong biblical precedent: 'when I had fed them to the full, they then committed adulterie, and assembled themselves by troupes in the harlots houses' (Jer. 5.7, AV). Shakespeare's two other uses (*IH4* 2.2.84, *MND* 2.1.45) of phrases compounding a noun with '-fed' are active and support instead the meaning 'fed on rump'; compare 'lust-dited' (*Lear* 4.1.67). From the witch's point of view, therefore, it may be that the sailor's wife is enviable, selfish, lecherous, and (possibly) sexually satisfied. Perhaps alliteration (rump, runnion) is more important than denotation. See next note.

5 runnion Abusive term applied to a woman (*OED* Runnion 1, citing only this line and *Wiv.*

Her husband's to Aleppo gone, master o'th'Tiger:  
 But in a sieve I'll thither sail,  
 And like a rat without a tail,  
 I'll do, I'll do, and I'll do.

SECOND WITCH I'll give thee a wind.

10

FIRST WITCH Thou'rt kind.

THIRD WITCH And I another.

FIRST WITCH I myself have all the other,

And the very ports they blow,  
 All the quarters that they know  
 I'th'shipman's card.  
 I'll drain him dry as hay:  
 Sleep shall neither night nor day  
 Hang upon his penthouse lid;  
 He shall live a man forbid.

15

20

6 Tiger] F (*Tiger*) 11 Thou'rt] Capell; Th'art F 15 know] Capell; know, F

TLN 2067–8: ‘you Witch, you Ragge, you Baggage, you Poulcat, you Runnion’). Williams (under ‘Runnion’) defines the word as ‘penis’ and claims the use in *Wiv.* is ‘an abusive term . . . comparable to casual use of *prick* today’. The same might be true here. See preceding note.

6 Aleppo Inland trading city in northern Syria, part of the Turkish empire from 1516 to 1918. Its port was Iskanderun (Sugden).

6 master captain, commanding officer.

6 Tiger Common name for a ship. The name also appears in *TN* 5.1.62 and many other contemporary texts. E. A. Loomis, ‘Master of the *Tiger*’, *SQ* 7 (1956), 457, showed that the calamitous Far Eastern voyage of one *Tiger*, lasting from 5 December 1604 to 27 June 1606, equalled 567 days or 81 weeks (i.e.  $7 \times 9 \times 9$ , or ‘Weary sennights nine times nine’ (21)).

7 sieve Sailing in sieves was supposed to be a common witch-practice; it was one of the accusations against the Scottish witches King James personally interrogated in 1590–1 (*Newes*, pp. 13–14).

8 rat . . . tail Steevens observes that witches sometimes turned themselves into rats, but had no body part to match the tail; see also 1.1.9 n.

9 do act; fornicate. ‘Many dramatizations of witches as powerful, dangerous agents associate their agency with female sexual desire’ (Dolan, p. 212).

10–13 Witches were imagined to control the wind and might sell this power on request; see *Newes*, p. 17 (Scottish witches were accused of interfering with James’s return from Denmark with Anne, his bride), and what seems to be Thomas

Nashe’s allusion to that event: ‘as in *Ireland* [i.e. Scotland?] and in *Denmark* both / Witches for gold will sell a man a wind’ (Nashe, III, 272). Muir cites many other references to such witch-practices.

14 Even places of refuge (‘ports’) cannot escape the winds’ ferocity. (*OED* Blow v<sup>1</sup> has no apposite meaning.)

15 quarters geographical directions.

16 Although the witches speak a distinctive metre and irregular rhyme, this line is unusually short and another line, rhyming with ‘card’, may have been omitted.

16 card chart; circular piece of stiff paper (the ‘mariner’s card’ or ‘card of the sea’ showing the customary 32 points of the compass). *OED* Card s<sup>b2</sup> 3b, 4a admits that the two meanings were not fully distinguished at this date. See illustration 6, p. 39 above.

17 drain him If the first witch intends to be a succubus, her demonic sexual intercourse (see ‘do’ (9)) will exhaust her sailor-victim.

17 dry as hay A very old simile (Dent H231.1).

18 Sleep . . . day Like the sailor, Macbeth will later (3.2) find sleep difficult, and Lady Macbeth will walk in her sleep (5.1).

19 penthouse lid eyelid. The image derives from analogy between the eyebrow and the projecting second storey (‘penthouse’) of many Elizabethan buildings. ‘Penthouse’ could = ‘lean-to shed’ (Hunter), but Shakespeare’s non-figurative uses of the word (*Ado* 3.3.103, *MV* 2.6.1) do not employ that meaning.

20 forbid cursed (*OED* Forbid v 2f, quoting only this line and another, using ‘forbidden’, from 1819).

Weary sennights nine times nine,  
Shall he dwindle, peak, and pine.  
Though his bark cannot be lost,  
Yet it shall be tempest-tossed.  
Look what I have.

SECOND WITCH Show me, show me.

FIRST WITCH Here I have a pilot's thumb,  
Wrecked as homeward he did come.

*Drum within*

THIRD WITCH A drum, a drum;  
Macbeth doth come.

ALL The weird sisters, hand in hand,  
Posters of the sea and land,  
Thus do go, about, about,  
Thrice to thine, and thrice to mine,  
And thrice again, to make up nine.  
Peace, the charm's wound up.

25

30

35

*Enter MACBETH and BANQUO*

MACBETH So foul and fair a day I have not seen.

BANQUO How far is't called to Forres? What are these,

21 sennights] F (Seu' nights)    27 Wrecked] F (Wrackt)    27 SD] F (*at right margin opposite come*)    30 weird] *Theobald; weyward F. See Commentary*    37 Forres] *Staunton (after Pope); Soris F*

21 sennights weeks. F's 'Seu' nights' (seven nights) shows the etymology.

22 peak, and pine waste away and languish (virtual synonyms with 'dwindle').

23 bark small ship.

27 SD *Drum within* Editors and producers have worried whether the drum indicates an accompanying army; on the contrary, it is a conventional Jacobean way to introduce an important martial character, though Davenant and others added text and business to indicate an off-stage army, or to accommodate a silent one on-stage.

30 weird 'claiming the supernatural power of dealing with fate or destiny' (*OED* Weird *a* 1); see also *OED* Weird *sb*, and Supplementary Note, pp. 239–40 below. Theobald's emendation, adopted here, indicates the word's pronunciation as a disyllable.

31 Posters Speedy travellers (*Lexicon*); a Shakespearean coinage (Garner), presumably because 'the fastest way of travel . . . was by post horse' (Foakes).

33 to thine . . . to mine in your direction . . . in my direction (?). The witches here perform some dance, formal movements, or gestures that bind

each individual into the group. Jonson's witches danced 'back to back and hip to hip, their hands joined, and making their circles backward, to the left hand, with strange fantastic motions of their heads and bodies' (*Queens* 330–2; see also Jonson's note, *ibid.*, pp. 541–2, and more generally, Clark, 'Inversion', pp. 122–5).

34 nine An action is repeated three times for each witch.

35 wound up placed in readiness (*OED* Wind *v<sup>1</sup>* 24f, quoting this line). The figurative use probably derives from tightening the strings on a musical instrument, but the witches may have 'wound' themselves 'up' in some stage movement (see 33 n.). The phrase could also mean 'concluded'.

36–107 So . . . robes Hints of how this scene might have been staged and acted appear in Macbeth's letter to his wife (1.5.1ff.).

36 foul and fair meteorologically unpleasant and militarily successful. Macbeth's words echo the witches' (1.1.12); see p. 51 above.

37 How . . . Forres? How distant is Forres reckoned to be? A Scotticism (Travers).

37 Forres Town east of Inverness and not far from the site of one of the historical battles earlier

So withered and so wild in their attire,  
 That look not like th'habitants o'th'earth,  
 And yet are on't? – Live you, or are you aught  
 That man may question? You seem to understand me,  
 By each at once her choppy finger laying  
 Upon her skinny lips; you should be women,  
 And yet your beards forbid me to interpret  
 That you are so.

40

**MACBETH** Speak if you can: what are you?

45

**FIRST WITCH** All hail Macbeth, hail to thee, Thane of Glamis.

**SECOND WITCH** All hail Macbeth, hail to thee, Thane of Cawdor.

**THIRD WITCH** All hail Macbeth, that shalt be king hereafter.

**BANquo** Good sir, why do you start and seem to fear

Things that do sound so fair? – I'th'name of truth

50

(1.2) condensed. Holinshed's account of King Duff's illness describes 'a sort [group] of witches dwelling in . . . Fores' (*Scotland*, p. 149b). See the map, p. 94 above. F.'s 'Soris' (for 'Foris', i.e. Forres) derives from a misreading of manuscript *f* as *s*. See 69n.

**37–40** What . . . on't Banquo notices the witches; like the king's company in 1.2, he judges appearances, though not so confidently. His speech (38–45) is also the only spoken evidence for the witches' appearance, which may be (and has been in some productions) quite different. Holinshed's 1577 illustration of this scene represents the witches as mortal women, not old, fashionably, even aristocratically, dressed (see Bullough, vii, 494), thus giving the paradox of 'fair is foul' (1.1.12) point. See Supplementary Note to 1.1.0 SD (p. 239 below) and 'I never thought so fayre a dame, had been so foule within' (*Fidele and Fortunio* line 703).

**42–3** By each . . . lips The witches silence Banquo with eerily synchronised gestures.

**42** choppy chapped, cracked by wind and weather. This line is the earliest recorded use under *OED* Choppy; *OED* Chappy <sup>a1</sup> shows that spelling as also current.

**43** should be look as if you ought to be.

**43–4** women . . . beards See illustration 7 and p. 35 above. Compare the insult to Paulina, 'mankind witch' (*WT* 2.3.68).

**46–8** Political prophecy, especially on the eve of conflict, has a long history and was dangerous in the Tudor and Stuart period. Shakespeare dramatised such prophecies in *2H6* 1.4 and *John* 4.2.143–57 and 5.1.25–9; Meander thought the rebel Tamburlaine 'misled by dreaming prophecies' (*Tamburlaine, Part 1* 1.1.41). See e.g. Steven Mullaney, *The Place of the Stage*, 1988, chapter 5;

Jaech; Mary C. Williams, 'Merlin and the prince: *The Speeches at Prince Henry's Barriers*', *Renaissance Drama* n.s. 8 (1977), 221–30; Howard Dobin, *Merlin's Disciples: Prophecy, Poetry and Power in Renaissance England*, 1990. The practice perhaps derived from classical haruspicy, official prophecy based upon the examination of the entrails of animals, etc.

**46** All hail Shakespeare elsewhere (*3H6* 5.7.33–4, *R2* 4.1.169–71) associates this phrase with Judas's betrayal of Jesus, as do his contemporaries (see 'the All-haile of a second Judas' in *A Letter . . . containing a true Report of a strange Conspiracie* (1599), sig. B2r, and the York and Chester cycles of mystery plays (see M. Hattaway (ed.), *3H6*, 1992, 5.7.34 n.)). See 1.5.53n.

**46** Glamis Metre sometimes requires a dissyllable (Gla-miss); elsewhere, modern productions often employ the modern monosyllable, 'Glahms'. The name might have had a particular resonance for Shakespeare and his audience. *Scotland*, p. 320a, reports the trial (1537) of Jane Douglas, Lady Glamis, for attempting to poison James V; she was convicted on false evidence and burned at the stake. Perhaps misled by the manner of execution, subsequent writers recorded her crime as witchcraft. See Robert Pitcairn, *Ancient Criminal Trials in Scotland*, 1, pt 1 (1833), 187–98.

**48** king For the audience, only this title is a surprise because we know Duncan has already awarded Cawdor's title to Macbeth (1.2.65); theatrically, the witches' apparent foreknowledge is minimised.

**49** start recoil, flinch, make a nervous gesture or movement. For this moment on stage, see p. 81 above.

**49–50** fear . . . fair Alliteration ('start', 'seem', 'sound', and 'fear', 'fair') strikes the ear, but the

Are ye fantastical, or that indeed  
 Which outwardly ye show? My noble partner  
 You greet with present grace and great prediction  
 Of noble having and of royal hope  
 That he seems rapt withal. To me you speak not.  
 If you can look into the seeds of time  
 And say which grain will grow and which will not,  
 Speak then to me, who neither beg nor fear  
 Your favours nor your hate.

55

FIRST WITCH Hail.

60

SECOND WITCH Hail.

THIRD WITCH Hail.

FIRST WITCH Lesser than Macbeth, and greater.

SECOND WITCH Not so happy, yet much happier.

THIRD WITCH Thou shalt get kings, though thou be none.

65

So all hail Macbeth and Banquo.

FIRST WITCH Banquo and Macbeth, all hail.

MACBETH Stay, you imperfect speakers. Tell me more.

By Finel's death, I know I am Thane of Glamis,  
 But how of Cawdor? The Thane of Cawdor lives  
 A prosperous gentleman, and to be king  
 Stands not within the prospect of belief,

70

55 rapt] F (wrapt) 69 Finel's] *This edn; Sinells* F. See Commentary

evocative, morally puzzling wordplay on fear/fair 'is based on antithesis, not identity' (Cercignani, p. 235) between 'fear' and 'fair'. Compare the contrasts of 'foul' and 'fair' (36 above and 1.1.12), and of 'fear' and 'fouly' (see 3.1.2-3 and n.).

51 fantastical imaginary, products of (our) fantasy.

53 present grace immediate favour. Compare the last (1.2.64) and next (136) uses of the adjective.

54 noble having . . . royal hope i.e. new title of honour . . . hoped-for title of king.

54 having possession.

55 rapt entranced. See 141 n. below.

56 seeds of time sources of the future. Compare Warwick's claim that 'a man may prophesy, / With a near aim, of the main chance of things / As yet not come to life, who in their seeds / And weak beginning lie intreasured' (2H4 3.1.82-5), and see 4.1.58 n.

58-9 neither beg . . . nor your hate i.e. Banquo neither begs your favours nor fears your hate. Alliteration and rhetorical hyperbaton make the line confusing and ambiguous.

65 get beget, father; perhaps also 'acquire, obtain'.

69 Finel Historically, Finel (or Finley or Findlaech) was Macbeth's father (see Bulloch, vii, 488 n. 3), and that name should be substituted here just as 'Forres' is substituted for F's 'Soris' (see 37 n.); F's 'Sinells' is an ancient error, the result of a f/ f error in Holinshed (*Scotland*, p. 168b) and in his source, the Dundee historian Hector Boece (also known as Boethius).

70-1 The Thane . . . gentleman This (like 106) is a locally effective objection, but logically inconsistent for a speaker who confronted 'rebellious' Cawdor 'with self-comparisons' (1.2.55-6) and could presumably expect him to suffer capital punishment for treason, as he does (1.4.3 ff.). The inconsistency is less noticeable because the audience does not yet know Cawdor has died; it may have arisen through simple oversight or through 1.2 having been written or revised after 1.3.

72 prospect mental looking forward, consideration of something future (*OED* Prospect sb 8a, citing this line as its first example).

No more than to be Cawdor. Say from whence  
 You owe this strange intelligence, or why  
 Upon this blasted heath you stop our way  
 With such prophetic greeting? Speak, I charge you.

*Witches vanish*

BANQUO The earth hath bubbles, as the water has,  
 And these are of them. Whither are they vanished?

MACBETH Into the air, and what seemed corporal,  
 Melted, as breath into the wind. Would they had stayed.

BANQUO Were such things here as we do speak about?  
 Or have we eaten on the insane root,  
 That takes the reason prisoner?

MACBETH Your children shall be kings.

BANQUO You shall be king.

MACBETH And Thane of Cawdor too: went it not so?

BANQUO To th'selfsame tune and words – who's here?

*Enter ROSS and ANGUS*

ROSS The king hath happily received, Macbeth,  
 The news of thy success, and when he reads  
 Thy personal venture in the rebels' sight,  
 His wonders and his praises do contend  
 Which should be thine or his. Silenced with that,  
 In viewing o'er the rest o'th'selfsame day,  
 He finds thee in the stout Norwegian ranks,

76 SD] F (in right margin after you) 89 sight] This edn; fight F. See Supplementary Note, p. 241 below

74 intelligence news, information (*OED* Intelligence *sb* 7a).

75 blasted blighted. Supernatural agency or planetary influence may be implied (so *OED* Blasted *ppl* *a* 1, quoting this line). 'The heath which is blasted in a double sense – both barren and accursed – affords the right setting for the asexual witches . . .' (Mahood, p. 134).

76 charge command, order.

76 SD vanish See 1.1.13 SD n.

79 corporal material, physical, having a body (*OED* Corporal *a* 2).

82 on of (Abbott 181).

82 insane causing insanity (*OED* Insane *a* 3, quoting only this line). Discussing a European writer on witchcraft, Scot (III, 3) mentions witches' requirements for 'powders and roots to intoxicate withall'; compare 'Mens sences, sudden altering out of reason, / Doe bode ill lucke, or do fore-shew some treason' (Thomas Andrewe, *The Unmasking of a feminine Machiavell* (1604), sig. EIV).

86 selfsame tune identical meaning. Whately (p. 48) thinks 'tune' ridicules the witches' prophecy, but compare 4.3.238 n.

88 reads understands, discerns. *OED* has no strictly apposite meaning, but unless we assume some written report of Macbeth's deeds, the usage must be even more figurative than in Feste's remark about Malvolio's letter: 'to read his right wits is to read thus' (*TN* 5.1.298–9).

89 sight See Supplementary Note, p. 241 below.

90–1 Duncan, at once admiring Macbeth's actions and praising them, finds himself suspended between silence and speech, awe and the impulse to reward.

92 selfsame identical, same. The echo of 86 suggests that Macbeth's honourable martial success and his plan to kill Duncan are themselves 'selfsame'.

93 stout valiant, brave (*OED* Stout *adj* and *adv* 3a).

Nothing afeard of what thyself didst make,  
Strange images of death. As thick as tale  
Came post with post, and every one did bear  
Thy praises in his kingdom's great defence,  
And poured them down before him.

95

ANGUS

We are sent  
To give thee from our royal master thanks;  
Only to herald thee into his sight,  
Not pay thee.

100

ROSS And for an earnest of a greater honour,

He bade me, from him, call thee Thane of Cawdor:  
In which addition, hail most worthy thane,  
For it is thine.

BANQUO

What, can the devil speak true?

105

MACBETH The Thane of Cawdor lives. Why do you dress me  
In borrowed robes?

ANGUS

Who was the thane, lives yet,  
But under heavy judgement bears that life  
Which he deserves to lose.  
Whether he was combined with those of Norway,  
Or did line the rebel with hidden help  
And vantage, or that with both he laboured  
In his country's wrack, I know not,  
But treasons capital, confessed and proved,

110

95 death. As] *Pope*; death, as F95 tale] F (Tale), hail *Rowe*96 Came] *Rowe*; Can F

100 herald] F (harrold)

94 Nothing afeard Not at all afraid.

95–6 As thick . . . with post 'The posts [messengers] came thronging, with tales thronging, to every tale a post, post after post, and tale after tale' (Sisson, II, 193); compare 'every tongue brings in a several tale' (*R3* 5.3.194). 'As thick as hail' (Dent H11) is an old simile, and many have accepted *Rowe*'s emendation ('hail' for 'tale'), but the two words would be hard to confuse in manuscript, and Compositor A probably saw (and therefore set) an unusual word rather than a more familiar, proverbial one.

102 earnest foretaste, pledge (*OED* Earnest *sb<sup>2</sup>* 1 fig.). Ross vaguely suggests some further 'honour', but Macbeth and the audience may suppose the kingship or status as heir apparent to be the 'greater honour'; see 1.4.48–53.

104 addition title.

106–7 Hunter, *New*, II, 153, suggested 'that in fact the ceremony of investiture should take place upon the stage'.

107 Who He who.

109 The line is metrically truncated, but no satisfactory relineation has been proposed.

110 Whether Whichever of the two (*OED* Whether *pron, adj, conj* 3), also noting that the word is sometimes 'used loosely of more than two' as it is here).

111 line reinforce, fortify. Compare 'To line and new repair our towns of war / With men of courage' (*H5* 2.4.7–8) and Hotspur who 'lined himself with hope' (2*H4* 1.3.27) before the Battle of Shrewsbury. There may be figurative overtones of 'lining' a piece of clothing (the 'robes' of 107).

112 vantage additional amount (e.g. of soldiers, weapons, money). See *OED* Vantage *sb<sup>2</sup>* and compare 1.2.31 n.

112 both i.e. the Norwegian invaders and secret, native help.

113 wrack ruin, overthrow.

114 capital mortal. Cawdor's proven treason merits death.

Have overthrown him.

**MACBETH** [Aside]                   Glamis, and Thane of Cawdor:

115

The greatest is behind. – Thanks for your pains. –

[To Banquo] Do you not hope your children shall be kings,  
When those that gave the Thane of Cawdor to me  
Promised no less to them?

**BANQUO**

That trusted home,

Might yet enkindle you unto the crown,  
Besides the Thane of Cawdor. But 'tis strange,  
And oftentimes, to win us to our harm,  
The instruments of darkness tell us truths;  
Win us with honest trifles, to betray's  
In deepest consequence. –

120

Cousins, a word, I pray you.

125

**MACBETH** [Aside]

Two truths are told,

As happy prologues to the swelling act  
Of the imperial theme. – I thank you, gentlemen. –

116 behind. – Thanks . . . pains. –] *Capell* (*subst.*); behinde. Thankes . . . paines. F      119 them? *Rowe*; them. F      125 consequence. –] *Capell* (*subst.*); consequence. F      128 theme. – I . . . gentlemen. –] *Capell* (*subst.*); Theame. I . . . Gentlemen: F

116 behind ‘in the past’ (*OED* Behind *adv* 1c); ‘still to come’ (*OED* Behind *adv* 4). In the former sense, Macbeth regards as ‘greatest’ the first two titles (Glamis, Cawdor) the sisters used (46–7); in the latter possible sense, the kingship (‘king hereafter’ (48)) is ‘greatest’.

118 those that gave Macbeth understands the sisters, not Duncan, to be the source of his new title.

119 home completely, fully (?). Compare *OED* Home *adv* 4a, ‘to its ultimate position’, a non-figurative usage; ‘All my services / You have paid home’ (*WT* 5.3.3–4); ‘they have their answer home’ (‘The Quip’, line 24 in *The English Poems of George Herbert*, ed. C. A. Patrides, 1974).

120 enkindle inflame with desire (*OED* Enkindle *v* 2b). Compare ‘When I burned in desire’ (1.5.3).

123 The instruments . . . truths ‘The Devil sometimes speaks the truth’ (Dent D266); compare ‘The devil can cite Scripture for his purpose’ (*MV* 1.3.98) and 4.3.22 and n.

124 betray’s betray us.

125 deepest consequence gravest (or weightiest) outcome (so *OED* Deep *a* 7b, citing this line). Banquo contrasts a sequence of ‘trifles’ to an unexpectedly grim conclusion.

126–8 Two truths . . . theme For this passage’s stylistic complexities, see pp. 45–6 above.

127 prologues preliminary events (*OED* Prologue *sb* 1b, quoting ‘my death . . . is made the prologue to their play’ (2*H6* 3.1.148, 151) as its first example). Theatrically, ‘prologues’ are actors (like the sisters, or Ross and Angus) who speak before a play (or an ‘act’ of one) begins.

127 swelling expanding, growing. With ‘act’, ‘swelling’ might refer to the number of actors who enter after a prologue has spoken and to the number of people who attend upon a king as opposed to a thane (see next note). Compare ‘A kingdom for a stage, princes to act, / And monarchs to behold the swelling scene!’ (*H5*, Prologue, 3–4). Given the play’s concentration on child-bearing and childlessness, it seems likely that ‘swelling’ has at least a distant connotation of pregnancy; compare 3.1.60–5 and see pp. 45–6 above.

128 the imperial theme the subject or topic of empery (= becoming not ‘emperor’, but king); ‘theme’ could also have the more active meaning of ‘a subject that causes action’ (see *OED* Theme 1a and b), so ‘imperial theme’ might refer not only to the topic of becoming king, but to the actions required of one who would be king.

128 I thank you, gentlemen Macbeth again (see 116) interrupts himself, acknowledging Ross and Angus, perhaps in order to conceal his self-communing.

This supernatural soliciting  
 Cannot be ill, cannot be good. If ill,  
 Why hath it given me earnest of success,  
 Commencing in a truth? I am Thane of Cawdor.  
 If good, why do I yield to that suggestion,  
 Whose horrid image doth unfix my hair  
 And make my seated heart knock at my ribs  
 Against the use of nature? Present fears  
 Are less than horrible imaginings.  
 My thought, whose murder yet is but fantastical,  
 Shakes so my single state of man that function  
 Is smothered in surmise, and nothing is,  
 But what is not.

BANQUO Look how our partner's rapt.

MACBETH If chance will have me king, why chance may crown me  
 Without my stir.

BANQUO New honours come upon him  
 Like our strange garments, cleave not to their mould,  
 But with the aid of use.

MACBETH Come what come may,

130 ill,] Q1673; ill? F 133 good,] Q1673; good? F 134 hair] F (Heire)

129 soliciting incitement (Johnson).

133-4 suggestion . . . image The witches' words ('suggestion') have helped create a terrifying mental picture ('image').

134 unfix my hair make my hair stand on end (in fear). Compare 5.5.10-15.

135 seated fixed in position (*OED* Seated *ppl a 1*, quoting this line as the first example); firm-set (*Lexicon Seat v 2*).

136 use ordinary course, usual condition or state.

136 Present See 1.2.64 n. and 53 n. above.

138 My thought, whose murder The distorted grammar personifies Macbeth's 'thought' as a being who is murdered by the self, but also suggests Macbeth's intended human victim, Duncan. This short phrase anticipates others: see 2.2.76 and n., and 3.4.142-3 and n.

138 fantastical See 51 n.

139 single state 'unitary condition', 'singular existence', but also perhaps 'weak condition' (Steevens). 'State' probably evokes analogies of the human body, the body politic, and the macrocosm; Brutus says that 'Between the acting of a dreadful thing / And the first motion [suggestion] . . . the state of a man, / Like to a little kingdom, suffers then / The nature of an insurrection' (*JC* 2.1.63-4, 67-9).

139-41 function . . . is not 'All powers of action are oppressed and crushed by one overwhelming image in the mind, and nothing is present to me, but that which is really future' (Johnson).

139 function activity, physical movement.

140-1 nothing . . . not Compare Isabella's confused speech, 'There is a vice . . . For which I would not plead, but that I must; / For which I must not plead, but that I am / At war 'twixt will and will not' (*MM* 2.2.29, 31-3).

141 rapt enraptured, entranced (see 55). Mahoo'd (p. 165) notes that 'the secondary meaning of "wrapped"' appears in Banquo's following images of clothing (143-5).

143 stir movement; agitation (*OED* Stir *sb<sup>1</sup>* 1).

144 strange unfamiliar (to us).

144 cleave cling, adhere.

144 mould body (so *OED* Mould *sb<sup>3</sup>* 4b, quoting only this line and a 1639 translation of French *moule*). The word hints at human mortality, as in 'that womb, / That mettle, that self mould, that fashioned thee' (*R2* 1.2.22-3) and 'men of mould' (*H5* 3.2.22) where 'mould' = earth (*OED* Mould *sb<sup>1</sup>* 4b-c).

145 Come what come may Let what happens, happen; a proverb (Dent c529).

Time and the hour runs through the roughest day.

BANQUO Worthy Macbeth, we stay upon your leisure.

MACBETH Give me your favour. My dull brain was wrought  
With things forgotten. Kind gentlemen, your pains  
Are registered where every day I turn

150

The leaf to read them. Let us toward the king.

[To Banquo] Think upon what hath chanced and at more  
time,

The interim having weighed it, let us speak  
Our free hearts each to other.

BANQUO Very gladly.

MACBETH Till then, enough. – Come, friends.

155

*Exeunt*

#### 1.4 *Flourish. Enter King [DUNCAN], LENNOX, MALCOLM, DONALDBAIN, and Attendants*

DUNCAN Is execution done on Cawdor, or not

155 enough. —] Capell (*subst.*); enough: F Act 1, Scene 4 1.4] F (*Scena Quarta.*) 1 or F (Or); Are F2

146 Time . . . roughest day Proverbially, ‘The longest day has an end’ (Dent D90). ‘Time’ and ‘hour’ may be the sort of redundancy common in proverbs and proverb-like speech, but Macklin paused before ‘hour’, making it = ‘opportunity’ (*Morning Chronicle*, 30 October 1773, quoted by Bartholomeusz, p. 85), a reading proposed in Elizabeth Montagu, *An Essay on the Writings and Genius of Shakespear* (1769), p. 186.

146 roughest stormiest, most tempestuous. Compare 2.3.53.

147 stay upon your leisure await your time, wait until you are unoccupied (*OED Leisure* 3c); the latter meaning emphasises Macbeth’s inattention. For the following action (Macbeth courteously directs his companions off-stage), see Bevington, pp. 155–6.

148 favour indulgence. Macbeth excuses his preoccupation.

148 wrought agitated, stirred, worked up (first citation for *OED Work* v 14b).

150–1 registered . . . leaf The image is of a notebook (‘leaf’ = a page) in which Macbeth has written (‘registered’) a reminder of what he owes Ross and Angus.

152–4 Macbeth makes a nearly identical invitation to Banquo at 2.1.22–4.

152 SD F does not specify that Macbeth speaks to Banquo, and the lines might be public rather than private.

152 chanced happened, occurred (*OED Chance* v 1).

152 at more time The phrase is puzzling; it may mean ‘at a later time’ (partly supported by *OED At* 29a–b) or ‘when we have more time’.

153 The . . . it i.e. when we have considered it thoroughly (‘weighed’) in the meantime (‘interim’). The abstract phrasing also gives time itself the capacity to judge and hence recalls Macbeth’s thought that chance may crown him (142–3).

154 free frank, plain-spoken (*OED Free* a 25a). The adjective is transferred from being an adverb modifying ‘speak’ (153); compare 1.6.3n.

#### Act 1, Scene 4

The setting is presumably Duncan’s royal camp, to which Macbeth and Banquo have been summoned.

o SD.1 *Flourish* A ‘trumpet signal indicating the “presence” of authority’ (Long, p. 14); ‘the royal flourish sounds only for Duncan [in 1.4] and Malcolm [in Act 5] . . . At no point . . . is Macbeth accorded a flourish’ (Long, p. 183).

o SD.1 Oddly, Lennox, a thane, appears before Malcolm, the king’s elder son; F usually lists characters in order of rank.

1 Is . . . Cawdor Has Cawdor’s execution been carried out. See *OED Execution* 5, citing the phrase ‘to do execution’.

1 or not or are not. ‘Are’ or ‘is’ is understood.

Those in commission yet returned?

MALCOLM

They are not yet come back. But I have spoke  
With one that saw him die, who did report  
That very frankly he confessed his treasons,  
Implored your highness' pardon, and set forth  
A deep repentance. Nothing in his life  
Became him like the leaving it. He died  
As one that had been studied in his death,  
To throw away the dearest thing he owed  
As 'twere a careless trifle.

5

10

DUNCAN

There's no art  
To find the mind's construction in the face.  
He was a gentleman on whom I built  
An absolute trust.

*Enter MACBETH, BANQUO, ROSS, and ANGUS*

O worthiest cousin,

**2 liege** i.e. liege lord (the feudal superior to whom a vassal owes allegiance). In Shakespeare's day, the title no longer carried legal obligations and was mostly one of great respect.

**3-4** A notable example of the play's insistence on mediated knowledge, on information travelling through reports and unofficial channels.

**3 spoke** spoken (Abbott 343).

**5-7** In the early modern period, no matter how recalcitrant convicted criminals had been, they typically did confess, repent, and beg forgiveness as they prepared to face divine judgement; see L. B. Smith, 'English treason trials and confessions in the sixteenth century', *JHI* 15 (1954), 471-98, especially pp. 476-80, and J. A. Sharpe, "Last dying speeches": religion, ideology and public execution in seventeenth-century England', *P&P* 107 (May 1985), 144-67.

**8 Became** Graced, befitted (*OED* Become v 7).

**9** studied skilled, practised. There is no overtone of the modern connotation 'affected', but perhaps an acknowledgement of traditional religious practice (see Beach Langston, 'Essex and the art of dying', *HLQ* 13 (1949-50), 109-29, and Nancy Lee Beaty, *The Craft of Dying*, 1970). 'To owe God a death' is proverbial (Dent G237), and versions appear elsewhere in Shakespeare (e.g. *R3* 2.2.91-5).

**10 owed** owned. Elizabethan spelling did not distinguish between 'owe' and 'own'; Malcolm may therefore also allude to the idea that every Christian owes God a soul. See 5.9.5 and n.

My liege,

**11 As** As if. See Abbott 107, noting that the subjunctive 'were' implies 'if'.

**11 careless uncared for** (*OED* Careless 4a, quoting this line), unregarded. Cawdor threw away his soul as if it were a trifle he cared nothing about.

**11-12 There's no art . . . face** A proverbial truism - 'The face is no index to the heart' (Dent F1.1, citing Juvenal, *Satire* 2: 'Frontis nulla fides') - that Duncan has apparently just discovered. Foakes notes the lines' ironic applicability to Macbeth, 'who enters just after they are spoken, or, as some actors have played the part, in time to overhear them'. Immediately before his arrest and execution, the pathetically impercipient Hastings fails to read the mind in Richard of Gloucester's face: 'never a man in Christendom / Can lesser hide his love or hate than he, / For by his face straight shall you know his heart' (*R3* 3.4.51-3); Vincentio, himself in disguise, uses the truism to flatter and gain his way: 'There is written in your brow, Provost, honesty and constancy; if I read it not truly, my ancient skill beguiles me' (*MM* 4.2.153-5). Compare 'You are well-favoured and your looks foreshow / You have a gentle heart' (*Per.* 4.1.85-6). Duncan's remark might have been prompted by Holinshed's observation (*Scotland*, p. 150a) that King Duff, murdered in one 'Donwald's' castle at Forres, was uncautious because he had 'a speciall trust in Donwald, as a man whom he never suspected'. Compare 1.5.60-4.

**12 construction interpretation** (*Lexicon*).

The sin of my ingratitude even now  
 Was heavy on me. Thou art so far before,  
 That swiftest wing of recompense is slow  
 To overtake thee. Would thou hadst less deserved,  
 That the proportion both of thanks and payment  
 Might have been mine. Only I have left to say,  
 More is thy due than more than all can pay.

15

**MACBETH** The service and the loyalty I owe,  
 In doing it, pays itself. Your highness' part  
 Is to receive our duties, and our duties  
 Are to your throne and state, children and servants,  
 Which do but what they should by doing everything  
 Safe toward your love and honour.

20

**DUNCAN** Welcome hither.  
 I have begun to plant thee and will labour  
 To make thee full of growing. Noble Banquo,  
 That hast no less deserved, nor must be known  
 No less to have done so, let me enfold thee  
 And hold thee to my heart.

25

**BANQUO** There if I grow,  
 The harvest is your own.

**DUNCAN** My plenteous joys,  
 Wanton in fullness, seek to hide themselves  
 In drops of sorrow. Sons, kinsmen, thanes,

30

21 More . . . pay.] F; 'More . . . pay'. *Oxford*

18–20 **Would . . . mine** i.e. I wish you had merited lesser rewards so that I might have been able to pay you adequately; 'proportion' (19) = an act of provisioning (*OED* Proportion *sb* 6, citing this line); this act Duncan cannot satisfactorily perform because Macbeth's merit outstrips the available 'thanks and payment'.

20–1 **Only . . . pay** Shakespearean nobles often humble themselves in this way; compare 'outward courtesies would fain proclaim / Favours that keep within' (*MM* 5.1.15–16).

21 **all** i.e. all my 'thanks and payment' (19).

22–7 'Macbeth has nothing but the commonplaces of loyalty, in which he hides himself in the "our"' (Coleridge, p. 108).

23 **pays itself** i.e. service and loyalty (22) are their own rewards. See 'Virtue is its own reward' (Dent v81, first recorded in 1596).

27 **Safe toward** With sure regard to your love and honour (Clarendon). 'An expression undoubtedly strained and obscure on purpose' (*Lexicon Safe adj and adv* 4).

28–9 **I have begun . . . growing** Shaheen compares 'Thou hast planted them . . . they growe, and bring forth fruit' (*Jer. 12.2* (Geneva)).

30–1 **nor . . . / No less** i.e. and must be no less known. F's phrase is a double negative.

31 **enfold** embrace (an implicit direction to the actor).

32–3 **There . . . own** Banquo continues Duncan's metaphor of growth-into-reward and may allude to the legal principle that the land's owner possesses the crops thereon no matter who sowed and tended them (see Clarkson and Warren, pp. 165–6 and 166 n. 11); for the related principle in animal husbandry see *John* 1.1.123–4.

34 **Wanton Luxuriant, profuse** (*OED* Wanton a 7a).

35 **drops of sorrow** Duncan weeps for joy.

35–43 **Sons . . . you** The political import of this speech is repeated at 5.9.27–40. Duncan's proposal of his successor (37) might hint that Macbeth or Banquo, not Malcolm, as it happens, is to be nominated.

And you whose places are the nearest, know:  
 We will establish our estate upon  
 Our eldest, Malcolm, whom we name hereafter  
 The Prince of Cumberland, which honour must  
 Not unaccompanied invest him only,  
 But signs of nobleness like stars shall shine  
 On all deservers. [To Macbeth] From hence to Inverness  
 And bind us further to you.

40

**MACBETH** The rest is labour which is not used for you;  
 I'll be myself the harbinger and make joyful  
 The hearing of my wife with your approach.  
 So humbly take my leave.

45

**DUNCAN** My worthy Cawdor.

**MACBETH** [Aside] The Prince of Cumberland: that is a step  
 On which I must fall down, or else o'erleap,  
 For in my way it lies. Stars, hide your fires,  
 Let not light see my black and deep desires,  
 The eye wink at the hand. Yet let that be,  
 Which the eye fears when it is done to see.

50

*Exit*

45 harbinger] F (Herbenger)

36 **nearest** most closely, or intimately, associated (with Duncan).

37 **establish** settle.

39 **Prince of Cumberland** Title of the Scottish heir apparent; compare 'Prince of Wales' in England.

40 **Not unaccompanied** Not alone. Making Malcolm Prince of Cumberland requires that Duncan also honour others, as Malcolm does at the play's end and James I did upon his accession.

40 **invest clothe, adorn** (*OED* Invest v 1b). This meaning shades into more figurative ones, e.g. 'endue with attributes' (*OED* Invest v 3a), but the word links the abstract conferring of honour with the imagery of clothing (see 2.4.32 and n.).

41 **signs of nobleness** tokens of merit (i.e. titles of honour).

42 SD Keightley is apparently the first editor to have realised that 'you' (43) stipulated a change of those addressed.

42 **Inverness** Town at the head of the Moray Firth, 155 miles north-west of Edinburgh (Sugden) and supposed location of Macbeth's castle. See the map, p. 94 above.

44 **rest . . . you** Macbeth uses courtly and hyperbolic antithesis: (1) anything ('the rest') not done for you is work ('labour'); (2) resting ('the rest') is fatiguing unless done on your behalf; (3) rest is labour when I refrain from serving you. This involved

language conveys polite deference rather than any easily paraphrasable sense: Macbeth stresses that 'you' (Duncan, his importance and his favour to Macbeth) give meaning to whatever 'we' (Macbeth, Lady Macbeth, and presumably their retainers) do, however others may judge our actions.

45 **harbinger** An officer of the royal household, who preceded the king on his journeys and procured lodgings (NS). Compare 1.6.23 n.

45–6 **make . . . hearing** i.e. make (Lady Macbeth) rejoice at hearing.

50 **Stars . . . fires** Duncan has just said that 'signs of nobleness [= honours] like stars' shall shine on all deserving people (41–2); recently honoured, Macbeth now seeks to escape starlight and betray his desert. The words are entirely metaphorical: 'There is nothing to indicate this scene took place at night' (Clarendon).

52 **wink at** disregard, overlook; connive at (*OED* Wink v<sup>1</sup> 6a–b). The implication of connivance is slight and made more doubtful by the next line.

52–3 **Yet let that be . . . to see** See Johnson's comment on a similar moment of anxious self-deception in *John* 4.2.231–6: 'bad men use all the arts of fallacy upon themselves . . . and hide themselves from their own detection', and Jones, *Scenic*, pp. 204 and 212, where affinities between the 'conspiracy stage' in *JC* and *Mac.* are identified.

DUNCAN True, worthy Banquo, he is full so valiant,  
And in his commendations I am fed;  
It is a banquet to me. Let's after him,  
Whose care is gone before to bid us welcome:  
It is a peerless kinsman.

55

*Flourish**Exeunt*I.5 *Enter [LADY MACBETH] alone, with a letter*

LADY MACBETH [*Reads*] ‘They met me in the day of success, and I have learned by the perfectest report they have more in them than mortal knowledge. When I burned in desire to question them further, they made themselves air, into which they vanished. Whiles I stood rapt in the wonder of it, came missives from the king who all-hailed me Thane of Cawdor, by which title before these weird sisters saluted me and referred

5

58 SD.1-2] F (as one line at right margin) Act 1, Scene 5 1-5] F (*Scena Quinta.*) 0 SD LADY MACBETH] F (*Macbeths Wife*) 1 SD] This edn; not in F 1-12 ‘They . . . farewell.’] F (They . . . farewell.) 2 perfectest] F (perfect’st) 6 Thane of Cawdor] F (Thane of Cawdor); “Thane of Cawdor” Collier 7 weird] Theobald; weyward F

54-5 Duncan agrees with Banquo’s (unheard) remark: Macbeth is just as brave (‘full so valiant’) as Banquo has said; praising Macbeth gives Duncan pleasure. Macbeth’s aside has apparently ‘covered’ Banquo’s comment to Duncan.

56 banquet Wordplay on ‘Banquo’ (54).

58 peerless without equal. This word ‘prepares us for Macbeth’s refusal to remain a thane among thanes; only a monarch is literally peerless’ (Mahood, p. 44).

## Act 1, Scene 5

Lady Macbeth reads her husband’s letter and later meets him in some private room of their castle at Inverness, to which Duncan has said he and his court will travel (1.4.42).

1-12 This letter is another example (see 1.2.2, 46, and 1.3.37-40) of mediated and interpreted knowledge; it amplifies (and distorts) an episode we have witnessed (1.3). Concerning such letters, Jonas Barish (in Biggs, p. 36) makes a general point: ‘Shakespeare is not concerned about meticulous quotation; he is quite ready to rewrite a passage to include information missing from the “original” version . . .’; Mark Taylor, ‘Letters and readers in *Macbeth*, *King Lear*, and *Twelfth Night*’, *PQ* 69 (1990), 31-53, claims (pp. 36-7) that Macbeth’s

‘letter is a covert directive . . . to push him toward regicide’.

2 perfectest report most reliable testimony. The words may refer to Macbeth’s learning of his new title (Cawdor) from Ross and Angus, but he also called the witches ‘imperfect speakers’ (1.3.68). For F’s ‘perfect’st’, see 5.1.61 n.

5 vanished Another hint of the witches’ stage business.

5 Whiles While. The spelling is not archaic, according to *OED*.

5 rapt Compare 1.3.141, where Macbeth is ‘rapt’ after learning of his new title rather than after the witches’ address.

6 missives messengers (*OED* Missive sb 3; this line is the earliest citation, and the last is from 1649).

6 all-hailed saluted with ‘All hail’. Macbeth’s letter transfers the ‘all-hail’ from the witches to Ross and Angus.

6 Thane of Cawdor Many editors mark this phrase as quoted speech, and F may seek to do the same through printing ‘Thane’ in roman type with the remainder of the letter in italic, but F does not distinguish the obviously quoted words ‘haile King that shalt be’ (TLN 356).

me to the coming on of time, with "Hail, king that shalt be." This have I thought good to deliver thee, my dearest partner of greatness, that thou mightst not lose the dues of rejoicing by being ignorant of what greatness is promised thee. Lay it to thy heart and farewell.'

Glamis thou art, and Cawdor, and shalt be  
 What thou art promised; yet do I fear thy nature,  
 It is too full o'th'milk of human kindness      10  
 To catch the nearest way. Thou wouldest be great,  
 Art not without ambition, but without  
 The illness should attend it. What thou wouldest highly,  
 That wouldest thou holily; wouldest not play false,  
 And yet wouldest wrongly win. Thou'dst have, great  
 Glamis,      15

That which cries, 'Thus thou must do' if thou have it;  
 And that which rather thou dost fear to do,  
 Than wishest should be undone. Hie thee hither,      20

8 "Hail . . . be."] Pope (*subst.*); *haile . . . be.* F      8 *be.] F;* be hereafter. *conj.* Upton, p. 201      20 *Thou'dst] F*  
 (Thould'st)      21 'Thus . . . do'] NS (*conj.* Hunter, 'New', II, 172). 'Thus . . . doe, F. See *Commentary*      21 *thou have] F;*  
 thou'dst have Keightley

9 deliver report. Compare 'Sure you have some hideous matter to deliver, when the courtesy of it is so fearful' (TN I.5.206-7).

11-12 Lay . . . heart Consider it seriously (*OED* Heart sb 42).

14-23 yet . . . undone A speech that appears to be a static description of Macbeth's 'nature' and inherent moral values ('thy nature . . . is too full o'th'milk of human kindness' (14-15)) is in fact Lady Macbeth's progressive meditation on how she may influence both nature and values (16-20) and therefore move her husband to action. See p. 33 above.

15 milk of human kindness i.e. compassion characteristic of humane persons (*OED* Milk sb<sup>1</sup> 2c). F reads 'humane', and 'humane' (= gentle, compassionate) was not distinguished orthographically from 'human' before 1700 or later (see also 3.4.76); 'kindness' principally means 'kinship', but also connotes 'category' ('kind' = classification, group) and 'naturalness' ('kind' = nature). Later uses of the phrase 'milk of human kindness' apparently derive from this line. Compare Goneril's rejection of her husband's 'milky gentleness' (*Lear* I.4.341) and see I.7.54-8 and 4.3.98.

16 catch snatch (*OED* Catch v 21 and 13).

16 nearest way most direct route, short-cut. For the moral overtones, compare the proverbial 'The shortest way is commonly the foulest, the fairer way not much about' (Dent W142.1).

18 illness wickedness, depravity.

18 highly intensely, greatly (*OED* Highly adv 3a), but another meaning, 'in or to a high rank' (*OED* Highly adv 2a), hints that 'highly' might mean 'nobly, in a manner suiting an individual of high rank'.

19 holily with sanctity and devoutness (*OED* Holily 1, quoting this line, but omitting the implicit sense, 'guiltlessly').

19-20 wouldest not . . . win While this phrase seems to repeat the preceding one, it makes Macbeth criminally ambitious (he would 'wrongly win') and self-deceiving (he would 'play false' = cheat) where the other stressed his high, but holy, ambition.

21 That which cries A voice that says (e.g. Lady Macbeth's own voice, or the crown).

21 'Thus thou must do' F does not indicate what 'That' says. Pope introduced quotation marks for 'Thus thou . . . should be undone' (21-3), and most editors follow him or Hanmer, who treated 'Thus thou . . . have it' as the quoted matter. Any choice would be difficult to convey in the theatre.

21 if thou have it i.e. if you would gain greatness (or the crown); 'would' is understood from its previous uses.

22 that A reference to 'Thus thou must do' (21) – kill Duncan – rather than to 'That which cries' – the urging or desire to kill Duncan.

23 Hie Hurry.

That I may pour my spirits in thine ear  
 And chastise with the valour of my tongue  
 All that impedes thee from the golden round,  
 Which fate and metaphysical aid doth seem  
 To have thee crowned withal.

25

*Enter [ATTENDANT]*

What is your tidings?

ATTENDANT The king comes here tonight.

LADY MACBETH

Thou'rt mad to say it.

Is not thy master with him? Who, were't so,  
 Would have informed for preparation.

30

ATTENDANT So please you, it is true: our thane is coming.

One of my fellows had the speed of him;  
 Who almost dead for breath, had scarcely more

26 impedes] F (impeides) 28 SD ATTENDANT] Capell; Messenger F 29 SH, 32 SH ATTENDANT] Capell (subst.);  
*Mess. F* 30 were't] F (wert)

24 pour . . . ear The 'spirits' are soon defined as those 'that tend on mortal [murderous] thoughts' (39); Lady Macbeth's words to Macbeth will be metaphorical equivalents of the 'leprous distillment' Claudius pours into King Hamlet's ears (*Ham.* 1.5.63–4).

25 chastise rebuke. Stress on first syllable (Cercignani, p. 36).

25 valour . . . tongue Misogynistically, Elizabethan culture considered men valorous, women talkative; thus Beatrice, 'my lady Tongue', accuses Benedick of unmanliness: 'But manhood is melted into cur'sies, valour into compliment, and men are only turned into tongue' (*Ado* 2.1.275 and 4.1.319–20). This patriarchal belief did grant women the power to encourage men: 'Methinks a woman of this valiant spirit / Should, if a coward heard her speak these words, / Infuse his breast with magnanimity, / And make him, naked, foil a man at arms' (Prince Edward of Queen Margaret, *3H6* 5.4.39–42).

26 impedes hinders, obstructs. This line is *OED*'s earliest citation for 'impede' (Schäfer).

26 golden round i.e. the crown (as at 4.1.87). 'Mrs. Siddons used to elevate her stature, to smile with a lofty and uncontrollable expectation, and, with an arm raised beautifully in the air, *to draw the very circle she was speaking of*, in the *air abou her head*, as if she ran her finger round the gold' (Leigh Hunt, *Tatler*, 15 March 1831, quoted in Sprague, p. 232; this action became 'a common piece of tradi-

tional business', according to Michael Mullin, 'Stage and screen: the Trevor Nunn *Macbeth*', *SQ* 38 (1987), 351).

27 metaphysical more than physical, supernatural (White).

27 doth Singular verb in -th with plural subject (Abbott 334).

28 SD ATTENDANT The dialogue makes clear that this speaker is a member of the household, an 'attendant', not a 'messenger' (as in F). Costume and perhaps props would have distinguished messenger from attendant in Jacobean productions.

29 Lady Macbeth reacts either because she momentarily thinks the servant refers (reasonably) to Macbeth as 'The king' or because Duncan's unexpected arrival seems too pat, an instant example of 'fate and metaphysical aid' (27).

31 informed reported; given information (an intransitive use; see *OED* Inform v 7a, quoting this line as the first example).

31 preparation Pronounced as five syllables.

32–5 As in the report of Cawdor's execution (1.4.2–11), unofficial messengers travel faster than official ones, and Shakespeare stresses the details of speed and exhaustion.

33 had the speed of him outdistanced him (*OED* Speed sb 1ob, citing only this line and another example from 1646).

34 for breath as a consequence of ('for') lacking air to breathe (?). The meaning is clear but hard to substantiate (see e.g. *OED* For 22).

Than would make up his message.

LADY MACBETH

Give him tending,

He brings great news.

35

*Exit [Attendant]*

The raven himself is hoarse

That croaks the fatal entrance of Duncan  
Under my battlements. Come, you spirits  
That tend on mortal thoughts, unsex me here  
And fill me from the crown to the toe topfull  
Of direst cruelty; make thick my blood,  
Stop up th'access and passage to remorse  
That no compunctions visitings of nature  
Shake my fell purpose nor keep peace between  
Th'effect and it. Come to my woman's breasts

40

45

36 SD Attendant] Capell; Messenger F 45 it] F (hit)

**36 raven** Traditionally a bird of evil omen (because it was a carrion-eater seen on the battlefield). Compare 'the fatal Raven, that in his voice / Carries the dreadful summons of our deaths' (Peele, *David and Betsabe* 555–6) and 'the sad presaging Raven that tolls / The sickle mans passeport in her hollow beake' (Marlowe, *Jew of Malta* 2.1.1–2).

**36 himself is hoarse** i.e. like the gasping messenger.

**39 tend on** attend, administer to.

**39 mortal** fatal, murderous; human.

**39 unsex me** deprive me of my gender (?); compare *OED* Unsex *v.*, 'deprive or divest of sex', for which this line is the earliest citation. The verb may mean 'make me not a woman' or, less likely, 'make me not human'.

**39 here** Actresses have sometimes made 'here' breast (see Sprague, pp. 232–3) or groin; producers must decide whether Lady Macbeth's invocation is figurative or acted out.

**40 crown . . . toe** Proverbial: 'From the crown of the head to the sole of the foot' (Dent c864.1).

**41 direst** most dreadful, most terrible.

**41–2 thick . . . passage** Classical and early modern medical theory held that health and illness, emotions and other psychological states, were the consequence of 'humours' or 'spirit' that passed through the blood to various organs and bodily structures. If the 'thin and wholesome blood' (*Ham.* 1.5.70) became 'thick' or the 'passage' was stopped, no emotional or psychological changes could take place, although there might be other consequences:

'there be feavers . . . which are engendered of thickening and stopping of the conduites and passages' (Barrough, p. 168). NS cites 'Thoughts that would thick my blood' (*WT* 1.2.171) and 'if that surly spirit, melancholy, / Had baked thy blood and made it heavy, thick' (*John* 3.3.42–3); compare 'that Italian [i.e. Machiavellian] air, that hath . . . dried up in you all sap of generous disposition' (Chapman, *Widow's Tears* 1.1.131–3). See pp. 33–4 above.

**42 access** Stress on second syllable (Cercignani, p. 37).

**42 remorse** pity, compassion; not (as in modern English) bitter repentance for a wrong committed.

**43 compunctions** remorseful. This line is *OED*'s earliest recorded use (Schäfer).

**43 visitings of nature** menstruation (?) and, more generally, natural feelings of compassion. The specific meaning (for 'visit') is attested from 1640; see *OED* Visit *sb* 4, and p. 33 above.

**44 fell** fierce, ruthless. Compare Iago: 'More fell than anguish, hunger, or the seal' (*Oth.* 5.2.362).

**44 keep** preserve, maintain. The modern equivalent of 'keep peace' is 'keep the peace'.

**45 Th'effect and it** The consequence (*OED* Effect *sb* 1a) and 'my fell purpose' (44): an example of *hysteron proteron* where cause follows effect. Halio defends F's 'hit' (a form as old as 'it' and common into the nineteenth century: see *OED* It *pron A*) as 'success, fulfilment', but without support from *OED*.

And take my milk for gall, you murd'ring ministers,  
 Wherever in your sightless substances  
 You wait on nature's mischief. Come, thick night,  
 And pall thee in the dunkest smoke of hell,  
 That my keen knife see not the wound it makes,  
 Nor heaven peep through the blanket of the dark,  
 To cry, 'Hold, hold.'

50

*Enter MACBETH*

Great Glamis, worthy Cawdor,  
 Greater than both by the all-hail hereafter,  
 Thy letters have transported me beyond  
 This ignorant present, and I feel now  
 The future in the instant.

55

**MACBETH** My dearest love,  
 Duncan comes here tonight.

**LADY MACBETH** And when goes hence?

52 'Hold, hold.'] *Capell* (*subst.*); hold, hold. F

46 **take . . . gall** Either 'make my milk gall [= bile; bitter liquid]' or 'treat my milk as gall'. Early medical theory held that a mother's blood (see 41–2) was converted into milk (see Patricia Crawford, 'The sucking child: adult attitudes to child care in the first year of life in seventeenth-century England', *Continuity and Change* 1 (1986), 30); here blood becomes gall. Capell (*Notes*, p. 7) says the spirits 'are summon'd magnificently to suck encrease of malignity from the "gall" of her breasts'. 'But perhaps Lady Macbeth is asking the spirits to take her milk as gall, to nurse from her breast and find in her milk their sustaining poison' (Adelman, p. 135).

46 **ministers** attendants, executants.

47 **sightless** invisible; blind.

48 **wait on nature's mischief** lie in wait for disturbances of nature (Brooke).

48–52 Johnson found the language here embarrassingly humble, but D. S. Bland (*Reader*, p. 241) justifies the 'simplicity of vocabulary'.

48 **thick** dense, profound. The word appears three times in this act and only once (4.1.33) again.

49 **pall** cover or drape as with cloth. The verb evokes the noun 'pall' (cloth, altar-cloth, covering for a hearse or coffin, robe, garment) and joins Lady Macbeth's wish with Macbeth's earlier anxieties about 'borrowed robes' (1.3.107). *Barnhart Dictionary of Etymology*, 1988, defines *pall* as 'shroud', the wrapping of a corpse. See 1.7.3n.

49 **dunkest** murkiest, gloomiest (*OED* Dun a 2).

52–3 **Great . . . both** Lady Macbeth greets her husband with (almost) the sisters' words (1.3.46–8).

52 Rowe added *Embracing him* after 'Cawdor', which presumably reflects a Restoration stage-practice that certainly appeared in mid-eighteenth-century Pritchard–Garrick performances and has since become a defining moment for the actors' relationship.

53 **all-hail** i.e. associated with the salutation, 'all hail!' The phrase 'all-hail' is treated as an adjective, 'hereafter' as a noun: Macbeth will be 'Greater . . . hereafter' on the authority of ('by') the sisters' 'all hail'. See 1.3.46n.

54 **letters** The audience knows only the letter read at the scene's start; these 'letters' prefigure the characters of Macbeth's face, 'a book' (60).

55 **ignorant** unknowing (Johnson).

56 **The future in the instant** That which is to come in the present moment, the here-and-now. See p. 19 above.

57 **goes hence** departs; dies. See 'before I go hence, and be no more (seeme)' (Ps. 39.13; ' . . . be no more' (AV)), and 'Men must endure / Their going hence even as their coming hither' (*Lear* 5.2.9–10).

MACBETH Tomorrow, as he purposes.

LADY MACBETH

O never

Shall sun that morrow see.

Your face, my thane, is as a book where men  
May read strange matters. To beguile the time,  
Look like the time, bear welcome in your eye,  
Your hand, your tongue; look like th'innocent flower,  
But be the serpent under't. He that's coming  
Must be provided for, and you shall put  
This night's great business into my dispatch,  
Which shall to all our nights and days to come  
Give solely sovereign sway and masterdom.

MACBETH We will speak further –

LADY MACBETH

Only look up clear;

To alter favour ever is to fear.

Leave all the rest to me.

60

65

70

*Exeunt*

61 matters. To . . . time,] *Theobald*; matters, to . . . time. F

69 further –] *This edn*; further, F; further. F2

expected English attack: 'we will presently provide for them' (1H6 5.2.15).

66 dispatch conduct, management (*OED Dispatch* sb 5b, citing this line only). Other meanings – death by violence, or execution (*OED Dispatch* sb 4 and 5a) – may have influenced the diction here, since Macbeth will later sense that he has 'killed' sleep (2.2.45).

67–8 all . . . masterdom Night and day later prove not testimonies to the Macbeths' 'masterdom', their sovereign power, but rather to their weakness. See e.g. 3.2.16–22 and 5.1.

68 solely exclusively (*OED Solely* *adv* 2).

69 The punctuation adopted here, indicating that Lady Macbeth interrupts Macbeth, suggests his continuing irresolution and her insistent certainty. The punctuation in F and in F2 makes Macbeth more certainly doubtful, Lady Macbeth still more insistent.

69 clear serenely, cheerfully. Adverbial use of *OED Clear* *adj* 2d; compare 1.7.18.

70 Fear always ('ever') changes one's facial expression ('favour'); the construction is inverted to make a significant rhyme.

58 purposes plans, intends.

58 O never Sarah Siddons (see G. J. Bell in Jenkin, pp. 43–4) repeated 'never', as have many later Lady Macbeths.

59 sun Given the importance of male heirs in the play, a pun on 'son' is not impossible here.

59 that morrow i.e. a new day in which Duncan 'goes hence' alive.

60–1 The analogy of 'face' with 'a book' is proverbial (Dent B531.1); compare 1.4.11–12.

61 beguile deceive, mislead. Theobald's repunctuation changes the line's effect: in F, 'men . . . read' Macbeth's face to pass the time; here, Lady Macbeth urges her husband to deceive 'men' by wearing a deceitful face.

63–4 look like . . . serpent under't The advice is based on the proverbial 'Snake in the grass' (Dent S585), with a Virgilian ancestor (*Eclogues* 3.93) noted in NS. Brooke suggests that the line alludes to Satan in Eden.

64 under't under it.

65 provided for prepared for (*OED Provide* v 2a). The verb hovers ambiguously between hospitable and homicidal preparations for Duncan's arrival. Compare the Dauphin's reaction to an un-

**1.6 Hautboys, and Torches.** Enter King [DUNCAN], MALCOLM, DONALDBAIN, BANQUO, LENNOX, MACDUFF, ROSS, ANGUS, and Attendants

DUNCAN This castle hath a pleasant seat; the air  
Nimbly and sweetly recommends itself  
Unto our gentle senses.

BANQUO This guest of summer,  
The temple-haunting martlet, does approve  
By his loved mansionry that the heaven's breath

5

Act 1, Scene 6 1.6 F (*Scena Sexta.*) o SD *Hautboys, and Torches.*] F (*Hoboyes*); *Hautboys.* / NS 4 *martlet*] *Rowe*; Barlet F 5 *mansionry*] *Theobald*; *Mansionry* F; *masonry Pope*<sup>2</sup> 5 *heaven's*] F (*Heauens*)

### Act 1, Scene 6

The audience is to imagine the setting as an approach to Macbeth's castle. NS regards the scene as a daylight one, but F and (in a celebrated stage setting) Henry Irving treat it as nocturnal (see Hughes, *Irving*, p. 100). For contemporary ceremonies used in greeting important visitors, see Heal, *passim*, especially pp. 32–3; the guest's rank governed the ceremony; it determined by whom, by how many, and where the guest was met upon arriving at an aristocratic residence.

o SD *Hautboys, and Torches* Players of hautboys, and torch-bearers. Tudor and early Stuart hautboys (also called ‘bombs’ or ‘bombs’ were treble members of the shawm family, loud-sounding instruments much favoured in courts and by the military (Bate, pp. 30–3); Langham (p. 41) describes an outdoor welcome for Queen Elizabeth at Kenilworth Castle in 1575: ‘This Pageant waz cloz'd up with a delectabl harmony of Hautboiz, Shalmz, Cornets, and such oother looud Muzik.’ The modern oboe, with which editors and critics sometimes confuse the hautboy, was not introduced into England until c. 1674–6 (Bate, pp. 40–1; compare Greg, p. 394 n. 18). NS deletes F’s *Torches* because they are inappropriate to a daylight scene, which this one may, but need not, be.

1–10 Both Duncan and, more surprisingly, Banquo here accept a superficial appearance and misread a ‘face’ (note ‘temple’ and ‘breath’ (4–5)), the castle’s aspect; compare Duncan’s reaction to Cawdor’s treason (1.4.11–14) and Banquo’s to the sisters’ appearance and speech (1.3.37–45, 50–2, 81–3, 122–5). Duncan and Banquo misread as ‘gentle’ (3) and ‘procreant’ (8) a castle whose ‘battlements’ will prove ‘fatal’ to both (1.5.37–8).

1–2 Rowe’s relineation (see Appendix 3, p. 276 below), followed here, scans regularly with a tro-

chaic substitution (‘Nimbly’) at the start of the second pentameter.

1 **seat** situation, site (*OED* *Seat* sb 18, quoting this line). 3–10 make another transferred meaning – ‘place of habitation or settlement (of birds)’ (*OED* *Seat* sb 16a) – likely, although *OED*’s evidence is thin.

3 **gentle** i.e. the sweet air makes our sense gentle. An example of rhetorical prolepsis, where effect is placed before cause (*Lexicon*, Appendix 1.8). Foakes compares 3.4.76.

4 **temple-haunting** i.e. associated with houses of worship. Compare ‘Yea, the sparowe hath founde her an house, and the swallowe a nest for her, where she maie lay her yong: even by thine altars, o Lord of hostes, my King, and my God’ (Ps. 84.3, Geneva). At Duncan’s death, ‘temple’ will mean both ‘cra-nium’ and ‘house of worship’ (see 2.3.60–1 and 2.3.61 n).

4 **martlet** A swift, but used also of the swallow or house-martin (birds which build nests (8) attached to the walls of buildings). Peter M. Daly, ‘Of Macbeth, martlets, and other “fowles of heauen”’, *Mosaic* 12, 1 (1978), 32–8, shows that martlets and related species were common emblems of ‘prudent trust’ and ‘harmony in the realm’. F’s ‘Barlet’ may be an unusual error for ‘martlet’, which *OED* Martlet<sup>2</sup> lists as a variant of ‘martlet’; elsewhere, F prints ‘the Martlet’ which ‘Builds . . . on the outward wall’ (*MV* TLN 1140–1).

4 **approve** confirm; attest; commend (as at *Ant.* 5.2.149).

5 **mansionry** ‘mansions collectively’ (*OED* Mansionry, citing only this (emended) line and an allusion from 1876, but plausibly suggesting an error for ‘masonry’). Schäfer treats ‘mansionry’ as Shakespeare’s neologism.

Smells wooingly here. No jutty, frieze,  
 Buttress, nor coign of vantage but this bird  
 Hath made his pendent bed and procreant cradle;  
 Where they most breed and haunt, I have observed  
 The air is delicate.

10

*Enter LADY [MACBETH]*

DUNCAN See, see, our honoured hostess. — The love  
 That follows us sometime is our trouble,  
 Which still we thank as love. Herein I teach you  
 How you shall bid God yield us for your pains  
 And thank us for your trouble.

LADY MACBETH All our service, 15  
 In every point twice done and then done double,  
 Were poor and single business to contend

6 **jutty**] Malone (*in Steevens*<sup>3</sup>); Iutty F 9 most] Rowe; must F 10 SD **LADY MACBETH**] F (*Lady*), and in SDS hereafter except 3.2.0 SD 11 hostess. —] Collier; Hostesse: F 14 God yield] F (God-eyld)

6 **frieze** Projecting part of a wall or building.

6 **coign of vantage** Carved or painted decorative band beneath a building's cornice.

7 **Buttress** External support for a wall or building.

7 **pendent** hanging, suspended.  
 8 bed . . . cradle nest.  
 9 most F's 'must' repeats the idea of the birds' procreation; Rowe's emendation moves the observation from the birds' fertility (which gives them their symbolic value) to their number (which validates the castle's 'pleasant' and 'heavenly' aspects). Regarding 'most' as 'relatively trite', Brooke retains 'must', interpreted as 'are resolved to' and 'are obliged to'.

9 **haunt** usually remain, habitually resort.

10 **delicate** charming, pleasant (*OED Delicate adj 1a*).

11–13 **The love . . . love** Duncan begins a tortuously polite exchange by remarking how he sometimes finds troublesome others' well-meaning

respect and affection, over which they have taken so much 'trouble'.

13–15 **Herein . . . trouble** Duncan turns a self-deprecating compliment: Lady Macbeth should learn from the king's example to ask God to reward Duncan for the effort she makes and to thank Duncan for providing the onerous occasion. Shakespeare's nobles make such comments often; see *Ado 1.1.96–103* and *WT 5.3.3–8*.

14 **yield** reward, recompense.

16–17 **In . . . single** For the mathematical language here, see p. 26 above.

16 **twice . . . double** Lady Macbeth continues the language of duplication and multiplication begun by the Captain (1.2.37–8), continued by the sisters (1.3.33–4, 4.1.10), and soon to be used by Macbeth (1.7.12).

17 **single** weak, simple, undemanding. The word continues the text's playing with singleness (unity, integrity?) and doubleness (show, not substance?); for Lady Macbeth, or for the play, doubleness may be more valid or effective than singleness.

17 **business** exertion. In Elizabethan English, the noun still retained its etymological content of 'busy-ness'; compare 1.5.66.

17 **contend** compete, vie (*OED Contend 4*).

Against those honours deep and broad wherewith  
 Your majesty loads our house. For those of old,  
 And the late dignities heaped up to them,  
 We rest your hermits.

20

DUNCAN Where's the Thane of Cawdor?

We coursed him at the heels and had a purpose  
 To be his purveyor, but he rides well,  
 And his great love, sharp as his spur, hath holp him  
 To his home before us. Fair and noble hostess,  
 We are your guest tonight.

25

LADY MACBETH Your servants ever

Have theirs, themselves, and what is theirs in count  
 To make their audit at your highness' pleasure,  
 Still to return your own.

DUNCAN Give me your hand;

Conduct me to mine host: we love him highly  
 And shall continue our graces towards him.  
 By your leave, hostess.

30

*Exeunt*

27 in count] F (in compt); to count 21673      30 host:] *Collier*; Host F

18–21 The syncopation of ‘majesty’ to a disyllable makes Pope’s relineation (see Appendix 3, p. 276 below), accepted here, a series of regular pentameters with a linked final line, although the common early trisyllabic pronunciation ‘heremits’ would make F’s final line regular. These lines end a column, a page, and Compositor A’s current stint in F; he may have been running out of space and therefore crowded the speech into roughly equal line-units.

20 late recent.

21 hermits beadsmen (*OED* Hermit *sb* 2c), persons bound by vow or fee to pray for an individual’s spiritual welfare.

22 coursed chased, pursued (*OED* Course *v* 2). Figurative meanings of the word arise from a hunter’s pursuit of quarry with a pack of hounds; compare 5.7.2.

23 purveyor The person who arranges provisions (food, transport, lodging, etc.) for a superior; an official title in the royal household. Accent on first syllable (Cercignani, p. 40).

24 holp helped.

25 To his Probably elided ('T'his' or 'To's'); see Cercignani, pp. 288–9.

27 count account, statement of moneys received and expended (*OED* Count *sb* 3, quoting this line). F’s ‘compt’ is archaic.

30 host The word and social duty will be examined ironically (see 1.7.14 and n., 3.4.5).

32 By your leave With your permission. Duncan may leave Lady Macbeth behind after greeting her at the castle’s imaginary entrance or invite her to lead the way off-stage.

32 hostess See 30 n.

**1.7 Hautboys. Torches. Enter a Sewer, and divers Servants with dishes and service over the stage. Then enter MACBETH**

**MACBETH** If it were done when 'tis done, then 'twere well

It were done quickly. If th'assassination  
Could trammel up the consequence and catch  
With his surcease, success, that but this blow  
Might be the be-all and the end-all – here,  
But here, upon this bank and shoal of time,

5

**Act 1, Scene 7 1.7] F (Scena Septima.) 5 be-all] Pope; be all F 5 end-all – here] Sisson II, 194 (Rowe subst.); end all.**  
Heere F 6 shoal] F (Schoole)

### **Act 1, Scene 7**

The opening SD makes this a nocturnal, interior scene at Macbeth's castle; Macbeth has withdrawn from the off-stage ceremonial dinner (see 29) to some more private place. Compare 3.4, where the audience sees another state dinner. For modern productions and their sound effects, see p. 79 above. Lady Macbeth's arguments encouraging her husband to murder are similar to Beatrice's incitement of Benedick to kill Claudio (*Ado* 4.1.255–336) and to Dionyza's arguments justifying a murder she ordered (*Per.* 4.3).

0 SD.1 *Hautboys. Torches* An abrupt, theatrical direction for musicians and light-bearers; see 1.6.0 SD n.

0 SD.1 *Sewer* 'The Sewer . . . must from the [side]boord convay all manner of potages, meats, and sauces . . . see ye [the sewer] have officers ready to convay, and servants for to bear your dishes' (*The Booke of Carving and Sewing [Serving]*, sig. A6v, appended to Thomas Dawson, *The Second Part of the good Hus-wives Jewell* (1597)). Armstrong (p. 50) sees a parallel between the 'hierarchical relationships' of sewer and servants, Duncan and subjects.

0 SD.2 *service* something served as food; course of a meal (*OED Service* sb 27b–c). The audience would see dishes and other utensils. Compare *A banquet brought in, with the limbes of a Man in the service* (*Golden Age*, sig. D1r).

0 SD.2 *over the stage* i.e. crossing silently from one side to the other.

1–4 These tongue-twisting lines (compare 1.5.16–23) force the actor either to gabble or to speak very slowly.

1–2 'So, while Duncan is . . . eating his "last supper", Macbeth plays Judas, for to Judas Jesus at the Last Supper said: "That thou doest, do quickly" (John 13:27)' (Jones, *Origins*, p. 83).

1 If . . . 'tis done The phrase recalls two proverbs: 'The thing done has an end' (Dent T149) and 'Things done cannot be undone' (Dent T200). See

3.2.12 and 5.1.57–8.

2 **assassination** murder (for political reasons). This line is *OED*'s first citation for the word (Schäfer).

3 **trammel** use nets (to catch fish or fowl); hobble (a horse); bind up or wrap (a corpse). A richly suggestive word; *OED* Trammel v 4 is a figurative meaning, 'to entangle or fasten up', supported first by this line and next by a line (probably an allusion to this one) from Keats.

4 **his surcease** Duncan's death.

4 **success** prosperous achievement (*OED Success* sb 3); succession of heirs (*OED Success* sb 5). This is the play's fourth use of the word and recalls the others, beginning to make them ironic (see 1.3.88, 131; 1.5.1); see the fine discussion of the word in Everett, pp. 96–7.

4–5 **that . . . end-all** i.e. if the murder of Duncan were an act and event complete and completed in itself.

4 **that but if only.**

5 **be-all and the end-all** the whole being and that which ends all. According to *OED* Be-all, Shakespeare invented the phrase and all subsequent uses are quotations; 'end-all' (*OED End-all*: 'the finishing stroke') seems to have a dialect existence independent of this play.

6 **bank and shoal** sand-bank (or river bank) and shallow. F's 'Banke and Schoole' could also be modernised as 'bench and school'; *OED* defines 'bank' (= bench) as referring to the seat of justice, the mountebank's stage, or the rower's bench (*OED Bank* sb<sup>2</sup> 1–3), but does not define 'bank' as 'school bench'. 'Schoole' is a well-attested form of 'shoal' in the period. Although Macbeth soon mentions 'instructions' and 'justice' (which might be anticipated in 'school' and 'bench'), the phrase seems more likely to be a characteristic Shakespearean near-redundancy, treating time as a river: Macbeth momentarily halts time's flow by standing on a shoal or by grasping the bank. See Mahood, p. 24.

We'd jump the life to come. But in these cases,  
 We still have judgement here that we but teach  
 Bloody instructions, which being taught, return  
 To plague th'inventor. This even-handed justice  
 Commends th'ingredience of our poisoned chalice  
 To our own lips. He's here in double trust:  
 First, as I am his kinsman and his subject,  
 Strong both against the deed; then, as his host,  
 Who should against his murderer shut the door,  
 Not bear the knife myself. Besides, this Duncan  
 Hath borne his faculties so meek, hath been  
 So clear in his great office, that his virtues  
 Will plead like angels, trumpet-tongued against  
 The deep damnation of his taking-off.  
 And pity, like a naked newborn babe

<sup>13</sup> First, as I] F; First, I Q 1673    <sup>20</sup> taking-off] Capell; taking off F

<sup>7</sup> jump hazard (*OED* *Jump v 11*, citing only this line and *Cym.* 5.4.182, neither especially clear in signification); pass or leap over (?). For the latter, see Booth, p. 170.

<sup>8</sup> We always ('still') are punished here because we only ('but') teach others (how to commit our own crimes against ourselves).

<sup>10-11</sup> NS compares 'auctorem scelus / repetit suoque premitur exemplo nocens' ('upon its author the crime comes back, and the guilty soul is crushed by its own form of guilt' (Seneca, *Hercules Furens* 735-6, trans. F. J. Miller)). Howard Jacobson, *SQ* 35 (1984), 321-2, also cites 'saepe in magistrum sclera redierunt sua' ('often upon the teacher have his bad teachings turned' (Seneca, *Thyestes* 311, trans. F. J. Miller)).

<sup>10</sup> even-handed impartial.

<sup>11</sup> ingredience 'ingredients' considered collectively (*OED* *Ingredience 1a*). Shakespeare's word is obsolete, but modern 'ingredients' is inadequate; 'ingredience' appears in Shakespeare only here, at 4.1.34, and in *Oth.* Q (1622), sig. F3r (where Folio *Oth.* reads 'ingredients').

<sup>12</sup> double Macbeth now cites three relations of trust. For two-ness and three-ness, see 1.6.16n., and p. 26 above.

<sup>14</sup> as his host For social perceptions of a host's duties, see Heal, chapters 2 and 3.

<sup>16-20</sup> 'Duncane was so soft and gentle of nature, that the people wished the inclinations and manners of these two cousins [Macbeth and Duncan] to have beene . . . interchangeable bestowed betwixt them' (*Scotland*, p. 168b). 'The real Duncan was a weak and worthless youth, who was put out of the way

because that was the best that could be done with him' (White<sup>2</sup>).

<sup>16</sup> this Duncan this king, who is Duncan (?). While 'this' seems to particularise ('this Duncan rather than another Duncan'), the word also implies that the specific King Duncan who is Macbeth's guest, kinsman, and king belongs to some larger category (of men named Duncan or of kings). The odd formula ('this Duncan') is a form of evasion (compare Lady Macbeth's 'He that's coming' (1.5.64)); it curiously lessens both Duncan's individuality and Macbeth's responsibility and therefore makes killing Duncan less terrible to contemplate.

<sup>17</sup> faculties powers, privileges (*OED* *Faculty* *sbs* 11a, quoting this line); 'authority delegated to him' (Heath, p. 385).

<sup>18</sup> clear innocent (*OED* *Clear adj* 15a, quoting this line).

<sup>19</sup> trumpet-tongued 'Duncan's virtues speak with a trumpet-tongue on this matter of his murder' (Sisson, II, 194); the phrase modifies 'angels'.

<sup>21-5</sup> See Brooks (pp. 21-46) for a classic defence 'of the relation of Shakespeare's imagery' here to 'larger symbols' and 'total structures' (p. 30) in the play, and see p. 45 above.

<sup>21-2</sup> newborn babe . . . heaven's cherubin The alternative offered here between an image of vulnerability ('babe') and one of heavenly power ('heaven's cherubin') at first seems confused, but the compressed images join together Macbeth's future opponents: Banquo's children, who will succeed to Scotland's throne (see 1.3.65), and the near-divinely endorsed forces (see 4.3.240-2) that

Striding the blast, or heaven's cherubin horsed  
 Upon the sightless couriers of the air,  
 Shall blow the horrid deed in every eye,  
 That tears shall drown the wind. I have no spur  
 To prick the sides of my intent, but only  
 Vaulting ambition which o'erleaps itself  
 And falls on th'other –

25

*Enter LADY [MACBETH]*

How now? What news?

LADY MACBETH He has almost supped. Why have you left the chamber?

22 cherubin] F (Cherubin); cherubim Q1673; Cherubins Muir      28 th'other –] Rowe; th'other. F

will drive Macbeth from that throne. Brooks (p. 45) comments: 'is Pity like the human and helpless babe, or powerful as the angel that rides the winds? It is both; and it is strong because of its very weakness. The paradox is inherent in the situation itself; and it is the paradox that will destroy the overbrittle rationalism on which Macbeth founds his career.' For a contrary view, see Helen Gardner, *The Business of Criticism*, 1959, pp. 52–61.

22 blast gale; wind of the trumpet-tongued angels.

22 cherubin cherub (second in the traditional nine-fold order of angels). Cherubim commanded the air – 'Seraph reignes o're Fire; / Cherub the Aire' (*Hierarchie*, p. 216) – and were associated with the winds (see Milton, *Paradise Lost* II, 516–18). Renaissance maps often represent the principal winds as cherubs with puffed cheeks. R's 'Cherubin' is a contemporary singular (compare Phrynia's 'cherubin look', *Tim.* 4.3.64); the contemporary plural was 'cherubins' (as at *MV* 5.1.62); modern English follows Hebrew: 'cherub' (singular), 'cherubim' (plural). Some editors choose a plural form ('cherubins' or 'cherubim') because 'couriers' (23) need plural riders, but the condensed metaphorical context makes those choices over-literal, and one cherub might easily be imagined to have charge of four winds.

23 sightless couriers invisible messengers; invisible means of transport, i.e. the winds which invisibly move the air from place to place. The echo of 'sightless substances' (1.5.47) makes plain the contrast of murder and pity, sin and dissuasion from sin. Following Malone and others, Shaheen cites 'He rode upon the Cherubims and dyd flee [fly]: he came fleeeyng [flying] upon the wynges of the wynde' (Ps. 18.10, Geneva).

24 blow sound; propel.

24 every eye every organ of sight; every person. The second meaning is a synecdoche.

25 tears i.e. drops of compassion and the 'watering' caused by a foreign object ('the deed') lodged in 'every eye'. Proverbially, 'Little rain lays great winds' (Dent 116), and the line gains its power from hyperbole: 'tears' become rain so powerful as to 'drown' the insubstantial and omnipresent wind.

25–8 I... th'other Two interpretations of Macbeth's images have been offered: (1) continuing the equine images of 22–3, Macbeth distinguishes his intent to murder, which he imagines as an unspurred horse, from his ambition to be king, which he imagines as an eager rider who overdoes his vault ('o'erleaps') and thus fails to land in the saddle; (2) horse and rider together fall when the pair fails to over-leap an obstacle. Catherine Belsey, 'Shakespeare's "vaulting ambition"', *ELN* 10 (1972), 198–201, supports (2) and associates this passage with medieval and later depictions of Pride as a vaulting figure. In either case, the imagery echoes Macbeth's response to the naming of Malcolm as Prince of Cumberland (1.4.48–50). More generally, see R. N. Watson, 'Horsemanship in Shakespeare's second tetralogy', *ELR* 13 (1983), 274–300. Lady Macbeth's entrance interrupts the speech, but the audience may supply 'side' (of the imaginary horse or obstacle) as Macbeth's next (unspoken) word.

29 supper finished dining.

29 Why... chamber For the host to leave the table before the chief guest had finished his meal violated protocol; see 'how does your rising up before all the table shew? and flinging from my friends so uncivilly' (Dekker [and Thomas Middleton], *The Roaring Girl* 3.2.6–7).

**MACBETH** Hath he asked for me?

**LADY MACBETH** Know you not, he has?

**MACBETH** We will proceed no further in this business.

He hath honoured me of late, and I have bought  
Golden opinions from all sorts of people,  
Which would be worn now in their newest gloss,  
Not cast aside so soon.

**LADY MACBETH** Was the hope drunk  
Wherein you dressed yourself? Hath it slept since?  
And wakes it now to look so green and pale  
At what it did so freely? From this time,  
Such I account thy love. Art thou afraid  
To be the same in thine own act and valour,  
As thou art in desire? Wouldst thou have that  
Which thou esteem'st the ornament of life,  
And live a coward in thine own esteem,  
Letting I dare not wait upon I would,  
Like the poor cat i'th'adage?

**MACBETH** Prithee, peace.  
I dare do all that may become a man;

39 *afeard*] F (*affear'd*) 43 *esteem,*] *Collier*; *Esteeme?* F; *esteem*; *Capell* 45 *adage?*] *Capell*; *Addage*. F

30 **Hath . . . me** Macbeth guiltily supposes Duncan has repeated his earlier praise, or wishes to honour him further.

30 **Know . . . has** Lady Macbeth assumes Macbeth has deliberately withdrawn to avoid Duncan's attention. Capell (*Notes*, p. 10) conjectured 'Know you not? he has.', and his punctuation is more easily spoken. The staging exploits the audience's fluid imagination: 'the precise location is less important than the juxtaposition of Macbeth's isolation with the conviviality taking place in the adjoining room' (Bevington, p. 130).

33 *sorts kinds*; (*social*) ranks.

34 *worn* Opinions (33) are now treated as garments. Compare 'you in the ruff of your opinions clothed' (V. Gabrieli and G. Melchiori (eds.), *STM*, 1990, 2.3.85).

34 *gloss* superficial lustre (*OED* Gloss *sb<sup>2</sup>* 1a), shininess. Figuratively, gloss = 'highest value' (because newest); compare 'all his [Achilles'] virtues, / Not virtuously on his own part beheld, / Do in our eyes begin to lose their gloss' (*Tro.* 2.3.117–19).

35 *cast aside* When dirtied, the richest Renaissance garments were discarded or given away because they could not be cleaned.

35–8 *Was . . . freely* Lady Macbeth represents

'hope' as a person – first drunkenly hopeful, then comatose, then hungover – who initially dressed himself in a garment (also = 'hope'), but then sleeps himself into a cowardly sobriety. Compare 2.3.20–30.

37 *green and pale* Popularly imagined consequences of drunkenness, then as now.

39 **Such** i.e. you are like the fearful, hungover drunkard, bold only when inebriated.

39 *account consider.*

39–41 **Art . . . desire** Are you (now sober, unlustful, and detumescent) afraid to be and do what you were and desired to be when you were drunk. For this verbal possibility, see the immediate sexualised language of 'be' (40), 'do' and 'become a man' (46), 'do' (47).

39 *afeard* afraid.

44–5 **Letting . . . adage** The adage is 'The cat would eat fish but she will not wet her feet' (Dent c144). Macbeth wants the kingship, but will risk nothing; later, he will find his feet wet with blood (3.4.136–7). Unlike Lady Macbeth, contemporaries used the proverb positively to exhort 'the idle to action' or to note 'that luxury carries penalties' (Martin Orkin in *Reader*, p. 494).

45 **Prithee, peace** i.e. I pray thee, be quiet.

Who dares do more is none.

LADY MACBETH

What beast was't then  
That made you break this enterprise to me?

When you durst do it, then you were a man.

And to be more than what you were, you would

50

Be so much more the man. Nor time, nor place

Did then adhere, and yet you would make both.

They have made themselves and that their fitness now

Does unmake you. I have given suck and know

How tender 'tis to love the babe that milks me:

55

I would, while it was smiling in my face,

Have plucked my nipple from his boneless gums

And dashed the brains out, had I so sworn

As you have done to this.

MACBETH

If we should fail?

LADY MACBETH

We fail?

But screw your courage to the sticking-place,

60

And we'll not fail. When Duncan is asleep,

Whereto the rather shall his day's hard journey

47 do] *Rowe*; no F 55 me:] *Capell*; me, F; me – *Rowe*

59 We fail?] F (We faile?); We fail! *Rowe*

60 sticking-place] *Steevens*; sticking place F

47 none i.e. no man. For Macbeth at this moment, daring to kill the king would move him beyond humanity. See next n.

47–51 What . . . man Lady Macbeth seems here either to give her version of 1.5 or to be reporting speeches we have not heard: to achieve the kingship ('more than what you were'), Macbeth would necessarily become more intensely masculine ('so much more the man') rather than (as he claims) become no man. See Waith and 4.3.222–6n.

47 beast Lady Macbeth immediately understands Macbeth's 'none' to mean an animal.

48 break disclose, divulge (*OED* Break v 22).

48 enterprise bold, arduous, or momentous undertaking (*OED* Enterprise sb 1).

49 durst dared (an obsolete past tense).

52 adhere agree.

52 make both According to his wife, Macbeth seeks to make both occasion and place, seeks to control time and topography. See 1.1.1n.

53 that their fitness now i.e. now they have become appropriate ('fit').

54–9 See pp. 36–8 above.

55 milks obtains milk by sucking (sole citation for *OED* Milk v 1d). Compare Cleopatra's description of the deadly asp: 'Dost thou not see my baby at my breast, / That sucks the nurse asleep?' (*Ant.*

5.2.309–10).

57 his The ungendered 'babe' (55) becomes male.

58–9 sworn . . . to this bound myself by oath . . . to this course of action.

59 We fail? F's question mark (which stood for both modern '?' and '!') can represent either interrogation (sincere or scornful) or exclamation (surprised, scornful, or resigned).

60 But Only.

60 screw . . . sticking-place tighten, make taut, your courage to the limit. The underlying metaphor may be from tightening the tuning pegs of a stringed instrument or from winding up the cord on a crossbow. See 79 below, 1.3.35, and 2.2.36; and compare 'wind up invention / Unto his highest bent' (John Marston, *Antonio's Revenge*, ed. Reavley Gair, 1978, 4.3.192–3) and 'Wind up your souls to their full height' (Cyril Tourneur (?) but more likely Thomas Middleton), *The Revenger's Tragedy*, ed. R. A. Foakes, 1966, 5.2.7). The 'sticking-place' may also be the place at which a moral individual hesitates or the place beyond which a moral individual refuses to go or a stab-wound (see *OED* Stick v 1a and 3.1.51n., and *OED* Sticking-place 3).

62 the rather the more readily, all the sooner.

Soundly invite him, his two chamberlains  
 Will I with wine and wassail so convince  
 That memory, the warder of the brain,  
 Shall be a fume, and the receipt of reason  
 A limbeck only. When in swinish sleep  
 Their drenched natures lies as in a death,  
 What cannot you and I perform upon  
 Th'unguarded Duncan? What not put upon  
 His spongy officers, who shall bear the guilt  
 Of our great quell?

65

70

MACBETH

Bring forth men-children only,  
 For thy undaunted mettle should compose  
 Nothing but males. Will it not be received,  
 When we have marked with blood those sleepy two

75

65 *warder*] F; *warden conj.* Schanzer, p. 224

63 **Soundly** A transferred adverb: Duncan will sleep 'soundly'; there is perhaps the added irony of a 'sound' (= robust, healthy) sleep that is death.

63 **chamberlains** Attendants in the royal bed-chamber (*OED Chamberlain* 1a). See 75–6n.

64 **wassail liquor** (in which toasts were drunk).

64 **convince** overcome, conquer.

65–7 **memory . . . only** Memory, a guard ('warder') of the brain against irrational thoughts or impulses, will become vapour ('a fume') and reason's chamber ('receipt') will merely receive the condensation of a distilling apparatus ('limbeck') – an elaborate, metaphorical description of drunkenness: 'hote wynes, and strong drinckes . . . fill the braine with vapours' (Barrough, p. 11). See illustration 8, p. 46 above. Arnold Davenport (cited in Schanzer, p. 224) over-rationalises the metaphors: 'the receptacle which should collect only the pure drops of reason . . . will be turned into the retort in which . . . undistilled liquids bubble and fume'. In July 1606 (see p. 8 above), James VI and I and his brother-in-law Christian IV of Denmark witnessed a masque of Hope, Faith, and Charity, when 'wine did so occupy' the actors' 'upper chambers' that 'most of the presenters went backward, or fell down' (*Letters and Epigrams of Sir John Harington*, ed. N. E. McClure, 1930, pp. 119–20).

65 **warder** Soldier or other person set to guard an entrance; watchman (*OED Warder* sb<sup>1</sup> 1, quoting 4.1.55). Schanzer's conjecture ('warden' for 'warder') apparently assumes that Compositor A misread a terminal suspension (in 'wardere'?) and ignores the classical, medieval, and early modern understanding of memory's importance to moral judgement and prudence (see Mary Carruthers, *The Book of Memory: A Study of Memory in Medieval Culture*, 1990, pp. 68–71).

66 **fume** vapour.

66 **receipt** receptacle (this line is the latest citation for *OED Receipt* sb 12a).

67 **limbeck alembic** (aphetic form), an apparatus used in distilling. The 'beak' of the alembic 'conveyed the vaporous products to a receiver [see 'receipt' (66)], in which they were condensed' (*OED Alembic* 1). See illustration 8, p. 46 above.

67 **swinish** i.e. drunken. Compare 'As drunk as a swine' (Dent s1042).

68 **lies** Singular verb in -s with plural subject (Abbott 333), assisted here by the figurative link between 'sleep' (67) and 'death' (68); see 'sleep, death's counterfeit' (2.3.70).

70 **put upon** impose; saddle with (*OED Put* v<sup>1</sup> 23a, c). Responsibility for the murder will be laid upon the 'chamberlains' (63).

71 **spongy** absorbent (*OED Spongy* 3b; this line and *Tro. 2.2.12* are the earliest citations). The men will soak up liquor like sponges.

71 **officers** office-holders, persons who perform certain duties; not 'military personnel'.

72 **quell** slaughter, murder.

72–4 **Bring forth . . . but males** Compare 'if woman do breed man / She ought to teach him manhood' (Webster, *White Devil* 5.6.242–3).

73 **mettle** spirit, courage. Early modern orthography did not distinguish 'mettle' and 'metal', making possible a pun on male children as metallic warriors armoured in mail (see Adelman, pp. 139–40, and the mail/male pun at Dekker [and Thomas Middleton], *The Roaring Girl* 3.3.18–20).

74 **males** There may be a pun on 'mail' (= armour). See 73n.

74 **received** understood, believed (by others).

75–6 **two . . . chamber** i.e. two members of the king's bedchamber. In the Jacobean court, ap-

Of his own chamber, and used their very daggers,  
That they have done't?

LADY MACBETH Who dares receive it other,  
As we shall make our griefs and clamour roar  
Upon his death?

MACBETH I am settled and bend up  
Each corporal agent to this terrible feat.

Away, and mock the time with fairest show,  
False face must hide what the false heart doth know.

80

*Exeunt*

## 2.1 Enter BANQUO, and FLEANCE, with a Torch[-bearer] before him

BANQUO How goes the night, boy?

FLEANCE The moon is down; I have not heard the clock.

BANQUO And she goes down at twelve.

FLEANCE I take't, 'tis later, sir.

BANQUO Hold, take my sword. – There's husbandry in heaven,  
Their candles are all out. – Take thee that too.

5

77 done't] F (don't) Act 2, Scene 1 2.1] F (*Actus Secundus. Scena Prima.*) o SD Torch-bearer] F (Torch)  
4 sword. –] Collier (after Capell); Sword: F 5 out. – Take] Theobald; out: take F

pointed members of the bedchamber attended the king's personal needs. See Neil Cuddy, 'The revival of the entourage: the bedchamber of James I, 1603–1625', in *The English Court: From the Wars of the Roses to the Civil War*, ed. David Starkey, 1987, pp. 173–225.

76 very own.

77 other otherwise.

78 As When (*Lexicon*); 'Equivalent to seeing that' (Clarendon).

79 settled unchanging, undeviating (OED Settled *ppl a 1*).

79 bend up brace, tighten, prepare to act; see 60 n.

80 corporal corporeal, bodily. See 1.3.79 n.

80 agent physical resource; muscle (Hunter).

81–2 'Fair face foul heart' (Dent F3). Macbeth now repeats his wife's advice (1.5.61–4); see 3.2.32–4 and n.

81 mock deceive.

### Act 2, Scene 1

The scene takes place in Macbeth's castle (fictionally, at Inverness). It is liminal: sufficiently out of doors for stars and moon to be looked for (1–2), sufficiently indoors for Banquo to get ready for 'sleep' (7).

o SD Torch-bearer F's SD might mean that Fleance holds a torch and precedes Banquo (*him*), but F's punctuation apparently stipulates a torch-bearer (often referred to as *Torch*), making three actors in all. Compare 3.3.14 SD.

1 How goes the night How much of the night has passed? See *OED* Go v 11, quoting 'How goes the time' (John Marston, *Antonio and Mellida* (c. 1600), ed. Reavley Gair, 1991, 3.1.102). Macbeth virtually repeats the question, 'What is the night?' (3.4.126).

4–5 There's . . . out Usually understood as: 'There's thirst ("husbandry") in heaven, they have extinguished (put "out") their stars ("candles").' Steevens<sup>3</sup> compares 'Night's candles are burnt out, and jocund day / Stands tiptoe' (*Rom.* 3.5.9–10); see also: 'those golden candles fixed in heaven's air' (*Sonnet 21.12*) and 'these blessed candles of the night' (*MV* 5.1.220). David-Everett Blythe, 'Banquo's candles', *ELH* 58 (1991), 773–8, unconvincingly proposes the paraphrase 'There's concern (= "husbandry") for humankind in heaven, they have displayed (put "out") their candles/stars.'

5 Take . . . too Banquo, preparing for rest, disarms himself (4) and now removes some other accoutrement (his dagger or cloak, perhaps, or some

A heavy summons lies like lead upon me,  
And yet I would not sleep; merciful powers,  
Restrain in me the cursèd thoughts that nature  
Gives way to in repose.

*Enter MACBETH, and a Servant with a torch*

Give me my sword –

Who's there?

MACBETH A friend.

BANQUO What, sir, not yet at rest? The king's abed.

He hath been in unusual pleasure  
And sent forth great largess to your offices.  
This diamond he greets your wife withal,

[*Gives Macbeth a diamond*]

By the name of most kind hostess, and shut up  
In measureless content.

MACBETH Being unprepared,  
Our will became the servant to defect,

9 SD] F (*subst.*); after sword (9) Capell 13 hath . . . pleasure] F (hath beene in vnusuall Pleasure); has been to night in an unusual pleasure Davenant 15 SD] Folger (*subst.*); not in F; Capell marks as 'a thing deliver'd' ('Prolusions', p. vi)  
16 shut] F; shut it F2-4

ceremonial item associated with the state dinner he has just attended) or (as in some productions) hands Fleance 'This diamond' (15).

7–9 Sleep is not inevitably restorative (2.2.40–3); like drink (2.3.21–2), it can provoke.

8 cursed thoughts ambitious dreams (prompted by the sisters' prophecies and Macbeth's recent success); nightmares (about Macbeth's possible crimes). Macbeth enters before Banquo chooses between these alternatives. See 20 and 50–1; 'unstained thoughts do seldom dream on evil' (*The Rape of Lucrece* 87); and Imogen's bedtime prayer, 'gods, / From fairies and the tempters of the night / Guard me' (*Cym.* 2.2.8–10).

9 SD *Enter . . . torch* F's placing of the sp may indicate the moment when the actors enter; Capell's repositioning makes Banquo anticipate the entrance. F's *Torch* might indicate a torch-bearer, but theatrical economy and F's punctuation suggest one servant holding one torch. Compare o sp and n.

10–11 Challenge and response: Banquo is tense; Macbeth appears as either a 'merciful power' (7) or a 'cursèd thought' (8).

14 largess . . . offices gifts to the castle functionaries (Brooke).

15–16 'This diamond' may be a ring or pendant.

Banquo, companion to Duncan in 1.6, conveys a royal gift one might expect the king to deliver personally; compare 2.3.39n., and Textual Analysis, pp. 260–1 below. The gift-giving emphasises Duncan's false sense of security and affirms the social code Macbeth is about to break.

15 greets . . . withal salutes your wife with. The verb and its complement control both 'diamond' and 'name' (16).

16 shut up went to bed (in a curtained bed (see 51) within a chamber). The phrase could mean 'concluded' (i.e. ended his speech); the grammar is stretched to report what Duncan said ('greets') and then what he has done ('shut up'). Later Folios make 'shut up' refer to an imaginary case for the diamond.

17 unprepared unready, unwarned. This easy social remark (the castle was not prepared to receive a king) anticipates the ways Macbeth and others do not foresee what is to come (see, especially, 2.3.119–27), but also momentarily suggests that Duncan is 'unprepared' for his murder.

18 Our An anticipatory royal plural; compare 22 and 5.6.4.

18 defect deficiency (*Lexicon*).

Which else should free have wrought.

BANQUO All's well.

I dreamed last night of the three weird sisters;  
To you they have showed some truth.

20

MACBETH I think not of them;

Yet when we can entreat an hour to serve,  
We would spend it in some words upon that business,  
If you would grant the time.

BANQUO At your kind'st leisure.

MACBETH If you shall cleave to my consent, when 'tis,  
It shall make honour for you.

25

BANQUO So I lose none  
In seeking to augment it, but still keep  
My bosom franchised and allegiance clear,  
I shall be counselled.

MACBETH Good repose the while.

BANQUO Thanks, sir; the like to you.

30

[*Exeunt*] Banquo, Fleance, and Torch-bearer

MACBETH [To Servant] Go bid thy mistress, when my drink is  
ready,

She strike upon the bell. Get thee to bed.

*Exit* [Servant]

Is this a dagger which I see before me,  
The handle toward my hand? Come, let me clutch thee:

<sup>20</sup> weird] *Theobald*; *weyward* F    <sup>23</sup> it in] F; it *Rowe*; omitted by *Rowe*<sup>2</sup>    <sup>30</sup> SD] *Capell* (*subst.*); *Exit Banquo* F    <sup>32</sup> SD  
*Exit Servant* *Rowe*; *Exit* F

<sup>19</sup> free . . . wrought liberally have worked.

<sup>19</sup> All's well All is not well, as Banquo's next words testify.

<sup>22-4</sup> Macbeth's courtly politeness and the apparent royal 'we' intimate his sense of changed (or soon to be changed) status; his desire to talk about the witches contradicts 'I think not of them' (21).

<sup>24</sup> If you would grant the time Granting or gaining time will become an important issue; Banquo's descendants overreach Macbeth in time.

<sup>24</sup> leisure See 1.3.147n.

<sup>25</sup> cleave to my consent agree (or adhere) to my feeling (or opinion); see *OED* Consent sb 6.

<sup>25</sup> when 'tis when it ('the time') (24) is.

<sup>28</sup> franchised free. Banquo apparently wishes to remain free of obligation to Macbeth or of implication in his schemes.

<sup>29</sup> the while in the meantime.

<sup>30</sup> sir The respectful title introduces a note of subordination (perhaps prompted by 22-4) not present in 1.3.

<sup>30</sup> SD See o SD n.

<sup>31</sup> drink An imaginary nightcap. As a codeword for murder, 'drink' is appropriate to the drunken grooms (1.7.63-8, 2.2.53), the drunken-hopeful Macbeth (1.7.35-8), and the speeches of the hungover Porter (2.3.1ff).

<sup>32</sup> bell A clapperless bell like a ship's bell, or a gong (see 'strike upon'); this bell is for routine internal communication (compare 'alarum bell' (2.3.68)). See W. J. Lawrence, 'Bells on the Elizabethan stage', *Fortnightly Review* 122 (July 1924), 59-70.

<sup>34</sup> handle . . . hand This detail identifies the dagger as a weapon for, rather than a threat to, Macbeth and makes plain the fact that the dagger is invisible to the audience. As a 'visual metonym' (see Michael Hattaway, *Elizabethan Popular Theatre*, 1982, p. 65), the dagger might have reminded audiences of other literary and dramatic occasions when the secular or demonic realms offer weapons as temptations to despair and suicide – for example, the moment when Tamburlaine's henchmen dis-

I have thee not, and yet I see thee still.  
 Art thou not, fatal vision, sensible  
 To feeling as to sight? Or art thou but  
 A dagger of the mind, a false creation,  
 Proceeding from the heat-oppressèd brain?  
 I see thee yet, in form as palpable      35  
 As this which now I draw.  
 Thou marshall'st me the way that I was going,  
 And such an instrument I was to use.  
 Mine eyes are made the fools o'th'other senses,  
 Or else worth all the rest. I see thee still,      40  
 And on thy blade and dudgeon gouts of blood,  
 Which was not so before. There's no such thing:  
 It is the bloody business which informs  
 Thus to mine eyes. Now o'er the one half-world  
 Nature seems dead, and wicked dreams abuse      45  
 The curtained sleep. Witchcraft celebrates  
 Pale Hecate's off'rings, and withered murder,

49 half-world] *Clarendon*; halfe World F

play a dagger to Agydas and he understands he must either commit suicide or be killed; see *Tamburlaine, Part 1* 3.2.88–106. Compare 64.

36 fatal deadly, mortal. The adjective is both active and passive: the vision is of mortality (Duncan's death); the dagger is deadly to vision (Macbeth's own). See 38 n.

36 sensible perceptible.

37 as to sight The question depends upon an optical theory that vision was the product of beams radiated by the eye and reflected to it.

38 of the mind imaginary. The phrase also yields an image of a dagger *in* the mind, a keen knife that makes a moral and psychological wound (see 1.3.138 and 1.5.50). Encountering Caesar's ghost, Brutus supposes 'it is the weakness of mine eyes / That shapes this monstrous apparition' (*JC* 4.3.276–7).

39 heat-oppressèd subdued, afflicted by heat (considered a quality of the human body and its 'humours'). Macbeth responds to the vision analytically; his explanation is physiological, and the 'heat' might arise from 'anger, or furiousness . . . perturbations of the minde' (Barrough, pp. 2–3).

40 yet still.

40 palpable tangible; perceptible (*OED* Palpable a 1–2).

42 Thou marshall'st You guide, usher. Compare 'Our conquering swords shall marshal us the way' (*Tamburlaine, Part 1* 3.3.148).

46 dudgeon hilt, handle. This line is the sole citation under *OED* Dudgeon sb<sup>1</sup> 2, and the word

may have Scottish associations, since Cotgrave defines *Dague à roëlles* as 'A Scottish dagger; or Dudgeon haft dagger' (Capell, 'Glossary' in *Notes*, 1, 21). The blood Macbeth now sees covers not merely the blade, but the handle (where it will stain his hand). See 2.3.109 n.

46 gouts spots, splashes. The word derives from French *goutte* (drop) 'and, according to [nineteenth-century or earlier?] stage-tradition, [is] so pronounced' (Clarendon).

47 thing i.e. a dagger. Macbeth corrects his 'eyes', the 'fools' or deceivers of his other senses (44), and says the dagger is imaginary, 'no such thing' (47).

49–64 'He that peruses Shakespeare [in these lines], looks round alarmed, and starts to find himself alone' (Johnson).

49 half-world i.e. the hemisphere in darkness.

50 seems dead i.e. because nature is asleep. Compare 1.7.68 and 2.3.70.

50 wicked dreams Compare Banquo's fears (8–9).

51 curtained See 16 n.

51 celebrates performs the rites; honours.

52 Hecate's off'rings Offerings to Hecate, classical goddess of the moon and of sorcery. In Shakespeare's plays, 'Hecate' is always disyllabic and stressed on the first syllable except at 1*H6* 3.2.64; F's syncopation of 'off'rings' is not metrically necessary, and some editors print 'offerings'. See 3.2.41 n.

Alarumed by his sentinel, the wolf,  
 Whose howl's his watch, thus with his stealthy pace,  
 With Tarquin's ravishing strides, towards his design  
 Moves like a ghost. Thou sure and firm-set earth,  
 Hear not my steps, which way they walk, for fear  
 Thy very stones prate of my whereabout,  
 And take the present horror from the time,  
 Which now suits with it. Whiles I threat, he lives;  
 Words to the heat of deeds too cold breath gives.

55

60

*A bell rings*

I go, and it is done. The bell invites me.  
 Hear it not, Duncan, for it is a knell  
 That summons thee to heaven or to hell.

*Exit*

55 strides] Pope; sides f 56 sure] f (sowre) 57 way they] Rowe; they may f 61 sd] f (*Bell*), at right margin

53 Alarumed Warned, prompted to action; compare 1.2.0 SD n.

54 howl's howl is.

54 his watch Murder's time-piece; the wolf's night-duty. On the second possibility, see 'the Wolfe shal be watchman and keepe many wayes' (*Prophesie*, sig. A3r)

54 stealthy This line is *OED*'s earliest citation for the word (Schäfer).

55 Tarquin Sextus Tarquinius, the Etruscan prince who raped Lucretia, wife of Lucius Tarquinus Collatinus. She committed suicide, and her relatives and friends led a rebellion (c. 509 BC) that overthrew the monarchy and established the Roman republic. See *The Rape of Lucrece* and Iachimo's memory of 'Our Tarquin' when he prepares his mock-rape of Imogen (*Cym.* 2.2.12–14). The analogy here sexualises regicide and was available to contemporaries: addressing Shakespeare, Henry Chettle wrote, 'Shepherd remember our Elizabeth, / And sing her Rape, done by that Tarquin, Death' (*Englands Mourning Garment* (1603), sig. D3r).

55 strides long steps. Compare 'turn two mincing steps / Into a manly stride' (*MV* 3.4.67–8). f's 'sides' has not been satisfactorily interpreted; it is also hard to explain as the copyist's or compositor's misreading of 'strides', but 'Whoever hath experienced walking in the dark must have observed, that a man . . . always feels out his way by strides, by advancing one foot, as far as he finds it safe, before the other' (Heath, p. 387). Elsewhere, 'stalks' (*The Rape of Lucrece* 365) and 'slunk' (*Tit.* 4.1.63) describe the way Tarquin approached Lucrece's bed.

56 sure reliable, steady. *OED* Sure a and adv records 'sowr' (f: 'sowre'; Q1673: 'sowr') as a form of 'sure'. NS and Shaheen compare 'He hath made the rounde world so sure: that it can not be moved' (Ps. 93.2, Psalter version).

56 firm-set solidly positioned, stable.

58 prate blab, tell tales. Compare 'the land bids me tread no more upon't, / It is ashamed to bear me' (*Ant.* 3.11.1–2). Speaking stones are uncommon; Grey (ii, 144) thought Luke 19.40 an analogue, but the context (telling the good word) is far from this one. Dent s895.1 ('The stones would speak') cites Gascoigne (1573): 'When men crye murme and keepe such silence long, / Then stones must speake, els dead men shall have wrong', and Malone cites 'yet will the very stones / That lie within the streetes cry out for vengeance' (*Warning*, sig. G1r). See 3.4.123, where stones move and trees speak.

58 whereabout location, position (*OED* Whereabout 4, where this line is the earliest instance given of this interrogative word used as a noun).

59 take remove, withhold.

59 the present horror i.e. the silence that would be broken by speaking stones.

59 time time of night (compare *OED* Time sb 13); not, probably, the more general 'circumstances, the times' (*OED* Time sb 3d).

60 threat threaten. Macbeth accuses himself of bluster.

62 it Either (1) Lady Macbeth's preparatory drugging of Duncan's retainers, or (2) the regicide itself.

63–4 The bell has also summoned Macbeth to damnation.

63 knell Church bell rung to announce a death. Macbeth imagines he has already committed the murder. See 4.3.172–3 and n., and 5.9.17.

64 sd Henry Irving made an actor's 'point' of this exit when he hesitated an unusually long time before leaving the stage very slowly; see Sprague, p. 241.

2.2 *Enter LADY [MACBETH]*

LADY MACBETH That which hath made them drunk, hath made  
me bold;

What hath quenched them, hath given me fire.

[*An owl shrieks*]

Hark, peace!

It was the owl that shrieked, the fatal bellman  
Which gives the stern'st good-night. He is about it.  
The doors are open, and the surfeited grooms  
Do mock their charge with snores. I have drugged their  
possets,  
That death and nature do contend about them,  
Whether they live, or die.

5

*Enter MACBETH [with two bloody daggers]*

MACBETH

Who's there? What ho?

Act 2, Scene 2 2.2] F (*Scena Secunda.*); scene continues, Rowe 2 SD *An owl shrieks* This edn; not in F 8 SD] This edn; Enter Macbeth F; Mac. [within] / Steevens<sup>1</sup>, inserting / Enter Macbeth / after My husband? (1.3). See Supplementary Note, p. 241 below

## Act 2, Scene 2

The setting is somewhere in Macbeth's castle that is private and that has imaginary access to other parts of the castle. By keeping Duncan's murder invisible, Shakespeare increases the audience's complicity and excitement; compare the murdered Duke Humphrey (2H6 3.2), carefully described and possibly seen, and Jones, *Scenic*, p. 212.

1 **That** The indefiniteness (what is *That*?) is powerful; even after the audience realises Lady Macbeth refers both to the grooms' drugged drinks and to her own inebriated excitement at what is to come, the doubt over 'That' lingers, and frightens.

2 **quenched** extinguished (as water would fire); cooled (as in tempering forged metal). As in 1, Lady Macbeth sees paradoxically antithetical consequences of a single cause – a miniature instance of a common event in the play (compare, for instance, Banquo's and Macbeth's different reactions to the sisters' prophecies in 1.3).

3–4 W. J. Lawrence, *Shakespeare's Workshop*, 1928, pp. 35–6, compares 'And when the Lambe bleating, doth bid Godnight / Unto the closing day, then teares begin / To keep quicke time unto the Owle, whose voice / Shreikes, like the Bell-man, in the Lovers eares' (*Blurt* 3.1.101–4).

3 **owl** Like the raven (1.5.36), the owl was a bird of ill-omen. See 'The screeching owl bodes death' (Dent 833); NS compares 'owls' . . . death-boding cries' (*The Rape of Lucrece* 165).

3 **bellman** night watchman. Dekker describes '*The Bell-man of London*' as 'a man with a lanthorne and . . . a long staffe . . . The Ringing of his Bell,

was not . . . to fright the inhabitants, but rather it was musick to charme them faster with sleepe'; Dekker's narrator admits, 'The sound of his *Voice* at the first put me in mind of the day of *Judgement*' (*Belman*, pp. 109–110).

4 **stern'st good-night** i.e. the last good-night, death.

4 **He** Macbeth, but the most recently mentioned agents are the 'fatal bellman' and the 'owl' (3), making Macbeth impersonal and allegorical.

5 **surfeited** fed or filled to excess (*OED* Surfeited *ppl a 1*, where this line is the earliest citation); hence, sickened by over-indulgence.

6 **This** line probably requires contraction ('I've' for 'I have') for the metre.

6 **mock** defy, set at nought (*OED* Mock *v 1c*, quoting 'fill our bowls once more; / Let's mock the midnight bell' (*Ant.* 3.13.183–4)).

6 **drugged** poisoned. This line is the earliest citation under *OED* drug *v<sup>2</sup> 1* (Schäfer).

6 **possets** Drinks made of hot milk, liquor, and spices (a delicacy).

7–8 **Lady Macbeth** imagines a contest, or an allegorical play, in which abstract figures (Death and Nature) fight over the grooms' lives and consciousnesses.

7 **That** So that.

8 SD For the daggers, see 51. Füssli (Fuseli) recorded Pritchard and Garrick at this moment; see illustration 13, p. 65 above. See Supplementary Note, p. 241 below, for the staging adopted here.

8 **Who's there?** Banquo asks the same question of Macbeth at 2.1.10.

LADY MACBETH Alack, I am afraid they have awaked,  
 And 'tis not done; th'attempt and not the deed  
 Confounds us. Hark! I laid their daggers ready,  
 He could not miss 'em. Had he not resembled  
 My father as he slept, I had done't. My husband?

MACBETH I have done the deed. Didst thou not hear a noise? 10

LADY MACBETH I heard the owl scream and the crickets cry.  
 Did not you speak? 15

MACBETH When?

LADY MACBETH Now.

MACBETH As I descended? 20

LADY MACBETH Ay.

MACBETH Hark, who lies i'th'second chamber? 25

LADY MACBETH Donaldbain.

MACBETH This is a sorry sight.

LADY MACBETH A foolish thought, to say a sorry sight.

MACBETH There's one did laugh in's sleep, and one cried,  
 'Murder!', 25

That they did wake each other; I stood, and heard them,

<sup>10</sup> attempt and . . . deed] *Globe* (*conj. Hunter*, 'New', II, 182–3); attempt, and . . . deed, F    11 us. Hark!] *Globe*; vs;  
 heareke: F    13 done't] F (don't)    22 Donaldbain] F (*Donaldbaine*), throughout act    25 'Murder!'] *Hanmer* (*subst.*);  
 Murther, F

9–10 Lady Macbeth's assumption that Macbeth has failed may reflect her own irresolution (12–13) or may indicate that she has mistaken Macbeth's voice for that of one of the grooms (see her question (13)).

10–11 th'attempt . . . Confounds us i.e. murder attempted but not accomplished defeats us. F's punctuation says that the attempt to kill Duncan, rather than the killing itself, will defeat the Macbeths' aims; *Globe* changed the punctuation to show that Lady Macbeth fears being known as having attempted regicide without accomplishing it.

11 Hark Listen, pay attention. Lady Macbeth interrupts herself, starting at some real or imaginary sound, perhaps of crickets (15), perhaps her husband's footsteps.

12–13 Had . . . done't Compare Lady Macbeth's assertion about infanticide (1.7.54–8 and n.). With other monarchical theorists, James VI and I stressed the identity of king and father (see e.g. *True Lawe*, pp. 62 and 74); Duncan's murder violates multiple bonds, many taboos.

13 My father . . . husband Spoken, the line makes father and husband, king and king-killer, one.

13 done't done it.

15 crickets Some editors treat this word as a possessive ('cricket's'), but the earlier 'owl scream'

(rather than 'owl's scream') suggests that F's reading is correct.

16–19 Did . . . descended These exchanges are set out as they are in F, but editors have tried to create a single pentameter. See Textual Analysis, pp. 252–3 below.

23 This . . . sight Pope and later editors add an s'd making this line refer to Macbeth's hands, or his hands and the daggers, but F's indefiniteness suggests how the murder has affected Macbeth's imagination; compare 62, where his hands 'pluck out' his eyes.

23 sorry painful, grievous; wretched, worthless.

24 Does Lady Macbeth refer to Macbeth's bloody hands, the bloody daggers, his hands and the daggers, or does she merely dismiss her husband's fear? Dessen ('Problems', pp. 155–6) suggests that she does not realise Macbeth has mistakenly returned with the daggers until 51 and links this 'not-seeing' with her earlier failure to recognise Macbeth (13), but it seems more likely she is taking her hurdles one at a time, first her husband's debilitating fear, then the problem of replacing incriminating evidence.

25 one . . . one Apparently Malcolm and Donaldbain, not the two grooms, but the uncertainty adds to the terror of the moment.

25 in's in his.

26 stood i.e. stood still, stood without moving.

But they did say their prayers and addressed them  
Again to sleep.

LADY MACBETH There are two lodged together.

MACBETH One cried ‘God bless us!’ and ‘Amen’ the other,  
As they had seen me with these hangman’s hands.  
List’ning their fear, I could not say ‘Amen’  
When they did say ‘God bless us.’

LADY MACBETH Consider it not so deeply.

MACBETH But wherefore could not I pronounce ‘Amen’?  
I had most need of blessing and ‘Amen’  
Stuck in my throat.

LADY MACBETH These deeds must not be thought  
After these ways; so, it will make us mad.

MACBETH Methought I heard a voice cry, ‘Sleep no more:  
Macbeth does murder sleep’, the innocent sleep,  
Sleep that knits up the ravelled sleeve of care,  
The death of each day’s life, sore labour’s bath,

29 ‘God . . . us! . . . ‘Amen’] *Hanmer* (*subst.*); God . . . vs . . . Amen F 31–2 ‘Amen’ . . . ‘God . . . us.’] *Hanmer* (*subst.*); Amen . . . God . . . vs. F 34–5 ‘Amen? . . . ‘Amen’] *Hanmer* (*subst.*); Amen? . . . Amen F 36 thought] F; thought on *Hanmer* 38–9 ‘Sleep . . . sleep’] *Johnson*; sleep . . . sleepe F 40 knits] F; rips Q1673

27 addressed prepared (*OED Address v 10*). There may be a hint of ‘directed spoken words’ (*OED Address v 8a*), since Macbeth will soon himself ‘address’ Sleep (38–43).

28 lodged housed, bedded down.

30–1 Capell (*Notes*, pp. 11–12) argues that ‘List’ning their fear’ should end a sentence rather than begin one, but F’s punctuation, a colon before ‘Listning’ and a comma after ‘feare’, tends against Capell, and his choice produces a weak following sentence, ‘I could not say “Amen” / When they did say “God bless us”’.

30 As As if (Abbott 107); see 1.4.11 n.

30 hangman’s hands An executioner’s hands would be bloodied when he disembowelled the body of a traitor he had first hanged.

31 List’ning Hearing, listening to.

31 I could not say ‘Amen’ Macbeth cannot speak the formulaic word that would free him spiritually so that he could join in the grooms’ prayers. Claudius, also a regicide, in *Ham.* 3.3.38–72 meditates on his need for contrition, strives to pray, but gives up despairingly: ‘My words fly up, my thoughts remain below’ (*Ham.* 3.3.97). Compare Vittoria’s horrific dream: ‘I trembled, and yet for all this terror / I could not pray’ (Webster, *White Devil* 1.2.248–9).

34 wherefore why.

36 thought meditated, pondered. This line is the last citation under *OED Think v<sup>2</sup> 2a*.

38–43 There is no way of telling how much of this passage (or of 44–6) is quoted speech, and an audience is unlikely to hear fine discriminations; altogether, 38–43 is ‘a formal apostrophe to Sleep’ (Brooke) in the manner of *The Rape of Lucrece* (e.g. 764 ff. on ‘comfort-killing Night’). Clarendon compares Seneca, *Hercules Furens* 1065–81, an apostrophe to sleep that includes the phrases ‘vanquisher of woes, rest of the soul, the better part of human life . . . peace after wanderings, haven of life, day’s respite’ (trans. F. J. Miller).

38 Methought It seemed to me.

40 ravelled frayed (synonymous with ‘unravelled’); untwisted (see next n.).

40 sleeve Part of a garment covering the arm (*OED Sleeve sb 1*); filament of silk obtained by untwisting a thicker thread (*OED Sleave sb 1*, quoting this line as its first figurative use). An audience cannot hear the difference between ‘sleave’ and ‘sleeve’, and the play’s clothing imagery prompts us to understand ‘sleeve’.

41 death of each day’s life i.e. sleep ends each day just as death ends life. Thus, sleep is to death as day is to life, and sleep is to day as death is to life.

41 bath therapeutic liquid. *OED Bath sb<sup>1</sup> 10*

Balm of hurt minds, great nature's second course,  
Chief nourisher in life's feast.

LADY MACBETH What do you mean?

MACBETH Still it cried, 'Sleep no more' to all the house;  
'Glamis hath murdered sleep', and therefore Cawdor  
Shall sleep no more: Macbeth shall sleep no more.

LADY MACBETH Who was it, that thus cried? Why, worthy thane,  
You do unbend your noble strength to think  
So brain-sickly of things. Go get some water  
And wash this filthy witness from your hand.  
Why did you bring these daggers from the place?  
They must lie there. Go carry them and smear  
The sleepy grooms with blood.

MACBETH I'll go no more.  
I am afraid to think what I have done;  
Look on't again, I dare not.

LADY MACBETH Infirm of purpose!  
Give me the daggers. The sleeping and the dead  
Are but as pictures; 'tis the eye of childhood  
That fears a painted devil. If he do bleed,

43 feast.] F (Feast.); feast, — Cam. (after Theobald)  
'Glamis . . . sleep'] Johnson; Glamis . . . Sleepe F

quotes this line as figurative, citing also Chaucer's 'bath of bliss'. Early modern English allows the pronunciation 'bait' (for 'bath') and hence a pun on 'bate', which can mean both 'strife, discord' and 'diminution' (*OED* Bate *sb*<sup>1</sup> 1 and *sb*<sup>2</sup> 2, respectively). This latter ironic possibility is attractive, but unavailable in modern English pronunciation.

42 second course main or principal dishes, hence something that comes after and satisfies more, as sleep does after exertion.

43 Capell (*Notes*, p. 12) compares Southwell's 'St Peters Complaint' (1595), lines 721 ff.: 'Sleepe, deathes allye: oblivion of teares: / Silence of passions: balme of angry sore: / Suspence of loves' (*Poems of Robert Southwell*, ed. James McDonald and Nancy Pollard Brown, 1967).

43 Chief nourisher Compare 'gentle sleep! / Nature's soft nurse' (2H4 3.1.5–6).

44–6 Sleep no more . . . sleep no more See 38–43 n. and 'I'll beat the drum / Till it cry sleep to death' (*Lear* 2.4.118–19).

48 unbend The word continues the metaphors of 1.3.35, 1.7.60 and 79.

50 filthy witness morally polluted token (*OED* Witness *sb* 7). Compare 1.1.13 n.

44 'Sleep . . . more'] Johnson; Sleepe . . . more F 45

53 sleepy The word is literally accurate: the drugged grooms live, intended to be scapegoats for Duncan's murder.

57 as pictures i.e. because, dead, they do not move. See 1.3.95 and 2.3.70.

57–8 'tis . . . devil 'Bugbears to scare babes' is proverbial (Dent B703); a 'bugbear' (or 'boogey man') was an imaginary figure used to scare children into obedience. Steevens<sup>2</sup> notes Webster's echo: 'Terrify babes, my lord, with painted devils' (*White Devil* 3.2.147).

58 painted pictured, represented graphically; perhaps also 'made up' (compare 'smear' (52), and 2.3.105, 3.4.12).

58 If he do bleed Literally, 'if Duncan's wounds are still fresh enough to be shedding liquid blood' (i.e. the blood has not coagulated). Early audiences might have recalled, however, the then-current superstition that a murdered body, such as Duncan's, bled afresh in the presence of the murderer (see *R3* 1.2.55–61); Lady Macbeth is not, technically, Duncan's murderer, but she is an accomplice and therefore equally guilty in contemporary criminal law. Here, therefore, she may be assuming and accepting her responsibility and her

I'll gild the faces of the grooms withal,  
For it must seem their guilt.

*Exit*

*Knock within*

MACBETH

Whence is that knocking?

60

How is't with me, when every noise appals me?  
What hands are here? Ha: they pluck out mine eyes.  
Will all great Neptune's ocean wash this blood  
Clean from my hand? No: this my hand will rather  
The multitudinous seas incarnadine,  
Making the green one red.

65

*Enter LADY [MACBETH]*

LADY MACBETH My hands are of your colour, but I shame

65 *incarnadine*] *Rowe*; *incarnardine* F

66 *green one red*] Q1673, F4 (Green one Red); *Greene one, Red* F; *green, One red* Johnson

guilt, even as she works to incriminate the grooms (59–60).

59 *gild* paint with gold-colour or gold-leaf. Lady Macbeth immediately speaks (unconsciously? compulsively?) the hackneyed ‘gild’/‘gilt’/‘guilt’ pun (60), which associates gold with red, painting with deception, royalty with murder. For red-gold substitutions, see ‘golden blood’ (2.3.105) and ‘My red dominical, my golden letter’ (*LLL* 5.2.44).

60 SD.2 *within* See 1.2.0 SD.1.n.

60 *Rowe*'s SD, *Starting*, follows ‘knocking’ and reflects Restoration stage-practice.

61 *appals* dismays, terrifies (*OED* *Appal* v 8, quoting 3.4.60). The etymologically accurate ‘apales’ ('becomes pale': see *OED* *Appale*) is probably also present (see 68 n.).

62–6 These lines have numerous classical parallels (Sophocles, Catullus, Seneca) and perhaps some sources; see Muir 2.2.59–62 n. Steevens notes earlier English uses of the metaphors: ‘And made the greene sea red with Pagan blood’ (Anthony Munday, *The Downfall of Robert, Earl of Huntingdon*, ed. John Meagher, MSR, 1965, line 1880) and ‘The multitudes of seas died [dyed] red with blood’ (Munday and Henry Chettle, *The Death of Robert, Earl of Huntingdon*, ed. John Meagher, MSR, 1967, line 1391). See also ‘Thou mighty one [Mars], that with thy power hast turned / Green Neptune into purple’ (*TNK* 5.1.49–50).

63–4 Will . . . hand Macbeth’s worry has ample precedent. See e.g. Jasper Heywood’s translation of Seneca, *Hercules Furens* 1323–9: ‘What Tanais, or what Nilus els, or with his Persyan wave / What Tygris violent of streme, or what fierce Rhenus

flood, / Or Tagus troublesome . . . May my ryght hand [n]ow wash from gylt? although . . . The w[a]ves of all the Northern sea on me shed out now wolde, / And al the water therof shoule now pas by my two handes, / Yet wil the mischiefe deepe remayne’ (*Seneca His Tenne Tragedies* (1581), sig. d4r); ‘All the water in the sea cannot wash out this stain’ (Dent w85, citing *Ado* 4.1.140 f.); ‘What if this cursed hand / Were thicker than itself with brother’s blood, / Is there not rain enough in the sweet heavens / To wash it white as snow’ (*Ham.* 3.3.43–6, Q2 and F, cited by Slater, p. 5).

63 *Neptune* Classical god of the seas.

65 *multitudinous* seas numerous oceans (‘all the world’s seas’); many-waved oceans. This line is *OED*’s earliest citation for ‘multitudinous’, which Shakespeare uses elsewhere (Schäfer).

65 *incarnadine* stain red; ‘literally make flesh-coloured’ (Blackfriars). The earliest citation under *OED* *Incarnidine* v (Schäfer).

66 F’s punctuation makes ‘the green one’ = ‘Neptune’s ocean’; Johnson’s anachronistic reading makes ‘one red’ = ‘uniformly scarlet’. Q1673 and F4 leave the line unpunctuated, and my choice is the modern version of F’s reading (see Sisson, II, 197).

67–8 Traditionally, post-Restoration actresses (Pritchard, Siddons) taunt Macbeth here, but in 1889 Lillie Langtry made Lady Macbeth seek to excuse her own weakness (Sprague, p. 244: ‘Lady Macbeth as an heroic character was passing’).

67 I shame I am (or, would be) ashamed. See *OED* *Shame* v 1c.

To wear a heart so white.

*Knock [within]*

I hear a knocking

At the south entry. Retire we to our chamber;

A little water clears us of this deed.

70

How easy is it then! Your constancy

Hath left you unattended.

*Knock [within]*

Hark, more knocking.

Get on your night-gown, lest occasion call us

And show us to be watchers. Be not lost

So poorly in your thoughts.

75

MACBETH To know my deed, 'twere best not know my self.

*Knock [within]*

Wake Duncan with thy knocking: I would thou couldst.

*Exeunt*

76 SD *Knock within* Steevens (subst.); *Knocke r* (after deed)

68 white pale with fear (*OED* White a 5a, quoting this line). Compare 'blanched with fear' (3.4.116), 5.3.11 and 14–16.

68 SD *Knock* '[W]hen the deed is done . . . the knocking at the gate is heard, and it makes known audibly that the reaction has commenced; the human has made its reflux upon the fiendish; the pulses of life are beginning to beat again' (De Quincey, x, 393). J. W. Spargo argues 'the Jacobean audience recognized in *Macbeth* [2.2] a crescendo of three ominous portents of death: (1) the wolf's howl; (2) the owl's screech; (3) the knocking at the gate' ('The knocking at the gate in *Macbeth*, an essay in interpretation', in *Adams Memorial Studies*, ed. James McManaway *et al.*, 1948, pp. 269–77; quotation from p. 277. Spargo associates the knocking with the sounds of those who searched houses for victims of the great plague of 1603; see 4.3.167–75 n.).

69 south entry southern entrance (to the castle or, later, 'palace' – 3.1.48, 3.3.13). The south was often holy and the north devilish in folklore, but Shakespeare elsewhere associates the south with disease and sickness; see 2*H4* 2.4.363, *Tro.* 5.1.18, *Cor.* 1.4.30, *Rom.* 1.4.103, *Cym.* 4.2.349.

71–2 constancy . . . unattended firmness of purpose has left you unsupported. NS paraphrases, 'you have lost your nerve'.

73 night-gown informal clothing, dressing-

gown. Most Elizabethans slept naked, and 'night-gowns' were worn outdoors and on such occasions as church services and executions (Linthicum, pp. 184–5). Shakespeare, however, associates 'night-gown' with semi-privacy and the bedchamber. Compare: 5.1.4; *JC* 2.2.0 SD; *Ado* 3.4.18–19, where 'night-gown' is a contemptuous description of a very grand garment; *Oth.* 4.3.16 and 34, where Desdemona's 'nightly wearing' and 'night-gown' seem to be the same; King Henry's early-morning meditations and meeting with his advisers 'in his night-gown' (2*H4* 3.1.0 SD); *Enter the ghost in his night gowne* (*Ham.* Q1 (1603), sig. G2v).

73 occasion circumstances; chance.

74 watchers persons who stay awake at night, night-watchers (*OED* Watcher c, quoting this line as its second example).

76 To know . . . my self i.e. consciousness of murder could best be borne if I lost my identity (a quibble, perhaps, on Dent k175, 'Know thyself'). Upton (p. 177) paraphrases: 'To know my deed! No, rather than so, 'twere best not know myself.' The implicit claim is that Macbeth as he was and murder are psychologically incoherent; awareness of murder will require a new 'self'. DeFlores asserts that Beatrice-Joanna, having ordered a murder, is recreated by her action: 'Y'are the deed's creature' (*Changeling* 3.4.137).

## 2.3 Enter a PORTER. Knocking within

PORTRER Here's a knocking indeed: if a man were porter of hell-gate, he should have old turning the key. (*Knock*) Knock, knock, knock. Who's there i'th'name of Beelzebub? Here's a farmer that hanged himself on th'expectation of plenty. Come in time – have napkins enough about you, here you'll sweat for't. (*Knock*) Knock, knock. Who's there in th'other devil's name? Faith, here's an equivocator that could swear in both the scales against either scale, who committed treason enough for God's sake, yet could not equivocate to heaven. O, come in, equivocator. (*Knock*) Knock, knock, knock. Who's there? Faith,

5

10

Act 2, Scene 3 2.3] F (*Scena Tertia.*); scene continues, Rowe 1–2 hell-gate] Rowe; Hell Gate F 4–5 Come in time –] Brooke; Come in time, F; Come in, time, Q1673; Come in, Time; Staunton; come in, time-server; NS; Come in farmer, Blackfriars (*conj. Anon. in Cam.*) 10 Faith] F ('Faith)

## Act 2, Scene 3

For the scene division here, see Textual Analysis, p. 249 below. The scene begins at the castle's gate, moves to some public, probably exterior, space from which Macduff is led to the 'door' (42) of Duncan's apartments, but eventually it is necessary to move to the 'hall' (127), although the 'parley' (75) would most naturally be held at the gate or from the castle's battlements. The action here permits the actor playing Macbeth to wash the blood from his hands and to change costume. The Porter's speeches were omitted by Davenant, Garrick, Kemble and others. Capell praised the part (*Notes*, p. 13) as 'masterly in its way, and open to no objections but such as lie against all comic mixture with things serious', and Coleridge (p. 103) condemned it as non-Shakespearian. The Porter's part is now considered a fine stroke of realistic allegory and dramatic pacing (Harcourt). Bradley (p. 314) sees a similarity with the asp-bearing clown of *Ant.* 5.2. Lady Macbeth's part has often been cut from this scene; see p. 69 above, n. 4.

1–2 porter of hell-gate doorman at the entrance to hell (imagined as a castle). Wickham, 'Castle', discusses medieval and native elements, and Allen discusses classical elements in the Porter's character, speech, and function. See Supplementary Note, p. 241 below, and illustration 9, p. 50 above.

2 old frequent, too much.

3–13 In ancient comic fashion (compare Launcelot Gobbo, *MV* 2.2.1–32), the Porter speaks both parts in a series of imaginary dialogues with 'some of all professions' (15) as they arrive in hell (13–14), but stops when cold (14) and consciousness sober him. Bradley (p. 437 n. 2) noted that the pattern of the Porter's comic review of near-allegorical,

imaginary persons is virtually the same as Pompey's listing of prisoners he has met ('Master Rash', 'Master Caper', *et al.*) in *MM* 4.3.1–19.

3 i'th'name of Beelzebub 'We should surely expect him to say "in the name of my master" or possibly "in the name of Macbeth"; but, since Macbeth has just murdered Duncan, "in the name of Belzebub" or "in the devil's name" is just as appropriate' (Wickham, 'Castle', p. 42).

3 Beelzebub A popular devil-name, one of the few found in the Bible (Brooke).

4 Come in time This is a good time for you to arrive. NS's emendation is 'brilliant' (Muir), but unnecessary. Q1673's reading, which Staunton unwittingly accepted and Harcourt (p. 394) guessed, is almost as clever, making the farmer, a person whose livelihood depends upon the seasons (= 'time'), grammatically parallel with the equivocator (9–10) and the tailor (12), but the rhetorical pattern (addresses to new arrivals in hell) has not yet been established.

5 napkins handkerchiefs (to wipe the 'sweat' caused by hellfire and perhaps the result of the 'sweating tub', a supposed cure for venereal disease).

6 th'other devil The Porter cannot remember the name of another devil (Muir).

7 Faith By my faith (a mild oath).

7 scales pans (of a weighing device; here the 'scales' of justice).

8–9 for God's sake A common oath, but the phrase may refer specifically to Jesuit priests' equivocal oaths to preserve their lives from political reprisal while also maintaining their faith ('for God's sake'); see 26 n.

here's an English tailor come hither for stealing out of a French hose. Come in, tailor, here you may roast your goose. (*Knock*) Knock, knock. Never at quiet: what are you? But this place is too cold for hell. I'll devil-porter it no further: I had thought to have let in some of all professions that go the primrose way to th'everlasting bonfire. (*Knock*) Anon, anon. I pray you, remember the porter. [Opens door]

15

*Enter MACDUFF and LENNOX*

MACDUFF Was it so late, friend, ere you went to bed,  
That you do lie so late?

PORTRER Faith, sir, we were carousing till the second cock, and  
drink, sir, is a great provoker of three things.

20

MACDUFF What three things does drink especially provoke?

PORTRER Marry, sir, nose-painting, sleep, and urine. Lechery, sir, it  
provokes, and unprovokes: it provokes the desire, but it takes

17 SD.1] Brooke; not in F; Opens / Capell

11–12 **stealing out of a French hose** Possibly a joke about tailors' skimping on fabric in men's garments ('hose'), but fashions changed quickly, and 'French hose' were both loose and tight at various times in the early modern period, making theft difficult or easy to detect, as the case might be (Brooke), for analogous details of changing fashions in breeches, see Dekker (and Middleton), *The Roaring Girl* 2.2.71–82. The phrase may also be sexual innuendo: 'tail' (of 'tailor') = vagina; 'hose' = cod-piece = penis. Precisely what (the theft, the penis) was 'stealing out of' (escaping, becoming visible) is equivocal. Blackfriars suggests a pun, stealing/'staling' (= urinating), which would anticipate the Porter's other major interest.

12 **roast your goose heat your iron** (in the flames of hell). 'Goose' was a tailor's long-handled iron and also a slang word for 'prostitute', a source of venereal disease, the 'French pox' for which a sufferer roasted literally (see 5.n.) and spiritually (in hell). See also 11–12 n. above.

15–16 **primrose . . . bonfire** Shakespeare appears to have invented the phrase 'primrose path' as a contrast between the easy and attractive pleasures of sin and the consequences of sin, 'th'everlasting bonfire' of hell. Compare 'the primrose path of dalliance' (*Ham.* 1.3.50) and 'the flow'ry way that leads to the broad gate and the great fire' (*AWW* 4.5.54–5). Compare 'roast your goose' (12 and n.).

15 **primrose 'abounding in primroses'** (*OED* Primrose sb (a) 7), a pale-yellow wild and cultivated flower, 'first-born child of Ver, / Merry spring-time's harbinger' (*TNK* 1.1.7–8).

16 **bonfire** Etymologically, the word derives from 'bone-fire', a pyre in which human or animal bones were consumed.

17 **remember the porter give me a tip** (for opening the gate).

17 SD.1 The Porter here performs some action fulfilling his function as gate-keeper.

20–1 The Porter's lines are apparently prose, but like other prose passages in the play they have an iambic rhythm.

20 **carousing** celebrating, revelling, drinking.

20 **second cock** second crowing of a rooster (i.e. a measurement of time before watches and clocks were common). Compare 'the second cock hath crowed, / . . . 'tis threed a'clock' (*Rom.* 4.4.3–4), a comment that does not necessarily mean that 'the second cock' = 'three o'clock', and 5.1.31.

21 **great provoker of three things** The Shakespearean clown's typical invitation, a half-riddle that will, he hopes, catch the interest of a wealthy interlocutor. *TN* 1.5.1–9, 3.1.16–25, and *AWW* 1.3.39–50 are other instances.

22 With this question, Macduff accepts his rôle as straight man.

23 **Marry** A mild oath (in full: 'By the Lady Mary', 'By the Virgin Mary').

23 **nose-painting** i.e. the reddening of the sot's nose. Lady Macbeth angrily dismissed the painted face and its effects (2.2.57–60).

24 **unprovokes** calms, depresses, allays (see *OED* Un<sup>2</sup> prefix and Provoke v 6); this line is *OED*'s only citation for Unprove v (Schäfer).

24–5 **provokes the desire . . . performance** stimulates sexual interest but inhibits sexual func-

away the performance. Therefore much drink may be said to be an equivocator with lechery: it makes him, and it mars him; it sets him on, and it takes him off; it persuades him and disheartens him, makes him stand to and not stand to. In conclusion, equivocates him in a sleep, and giving him the lie, leaves him.

25

MACDUFF I believe drink gave thee the lie last night.

PORTRER That it did, sir, i'the very throat on me, but I requited him for his lie, and, I think, being too strong for him, though he took up my legs sometime, yet I made a shift to cast him.

30

*Enter MACBETH*

MACDUFF Is thy master stirring?

35

Our knocking has awaked him: here he comes.

[*Exit Porter*]

34 SD] F; after 35, Collier    36 SD *Exit Porter*] Oxford; not in F

tioning. For contemporary beliefs about witches and their power to inhibit a male's sexual performance, see Dolan, p. 216. Provoking (or tempting) and unprovoking (or warning) also describe the sisters' words to Macbeth and Banquo in 1.3 since those words provoke Macbeth to regicide but also seem to promise that he will become king 'without . . . stir' (1.3.143); those words promise much to Banquo, who is not 'provoked' to regicide.

26 equivocator Someone who uses ambiguous words; a prevaricator. *OED*'s first citation is from a text composed in 1599, Edwin Sandys's *A Relation of the State of Religion* (first printed 1605 and later reprinted as *Europae Speculum*), where the word is applied to Jesuits and their doctrine of mental reservation. That doctrine permitted one to express virtual falsehoods in a verbally true form to satisfy the speaker's conscience (Sandys, sig. k2v). See p. 5 above. Scot (xiii, 15) uses 'equivocation' to describe banal confidence games, perhaps through analogy with rhetorical 'equivoque', the pun, as in 'strange equivocation' (Webster, *White Devil* 4.2.34).

26–30 it makes . . . leaves him These lines mingle bawdy (developing 23–5) with other meanings.

26 makes . . . mars A proverbial expression (Dent M48).

27 sets . . . on . . . takes . . . off advances . . . withdraws. Besides the bawdy description of a failed erection, the verbs could describe urging dogs to attack and retreat (compare 5.7.2 and n.).

28 stand to set to work (with a pun on the erect penis).

29 equivocates him in a sleep fulfils his lechery only in a dream (Hunter).

29 giving him the lie '(1) deceives him (because he cannot perform sexually as he promised); (2) floors him (as in wrestling); (3) makes him urinate (lie = lye)' (Hunter); (4) makes him lose his erection; (5) accuses him of lying (as Lady Macbeth did Macbeth, 1.7.47–51).

31–3 I believe . . . his lie Macduff, the comic feed here, reignites the multiple jokes of 29 when he asserts that 'drink gave thee the lie last night' (31), but the Porter's reply, 'it did . . . i'the very throat on [= of] me' and 'I requited him for his lie' (32, 33), stresses the single meaning of deliberate deception, the meaning most pertinent to what the Macbeths have done and are about to do. The proverbial 'To lie in one's teeth' (Dent T268) meant 'deep, deliberate lying' (Folger).

34 took up my legs made me unable to stand (because drunk); 'dropped' me (as a wrestler does). Compare 29 n.

34 shift stratagem, ruse (*OED Shift sb 4*).

34 cast throw to the ground; vomit (NS subst.).

34 SD Editors have moved Macbeth's entrance to follow Macduff's question, but see Textual Analysis, pp. 246–7 below.

36 SD Oxford added this SD, remarking 'He might leave later', but the Porter and his humour work best by contrast rather than coincidence.

LENNOX Good morrow, noble sir.

MACBETH Good morrow, both.

MACDUFF Is the king stirring, worthy thane?

MACBETH Not yet.

MACDUFF He did command me to call timely on him;  
I have almost slipped the hour.

MACBETH I'll bring you to him.

MACDUFF I know this is a joyful trouble to you, but yet 'tis one.

MACBETH The labour we delight in physics pain. This is the door.

MACDUFF I'll make so bold to call, for 'tis my limited service. *Exit*

LENNOX Goes the king hence today?

MACBETH He does – he did appoint so.

LENNOX The night has been unruly: where we lay,

Our chimneys were blown down, and, as they say,

Lamentings heard i'th'air, strange screams of death

And prophesying with accents terrible

Of dire combustion and confused events,

43 SD] F (*Exit Macduff.*)

**38 stirring** The repetition of 35 sounds awkward unless (or until) it activates the metaphoric identity of sleep (from which Macbeth is supposedly awakened) and death (from which Duncan will never stir). Compare 70.

**38 Not yet** This phrase ‘implies that he [Duncan] will [stir] by and by, and is a kind of guard against any suspicion’ (Whately, p. 34). Macbeth might have answered ‘No’, and ‘Not yet’ also means ‘No longer’; see p. 48 above.

**39 timely early.** For the dramatic use of Macduff here, see Textual Analysis, pp. 260–1 below.

**40 slipped** failed in keeping (the appointed time). See *OED* Slip v<sup>1</sup> 20c, quoting only this line and another from 1707.

**41–3** Unlike F, editors often arrange these exchanges as verse; like other episodes involving short exchanges and action, this one contains stretches of iambic rhythms (e.g. 42), but even a loose iambic pentameter does not extend through the passage.

**41 joyful trouble** The oxymoron recalls 1.6.11–12.

**42 The labour . . . pain** Effort we enjoy alleviates suffering. The same idea appears in *Cym.* 3.2.34, *Temp.* 3.1.1–2, and ‘What we do willingly is easy’ (Dent D407).

**43 limited appointed** (Muir).

**44 Goes . . . hence** See 1.5.57n.

**45 He does . . . appoint so** For the same equivocation, see ‘as he purposes’ (1.5.58).

**45 appoint order; purpose.**

**48–9 Lamentings . . . screams . . . accents** These sounds are not articulate speech, but inchoate, ominous sounds (like the ‘obscure bird’s’ clamour) that people interpret (‘they say’) as ‘prophesying’ (47, 49), just as Macbeth (mis)interpreted the sisters’ words in 1.3.

**48 screams shrill, piercing cries.** This line is the earliest citation for this meaning under *OED* Scream sb a (the next citation is from 1708), so the earliest audiences may have understood the sounds more specifically as the ‘cries of certain birds and beasts’ (*OED* Scream sb b, where the earliest citation is from 1513). See Textual Analysis, p. 248 below.

**49 prophesying** uttering strange things; announcing solemnly (White subst., citing ‘And he saide unto me, Prophecie thou upon these bones, & speake unto them: Ye drye bones, heare the worde of the Lorde’ (Ezek. 37.4)). The word only equivalently means ‘foretelling’ since the ‘combustions’ and ‘events’ are already ‘hatched’.

**50 dire combustion** dreadful commotion; terrifying disorder.

**50 events outcomes, consequences** (*OED* Event 3a). Certain causes are ‘New hatched’ (51) and will mature into ‘events’ in on-rushing ‘time’. The metaphor of hatching (a bird’s birth) anticipates 51–2, but the birth of events-in-time recalls Macbeth’s soliloquy (1.7.4–5).

New hatched to th'woeful time. The obscure bird  
Clamoured the livelong night. Some say, the earth  
Was feverous and did shake.

MACBETH

'Twas a rough night.

LENNOX My young remembrance cannot parallel  
A fellow to it.

55

*Enter MACDUFF*

MACDUFF O horror, horror, horror,  
Tongue nor heart cannot conceive, nor name thee.

MACBETH and LENNOX What's the matter?

MACDUFF Confusion now hath made his masterpiece:  
Most sacrilegious murder hath broke ope  
The Lord's anointed temple and stole thence  
The life o'th'building.

MACBETH What is't you say, the life?

LENNOX Mean you his majesty?

MACDUFF Approach the chamber and destroy your sight  
With a new Gorgon. Do not bid me speak:  
See and then speak yourselves.

60

65

*Exeunt Macbeth and Lennox*  
Awake, awake!

Ring the alarum bell! Murder and treason!

51 time.] F; time: *Theobald*    67 SD *Exeunt . . . Lennox*] *Staunton* (subst.); after awake! F

51 obscure bird The owl (which is 'obscure' because rarely seen and usually heard only at night).  
52 livelong very long.

53 feverous feverish, shaking with fever (a personification). The earth was not 'sure and firm-set' (2.1.56).

53 rough stormy. Macbeth is laconic.

57 The tongue names and the heart conceives, but the rhetorical figure (antimetabole) reorders the grammar: tongue—heart—conceives—names.

59 masterpiece greatest achievement (earliest citation in *OED* Masterpiece 1b).

60 sacrilegious violating sacred things (*Lexicon*); profaning. Sacrilege is specifically the crime of stealing from the church (see 61–2).

60 ope open. The archaic form is needed for the metre.

61 Lord's anointed temple house of worship; Duncan's cranium ('temple') or body (see 'building' (62 and n.)). The Christian New Testament treats all believers as the 'temple' (sanctuary, church, synagogue) of God (1 Cor. 3.16), and biblical kings,

like English ones, were 'anointed' at their coronations; see e.g. David to Saul: 'I had compassion on thee, and sayd: I will not lay myne handes on my maister, for he is the Lordes annoynted' (1 Sam. 24.10). Compare Banquo's proleptic remark on the 'temple-haunting martlet' (1.6.4).

62–4 Macbeth's line (63) might be linked metrically with the one before (Cam.), or Lennox and Macbeth might speak simultaneously (Muir).

62 life o'th'building 'The ark of the covenant in the Holy of Holies can be aptly described as "the life o'th'building"' (Shaheen, p. 164).

62 building body (compare: 'the bloody house of life' (*John* 4.2.210) and 'this mortal house I'll ruin' (*Ant.* 5.2.51)); house of worship (= 'temple' (61)).

66 Gorgon Mythical female being with snakes for hair and the power to turn whoever looked upon her to stone. For 'Duncan's androgyny', perhaps evoked here, see Adelman, pp. 131–3.

68 Ring the alarum bell This bell echoes the bell (or 'knell') summoning Macbeth and Duncan to heaven or to hell (2.1.63–4).

Banquo and Donaldbain! Malcolm, awake,  
 Shake off this downy sleep, death's counterfeit,  
 And look on death itself. Up, up, and see  
 The great doom's image. Malcolm, Banquo,  
 As from your graves rise up and walk like sprites  
 To countenance this horror.

70

*Bell rings. Enter LADY [MACBETH]*

LADY MACBETH

What's the business

That such a hideous trumpet calls to parley  
 The sleepers of the house? Speak, speak.

75

MACDUFF

'Tis not for you to hear what I can speak.  
 The repetition in a woman's ear  
 Would murder as it fell. —

O gentle lady,

*Enter BANQUO*

O Banquo, Banquo,

73 sprites] F (Sprights) 74 horror.] This edn (*Theobald subst.*); horror. Ring the Bell. F. See *Supplementary Note*, p. 241 below 74 business] F (Business?) 79 fell. —] *Theobald*; fell. F

70 downy soft (a transferred adjective). The best pillows were stuffed with 'down', the fine under-plumage of a bird.

70 sleep, death's counterfeit The similarity of sleep to death was commonplace. See Cicero, *De Senectute* 8o: 'Nihil morti tam simile quam somnus' (Nothing is more like death than sleep), cited by Grey (ii, 145) in reference to 2.2.41; 'O sleep, thou ape of death' (*Cym.* 2.2.31); Samuel Daniel's superb poem beginning, 'Care-charmer sleepe, sonne of the Sable night, / Brother to death, in silent darknes borne' (*Sonnet 45 in Delia* (1592), sig. G3r); 'Sleep is the image of death' (Dent 5527).

72 great doom's image simulacrum ('image') of the Last ('great') Judgement ('doom'). See next note. Duncan's death reminds Macduff of the Christian version of the end of time and of the world; indeed, this moment seems metaphorically the end of a world, just as Kent ('Is this the promised end?') and Edgar ('Or image of that horror?') wonder at Lear's lamentation over Cordelia (*Lear* 5.3.264–5). See p. 20 above.

73 from your graves rise up As the dead will do at the Christian Last Judgement: 'I knowe that he shall ryse agayne in the resurrection at the last day' (*John* 11.24).

73 sprites spirits, ghosts. F's archaic word is needed for the metre.

74 To . . . horror See *Supplementary Note*, p. 241 below.

74 countenance be in keeping with (*OED* Countenance v 6, for which this line is the only evidence). The word also means 'give tacit consent to'. 'By a time-serving assent to Macbeth's election, Banquo puts himself in a position of danger' (Mahood, p. 131).

75 trumpet Presumably, 'trumpet' is a figure of speech for 'alarum bell' (68), but the word jarringly recalls 1.7.18–19 and probably recalls St Paul's description of the time when 'sleepers' (76), the dead (see 70), will 'rise up' from their 'graves' (73) at the Last Judgement (see 72 and n.): 'Beholde, I shewe you a mistere. We shall not all slepe: but we shall all be chaunged. In a moment, in the twynklyng of an eye, at the last trumpe. For the trumpe shall blowe, and the dead shall ryse incorruptible, and we shalbe chaunged' (1 Cor. 15.51–2).

75 parley conference under truce. This military term suggests that some of 'The sleepers of the house' (76) are or will be at war, with themselves and/or with those (Macduff, Lennox) who have entered from outside the castle.

76–9 Macduff's anxiety is repeated by the Messenger who warns Lady Macduff (4.2.67–8).

79 fell was spoken; issued (from the speaker's mouth). See *OED* Fall v 6.

Our royal master's murdered.

LADY MACBETH

Woe, alas.

80

What, in our house?

BANQUO

Too cruel, anywhere.

Dear Duff, I prithee contradict thyself  
And say it is not so.

*Enter MACBETH and LENNOX*

MACBETH Had I but died an hour before this chance,  
I had lived a blessed time, for from this instant,  
There's nothing serious in mortality.  
All is but toys; renown and grace is dead,  
The wine of life is drawn, and the mere lees  
Is left this vault to brag of.

85

*Enter MALCOLM and DONALDBAIN*

DONALDBAIN What is amiss?

MACBETH You are, and do not know't.  
The spring, the head, the fountain of your blood  
Is stopped, the very source of it is stopped.

90

MACDUFF Your royal father's murdered.

MALCOLM O, by whom?

LENNOX Those of his chamber, as it seemed, had done't.  
Their hands and faces were all badged with blood,  
So were their daggers which, unwiped, we found

95

83 sd] *Davenant; Enter Macbeth, Lenox, and Rosse* F 90 SH, 114 SH DONALDBAIN] F (*Donal.*)

83 sd For the change in F's sd, see Supplementary Note, pp. 241–2 below.

84–9 A speech 'so much in the language of his soliloquies' (Brooke) that it creates numerous theatrical possibilities: it may be spoken aside, 'covered' in the audience's imagination by simultaneous unheard speeches (compare the situations at 1.3.126–41 and 1.4.47–58); it may be spoken publicly and without deceit; it may be spoken to deceive the hearers on stage, but understood with varying degrees of irony by the audience.

84 chance occurrence, mishap (*OED* Chance sb 2). 'Chance' usually connotes an accidental, unforeseen event (see 4.3.136 and n.); Macbeth evades his own responsibility for Duncan's death. Compare 'chanced' (1.3.152).

86 mortality life, human existence.

87 toys trifles, rubbish (*OED* Toy sb 5, quoting this line). Compare 'Or sells eternity to get a toy' (*The Rape of Lucrece* 214).

88 drawn drained (from a cask).

88 lees dregs.

89 vault earth (with the sky as 'roof'); cellar (where a wine cask would be stored).

89 brag boast.

91 spring Thomas More provides the traditional metaphorical context: 'From the monarch, as from a never-failing spring, flows a stream of all that is good or evil over the whole nation' (*Utopia*, p. 57).

91 head source (of a stream or river); senior male family member.

91 blood family, kindred.

92 stopped blocked, stopped up. Compare Lady Macbeth's prayer (1.5.41–5).

95 badged marked, identified. Liveried servants wore heraldic emblems (badges): these retainers have a new badge, blood, to mark them as Duncan's men. See the clothing images – 'laced', 'steeped', 'breeched' – of 105–9.

Upon their pillows. They stared and were distracted;  
No man's life was to be trusted with them.

MACBETH O, yet I do repent me of my fury  
That I did kill them.

MACDUFF Wherefore did you so?

MACBETH Who can be wise, amazed, temp'rate, and furious,  
Loyal and neutral, in a moment? No man.

Th'expedition of my violent love  
Outran the pauser, reason. Here lay Duncan,

His silver skin laced with his golden blood

And his gashed stabs looked like a breach in nature,  
For ruin's wasteful entrance. There the murderers,  
Steeped in the colours of their trade; their daggers  
Unmannerly breeched with gore. Who could refrain,  
That had a heart to love and in that heart  
Courage to make's love known?

LADY MACBETH Help me hence, ho.

100 them.] F; them – *Rowe*

104 Outran] F (Out-run)

109 Unmannerly] F (Vnmannerly); Unmanly *Travers*

97 distracted mentally confused.

99–100 A delayed and shocking announcement, since Macbeth has been on stage for almost twenty lines. Rowe's punctuation indicates that Macduff interrupts Macbeth's speech.

100 Wherefore Why.

101 temp'rate temperate, restrained. This contraction and others (e.g. 'amaz'd') are needed for the metre.

102 Loyal and neutral Maintaining allegiance (to Duncan) and disinterested (toward the grooms' apparent guilt).

102 No man No one. The language recalls 1.7.46–7.

103 expedition haste, speed. Compare 'the speed of his rage' (*Lear* 1.2.167).

103 violent love A self-contradictory phrase; compare 42 n., 1.2.10 n., 1.6.11–13.

104 Outran Contrary to many editors' claims, F's 'Out-run' is an archaic past tense; see *OED* Run v. A.14 for the form.

104 pauser one who hesitates (here, for rational reflection). This line is *OED*'s only citation for the word (Schäfer).

105 silver white. See next note.

105 golden red (see 2.2.59 n.). Imagery of rich metals (silver and gold) transforms Duncan's body into a decorated 'temple' (61), or a garment 'laced' with golden threads and streams of blood.

106–7 breach . . . entrance The underlying image is of an opening or break ('breach') in a shore or dike, letting in ruinous (sea)water, or of attacking troops breaking into a castle or walled city: some injurious force overcomes cultivation's or civilisation's boundaries. This complex image represents Duncan's body as a devastated landscape, as Macbeth's violated castle, and as the violated bonds of loyalty and hospitality. Compare Banquo's wounds (3.4.27–8).

106 breach opening, gap. The word's sound anticipates 'breeched' (109).

108 Steeped Dyed. See 'Thence comes it that my name receives a brand, / And almost thence my nature is subdued / To what it works in, like the dyer's hand' (*Sonnet* 111.5–7).

108 colours of their trade identifying marks of their occupation.

109 Unmannerly breeched Indecently clothed (NS). The image makes the daggers humans wearing impolite or antisocial breeches (trousers) of blood, but also puns on 'unmanly': to dress these daggers in Duncan's blood is to act inhumanly, to act as a man 'Who . . . is none' (1.7.47). Compare 'breach in nature' (106). A single suspended mark of abbreviation differentiated 'Unmannerly' and 'Unmanly' in contemporary handwriting, and they are easily confused.

111 make's make his.

MACDUFF Look to the lady.

[*Exit Lady Macbeth, helped*]

MALCOLM [To Donaldbain] Why do we hold our tongues, that  
most may claim

This argument for ours?

DONALDBAIN [To Malcolm] What should be spoken here,  
Where our fate hid in an auger hole may rush

And seize us? Let's away. Our tears are not yet brewed.

MALCOLM [To Donaldbain] Nor our strong sorrow upon the foot  
of motion.

BANQUO Look to the lady,

And when we have our naked frailties hid  
That suffer in exposure, let us meet  
And question this most bloody piece of work  
To know it further. Fears and scruples shake us:  
In the great hand of God I stand and thence  
Against the undivulged pretence I fight  
Of treasonous malice.

MACDUFF

And so do I.

ALL

So all.

MACBETH Let's briefly put on manly readiness

112 SD *Exit . . . helped*] Brooke (after 118); not in F; *Lady Macbeth is carried out / Rowe (after 118)* 113 SD, 114 SD, 117 SD] Brooke (subst.); not in F

112 Traditionally, Lady Macbeth faints here, and critics have long debated (see Bradley, Note 10, pp. 394–5) whether her collapse is real or feigned (Rowe's SD is *Seeming to faint*). A feigned faint would be hard to convey, though Adelaide Ristori apparently did so 'after what must have been an extraordinary piece of silent acting' (Sprague, p. 247), and obvious deceit risks inappropriate laughter. Citing contemporary exorcism-lore, Hughes (p. 110) suggests that Lady Macbeth is here dispossessed of the demonic powers she invoked in 1.5. Whatever her action, she fails to perform the part she promised (1.7.78–9).

112 SD Should Lady Macbeth exit here or, more traditionally, at 118? I suppose that the Malcolm–Donaldbain conversation, spoken aside, 'covers' the action of helping Lady Macbeth off-stage (see preceding note and Textual Analysis, p. 259 below, n. 4).

113–17 Why do we . . . foot of motion These lines probably include a revision of an earlier version of this scene; see Textual Analysis, pp. 259–61 below.

113–14 Why do we remain silent when we may most claim this subject (= 'argument' = Duncan's death) as our own. The question draws attention both to the brothers' silence and to the grandilo-

quence of what is being said.

115 hid in an auger hole i.e. concealed in a (figurative) space no larger than a hole or 'auger's bore' (*Cor. 4.6.87*) made by a drill ('auger'). Without knowing the source of danger, Donaldbain fears that he and his brother will attract the attention of their father's murderer. Scot (1, 4) notes the popular belief that witches 'can go in and out at auger holes'.

116 brewed brought to readiness. The metaphor anticipates the witches' cookery (4.1.4–38).

117 upon the foot of motion ready to move; ready to be revealed.

119 naked frailties physical weaknesses (e.g. their near-undress); exposed psychological weaknesses. See 126 and n.

121 question debate; investigate.

122 scruples doubts.

123 hand of God power of God (Upton, pp. 221–2, citing 'Let us deliver / Our puissance into the hand of God' (*H5 2.2.189–90*)).

124 undivulged pretence unrevealed purpose (or intention); unexpressed claim (to the crown). The latter meaning would be appropriate to Malcolm, Prince of Cumberland (1.4.38–9) and declared heir to the Scottish throne.

126 briefly quickly.

126 put on manly readiness get into our usual

And meet i'th' hall together.

ALL

Well contented.

*Exeunt [all but Malcolm and Donaldbain]*

MALCOLM What will you do? Let's not consort with them.

To show an unfelt sorrow is an office

Which the false man does easy. I'll to England.

DONALDBAIN To Ireland, I. Our separated fortune

Shall keep us both the safer. Where we are,

There's daggers in men's smiles; the nea'er in blood,

The nearer bloody.

MALCOLM This murderous shaft that's shot

Hath not yet lighted, and our safest way

Is to avoid the aim. Therefore to horse,

And let us not be dainty of leave-taking,

But shift away. There's warrant in that theft

Which steals itself when there's no mercy left.

130

135

*Exeunt*

## 2.4 Enter ROSS, with an OLD MAN

OLD MAN Threescore and ten I can remember well;

127 SD] *Hanmer (subst.); Exeunt. F* 133–4 nea'er . . . nearer] F (neere . . . neerer) Act 2, Scene 4 2.4] F (*Scena Quartæ*), Scene II. *Rome*

or customary garments. Macbeth draws attention to his pretended unpreparedness (see 2.2.73–4). The phrase suggests that the observers have been unmanned, weakened, by Duncan's death and recalls the chamberlains' daggers 'Unmannerly breeched with gore' (109).

128 Malcolm and Donaldbain suspect everyone' (Foakes).

128 consort keep company, associate. The verb is a late-sixteenth-century development from the noun, one of whose prominent meanings was 'spouse'; hence there may be an underlying link to marriage, procreation, and the sons, not his, who will succeed Macbeth.

129–30 The sentiment fits Macbeth (see 101–11) and, perhaps, Duncan's sons themselves.

130 easy easily. See Abbott 467, arguing that metre explains the substitution.

133–4 The more closely one is related to Duncan, the more likely one is to be killed. Compare 90–2.

134–5 This . . . lighted The murderous design that killed Duncan is not yet finished.

135 lighted landed.

137 dainty particular, scrupulous about (OED Dainty a 5b).

138–9 A weak couplet, sapped further by the quibble on 'steals'; NS compares the same wordplay on 'theft'/'steal' at *AWW* 2.1.33–4.

138 shift get away unobserved, evade (*OED Shift* v 22a). Compare 34 n.

138 warrant sanction, authorisation (*OED Warrant* sb<sup>1</sup> 7a). The word is a further pun: a warrant was also a legal document authorising the arrest of a wrong-doer (e.g. Malcolm and Donaldbain as 'thieves' of themselves); see *OED Warrant* sb<sup>1</sup> 10.

139 steals A pun: takes unlawfully; sneaks.

## Act 2, Scene 4

This scene occurs some time after 2.3 and is choric commentary (like the gardeners' scene, *R* 2.3.4) as well as exposition (Duncan to be buried, Macbeth to be crowned); the Old Man – not further identified – has a powerful allegorical and at the same time commonplace effect, like his namesake in Marlowe's *Faustus* 5.1, lines 1707–38. The scene's location is uncertain; it may be outside a building, or within a public area of Macbeth's castle where Macduff might pass as he departs for Fife (36). Many productions cut this scene; when they do not, it is often combined with a pantomime of Duncan's catafalque or other action indicating burial ceremonies.

1 Threescore and ten Seventy (three times a 'score', twenty, plus ten), the biblical limit of human life (Ps. 90.10).

Within the volume of which time, I have seen  
 Hours dreadful and things strange, but this sore night  
 Hath trifled former knowings.

ROSS

Thou seest the heavens, as troubled with man's act,  
 Threatens his bloody stage. By th' clock 'tis day  
 And yet dark night strangles the travelling lamp.  
 Is't night's predominance, or the day's shame,  
 That darkness does the face of earth entomb  
 When living light should kiss it?

OLD MAN

Even like the deed that's done. On Tuesday last,  
 A falcon tow'ring in her pride of place  
 Was by a mousing owl hawked at and killed.

ROSS And Duncan's horses, a thing most strange and certain,  
 Beauteous and swift, the minions of their race,  
 Turned wild in nature, broke their stalls, flung out,  
 Contending 'gainst obedience as they would  
 Make war with mankind.

OLD MAN

'Tis said, they eat each other.

4 trifled] F; stifled Q1673    7 travelling] F (trauailing)    12 tow'ring] F (towring)

3 sore severe, harsh (*OED* Sore <sup>a<sup>1</sup></sup> 5b).

4 trifled made trivial (the sole example at *OED* Trifle v<sup>1</sup> 6).

4 father Honorific title for an elderly man.

5–10 Ross speaks a cautious allegory, testing the Old Man's political sympathies; the imagery of light and dark (good and evil, justice and murder) recalls 1.4.50–3, 1.5.48–52, and 2.1.49–51, and anticipates images to come.

5 act deed; principal division of a play. Compare 'stage' (6).

6 Threatens Singular verb in -s with plural subject (Abbott 333).

7 travelling lamp journeying light (a periphrasis for 'sun'). See pp. 38–9 above.

8 predominance superior influence (probably with an astrological connotation). Compare 'we make guilty of our disasters the . . . stars, as if we were . . . knaves, thieves, and treachers [traitors] by spherical predominance' (*Lear* 1.2.120–4); *OED* quotes 'starres predominance' from 1615.

8 shame i.e. embarrassment at 'man's act' (5), the murder of Duncan.

10–20 For Holinshed's version of these 'unnatural' events, see p. 14 above.

11 deed that's done Duncan's murder. Duncan's name is echoed in 'done'.

Ha, good father,

5

Thou seest the heavens, as troubled with man's act,  
 Threatens his bloody stage. By th' clock 'tis day  
 And yet dark night strangles the travelling lamp.  
 Is't night's predominance, or the day's shame,  
 That darkness does the face of earth entomb  
 When living light should kiss it?

'Tis unnatural,

10

Even like the deed that's done. On Tuesday last,  
 A falcon tow'ring in her pride of place  
 Was by a mousing owl hawked at and killed.

ROSS And Duncan's horses, a thing most strange and certain,  
 Beauteous and swift, the minions of their race,  
 Turned wild in nature, broke their stalls, flung out,  
 Contending 'gainst obedience as they would  
 Make war with mankind.

'Tis said, they eat each other.

12 tow'ring soaring. Syncopation preserves the metre.

12 pride of place 'proud place, place in which he [the falcon] visibly prides himself' (Capell, *Notes*, p. 14).

12 place height (or 'pitch') from which the falcon attacks; perhaps 'the air' (Capell, *Notes*, p. 14).

13 mousing owl owl that preys on mice (hence it ordinarily swoops to the earth rather than fighting another bird in the air). This line is the earliest citation at *OED* Mousing *pp<sup>1</sup> a* (Schäfer).

13 hawked at attacked on the wing (earliest citation for *OED* Hawk v<sup>1</sup> 3).

15 minions darlings, most prized specimens. See 1.2.19n.

15–18 Beauteous . . . mankind The underlying assumption here is that horses are naturally subordinate to 'mankind', and the possibility that horses might abandon 'obedience', their training by humans, images a breakdown in nature's order. This collapse extends even to the horses' own natural order: they attack and eat each other. Compare 28–9 n. and the parallel between an unruly horse and disordered human passions at *TNK* 5.4.65–91. For horse and owl (13), see p. 14 above.

17 as if (Abbott 107; see 1.4.11 n.).

18 eat ate. F's 'eat' is pronounced 'et'.

ROSS They did so, to th'amazement of mine eyes  
That looked upon't.

*Enter MACDUFF*

20

Here comes the good Macduff.  
How goes the world, sir, now?

MACDUFF Why, see you not?  
ROSS Is't known who did this more than bloody deed?  
MACDUFF Those that Macbeth hath slain.

ROSS Alas the day,  
What good could they pretend?

MACDUFF They were suborned.  
Malcolm and Donaldbain, the king's two sons,  
Are stol'n away and fled, which puts upon them  
Suspicion of the deed.

ROSS 'Gainst nature still.  
Thriftless ambition that will ravin up  
Thine own life's means. Then 'tis most like  
The sovereignty will fall upon Macbeth.

MACDUFF He is already named and gone to Scone  
To be invested.

21 Why,] Pope; Why F    28 ravin] F (rauen)    29 life's] F (liues)

19–20 They . . . upon't Like a traveller confirming strange tales, Ross assures the Old Man he has personally witnessed the bizarre episodes of 14–18.

20 SD For the placing of this SD, see Textual Analysis, pp. 246–7 below. The actor was probably costumed in a way that indicated his intention to travel (see 3.1.0 SDn.).

20 good Macduff The first time Macduff receives a positive moral designation.

21 How goes the world What is the state of affairs. A proverbial phrase (Dent w884.1).

21 Why . . . not? Pope's persuasive repunctuation makes Macduff's question no reply – a cautious man tests his questioner (see 5–10 n.) – but F's line represents an angry speaker unable to control his dangerous honesty.

24 pretend allege as a reason (*OED* Pretend v 6). See 2.3.124 n.

24 suborned bribed; instigated to betray a trust.

26 puts upon See 1.7.70 n.

27 'Gainst nature still i.e. like the self-devouring horses and other unnatural events he has just listed.

28–9 Thriftless . . . means Ambition, the de-

sire to acquire, is paradoxically spendthrift and self-consuming when it leads sons to kill their father, source of their own lives (a subtle analogy with the self-devouring horses that betray mankind's gift of training – similar to a father's bringing-up of his sons – and revert to savagery). The education of sons and the training of horses are made parallel at *AYLI* 1.1.5–16.

28 Thriftless Prodigal.

28 ravin up consume, eat greedily.

29 means resources.

29–30 Then . . . Macbeth The common assumption is that Macbeth will be king if Duncan's sons are not available.

29 like likely.

31 named chosen.

31 Scone Ancient, now ruinous, city north of Perth and traditional site of Scottish coronations, though James VI was crowned at Stirling. See the map, p. 94 above, and 5.9.42, where Malcolm repeats Macbeth's action.

32 invested installed ceremonially (as king); clothed with royal insignia (see *OED* Invest v 4–5). See 1.4.40 and n., and 3.1, headnote.

ROSS Where is Duncan's body?

MACDUFF Carried to Colmkill,  
The sacred storehouse of his predecessors  
And guardian of their bones.

ROSS Will you to Scone? 35

MACDUFF No, cousin, I'll to Fife.

ROSS Well, I will thither.

MACDUFF Well may you see things well done there. Adieu,  
Lest our old robes sit easier than our new.

ROSS Farewell, father.

OLD MAN God's benison go with you, and with those  
That would make good of bad, and friends of foes. 40

*Exeunt*

### 3.1 Enter BANQUO [dressed for riding]

BANQUO Thou hast it now, King, Cawdor, Glamis, all,  
As the weird women promised, and I fear  
Thou play'dst most foully for't; yet it was said

33 Colmkill] F (*Colmekill*) 37 Well] F; Well, *Theobald* 41 SD] F (*Exeunt omnes*) Act 3, Scene 1 3.1] F (*Actus Tertius. Scena Prima.*) 0 SD dressed for riding] This edn; not in F 2 weird] *Theobald*; *weyard* F

33 Colmkill The island of Iona, one of the western Hebrides (Sugden). Here the ancient graves of many Scottish kings may still be seen. See the map, p. 94 above.

36 Fife Ancestral land of Macduff, Thane of Fife; see the map, p. 94 above, and 1.2.48n.

36 I will thither I will go there.

37 Well... well Ironical repetition of Ross's 'well' (Muir). Theobald's punctuation makes the line social commonplace rather than ominous foreboding.

37-8 Adieu... new Farewell (we must part), for fear that ('lest') the future ('new' robes of rank or office) will be less comfortable than the past ('our old robes'). These lines elaborate and recall 1.3.106-7 and 1.4.3-5; they anticipate 5.2.21-2. Compare the new King Henry V's remark: 'This new and gorgeous garment, majesty, / Sits not so easy on me as you think' (2H4 5.2.44-5).

40-1 Compare 'Make your enemy your friend' (Dent E140.1).

40 benison blessing.

This space allows a royal entry as well as the conspiratorial conversations of Macbeth and the murderers, who are ordered to some yet more private waiting-area (139). Many productions (e.g. Stratford, 1974) add a dumbshow of Macbeth's coronation here.

0 SD dressed for riding Macbeth later infers (19) Banquo's plans, apparently from his garb. Boots, spurs, or whips ('riding-rods') were common props indicating that a character had recently ridden or would soon ride a horse; see Dessen, p. 39. In many productions from Kemble's in the eighteenth century at least until Byam Shaw's (Stratford, 1955), Fleance also entered here, for various actorly and sentimental effects; see p. 70 above.

1-10 This ambiguous speech may mean that Banquo, seeing Macbeth's success and the fulfilment of the sisters' prophecies, passively colludes in Duncan's murder and now considers some criminal action. According to *Scotland*, p. 171a, Banquo was 'the chiefest' among Macbeth's 'trustie friends' who aided him in Duncan's murder; critics have found Banquo guilty here (see p. 7 above, n. 2).

2-3 fear... foully A punning antithesis between 'fair' and 'fouilly'; see 1.3.49-50n.

3 play'dst Compare 1.5.19n.

### Act 3, Scene 1

The setting is a formal chamber of Macbeth's castle, where Banquo awaits permission to leave.

It should not stand in thy posterity,  
 But that myself should be the root and father  
 Of many kings. If there come truth from them –  
 As upon thee, Macbeth, their speeches shine –  
 Why by the verities on thee made good,  
 May they not be my oracles as well  
 And set me up in hope? But hush, no more.

5

10

*Sennet sounded. Enter MACBETH as King, LADY [MACBETH as Queen], LENNOX, ROSS, Lords, and Attendants*

MACBETH Here's our chief guest.

LADY MACBETH If he had been forgotten,  
 It had been as a gap in our great feast  
 And all thing unbecoming.

MACBETH Tonight we hold a solemn supper, sir,  
 And I'll request your presence.

BANQUO Let your highness  
 Command upon me, to the which my duties  
 Are with a most indissoluble tie  
 Forever knit.

MACBETH Ride you this afternoon?

BANQUO Ay, my good lord.

MACBETH We should have else desired your good advice  
 Which still hath been both grave and prosperous

15

20

8 Why] F; Who *qr1673*      10 hope?] F4; hope. F      10 SD.1–2 LADY MACBETH as *Queen*, LENNOX] *Staunton; Lady Lenox F; Lady Macbeth, Lenox / Rowe*

4 stand in thy posterity continue, or remain, in those who descend from you.

5–6 father / Of many kings Banquo's descendants included King James, according to popular legend. See illustration 1, p. 3 above.

7 shine look favourably upon (*OED* Shine v 1d).

8 made good rendered fact (i.e. the sisters' prophecies fulfilled); see *OED* Make v<sup>1</sup> 48.

10 SD *Sennet* Distinctive set of musical notes played on trumpet or cornet and associated with a specific individual.

10 SD as *King* Macbeth's new status would have been conveyed through costume and perhaps props (crown and sceptre might be useful at 62–3) or a throne (for the actor to indicate at 49–50). A contemporary prop-list (Henslowe, pp. 319–21) includes a variety of royal paraphernalia.

13 all thing wholly, completely (*OED* All adv 2b); 'everything' (*OED* Allthing).

14 supper evening meal.

16 Command upon me i.e. I am at your dis-

posal. Compare 'thou that hast / Upon the winds command' (*Per. 3.I.2–3*). Banquo substitutes 'command' for 'request' (15); see next note.

17–18 Banquo emphasises his loyalty, perhaps to remind Macbeth of their shared knowledge (i.e. the speech is subtle blackmail), or to reassure Macbeth he has nothing to fear.

19 Ride you this afternoon? Macbeth makes a conventional assumption; see o SD.n. Following Macbeth's 'I'll request your presence' (15), this question, no matter how casually phrased, indicates his great interest in Banquo's thoughts and plans.

21–3 As at the beginning of Act 2, Macbeth seeks to talk with Banquo; couched as friendly respect, the attention signals Macbeth's interest in, perhaps suspicion of, the other man who met the sisters. 'We' (21) and 'we'll' (23) may be the royal plural or may = the new king and queen.

22 still always.

22 grave serious, important.

22 prosperous successful, fortunate (*Lexicon*).

In this day's council: but we'll take tomorrow.

Is't far you ride?

BANQUO As far, my lord, as will fill up the time

25

'Twixt this and supper. Go not my horse the better,  
I must become a borrower of the night  
For a dark hour, or twain.

MACBETH Fail not our feast.

BANQUO My lord, I will not.

30

MACBETH We hear our bloody cousins are bestowed  
In England and in Ireland, not confessing  
Their cruel parricide, filling their hearers  
With strange invention. But of that tomorrow,  
When therewithal we shall have cause of state  
Craving us jointly. Hie you to horse; adieu,  
Till you return at night. Goes Fleance with you?

35

BANQUO Ay, my good lord; our time does call upon's.

MACBETH I wish your horses swift and sure of foot,  
And so I do commend you to their backs.  
Farewell.

40

*Exit Banquo*

Let every man be master of his time  
Till seven at night; to make society  
The sweeter welcome, we will keep ourself  
Till supper-time alone. While then, God be with you.

45

*Exeunt [all but Macbeth and a Servant]*

23 take] F; talk *Malone* 43–4 night; . . . welcome,] *Theobald*; Night, . . . welcome: F 45 sd] *Cam. (subst.)*; *Exeunt Lords*. F

23 council Early audiences would probably understand 'Privy Council', the senior officers of state and aristocrats who advised the monarch and directed the day-to-day business of early Stuart government.

23 take tomorrow i.e. command your attendance tomorrow (and delay our business from today). Compare 'avail oneself of' (*OED* Take v 24). *Textual Companion* (p. 545) defends Malone's emendation, citing the reverse error ('talk' for 'take') in *Hamlet* Q2 and F and *H5* Q and F.

26 this i.e. this time, now.

26 Go . . . the better If my horse does not go better (i.e. 'fast enough').

28 twain two.

34 strange invention improbable or outlandish fiction, i.e. accounts of Duncan's death different from Macbeth's version.

35 therewithal with it (*Lexicon*).

35 cause of state political affair requiring a decision; see *OED* Cause sb 8c.

36 Craving us jointly Requiring us both together.

42 master of his time responsible for his own activities. See p. 23 above.

43–4 F is repunctuated here because 'it is solitude which gives a zest to society, not being master of one's time' (Clarendon, following *Theobald*).

44 The slightly unusual word-order emphasises the royal plural.

45 For production decisions here, see Appendix I, p. 266 below.

45 While Until (*OED* While *conj, prep* 3b). 'While then' is a Scotticism (Travers) and current in Yorkshire dialect (B. C. Gibbons, private communication).

Sirrah, a word with you: attend those men  
Our pleasure?

SERVANT They are, my lord, without the palace gate.

MACBETH Bring them before us.

*Exit Servant*

To be thus is nothing,

But to be safely thus. Our fears in Banquo

50

Stick deep, and in his royalty of nature

Reigns that which would be feared. 'Tis much he dares,

And to that dauntless temper of his mind,

He hath a wisdom that doth guide his valour

To act in safety. There is none but he,

55

Whose being I do fear; and under him

My genius is rebuked, as it is said

46 Sirrah Slighting form of address by social superior to inferior.

46 those men The casual reference suggests that both Macbeth and the servant are familiar with the 'men' and the secrecy needed in meeting them.

48 palace gate The specificity indicates the physical distance Macbeth wishes to keep between himself and his instruments.

49–50 To be . . . safely thus To be king is nothing unless to be safely one (Staunton). The repeated 'thus' urges the actor to some gesture (e.g. indicating the royal trappings, or the throne if there is one).

50–1 Our . . . deep A complex clause with an intransitive and a transitive meaning: 'fears' of Banquo's quality and prophesies future penetrate and adhere (= 'stick') in Macbeth, but as this speech and the remainder of the scene show, those fears will now, or soon, become active and 'stick' (= penetrate, remain fixed) in Banquo (i.e. the whole clause also means 'Our fears stick deep in Banquo'). See *OED* Stick v<sup>1</sup>, 4, and *OED* In prep 25.

51 royalty of nature royal nature. The phrase is both emphatic praise and an allusion to Banquo's royal progeny predicted by the sisters in 1.3.

52–5 'Tis . . . safety Macbeth, admiring Banquo's circumspect bravery, anticipates a *coup d'état* (see 1.10n.); the praise echoes 2.3.101–11, where Macbeth claims he could not combine wisdom and valour, 'reason' and 'violent love' (2.3.103–4).

52 dares Compare 1.7.46–7.

53 to in addition to.

53 dauntless fearless, intrepid (*OED*'s earliest

citation for the word is *3H6* 3.3.17).

53 temper temperament, mental constitution. Compare 'A noble temper dost thou show' (*John* 5.2.40).

54–5 He . . . safety Macbeth fears and envies Banquo's behaviour as an alternative to his own murderous response to the sisters' prediction: has Banquo awaited time's evolution as Macbeth thinks he himself should have? Compare 1.3.142–3.

56 being existence; psychological and physical attributes.

57–8 My . . . Caesar Macbeth compares himself to the Roman general and triumvir Mark Antony, who was defeated in the civil wars that ended the Roman republic and inaugurated the Roman empire, and compares Banquo to the historical Octavian (Shakespeare's Octavius), later called 'Caesar' (58) Augustus, the victor in those wars. Shakespeare devoted *JC* and *Ant.* to these events; in the latter play, a Soothsayer warns Antony: 'Thy daemon, that thy spirit which keeps thee, is / Noble, courageous, high unmatchable, / Where Caesar's [= Octavius's and = Banquo's in Macbeth's speech] is not; but near him, thy angel / Becomes a fear, as being o'erpower'd' (*Ant.* 2.3.20–3).

57 genius tutelary spirit. Classical belief held that every individual had a personal spirit (for good or ill), variously named or translated as 'genius', 'daemon', or 'angel' (see quotation from *Ant.* in 57–8 n.). This word reinvokes the Porter's speeches in 2.3; see Allen for the complex Greek and Roman meanings.

Mark Antony's was by Caesar. He chid the sisters  
 When first they put the name of king upon me  
 And bade them speak to him. Then prophet-like,  
 They hailed him father to a line of kings.  
 Upon my head they placed a fruitless crown  
 And put a barren sceptre in my gripe,  
 Thence to be wrenched with an unlineal hand,  
 No son of mine succeeding. If't be so,  
 For Banquo's issue have I filed my mind;  
 For them, the gracious Duncan have I murdered,  
 Put rancours in the vessel of my peace  
 Only for them, and mine eternal jewel  
 Given to the common enemy of man,  
 To make them kings, the seeds of Banquo kings.

60

65

70

58 Antony's] F (*Anthones*)    58 Caesar] F (*Caesar*); *Cesars* / Q1673    66 filed] F (fil'd); fill'd Q1673, F3-4    71 seeds] F  
 (Seedes); seed Pope

58 Caesar Caesar Augustus, first Roman emperor. Q1673's 'Cesars' (= Caesar's), repeated in Davenant, Hanmer, and Dyce<sup>2</sup>, corrects the grammar technically and more closely parallels a passage in *Ant.* (see 57–8 n.).

58 He chid See 1.3.50–9.

59 put . . . upon See 1.7.70n.

60–1 prophet-like, / They hailed See 1.3.46, 1.5.6, 1.5.53. 'Prophet-like' suggests a biblical allusion, but 'hail' appears only in the Christian New Testament, addressed four times to Jesus (by Judas and the mocking soldiers at Calvary), once to Mary at the Annunciation, and once (by Jesus) to the disciples; see Matt. 26.49, 27.20, Mark 15.18, John 19.3, Luke 1.28, and Matt. 28.9, respectively. For Shakespeare's association of 'hail' and 'all hail' with betrayal, see 1.3.46n.

62–5 Upon . . . succeeding Schanzer (pp. 224–5) notices that this prophecy is in *Scotland*, but not mentioned in 1.3, where it would have negated the mystery of the sisters' equivocation.

62–3 fruitless crown . . . barren sceptre Recalling the sisters' predictions (see 58), Macbeth laments that he has no children to inherit his crown (it is childless = 'fruitless' (62)) and his 'sceptre', the ceremonial rod of office and figuratively his penis (understood as the source of a 'son of mine' (65)), is 'barren' (63), without an heir. Seeking to rationalise the play's dialogue, critics have endlessly worried over whether the Macbeths have (or have had) children (compare 1.7.54–9 and p. 17 above, n. 1). What matters here is neither numbers nor family history but Macbeth's ambition and mental

anguish.

63 grieve grip, grasp.

64 unlineal not in a direct line of descent.

66 issue progeny, descendants.

66 filed tainted, polluted (*OED* File v<sup>2</sup> 3), defiled. Travers regards the word as a Scotticism.

68 rancours malignant hatreds, bitter ill-feelings (*OED* Rancour sb 1); 'acids or sours' (Capell, *Notes*, p. 15).

68 vessel of my peace Compare 1.7.11–12, where Macbeth anticipates drinking the 'poisoned chalice' of murdering Duncan, and 'I have drunk, and seen the spider' (*WT* 2.1.45). The language seems biblical, and editors have cited Ps. 11.6, Isa. 51.17, and Rom. 9.22–3, but none of those texts seems particularly relevant, though the last includes 'vessel of wrath' and 'vessel of peace' in a very different context. Geneva glosses 'cup of his wrath' (Isa. 51.17) as 'this punishment in the elect is by measure . . . but in the reprobate it is ye just vengeance of God to drive them to an insensibleness & madnes'.

68 vessel cup; perhaps 'communion chalice' (Brooke).

69 eternal jewel soul.

70 common enemy enemy to all, enemy of all (i.e. Satan). Compare 'defy the devil! Consider, he's an enemy to mankind' (*TN* 3.4.97–8).

71 seeds progeny, offspring. *OED* Seed sb does not include this meaning for the plural, which may be a common printing error, but compare 1.3.56, 4.1.58 and n.

Rather than so, come Fate into the list,  
And champion me to th'utterance. Who's there?

*Enter Servant and two MURDERERS*

[To Servant] Now go to the door and stay there till we call.

*Exit Servant*

Was it not yesterday we spoke together? 75

MURDERERS It was, so please your highness.

MACBETH Well then, now have you considered of my speeches?

Know, that it was he in the times past which held you so under fortune, which you thought had been our innocent self. This I made good to you in our last conference; passed in probation with you how you were borne in hand, how crossed; the instruments, who wrought with them, and all things else that might to half a soul and to a notion crazed say, 'Thus did Banquo.'

80

FIRST MURDERER You made it known to us.

MACBETH I did so, and went further, which is now our point of second meeting. Do you find your patience so predominant in

85

<sup>73</sup> SD *Servant*] F (*Seruant*)    <sup>73</sup> SD *MURDERERS*] F (*Murtherers*); *Murtherer(s)* appears in SDS throughout except at 3.4.32  
 SD    <sup>76</sup> SH *MURDERERS*] F (*Murth.*); *Mur.* / *Capell*; i. *Mur.* / *Steevens*<sup>3</sup>    77 speeches?] F2; speeches: F    83  
 'Thus . . . Banquo.' Johnson (*subst.*); Thus . . . *Banquo*. F

<sup>72</sup> list The enclosed space where knights contended in formal tournaments (tilts) or to determine a dispute through trial by combat (*R2* 1.3 dramatises an aborted example of the latter). In Tudor and Stuart England, tilts were entirely ceremonial and only accidentally fatal; many Londoners would know the tilts annually commemorating Queen Elizabeth's accession on 17 November.

<sup>73</sup> champion challenge to a contest, bid defiance to (so *OED* Champion *v* 1, with one other citation, from 1821). This instance is the word's only use as a verb in Shakespeare, but its uses as a noun suggest the verb might mean 'fight for', 'uphold, support' (*OED* Champion *v* 2 and 3, with earliest citations from the nineteenth century). Therefore, as Foakes and common sense suggest, Macbeth may expect Fate to enter the lists against Banquo's sons and, following the sisters' assurances, fight for Macbeth.

<sup>73</sup> utterance utmost, extremity (*Lexicon*), furthest limit (here, death).

<sup>73</sup> Who's there A common dramatic formula for summoning attendants; it need not be spoken in response to any speech or event.

<sup>73</sup> SD *MURDERERS* Sometimes imagined as ex-soldiers (Clarendon; repeated in Muir, quoting Harley Granville-Barker), a masterless, often vagrant class much feared in early modern England

and the subject of punitive legal treatment. (For instance, Black Will, a murderer-for-hire in *Arden of Faversham*, is a former soldier.) Despite F's designation, 'They are not yet murderers but, by their own claim, ruined men' (Foakes).

<sup>77-90</sup> In these metrically muddled lines prosaic rhythms occasionally give way to iambic pentameter, e.g. F's version of 82-3: 'And all things else, that might / To halfe a Soule, and to a Notion craz'd, / Say, Thus did Banquo.'

<sup>78</sup> he Banquo, but the audience infers this identification only from Macbeth's soliloquy.

<sup>80</sup> made good rendered persuasive or convincing. The echo of 8 now casts Macbeth as a witch soliciting the Murderers.

<sup>80</sup> conference discussion, meeting.

<sup>80</sup> passed in probation proved, demonstrated. 'Probation' is a Scotticism; see *OED* Probation 4 a-b.

<sup>81</sup> borne in hand deceived, misled deliberately (a proverbial expression; see Dent H94).

<sup>82-3</sup> Dent compares 'He that has but half an eye (or wit) may see it' (H47), but 'half a soul' (83) sounds like the Murderers' own souls.

<sup>83</sup> notion mind, intellect (*OED* Notion 5a, quoting this line and *Lear* 1.4.228 as the earliest examples).

your nature, that you can let this go? Are you so gospelled, to pray for this good man and for his issue, whose heavy hand hath bowed you to the grave and beggared yours forever?

FIRST MURDERER We are men, my liege.

MACBETH Ay, in the catalogue ye go for men,

As hounds, and greyhounds, mongrels, spaniels, curs,  
Shoughs, water-rugs, and demi-wolves are clept  
All by the name of dogs. The valued file  
Distinguishes the swift, the slow, the subtle,  
The housekeeper, the hunter, every one  
According to the gift which bounteous nature  
Hath in him closed, whereby he does receive  
Particular addition from the bill  
That writes them all alike. And so of men.  
Now, if you have a station in the file  
Not i'th'worst rank of manhood, say't,  
And I will put that business in your bosoms,

93 clept] F (clipt) 102 Not] F, f2-4; Nor Q1673; And not Rowe 102 say't] F; say it Rowe

**87** gospelled imbued with the principles of the 'gospel' (= the Christian New Testament or, generally, Christian teachings). Grey (II, 146) cites 'But I say unto you, love your enemies, blesse them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, pray for them which hurt you, and persecute you' (Matt. 5.44).

**89** yours your families and dependants. Compare 'His wife, his babes, and all unfortunate souls / That trace him in his line' (4.1.151-2).

**90** We are men Evidently, the Murderers mean this answer to affirm their pride, their injured merit, their capacity for revenge; the claim echoes ironically Macbeth's 'I dare do all that may become a man' (1.7.46). Proverbially, 'Men are but men' (Dent M541).

**90** liege See 1.4.2 n.

**91-107** William Harrison's 'Description of Scotland', prefixed to *Scotland*, lists (p. 14) three canine species 'of marvelous condition . . . which are not seen elsewhere'. The speech is partly 'a symbol of the order that Macbeth wishes to restore . . . [but] [i]n an attempt to re-create an order based on murder, disorder makes fresh inroads' (Knights, p. 24). For the many self-contradictions here and a possible source, see Supplementary Note, p. 242 below.

**91** catalogue Wordplay on 'cat' (and dog) is possible here.

**92** spaniels Long-haired dogs popular for hunting game and as pets.

**92** curs Watch-dogs or sheep dogs (*OED* Cur 1); the word had not yet become entirely contemptuous.

**93** Shoughs A kind of lap-dog. Capell's spelling, 'shocks', indicates a contemporary pronunciation.

**93** water-rugs Shaggy water-dogs (?). This line is the only citation under *OED* Water-rug.

**93** demi-wolves animals half-wolf, half-dog (the two species can interbreed: see Supplementary Note to 91-107, p. 242 below). F's 'Demy-Wolues' (normalised to 'demi-wolves') is the only example of the word at *OED* Demi- sb, a, prefix 11.

**93** clept named, called. F's form and the verb itself are archaic.

**94** valued file list or dossier ('file') with values (qualities, prices) attached. The earliest citation under *OED* Valued ppl a. See 'rank' (102) and n.

**96** housekeeper watch-dog. The earliest citation under *OED* Housekeeper 3b.

**98** closed enclosed, incorporated.

**99** Particular addition Specific mark of distinction.

**99** bill catalogue, inventory (*OED* Bill sb<sup>3</sup> 5a, where this line is the last citation).

**102** rank sort, quality; row of individuals abreast (as distinct from a 'file' (see 94), individuals aligned one behind the other).

**102** say't say it. Rowe sought to improve the metre, which remains irregular.

Whose execution takes your enemy off,  
 Grapples you to the heart and love of us  
 Who wear our health but sickly in his life,  
 Which in his death were perfect.

105

SECOND MURDERER

I am one, my liege,  
 Whom the vile blows and buffets of the world  
 Hath so incensed that I am reckless what I do  
 To spite the world.

FIRST MURDERER

And I another,  
 So weary with disasters, tugged with fortune,  
 That I would set my life on any chance  
 To mend it or be rid on't.

110

MACBETH

Both of you know  
 Banquo was your enemy.

MURDERERS

True, my lord.

MACBETH So is he mine, and in such bloody distance  
 That every minute of his being thrusts  
 Against my near'st of life; and though I could  
 With barefaced power sweep him from my sight  
 And bid my will avouch it, yet I must not,  
 For certain friends that are both his and mine,  
 Whose loves I may not drop, but wail his fall  
 Who I myself struck down. And thence it is  
 That I to your assistance do make love,

115

114 SH, 138 SH MURDERERS] Dyce (*subst.*); Murth. F; Mur. / Capell

104 execution carrying out; doing (*OED Execution* 1, 3b).

104 takes . . . off kills; removes (not quoted at *OED Take v* 85f). Compare Duncan's 'taking off' (1.7.20) and 'Took off her life' (5.9.38).

105 Grapples Attaches firmly. The metaphor is from the use of grappling-irons to hold ships together in battle.

106 wear The clothing metaphors continue.

106 in his life i.e. while he lives.

107 perfect flawless, excellent. Compare 129 and 3.4.21.

109 Hath Singular verb in -th with plural subject (Abbott 334).

111 tugged with mauled by.

112 set . . . on gamble my life on.

113 mend . . . on't Compare the proverbial 'Either mend or end' (Dent M874).

113 on't of it.

115 distance discord, dissension (*OED Distance* sb 1a, quoting this line). Brooke sees a contrast with 'near'st of life' (117).

116 thrusts stabs (compare 'stick' (51)).

117 near'st of life i.e. those things most necessary to life; literally, the vital organs.

118 barefaced naked, open.

119 bid my will avouch make it just because it is my will. Macbeth claims that his absolutism could banish, or kill, Banquo and explain it as Macbeth's mere will; compare 'yet our power / Shall do a curtsy to our wrath, which men / May blame but not control' (*Lear* 3.7.25-7).

121 but wail but I must wail. This phrase depends upon 'may' in the preceding one.

123 make love pay amorous attention (*OED Love sb<sup>1</sup> 7g*). Compare Hamlet on Rosencrantz and Guildenstern as spies: 'Why, man, they did make love to this employment' (*Ham.* 5.2.57).

Masking the business from the common eye  
For sundry weighty reasons.

SECOND MURDERER We shall, my lord,  
Perform what you command us. 125

FIRST MURDERER Though our lives –

MACBETH Your spirits shine through you. Within this hour at  
most,

I will advise you where to plant yourselves,  
Acquaint you with the perfect spy o'th'time,  
The moment on't, for't must be done tonight,  
And something from the palace: always thought,  
That I require a clearness. And with him,  
To leave no rubs nor botches in the work,  
Fleance, his son that keeps him company,  
Whose absence is no less material to me  
Than is his father's, must embrace the fate  
Of that dark hour. Resolve yourselves apart,  
I'll come to you anon. 130

MURDERERS We are resolved, my lord. 135

**124–5 Masking . . . reasons** Macbeth repeats (see 119–21), but broadens, his motive for secrecy, answering (as in 118) an unspoken objection from the Murderers. Compare 1.5.50 and 61–4, 1.7.24, and 3.2.46–50.

**126 Though our lives** First Murderer is presumably about to volunteer his and his companion's lives to achieve Banquo's death.

**127** Macbeth's interruption may indicate eagerness to get his plan under way, or impatience at the Murderers' tedious responses to an offer they could not refuse.

**127–38 Your . . . anon** F represents these lines as a single sentence, marking off the various stages of Macbeth's increasingly disjointed instructions with colons after 'palace' (131) and 'work' (133), semicolons, and commas; modern repunctuation disguises the tumbling phrases and discontinuous thoughts of F.

**128 plant position** (here, 'hide').

**129 perfect** fully informed; best. See 107 and next note.

**129 spy o'th'time** This phrase has not been satisfactorily explained, especially since the essential information of when and where is conveyed in 128 and 130–1, apparently making this line redundant. Johnson thought 'spy' meant secret watcher, and he identified the figure with Third Murderer (see 3.3.1).

and n.). Other interpretations – e.g. "Spy," whose proper sense is – espyer, is used here for – espyal' (Capell, *Notes*, p. 16; compare Ritson, p. 75: 'the very time when you are to look out for him') – associate 'spy' (rarely used as a noun by Shakespeare) with 'espial' (= observation), though *OED* does not list one as a form of the other. *MED* Spy v<sup>2</sup> 2a, b defines the word as 'wait for . . . opportunity (to do harm); lie in wait'.

**131–2 always . . . clearness** always known (or 'remembered') that I must be free of involvement.

**131 something** i.e. some distance from.

**132 with him** i.e. with Banquo's death.

**133 rubs nor botches** impediments or flaws. This line is *OED*'s earliest citation for Botch sb<sup>2</sup> (Schäfer).

**135 absence** death. The euphemism palliates the demand that the murderers commit infanticide, which Shakespeare elsewhere (e.g. *3H6*, *John*) represents as the most heinous possible crime.

**135 material** important, consequential.

**137 Resolve yourselves apart** Decide between yourselves in private, but also 'gather the necessary determination (or courage)'. Macbeth wants to give the men time to accept murdering Fleance.

MACBETH I'll call upon you straight; abide within.

[*Exeunt Murderers*]

It is concluded. Banquo, thy soul's flight,  
If it find heaven, must find it out tonight.

140

*Exit*

### 3.2 Enter [LADY MACBETH], and a SERVANT

LADY MACBETH Is Banquo gone from court?

SERVANT Ay, madam, but returns again tonight.

LADY MACBETH Say to the king, I would attend his leisure  
For a few words.

SERVANT Madam, I will. Exit

LADY MACBETH Nought's had, all's spent

Where our desire is got without content.

5

'Tis safer to be that which we destroy

Than by destruction dwell in doubtful joy.

*Enter MACBETH*

How now, my lord, why do you keep alone,  
Of sorriest fancies your companions making,  
Using those thoughts which should indeed have died  
With them they think on? Things without all remedy  
Should be without regard; what's done, is done.

10

MACBETH We have scorched the snake, not killed it;

139 SD] *Theobald; not in F*    141 SD *Exit] Theobald; Exeunt. F*    Act 3, Scene 2    3.2] F (*Scena Secunda.*)    0 SD LADY  
MACBETH] F (*Macbeths Lady*)    13 scorched] F (scorch'd); scotch'd *Theobald*

139 straight at once.

140–1 All the preparations have been made (the  
Murderers were the last link).

140 soul's flight The soul was traditionally imagined as a bird which could fly to heaven. See 'fie, fie commanding soule, / And on thy wings for this thy bodies breath, / Beare the eternall victory of death' (*Chapman, Tragedy of Charles, Duke of Byron* 5.4.259–61).

### Act 3, Scene 2

The location is some private area of Macbeth's castle where intimate conversation (8 ff.) is possible.

0 SD LADY MACBETH The actor may appear with regal props, as in 3.1.

4–7 These hesitant couplets with their contradictory rhymes (spent/content, destroy/joy) starkly summarise what the regicides have won and lost (see 1.1.4 and 1.2.67). Compare 3.1.49–50 and,

dramaturgically, Gertrude's 'To my sick soul, as sin's true nature is, / Each toy seems prologue to some great amiss, / So full of artless jealousy is guilt, / It spills itself in fearing to be spilt' (*Ham.* 4.5.17–20).

8 keep alone See 3.1.44–5.

9 fancies hallucinations, delusive visions.

11–12 Things . . . regard 'Where there is no remedy it is folly to chide' is proverbial (Dent R71.1).

11 all any (Abbott 12).

12 what's done, is done The proverb, 'Things done cannot be undone' (Dent T200), links this moment with 1.7.1 ff and 5.1.47–8.

13 scorched slashed, notched, scored (see *OED* Scorch v<sup>3</sup>). F elsewhere uses an evocative rhyming pair: 'scotched [as in 'Scot'] him and notched him' (*Cor.* 4.5.186–7). The snake is 'Duncan; alive enough in his sons, and his other friends, to put his

She'll close, and be herself, whilst our poor malice  
 Remains in danger of her former tooth.  
 But let the frame of things disjoint, both the worlds suffer,  
 Ere we will eat our meal in fear, and sleep  
 In the affliction of these terrible dreams  
 That shake us nightly. Better be with the dead  
 Whom we, to gain our peace, have sent to peace,  
 Than on the torture of the mind to lie  
 In restless ecstasy. Duncan is in his grave.  
 After life's fitful fever, he sleeps well;  
 Treason has done his worst; nor steel nor poison,  
 Malice domestic, foreign levy, nothing  
 Can touch him further.

15

20

25

LADY MACBETH Come on. Gentle my lord,  
 Sleek o'er your rugged looks, be bright and jovial

20 our peace] F; our place F2-4

wounder *in danger* (Capell, *Notes*, p. 16); the important point is that the snake's body is cut, but not severed. See next note.

14-15 Shakespeare attributes gender to snakes, adders, and serpents inconsistently, sometimes making them male (*JC* 2.1.32-4, *Shr.* 4.3.177-8), sometimes female (*Tit.* 2.3.35, *MND* 2.1.255, *AYLI* 4.3.109), sometimes neuter (*2H6* 3.1.230). Here, a snake is imagined as female, although metaphorically it represents only males (Duncan and his sons, Banquo and his).

14 close rejoin, heal up (i.e. the wounded snake will recover).

14 our poor malice Macbeth's (and Lady Macbeth's?) 'malice', the murder of Duncan, is 'poor' because it is insufficiently violent; speaking either as king ('our' = royal plural) or for husband and wife, Macbeth seeks consolation for having failed (as yet) to kill enough people (i.e. Banquo and Fleance (see 36-8), perhaps Malcolm and Donaldbain also).

16 Like 22, this is a metrically long line (both are divided in F).

16 frame of things universal order. Compare 'glorious frame of heaven' (*Tamburlaine, Part 1* 4.2.10) and 'loose the whole hinge of things, / And cause the ends run back into their springs' (*Queens* 136-7); see next note.

16 both the worlds suffer earth and heaven be destroyed. See *OED* Suffer v 9b, citing only this line and *Temp.* 2.2.34-7, but 'suffer' = die at *TGV* 4.4.15-16 and *MM* 2.2.105-7, and compare 'Mix hell with heaven' (*Queens* 135).

20 peace . . . peace The later Folios vulgarise

the line to avoid repeating 'peace', but 'place' is a pallid word for a kingship gained through murder. For a similar repetition, see 'Though change of war hath wrought this change of shear' (*Tit.* Q1 (1594), sig. B3r), where later texts read 'chance of war'.

21 on . . . lie The implicit image is of the bed as a means or instrument of torture (*OED* Torture sb 1b), e.g. a rack.

22 ecstasy frenzy, stupor.

23 life's fitful fever i.e. life is a disease ('fever') causing paroxysms or recurrent attacks (fits, hence 'fitful'). The phrase better describes Macbeth's nightly shaking (19, 22) than it does anything we know of Duncan's life. Compare 'Life is like an ague' (Dent, *PLED* L252.11). This line is *OED*'s earliest citation for 'fitful' (Schäfer).

23 sleeps well Duncan has been sent to the 'peace' (20), the eternal sleep of death, but Macbeth has 'murdered sleep' (2.2.45) for himself and many others who remain alive. Compare 1.7.61-3 and the ironies of 'Soundly' (1.7.63).

24 Treason . . . worst Proverbially, 'Let him do his worst' (Dent w914) and 'The worst is death' (Dent, *PLED* w918.11).

24 nor . . . nor neither . . . nor.

25 Malice domestic Native (= 'domestic', i.e. Scottish) envy or hatred.

25 levy body of men collected to form an army (this line antedates the earliest citation at *OED* Levy sb<sup>1</sup> 2b).

27 Gentle my lord i.e. my gentle lord.

28 Sleek Smooth.

28 rugged furrowed.

Among your guests tonight.

MACBETH So shall I, love,  
And so I pray be you. Let your remembrance  
Apply to Banquo, present him eminence  
Both with eye and tongue; unsafe the while, that we  
Must lave our honours in these flattering streams  
And make our faces vizards to our hearts,  
Disguising what they are.

LADY MACBETH You must leave this.

MACBETH O, full of scorpions is my mind, dear wife!  
Thou know'st that Banquo and his Fleance lives.

LADY MACBETH But in them Nature's copy's not eterne.

MACBETH There's comfort yet, they are assailable;  
Then be thou jocund: ere the bat hath flown  
His cloistered flight, ere to black Hecate's summons  
The shard-born beetle with his drowsy hums  
Hath rung night's yawning peal, there shall be done

38 copy's] F (Copies)

**30-2** Let . . . tongue Since Macbeth has just arranged Banquo's murder, this advice presumably means to misdirect Lady Macbeth (Macbeth is now acting independently; compare 1.5 and 1.7), or (as Brooke suggests) it is an attempt to win Lady Macbeth's complicity by stressing Banquo's dangerousness.

**30** remembrance thought, regard (*Lexicon*); *OED* Remembrance *sb* 3a has no apposite meaning.

**31** present him eminence offer him homage or respect. This line is the sole citation at *OED* Eminence 6. In Elizabethan pronunciation, there was probably some elision ('em'nence'); see Cercignani, p. 280.

**32-4** unsafe . . . hearts For the period ('the while') of our insecurity (see 'unsafe') we must wash ('lave') our titles in streams of flattery and make our faces masks ('vizards') for our hearts. Compare 1.7.81-2 and n.

**34-5** And make . . . are The implied contrast of face and heart is proverbial: 'Fair face foul heart' (Dent f3).

**35-6** You . . . wife These lines might be spoken (and punctuated) to indicate that Macbeth anxiously interrupts Lady Macbeth.

**38** Banquo and Fleance are not immortal.

**38** copy reproduction, imitation; pattern, example; legal tenure (*OED* Copy *sb* 4; 8c; 5b, a figurative use of 'copyhold'). See Supplementary Note, pp. 242-3 below.

**38** copy's copy is.

38 eterne eternal.

**39-44** There's . . . note This speech and the next by Macbeth (45-56) are verbally complex, and precise meanings for many words and phrases would be especially elusive in performance. See pp. 54-5 above.

**39** assailable attackable, vulnerable to assault. This line is *OED*'s earliest citation for the word (Schäfer).

**40** jocund merry, cheerful.

**41** cloistered The bat flies in and around buildings (which have cloisters, covered walks open to the outside) rather than in the open air (Hunter subst.).

**41** Hecate See 2.1.52 n. Earlier, Shakespeare imagines Hecate as 'pale', appropriate for her other manifestations as Luna and Diana, but 'black' suits both night and Macbeth's invocation of evil to come.

**42** shard-born born in dung (so *OED* Shard-born *a*), but another meaning of 'shard' and F's spelling 'borne' permit the popular gloss, 'borne [carried] aloft by its wing-cases' (Hunter), which *OED* rejects. Shakespeare elsewhere mentions 'the sharded beetle' in contrast with the 'full-winged eagle' (*Cym.* 3.3.20-1), and Enobarbus ironically describes Antony and Caesar as 'shards' to Lepidus's 'beetle' (*Ant.* 3.2.20); those contexts do not resolve the meaning here, which may be a quibble (Muir) on 'born' and 'borne'.

**43** yawning This image may originate with a

30

35

40

A deed of dreadful note.

LADY MACBETH What's to be done?

MACBETH Be innocent of the knowledge, dearest chuck,

Till thou applaud the deed. Come, seeling night,

Scarf up the tender eye of pitiful day

And with thy bloody and invisible hand

Cancel and tear to pieces that great bond

Which keeps me pale. Light thickens,

And the crow makes wing to th'rooky wood;

Good things of day begin to droop and drowse,

Whiles night's black agents to their preys do rouse.

Thou marvell'st at my words, but hold thee still;

Things bad begun, make strong themselves by ill.

So prithee, go with me.

45

50

55

*Exeunt*

bell's 'mouth', but also recalls 'drowsy' (42; see also 'droop and drowse' (52)). Macbeth imagines the beetle's soporific sound as the ringing of bells (= 'peal') that mark night's and sleep's arrival.

44 note notoriety. Another meaning ('musical sound') continues the imagery ('hums' and 'peal') of 42–3.

45–6 Be . . . deed Do not concern yourself in advance about an event (Banquo's murder) you will welcome when it has happened.

45 chuck Affectionate nickname derived from 'chick' (chicken); compare 'my dearest love' (1.5.56). See Supplementary Note, p. 243 below.

46 seeling sewing; blinding. 'Seeling' is a technical term from falconry: the sewing together of a young bird's eyelids to condition it to accept the hood necessary for training. Compare 1.5.49–51. A metaphor from the validating of a written document by applying metal insignia to hot wax, 'sealing', is perhaps present; compare 49; 'Death's second self [sleep], that seals up all in rest' (Sonnet 73.8); Mahood, pp. 38–9, on the wordplay of 'deed', 'seeling'/'sealing', and 'pale' (both 'colourless' and 'a fence', something that constrains).

47 Scarf up Blindfold. This line is Shakespeare's only use of 'scarf' as a verb.

47 pitiful full of pity, compassionate.

49 bond contract, legal commitment; moral obligation. Banquo's 'bond of life' (*R3* 4.4.77), his very existence, keeps Macbeth 'pale' (50); to 'cancel' that bond is to kill Banquo, but the phrase embraces all

the moral, social, and political obligations (bonds) so far violated. See 4.1.83 and n.

50–1 These lines are metrically irregular.

50 pale Compare 2.2.61 and 68 and 'sickly' (3.1.106).

50 Light thickens It grows dark. The metaphor was probably moribund (see 'the Welkin thicks apace, / And stouping *Phebus* steepes his face' (Spenser, *The Shephearde Calender* (1579), 'March', 115–16)), but the 'fog and filthy air' of 1.1 have made a viscous atmosphere a terrifying possibility.

51 makes wing flies.

51 rooky filled with rooks. The earliest citation under *OED* Rooky *a<sup>1</sup>* (Schäfer). The word has occasioned controversy because: (1) the line seems tautological; (2) 'crow' and 'rook' were common names for the same bird; (3) 'crow' could also distinguish the 'carrion crow' (*Corvus Corone*) from the 'rook' (*Corvus frugilegus*).

54 Thou marvell'st An implicit sp to Lady Macbeth.

54 hold thee still continue steadfast as you have been.

55 A Latin aphorism – 'per scelera semper sceleribus tutum est iter' ('through crime ever is the safe way for crime', Seneca, *Agamemnon* 115, trans. F. J. Miller) – and a proverb – 'Crimes are made secure by greater crimes' (Dent c826) – may have contributed to this line.

### 3.3 Enter three MURDERERS

FIRST MURDERER But who did bid thee join with us?

THIRD MURDERER Macbeth.

SECOND MURDERER He needs not our mistrust, since he delivers  
Our offices and what we have to do  
To the direction just.

FIRST MURDERER [To Third Murderer] Then stand with us.

The west yet glimmers with some streaks of day;  
Now spurs the lated traveller apace  
To gain the timely inn, and near approaches  
The subject of our watch.

THIRD MURDERER Hark, I hear horses.

BANQUO (*Within*) Give us a light there, ho!

SECOND MURDERER Then 'tis he; the rest  
That are within the note of expectation  
Already are i'th'court.

FIRST MURDERER His horses go about.

**Act 3, Scene 3 3.3] F (Scena Tertia.) 1 SH FIRST MURDERER] F (1.) and throughout scene 2 SH THIRD MURDERER]  
F (3.) and throughout scene 3 SH SECOND MURDERER] F (2.) and throughout scene 7 and] F2; end F 9 SH, SD  
BANQUO (*Within*) F (Banquo within.)**

#### Act 3, Scene 3

The location is exterior and nocturnal, some distance (12–13) from the entrance to Macbeth's castle, now his 'palace' (13). As 3.4 will show more largely, this scene contains reminders of the social order and customs Macbeth is destroying: the hospitality of the 'timely inn' (7); the practice ('so all men do') of approaching the castle on foot (11–14; see n.); and the homely mention of the weather (18).

1 'But' indicates that the Murderers enter conversing; presumably First and Second have been questioning Third Murderer, whom they did not expect.

1 SH THIRD MURDERER Critics have speculated on his identity: Ross, Macbeth (G. W. Williams, 'The Third Murderer in *Macbeth*', *SQ* 23 (1972), 261), raises strong theatrical arguments against this possibility), and Destiny have been proposed (see Muir), but NS reasonably suggests 'Macbeth, tyrant-like, feels he must spy even upon his own chosen instruments.' Third Murderer's presence also inserts tension into a necessary but predictable scene; see Martin Wiggins, *Journeymen in Murder: The Assassin in English Renaissance Drama*, 1991, pp. 77–8.

2–4 He . . . just 'He' is momentarily ambiguous – Macbeth or Third Murderer? – and then is re-

solved when it becomes clear Third Murderer has brought the 'direction' Macbeth promised on 'where to plant yourselves' (3.1.128). For a similarly significant confusion of pronouns, see 1.2.20–2 n.

3 offices duties. A grim echo of 2.1.14: soon social duty will again turn to murder.

4 just precisely, exactly.

4 stand take position; hide.

6 lated belated, overtaken by night (Hunter).

7 timely opportune.

8 I hear horses The sound of hoofbeats was common in the Tudor and Stuart theatre; NS cites W. J. Lawrence, *Pre-Restoration Stage Studies*, 1927, p. 217. For more hoofbeats, see 4.1.138–9; for other horses, see 1.3, headnote.

9 SD Banquo calls to the grooms who will cool the horses while their riders walk to the castle (see 11–14).

9–11 The other expected guests have already arrived. The Murderers serve as macabre butlers or doormen to Macbeth's feast.

11–14 These lines explain the absence of horses on stage and make more plausible the Murderers' successful attack, since they assault two persons on foot rather than on horseback. See 1.3, headnote.

11 go about walk an indirect route (to cool the horses).

**THIRD MURDERER** Almost a mile; but he does usually,  
So all men do, from hence to th'palace gate  
Make it their walk.

*Enter BANQUO and FLEANCE, with a torch*

**SECOND MURDERER** A light, a light!

15

**THIRD MURDERER** 'Tis he.

**FIRST MURDERER** Stand to't.

**BANQUO** It will be rain tonight.

**FIRST MURDERER** Let it come down.

[*The Murderers attack. First Murderer strikes out the light*]

**BANQUO** O, treachery!

Fly, good Fleance, fly, fly, fly!

Thou mayst revenge – O slave! [Dies. Fleance escapes]

20

**THIRD MURDERER** Who did strike out the light?

**FIRST MURDERER** Was't not the way?

**THIRD MURDERER** There's but one down; the son is fled.

**SECOND MURDERER** We have lost best half of our affair.

**FIRST MURDERER** Well, let's away, and say how much is done.

25

*Exeunt, with Banquo's body*

14 SD FLEANCE . . . torch] F (Fleans . . . Torch) 18 SD The Murderers attack] This edn; not in F; They fall upon Banquo and kill him; in the scuffle Fleance escapes. / Rowe (after tonight); They assault Banquo. / Theobald 18 SD First Murderer strikes out the light] NS (subst.); not in F 21 SD Dies. Fleance escapes] Pope; not in F 25 SD Exeunt, with Banquo's body] Oxford; Exeunt F

13 from hence i.e. from where he dismounted.

14 SD torch The dialogue (22–3) makes clear that only Banquo and Fleance enter (i.e. there is no torch-bearer); Fleance probably carries the 'torch' here. Compare 2.1.10 SD and n.

15 A light, a light Second Murderer sees the targets first.

18 First Murderer makes the grim jest that Banquo, about to die, need not worry about the rain to come; simultaneously, First Murderer orders the attack.

18 come down rain; make a surprise attack (an absolute use (?) of *OED* Come v 56g, 'come down upon').

21 O slave! Banquo's dying execration, directed at his murderer.

22 way plan, method. First Murderer is an amateur. John C. McCloskey, 'Why not Fleance?', *Shakespeare Association Bulletin* 20 (1945), 118–20, argues that Fleance should extinguish the torch in

self-defence.

23 the son is fled The son (Fleance, who flees) is also the sun, the light of day, which darkened Scotland will also lament. Compare 1.5.59, 2.4.5–10, and p. 39 above.

24 best half i.e. Fleance's death. As Macbeth made clear (3.1.134–7), killing Fleance, Banquo's son and the source of further descendants, was more important (= 'best') than killing Banquo. Compare 5.8.18.

25 SD Exeunt with Banquo's body Actors were expected to remove their victims' bodies from the stage. Reminiscing about the actor Richard Fowler at the Fortune Theatre before 1642, a character recalls an occasion when Fowler neglected 'to bring off his dead men'; they 'crauld into the Tyreing house', but Fowler reappeared 'and told 'em, Dogs you should have laine there till you had been fetcht off' (John Tatham (?), *Knavery in All Trades, or the Coffee-House* (1664), Act 3, sig. E1r).

**3.4 Banquet prepared.** [Two thrones are placed on stage.] Enter MACBETH [as King], LADY [MACBETH as Queen], ROSS, LENNOX, LORDS, and Attendants. [Lady Macbeth sits]

MACBETH You know your own degrees, sit down; at first and last, the hearty welcome.

[*The Lords sit*]

LORDS Thanks to your majesty.

MACBETH Our self will mingle with society and play the humble host; our hostess keeps her state, but in best time we will require her welcome.

LADY MACBETH Pronounce it for me, sir, to all our friends, for my heart speaks they are welcome.

*Enter FIRST MURDERER*

Act 3, Scene 4 3.4] F (*Scaena Quarta.*) 0 SD.1 Two thrones are placed on stage] This edn; not in F 0 SD.2 MACBETH as King] Oxford; *Macbeth* F; *King Macbeth* / Staunton 0 SD.2 LADY MACBETH as Queen] Oxford; *Lady* F; *Queen* / Staunton 0 SD.3 Lady Macbeth sits] This edn; not in F 2 SD] This edn; not in F; They sit. / Rowe

### Act 3, Scene 4

The audience must imagine a formal banqueting space, perhaps the ‘hall’ (2.3.127). The dialogue (especially 1, 4–5) seems to stipulate a throne (see 5 n.). See the description of King James in Parliament (*Parliamentary Diary of Robert Bowyer*, ed. D. H. Willson, 1931, p. 185) and Andrew Gurr, ‘The “state” of Shakespeare’s audiences’, in Marvin and Ruth Thompson (eds.), *Shakespeare and the Sense of Performance*, 1989, esp. pp. 162–8, 174–7. Macbeth might first escort Lady Macbeth to the throne and then join the lords at 4. Speaking from the throne, or moving from it, Lady Macbeth recalls Macbeth to his duties as host at 32–7, and she certainly enters the main acting area at 53 when she intervenes to explain Macbeth’s behaviour. The visual contrast between new royal status and old (?) companionability, followed by Lady Macbeth’s urgent movement from throne to ‘society’ (4), emphasises the Macbeths’ insecurity and the fragility of the order they seek to maintain or impose. See also 10 n. Jones, *Origins*, pp. 26–8 and 79–83, discusses the scene’s possible sources in Suetonius’s *Life of Claudius* and two plays from the Corpus Christi cycle known as *Ludus Coventriæ*. This scene is the last in which Macbeth and Lady Macbeth appear together; see Appendix 1, pp. 255–6 below.

0 SD.1 *Banquet prepared* i.e. a ‘banquet’ placed on stage (presumably some conventional stage-representation). While a Jacobean ‘banquet’ might be a light collation of elaborate sweets, this one seems to be a state dinner (another available meaning): ‘our great feast’ (3.1.12); ‘a solemn supper’ (3.1.14); ‘our feast’ (3.1.29). See 1.4.56n.

0 SD.1 *Two thrones . . . stage* See headnote.

0 SD.3 *Lady . . . sits* See headnote.

1–8 Metrically, ‘F’s arrangement is hopeless and editors’ no improvement’ here (Brooke, App. A, p. 223).

1 **You know your own degrees** You know the seating order appropriate to your respective ranks.

1 **degrees** social ranks. There is probably a quibble on ‘degrees’ = steps and = tiers of seats (see MED *Degree sb 1a*); ‘degrees’ was also a common term for temporary seating erected for courtly and other occasional theatrical performances.

1 **at first and last** to one and all (*OED* First a 5e).

3 SH, 49 SH, 92 SH **LORDS** F’s ‘Lords’ presumably calls for intelligible hubbub, perhaps two or three lords (including those named at 0 SD.2–3) speaking in overlapping sequence rather than choritic unison.

4 **society** companions; acquaintances.

4 **play** serve as, fill the capacity of. In some productions, Macbeth pours drinks for the guests.

5 **host** The word describes anyone who entertains another person, but especially pertains to an inn- or tavern-keeper (see Lady Macbeth’s worries at 32–7).

5 **keeps her state** continues in her chair of state (Singer); ‘state’ = throne or formal chair, often with a canopy.

6 After this line, Rowe added *They sit.*

8 SD First Murderer is not noticed verbally by the other guests and perhaps not noticed by Macbeth until 12; see 10 n. Editors and producers have invented many stagings for this moment.

**MACBETH** See, they encounter thee with their hearts' thanks.

Both sides are even; here I'll sit i'th'midst.

10

Be large in mirth, anon we'll drink a measure

The table round. [To First Murderer] There's blood upon  
thy face.

**FIRST MURDERER** 'Tis Banquo's then.

**MACBETH** 'Tis better thee without, than he within.

Is he dispatched?

15

**FIRST MURDERER** My lord, his throat is cut; that I did for him.

**MACBETH** Thou art the best o'th'cut-throats,

Yet he's good that did the like for Fleance;

If thou didst it, thou art the nonpareil.

**FIRST MURDERER** Most royal sir, Fleance is scaped.

20

**MACBETH** Then comes my fit again: I had else been perfect;

Whole as the marble, founded as the rock,

As broad and general as the casing air:

But now I am cabined, cribbed, confined, bound in

13 SH FIRST MURDERER] F (*Mur.*) and throughout scene

9 An implicit sd to the lords and Lady Macbeth, who exchange some response (bows, or a toast?).

9 encounter go to meet (*OED* Encounter v 6, with citations only from Shakespeare), hence 'reciprocate' (?). Just as Lady Macbeth's 'heart speaks' (8), the nobles return 'hearts' thanks'.

10 Equal numbers of people sit on each side of the table; I'll sit half-way down one side (?). As contemporary paintings and accounts testify, the place of honour in the Elizabethan and Jacobean court varied: if the table was aligned with a room's width (as imagined here?) the honoured place was at the centre (the 'midst') of the side facing into the room; if the table was aligned with a room's length, the modern 'head of the table' became the honoured place. For a detailed account of royal protocol and King James's and Prince Henry's respective seatings at a banquet offered by the Merchant Taylors' company, July 1607, see *The Letters and Epigrams of Sir John Harington*, ed. N. E. McClure, 1930, p. 35.

11 large unrestrained.

11–12 drink . . . round share a toast or health with each person at the table (?); all share in a group toast (?); pass the cup from person to person (?). The first meaning is more likely if Macbeth continues his use (4–5) of the royal plural.

12 There's blood The audience may recall the bloody Captain of 1.2, especially if Macbeth 'is wearing the royal insignia first worn by Duncan' (D. J. Palmer in *Focus*, p. 55).

14 thee without . . . he within outside you than inside him. The line's callousness signals Macbeth's anxiety.

15 dispatched killed.

19 nonpareil one without equal.

20–1 F's lineation is puzzling, but one tentative explanation, 'justifying [the printed line] . . . or . . . indicating very long pauses' (Brooke, App. A, p. 223), is unconvincing, and Pope's and Collier's choices (adopted here) are not too prescriptive.

20 scaped escaped (an aphetic form).

21 fit It is proverbial 'To have an ague fit of fear' (Dent A82.1).

21 perfect Compare the two previous uses of the word, 3.1.107 and 3.1.129; see pp. 52–3 above.

22–3 See 'As hard as marble' (Dent M638.1); 'As fixed (firm) as a rock' (Dent R151); 'As free as the air' (Dent A88).

22 founded based, firmly grounded. The earliest citation for *OED* Founded ppl a.

23 broad and general diffused and omnipresent.

23 casing encasing (aphetic form), encompassing. This line is *OED*'s earliest recorded use under Casing ppl a (Schäfer).

24 Alliteration of near-synonyms sounds like witch-language (e.g. 1.3.22); see p. 52 above, n. 2.

24 cabined cramped, confined (from 'cabin' = hut or cell).

24 cribbed shut up, hampered. This line is the earliest citation for *OED* Crib v 2a. A 'crib' is also an animal's stall, or a suspended, open-sided holder for animal fodder. The metaphorically appropriate 'crib' (= a child's lattice-sided bed) is not recorded before 1649, though *MED* Crib sb records the meaning 'manger' (e.g. as a bed for the infant Jesus) from very early.

24 bound in kept fast, chained.

To saucy doubts and fears. But Banquo's safe?

25

FIRST MURDERER Ay, my good lord: safe in a ditch he bides,  
With twenty trenchèd gashes on his head,  
The least a death to nature.

MACBETH Thanks for that.

There the grown serpent lies; the worm that's fled  
Hath nature that in time will venom breed,  
No teeth for th'present. Get thee gone; tomorrow  
We'll hear ourselves again.

30

*Exit [First] Murderer*

LADY MACBETH My royal lord,

You do not give the cheer; the feast is sold  
That is not often vouch'd while 'tis a-making,  
'Tis given with welcome. To feed were best at home:  
From thence, the sauce to meat is ceremony,  
Meeting were bare without it.

35

*Enter the Ghost of Banquo and sits in Macbeth's place*

32 hear ourselves] F (heare our selues); hear, ourselves Steevens  
34 a-making,] Cum., a making: F 35 given with] F3; giuen, with F

32 SD *Exit First Murderer*] F (*Exit Murderer*.)

25 safe i.e. dead. The euphemism reflects Macbeth's reaction, not Banquo's condition; see p. 49 above.

27-8 With . . . nature Compare Duncan's wounds (2.3.106-7).

27 trenchèd grooved, furrowed. This use antedates the earliest citation for a figurative use of the word at *OED* Trench v. 2b.

28 The . . . nature First Murderer claims that any one of the 'gashes' would have been mortal, but the generalised expression recalls the apocalyptic language surrounding the discovery of Duncan's body in 2.3. As 3.2.16 partly anticipates, Nature is being killed.

29 worm Figuratively, a larva or grub (which will grow into a venomous snake).

32 hear ourselves i.e. speak together. *OED* Hear v. does not include a reflexive form. Theobald emended to 'hear't our selves', and other grammatically 'correct' changes have been proposed. Compare 'known' for 'known each other' (*Ant.* 2.6.83) and 'see' for 'see each other' in Imogen's farewell to Posthumus, 'When shall we see again?' (*Cym.* I.1.124).

32-7 My royal . . . without it Lady Macbeth forces Macbeth into his rôle as host. Earlier (1.7.30), she showed her concern for social form, however superficial or hypocritical.

32 royal lord The phrase emphasises Macbeth's new status and perhaps reminds him of his new duties.

33 give the cheer give a kindly welcome (*OED* Cheer sb<sup>1</sup> 5); give a toast to the company (?).

33-5 feast . . . welcome i.e. a hospitable dinner for guests is rather a commercial transaction ('is sold' (33)) if the host does not frequently affirm (= 'give the cheer' (33) and 'is . . . often vouch'd' (34)), while it happens, that the feast is freely, generously (= 'with welcome' (35)) given. Proverbially, 'Welcome is the best cheer' (Dent w258).

35 To feed were best at home i.e. one dines best in one's own dwelling.

36 From thence Away from home.

36 ceremony social rituals (of seating, serving, toasting, etc.).

37 SD Editors have moved the Ghost's entrance closer to the moment it is first recognised in the dialogue (before 48), but F's location is theatrically feasible, making 40-4 simply but effectively ironic and allowing the Ghost time to enter and to sit in a place that fills the table but is not in Macbeth's line of sight. Forman (II, 338) saw the actor playing Macbeth 'standing up to drincke a Carouse to' Banquo, 'And as he thus did . . . the ghoste of Banco came and sate down in his cheier behind him.' For the ways of enacting the Ghost's entrance, see Stanley Wells in Biggs, pp. 65-7.

37 SD *Ghost of Banquo* The same actor who played Banquo living, made up with stage-blood (see 51), usually animal's blood, and, possibly, flour. In other plays, a miller in his 'mealy miller's coate' is mistaken for a ghost (William Sampson, *The*

MACBETH

Sweet remembrancer!

Now good digestion wait on appetite,  
And health on both.

LENNOX

May't please your highness, sit.

MACBETH Here had we now our country's honour roofed,

40

Were the graced person of our Banquo present,  
Who may I rather challenge for unkindness  
Than pity for mischance.

ROSS

His absence, sir,

Lays blame upon his promise. Please't your highness  
To grace us with your royal company?

45

MACBETH The table's full.

LENNOX

Here is a place reserved, sir.

MACBETH Where?

LENNOX Here, my good lord. What is't that moves your highness?

MACBETH Which of you have done this?

LORDS

What, my good lord?

MACBETH Thou canst not say I did it; never shake

50

Thy gory locks at me!

ROSS Gentlemen, rise, his highness is not well.

*[Lady Macbeth joins the Lords]*

52 SD] This edn; not in F

*Vow-Breaker* (1636), sig. 13v) and a character pretends to be his own ghost and enters, *his face mealed* (Francis Beaumont, *Knight of the Burning Pestle* (1613), sig. 13r). Henslowe (pp. 318, 321) inventories 'j [= 1] gostes sewt, and j gostes bodeyes [= bodice]' as well as 'j gostes crown'. On the Ghost's appearance, see also R. V. Holdsworth, '*Macbeth* and *The Puritan*', *N&Q* 235 (1990), 204–5. The co-presence of Death and (royal) festivity are frequent moral themes; skeleton-Death pours a king's wine in Hans Holbein the Younger's popular *The Dance of Death* (1538). See illustration 10, p. 52 above.

37 remembrancer one who reminds. The word was also the title of officials who collected debts owed to the crown. Macbeth speaks 'remembrancer' just as the Ghost enters as a reminder of another deed; compare the now-ironic 'remembrance' (3.2.30).

38 wait on attend, serve.

40 honour i.e. those professing and conferring honour, the nobility.

40 roofed i.e. beneath one roof, in one place.

41 graced favoured, endowed with special qualities.

42 may I I hope I may.

43 mischance accident. The false politeness recalls 1.6.

43–4 His absence . . . his promise Literally, Banquo's absence belies his promise to attend. There are two ironical meanings: Banquo's Ghost keeps his living vow ('promise'); Banquo's death ('absence') may be blamed upon 'his royalty of nature' (3.1.51), the qualities which boded so well for his future service to Scotland ('his promise'). On the second meaning, compare 'He hath borne himself beyond the promise of his age . . . He hath indeed bettered expectation' (*Ado* 1.1.13–16).

46 The table's full Macbeth finds no empty place.

48 moves troubles (*OED* Move v 9). Macbeth has now reacted to the Ghost.

49 Which . . . this Macbeth may assume a practical joke (someone is pretending to be Banquo), or he may ask who has made Banquo a ghost.

50–1 The silent Ghost cannot accuse Macbeth of murdering Banquo.

51 gory locks bloody hair.

52 SD See headnote.

LADY MACBETH Sit, worthy friends. My lord is often thus,  
And hath been from his youth. Pray you, keep seat.  
The fit is momentary; upon a thought  
He will again be well. If much you note him  
You shall offend him and extend his passion.  
Feed, and regard him not. [To Macbeth] Are you a man?

MACBETH Ay, and a bold one, that dare look on that  
Which might appal the devil.

LADY MACBETH O proper stuff! 60  
This is the very painting of your fear;  
This is the air-drawn dagger which you said  
Led you to Duncan. O, these flaws and starts,  
Impostors to true fear, would well become  
A woman's story at a winter's fire  
Authorised by her grandam. Shame itself!  
Why do you make such faces? When all's done  
You look but on a stool. 65

MACBETH Prithee, see there! Behold, look, lo! How say you?  
[To Ghost] Why, what care I? If thou canst nod, speak too. 70

62 air-drawn dagger] F (Ayre-drawne-Dagger) 70 Why, what . . . I? . . . too.] Capell; Why what . . . I, . . . too. F

54 keep seat remain seated.

55 fit paroxysm, seizure (*OED* Fit *sb<sup>2</sup>* 3). Compare 3.2.23 and n.

55 upon a thought Proverbial: 'As swift as thought' (Dent t240).

57 passion fit (*OED* Passion *sb* 6c).

58 Are you a man For similar questions, see 1.7.35–47 and 3.1.90.

60 proper stuff complete (or 'utter') nonsense.

61 painting image, illusion. Compare 1.3.95, 2.2.57, 2.3.23.

62–3 Lady Macbeth ridicules Macbeth's vision before he killed Duncan (2.1.33–43).

62 air-drawn imaged in the air; moved through the air.

63 flaws bursts of passion (*OED* Flaw *sb<sup>2</sup>* 2, quoting this line as its second example), a figurative use from 'squall of wind' (*OED* Flaw *sb<sup>2</sup>* 1).

63 starts sudden involuntary movements.

64 Impostors False imitations (because Macbeth has no true cause of fear); 'impostors when compared with true fear' (Mason, p. 145).

65–6 A woman's . . . grandam Shakespeare and others often associate the telling of a sad or frightening tale with women and winter; compare *R2* 5.1.40ff.; *WT* 2.1.22ff.; 'Now I remember those

old womens words, / Who in my wealth [youth?] wud tell me winters tales, / And speake of spirits and ghosts' (Marlowe, *Jew of Malta* 2.1.24–6); Francisco's reaction to Isabella's ghost, 'So now 'tis ended, like an old wives' story' (Webster, *White Devil* 4.1.116); 'A winter(s) tale' (Dent w513.1).

66 Authorised Vouched for, confirmed. The word is stressed on the second syllable (Cercignani, p. 41).

66 grandam grandmother.

67 make such faces An implicit SD to the actor playing Macbeth.

67 When all's done Proverbial (Dent A211.1).

68 stool For Shakespeare's audience, chairs were rare and expensive, stools common, even in wealthy households (see *Tim.* 3.6.65); Lady Macbeth uses that social fact to express her contempt.

69 Behold, look, lo These synonyms urge the actor to gesture at the Ghost and its 'empty' place.

70 Why, what care I Presumably, Macbeth dares the Ghost to identify Banquo's murderer(s), but this phrase may be a question to Lady Macbeth (Hailio) or the entire speech may be an aside (NS).

70 nod An implicit SD to the actor playing the Ghost, who must gesture significantly toward Macbeth (see 69n.).

If charnel-houses and our graves must send  
 Those that we bury back, our monuments  
 Shall be the maws of kites.

[Exit Ghost of Banquo]

LADY MACBETH

What, quite unmanned in folly?

MACBETH If I stand here, I saw him.

LADY MACBETH

Fie, for shame.

MACBETH Blood hath been shed ere now, i'th'olden time,

75

Ere humane statute purged the gentle weal;  
 Ay, and since too, murders have been performed  
 Too terrible for the ear. The time has been  
 That when the brains were out, the man would die,  
 And there an end. But now they rise again  
 With twenty mortal murders on their crowns  
 And push us from our stools. This is more strange  
 Than such a murder is.

80

LADY MACBETH

My worthy lord,

Your noble friends do lack you.

MACBETH

I do forget –

Do not muse at me, my most worthy friends.

85

I have a strange infirmity which is nothing

To those that know me. Come, love and health to all,

73 SD] F2-4 (subst.); not in F      73 What, . . . folly?] Capell; What? . . . folly. F      78 time has] White; times has F; times have F2-4

**71** charnel-houses houses or vaults in which the bones of the dead are piled up (*OED Charnel-house*).

**72-3** our . . . kites The unburied (or returned) dead will be consumed by carrion-eating birds ('kites') whose stomachs ('maws') will be the final resting-places ('monuments') of the dead.

**73** unmanned made weak or timid (*OED Unmanned ppl a<sup>2</sup>*, citing only one example, from 1694). Lady Macbeth returns to the tactic that worked before (1.7.39-54), but murder, which she represented as manly, now unmans her husband. See 99.

**74** If I stand here Compare the proverbial 'As true as you stand there' (Dent s818).

**76** humane statute compassionate law. For F's 'humane', see 1.5.15n.

**76** gentle weal lawful (or 'non-violent') commonwealth. The line employs rhetorical prolepsis: the 'weal' is 'gentle' after it has been 'purged'.

**80** And there an end Proverbially, 'And there's an end' (Dent E113.1).

**81** twenty See 27.

**81** mortal fatal.

**81** crowns tops of (their) heads (as at 1.5.40), but 'crowns' recalls royal regalia, the 'golden round' (1.5.26): kingly crowns will adorn Banquo's children though his head wears 'twenty mortal murders' only.

**82-3** This . . . is Responding to Lady Macbeth's scorn (73-4), Macbeth reviews the history of murder (75-80), and that review is meant to assert his manhood and bravery with its grim conclusion, 'And there an end.' The Ghost's uncanny appearance, however, is 'more strange', less explicable and therefore more terrifying, than murder because it overturns the rationalism of 75-80 and revives the doubts of 1.7.1-7; murder is not an 'end' and 'it' is not 'done' when 'tis done' (1.7.1).

**83** Collier<sup>2</sup> added *Returning to her state* after 'My worthy lord'; Keightley marked the speech as an aside.

**85** muse wonder, marvel. An implicit SD to the guests.

**87** Come . . . all Macbeth proposes a toast to ease the tension.

Then I'll sit down. Give me some wine; fill full!

*Enter Ghost [of Banquo]*

I drink to th'general joy o'th'whole table,  
And to our dear friend Banquo, whom we miss.  
Would he were here! To all, and him we thirst,  
And all to all.

90

LORDS Our duties and the pledge.

MACBETH Avaunt and quit my sight! Let the earth hide thee!

Thy bones are marrowless, thy blood is cold;  
Thou hast no speculation in those eyes  
Which thou dost glare with.

95

LADY MACBETH Think of this, good peers,  
But as a thing of custom. 'Tis no other,  
Only it spoils the pleasure of the time.

MACBETH What man dare, I dare;  
Approach thou like the rugged Russian bear,  
The armed rhinoceros, or th'Hyrcan tiger,  
Take any shape but that, and my firm nerves

100

88 SD] F (*Enter Ghost*) 101 Hyrcan] F (*Hircan*)

88 SD For F's placing of this SD, see Textual Analysis, pp. 246–7 below.

89–92 The toast, divided into a prologue (89–91) where Macbeth identifies the ceremony's structure – he toasts the lords, then the absent Banquo – and the lines (91–2) during which the action of toasting – first Macbeth to the lords, then all to Banquo, then each lord to the others – takes place.

91 Would he were here Compare 1.3.80, where Macbeth wishes the witches had not departed; here, he gets his wish in an unwelcome way.

91 him we thirst the person (Banquo) for whom we long. The metaphor ('thirst' = desire) is appropriate to a drinking-ceremony.

92 duties respects.

92 pledge toast (*OED Pledge sb* 4, where the earliest citation dates from 1635). After this line, Oxford adds *They drink*.

93 Macbeth sees the Ghost again. Traditionally, Macbeth drops his toasting-cup here, or hurls it at the Ghost, who often sits in Macbeth's vacant throne, and the act recalls the 'poisoned chalice' (1.7.11); see D. J. Palmer in *Focus*, p. 60, and p. 66 above.

94 marrowless lacking the vital or essential part (because Banquo is dead). This line is the earliest citation under *OED Marrowless a'* (Schäfer).

95 speculation power of seeing, sight (*OED*

Speculation 1, quoting this line).

96 glare look fixedly and fiercely (*OED Glare v 2*, first cited from 1609).

97 Lady Macbeth's understanding of 'custom' is different from Banquo's and from that of 'all men' (3.3.12–14), but her attempt to save the social moment has some precedent; see Warwick's defence of Henry IV, 'Be patient, Princes, you do know these fits / Are with his Highness very ordinary' (2*H4* 4.4.114–15).

99 See 73 and 1.7.46–7. Folger adds the SD to the Ghost.

100 rugged Russian bear Muir (Additional Notes) compares 'hearts more rugged / Then is the Russian Beare' (Dekker, *Whore of Babylon* 2.1.42–3), which may be an imitation or evidence of some proverbial analogy (see also Dekker [and Thomas Middleton], *The Roaring Girl* 3.3.50–1, where 'a russian Beare' is metaphorically 'wild'). Compare 'bear-like I must fight the course' (5.7.2).

101 Hyrcan Hyrcanian. Hyrcania was the classical name for the area on the south-east coast of the Caspian Sea (Sugden); following Virgil, *Aeneid* iv, 367, its tigers became proverbial for fierceness (Dent, *PLED* 1287.02).

102 any shape but that any form but that of Banquo's ghost.

Shall never tremble. Or be alive again,  
And dare me to the desert with thy sword;  
If trembling I inhabit then, protest me  
The baby of a girl. Hence horrible shadow,  
Unreal mock'ry hence.

105

[*Exit Ghost of Banquo*]

Why so, being gone,  
I am a man again. – Pray you, sit still.

LADY MACBETH You have displaced the mirth, broke the good  
meeting

With most admired disorder.

MACBETH Can such things be,  
And overcome us like a summer's cloud,  
Without our special wonder? You make me strange  
Even to the disposition that I owe,  
When now I think you can behold such sights  
And keep the natural ruby of your cheeks,  
When mine is blanched with fear.

110

115

ROSS What sights, my lord?  
LADY MACBETH I pray you speak not; he grows worse and worse.  
Question enrages him. At once, good night.  
Stand not upon the order of your going,

<sup>105</sup> inhabit then,] F; inhabit, then F2–4    <sup>107</sup> SD] *Cam. (subst.)*; not in F; *Exit / after shadow* F2–4    <sup>107</sup> being] F; be  
F3–4    <sup>108</sup> again. – Pray] *Capell*; againe: pray F    <sup>117</sup> and worse.] *This edn*; & worse F; and worse; *Theobald*

<sup>104</sup> dare me to the desert challenge me (to fight you) in the desert. Muir compares 'I dare meet Surrey in a wilderness' (*R2* 4.1.74) and 'Hyrcanian deserts' (*MV* 2.7.41).

<sup>105</sup> inhabit take as a habit (*Lexicon*, which adds that 'habit' may mean either 'costume' or 'custom', but without support at *OED Inhabit*). The verb ordinarily means 'dwell, occupy' and the phrase, often emended, could mean 'trembling I stay indoors' or, figuratively, 'I harbour a single tremor' (NS).

<sup>105</sup> protest proclaim, denounce publicly. See 'yield thee coward' (5.8.23) and 'Do me right, or I will protest your cowardice' (*Ado* 5.1.147–8).

<sup>106</sup> baby doll, puppet (*OED Baby* 2).

<sup>107</sup> Unreal Shakespeare's neologism (Garner).

<sup>107</sup> mock'ry The syncopation is common; see Cercignani, pp. 272–3.

<sup>108</sup> Pray . . . still Macbeth addresses the company. Rowe added *The Lords rise*.

<sup>110</sup> admired astonishing, surprising. Lady Macbeth uses 'admired' in its earliest sense, which did not include the element of pleasure or esteem the word now connotes.

<sup>111</sup> overcome pass over (as a cloud does the sun); overwhelm, take by surprise (*OED Overcome* v 8b, citing only this line). More fully: 'The uncertain glory of an April day, / Which now shows all the beauty of the sun, / And by and by a cloud takes all away' (*TGV* 1.3.85–7).

<sup>112–13</sup> make me strange . . . disposition regard (or represent) me as being unlike my usual self; 'self-alienated' (Muir). Compare 'strange and self-abuse' (142).

<sup>113</sup> owe own.

<sup>115</sup> ruby redness (indicating health and the absence of fear).

<sup>116</sup> blanched whitened. Compare 5.3.11–12 and 5.3.14–17.

<sup>117–20</sup> Lady Macbeth again tries to make the uncanny social (see 53–4). For 117–18, compare 4.1.88 n.

<sup>118</sup> Question Questioning, interrogation.

<sup>119</sup> Stand not upon Do not be meticulous about (*OED Stand* v 74g, 'stand on', equivalent to *v* 78g, 'stand upon', where this line is quoted).

<sup>119</sup> order rank-determined precedence, protocol. Compare 'degrees' (1).

But go at once.

LENNOX Good night, and better health  
Attend his majesty.

LADY MACBETH A kind good night to all.

[*Exeunt*] Lords [and Attendants]

MACBETH It will have blood they say: blood will have blood.

Stones have been known to move and trees to speak.

Augures, and understood relations, have

By maggot-pies, and choughs, and rooks brought forth

The secret'st man of blood. What is the night?

LADY MACBETH Almost at odds with morning, which is which.

MACBETH How sayst thou that Macduff denies his person  
At our great bidding?

LADY MACBETH Did you send to him, sir?

MACBETH I hear it by the way, but I will send.

There's not a one of them but in his house

I keep a servant feed. I will tomorrow —

121 SD *Exeunt . . . Attendants*] Malone; Exit Lords. F 125 maggot-pies] F (Maggot Pyes) 129 bidding?] F3; bidding.  
F 130 hear] F (heare); heard Keightley 132-3 tomorrow — / And . . . will —] Halliwell (*subst.*); to morrow /  
(And . . . will) F

122 Proverbially, 'Blood will have blood' (Dent B458).

123 Earlier, Macbeth feared 'stones' would 'speak' and betray him (2.1.58). '[T]he idea of a speaking tree goes back to Virgil, *Aeneid* III, 22-68, but Shakespeare may have picked it up from Scot . . . xi.18, "Divine auguries were such, as . . . when trees spake, as before the death of Caesar" (Foakes).

124 Augures Auguries, predictions. The obsolete disyllabic form is needed for the metre.

124 understood comprehended.

124 relations i.e. the links between cause and effect (or between the flight of certain birds and the facts being divined). 'Augury' is specifically divination through interpreting the flight of birds, although the word had a less exact meaning in this period (see Scot quoted in 123 n. above).

125 maggot-pies magpies. The birds mentioned here can imitate human speech, and there is probably some memory of 'Wishe the kyng no evil in thy thought, and speake no hurt of the riche in thy privie chamber: for a byrde of the ayre shall betray thy voyce, and with her fethers shall she bewray thy wordes' (Eccles. 10.20), in which case the 'relations' (124) would be stories revealing a hidden murderer. Schanzer (pp. 225-6) sees an allusion to a popular folktale, the 'Tell-Tale Bird', or to classical legend. Compare Dionysa's contemptuous remark to Cleon, 'Be one of those that thinks / The petty

wrens of Tharsus will fly hence / And open this [the supposed murder of Marina] to Pericles' (*Per.* 4.3.21-3) and Machevil's equally contemptuous 'Birds of the Aire will tell of murders past' (Marlowe, *Jew of Malta* Prologue 16).

125 choughs Common name for various species of crow. Magpies and choughs are birds of ill omen and recall other ominous fowl: see 1.5.36, 2.2.15, 2.3.51-2, 3.2.51-3.

126 secret'st man of blood most successfully concealed murderer (Brooke).

126 What is the night? An echo of Banquo's words (2.1.1), and phrased as ominously.

127 at odds with striving with (*OED Odds sb* 3). Compare 'this odd-even and dull watch o'th'night' (*Oth.* 1.1.123).

128 How sayst thou What do you think.

128 denies refuses. Macduff's absence 'is a studied insult . . . [an] act of feudal defiance' (Michael Hawkins in *Focus*, pp. 166, 176).

129 send i.e. send a message or messenger (*OED Send v1* 8).

130 hear Keightley's emendation is possible because manuscript *heare* could be read as *heard*.

131 them the Scottish nobles.

132 feed bribed, paid a fee. Editors often print 'fee'd', but *OED Feed ppl a* does not recognise that form. This detail of spies everywhere appears in *Scotland*, p. 174b.

132 will 'go' is understood.

And betimes I will – to the weird sisters.  
 More shall they speak. For now I am bent to know  
 By the worst means, the worst; for mine own good,  
 All causes shall give way. I am in blood  
 Stepped in so far that should I wade no more,  
 Returning were as tedious as go o'er.  
 Strange things I have in head that will to hand,  
 Which must be acted ere they may be scanned.

135

LADY MACBETH You lack the season of all natures, sleep.

MACBETH Come, we'll to sleep. My strange and self-abuse  
 Is the initiate fear that wants hard use;  
 We are yet but young in deed.

140

*Exeunt*

### 3.5 Thunder. Enter the three WITCHES, meeting HECATE

FIRST WITCH Why how now, Hecate, you look angrily?

HECATE Have I not reason, beldams, as you are,

133 weird] *Theobald*; *weyard* F    135 worst; for] *Johnson* (*subst.*); worst, for F    144 in deed] *Theobald*; indeed F    Act 3, Scene 5    3.5] F (*Scena Quinta.*)    0 SD HECATE] F (*Hecat*)    2–3 are, / . . . over-bold? How] *Capell*; are? / . . . ouer-bold, how F

133 betimes speedily, soon (*OED* Betimes 4), but perhaps also ‘early in the morning’ (*OED* Betimes 2).

134–5 For . . . good These lines combine two proverbial expressions: ‘To know the worst is good’ and ‘It is good to fear the worst’ (Dent w915 and w912, respectively).

136–7 I am . . . so far Proverbially, ‘Having wet his foot he cares not how deep he wades’ and ‘Over shoes over boots’ (Dent f565.1 and s379).

140 scanned looked at closely. The word does double duty: ‘Strange things’ (139) must be done quickly before others can see them and before Macbeth himself can see them. Compare 1.4.50–3 and 3.2.46–7.

141 season period during which something happens (*OED* Season sb 12a); perhaps also ‘preservative’ (as salt seasons meat), but *OED* offers no support.

142–3 My strange . . . fear My inexplicable violation of who and what I am arises from a novice’s fear. ‘My strange and self-abuse’ is most plainly Macbeth’s perception of Banquo’s Ghost, which Macbeth now tries to dismiss as an hallucination. The grammar treats ‘strange’ and ‘self’ as adjectives modifying ‘abuse’; ‘strange’ may therefore

have the resonances of uncanniness it had in 82 and of self-alienation it may have in 112. See *OED* Initiate *ppl a* and *sb 1b*, quoting only this phrase. Proverbially, ‘Use makes mastery’ and ‘Custom makes sin no sin’ (Dent u24 and c934). See p. 53 above, n. 1.

143 wants lacks.

144 young in deed just begun in action. So far the Macbeths lack ‘hard use’ (143) of evil. Spoken in the theatre, F’s ‘indeed’ conveys both ‘in truth’ (= ‘indeed’) and ‘in action’ (= ‘in deed’); compare the wordplay on indeed/in deed at *Ant.* 1.5.14–16.

#### Act 3, Scene 5

Like earlier witch-scenes, this one is unlocalised, perhaps at some place near wherever Macbeth now resides. This scene, evidently preparing the audience for 4.1 and establishing time and place (see 15–16 and 22), is probably not by Shakespeare. See 4 n., 33 SD–35 SD n., and Textual Analysis, pp. 256–7 below.

0 SD See Supplementary Note on 1.2.0 SD.2, p. 239 below.

1 angrily angry, angrily (*OED* Angerly 2).

2 beldams hags, witches (*OED* Beldam, -dame 3).

Saucy and over-bold? How did you dare  
 To trade and traffic with Macbeth  
 In riddles and affairs of death?  
 And I the mistress of your charms,  
 The close contriver of all harms,  
 Was never called to bear my part  
 Or show the glory of our art?  
 And which is worse, all you have done  
 Hath been but for a wayward son,  
 Spiteful and wrathful, who, as others do,  
 Loves for his own ends, not for you.  
 But make amends now. Get you gone,  
 And at the pit of Acheron  
 Meet me i'th'morning. Thither he  
 Will come to know his destiny.  
 Your vessels and your spells provide,  
 Your charms and every thing beside.  
 I am for th'air. This night I'll spend  
 Unto a dismal and a fatal end.  
 Great business must be wrought ere noon.  
 Upon the corner of the moon  
 There hangs a vap'rous drop profound;  
 I'll catch it ere it come to ground;

5

10

15

20

25

**3** Saucy Impudent, ill-behaved.

**4** Hecate's speech now becomes tetrameter couplets, returning to doggerel pentameters at 34. Hunter notes that unlike the earlier witch-language this speech uses iambic rather than trochaic rhythms and calls it 'poetically very accomplished'.

**4 traffic** have dealings, be concerned (*OED* Traffic *v 2*), but also synonymous with 'trade'.

**7 close** secret, hidden.

**8 bear** take, undertake.

**10–13** NS notes that these lines have 'no relevance' to Macbeth but seem 'to echo jealous speeches by Hecate' in *Witch 1.2*.

**11 wayward** wilful, intractable. The 'wayward son' is presumably Macbeth (but see 10–13n.). See Supplementary Note on 1.3.30, pp. 239–40 below.

**13** Cares (about magic, prophecy, etc.) for his own purposes, not as an adept of, or believer in, the witches and their powers for themselves.

**15 pit** sunken place (especially associated with hell; see *OED* Pit *sb 1 4*). Compare 'Conscience and grace, to the profoundest pit!' (*Ham.* 4.5.133) and next note.

**15 Acheron** A river in the classical Hades (hell) and only metaphorically in Scotland.

**18 vessels** implements (e.g. cauldrons) for magic rites.

**18–19 spells . . . charms** incantations . . . magical verses. The words are a 'synonym pair' (Schäfer, p. 195).

**20 spend** use, employ.

**21 dismal** malign, sinister.

**21 fatal** Both 'destined' and 'destructive' (Brooke subst.)

**22 business** work (*OED* Business *sb 13*).

**24 vap'rous drop** i.e. 'the *virus lunare* . . . a foam which the moon was supposed to shed on particular herbs, or other objects when strongly solicited by enchantment' (Steevens<sup>3</sup>). Compare 'O sovereign mistress of true melancholy [i.e. the moon, one of Hecate's manifestations], / The poisonous damp of night disponge upon me' (*Ant.* 4.9.12–13); 'night' is 'vaporous' and dangerous at *The Rape of Lucrece* 771 and *MM* 4.1.57. For the spelling 'vap'rous', see 3.4.107n.

**24 profound** deep, with hidden qualities (Johnson subst.). The word is an obvious antonym for 'vap'rous' and, as Clarendon says, may be present mainly to rhyme with 'ground' (25).

And that distilled by magic sleights,  
 Shall raise such artificial sprites  
 As by the strength of their illusion  
 Shall draw him on to his confusion.  
 He shall spurn fate, scorn death, and bear  
 His hopes 'bove wisdom, grace, and fear.  
 And you all know, security  
 Is mortals' chiefest enemy.

*Music, and a song[, 'Come away, come away', within]*

Hark, I am called: my little spirit, see,  
 Sits in a foggy cloud, and stays for me.

[Exit] 35

FIRST WITCH Come, let's make haste; she'll soon be back again.

*Exeunt*

### 3.6 Enter LENNOX and another LORD

LENNOX My former speeches have but hit your thoughts  
 Which can interpret further; only I say

26 sleights F (slights) 33 mortals' F (Mortals) 33 SD This edn; Musicke, and a Song. F 35 SD Exit] Capell; Sing within. Come away, come away, &c. F Act 3, Scene 6 3.6] F (Scaena Sexta.) o SD LENNOX] F (Lenox.)

26 sleights tricks, artifices (*Lexicon*).

27 artificial cunning, deceitful (*OED Artificial adj 9*), but perhaps also 'made up, factitious' (*OED Artificial 3a*). The word suggests that the witches produce the apparitions (they are not independent or 'natural' demonic forces), or that the witches know the apparitions will produce misleading information. In some productions (e.g. William Gaskill's, Royal Court Theatre, London, 1966), the witches visibly manipulate puppets or other 'artificial' representations of the apparitions.

28 illusion Either (1) deception, delusion (*OED Illusion 2a*), or (2) condition of being deceived (*OED Illusion 2b*).

30 spurn despise, reject contemptuously (*OED Spurn v<sup>1</sup> 6*). The verb literally means 'kick' or 'trample'.

30-1 bear . . . 'bove sustain, cherish his hopes beyond. See the figurative meaning at *OED Bear v<sup>1</sup> 9*. Hecate implies that Macbeth's hopes will put him beyond the influence of prudence, divine forgiveness, or terror.

31 grace fate, destiny (*OED Grace sb 10*); God's favour or blessing (*OED Grace sb 11a*).

32-3 security . . . enemy Proverbially, 'The way to be safe is never to be secure' (Dent w152).

32 security confidence (with the implication of

'over-confidence, complacency').

33 SD-35 SD These lines are the principal evidence for Thomas Middleton's authorship of this scene: see o SD n., 4n., and Textual Analysis, pp. 255-6 below. NS (p. 88), describing F's two sds as 'obviously alternative', attributed one to the prompter; equally, the double sds might arise from incomplete revision, or from a text prepared for use in both a public (amphitheatre) and a private (hall) theatre.

35 foggy cloud Possibly a theatrical 'machine' that lifted the actor from the stage. See Textual Analysis, pp. 256-7 below.

#### Act 3, Scene 6

This unlocated scene implies that Macbeth knows of Macduff's flight to England (see 40-4), although that information apparently surprises and angers Macbeth in 4.1.140-1. See Textual Analysis, pp. 261-2 below. Like 2.4, this scene is chorric commentary; its verse 'is serenely harmonious, and its tranquillity contrasts with the turbulence' (Knights, p. 30) of 3.4 and 4.1.

o SD another LORD Compare the anonymous Old Man of 2.4.

1 hit coincided with, agreed with.

2 only I say i.e. I only say (Muir).

Things have been strangely borne. The gracious Duncan  
 Was pitied of Macbeth; marry, he was dead.  
 And the right-valiant Banquo walked too late,  
 Whom you may say, if't please you, Fleance killed,  
 For Fleance fled. Men must not walk too late.  
 Who cannot want the thought how monstrous  
 It was for Malcolm and for Donaldbain  
 To kill their gracious father? Damnèd fact,  
 How it did grieve Macbeth! Did he not straight  
 In pious rage the two delinquents tear,  
 That were the slaves of drink and thralls of sleep?  
 Was not that nobly done? Ay, and wisely too,  
 For 'twould have angered any heart alive  
 To hear the men deny't. So that I say,  
 He has borne all things well, and I do think  
 That had he Duncan's sons under his key –  
 As, an't please heaven, he shall not – they should find  
 What 'twere to kill a father. So should Fleance.  
 But peace, for from broad words, and 'cause he failed

<sup>4</sup> dead.] F (dead:)    <sup>5</sup> right-valiant] *Theobald*; right valiant F    <sup>6–7</sup> Whom you may . . . not walk too late] F (walke); not in Q1673    <sup>7</sup> fled.] F (fled:)    <sup>9</sup> Donaldbain] F (*Donaldbane*); thus throughout remainder of play    <sup>11</sup> Macbeth!] Capell; Macbeth? F    <sup>19</sup> an't] *Theobald*<sup>2</sup>; and't F    <sup>21</sup> 'cause] F (cause)

<sup>3</sup> borne endured, sustained. A transferred use of 'strangely' makes the line unclear: strange things have been suffered.

<sup>3</sup> gracious Duncan Hunter suggests that Lennox echoes Macbeth's own phrases here and in 'right-valiant Banquo' (5): an opportunity for the actor.

<sup>4</sup> pitied lamented.

<sup>4</sup> marry See 2.3.23 n.

<sup>4</sup> he was dead Duncan was dead. Macbeth 'pitied' Duncan after, not before, his death.

<sup>5</sup> right-valiant very valiant.

<sup>7</sup> Men . . . late All monosyllables, this understatement initiates a satiric restatement (7–20) of Macbeth's version of recent events. As much as 4.3, this semi-choric scene marks a turning-point for Macbeth's fortunes: formerly frightened (and silent) Scots begin to speak, though 'broad words' (21) are still dangerous and will remain so (see 4.2.17–22). For omissions here in Q1673 and Davenant, see Supplementary Note, p. 243 below.

<sup>8</sup> want lack. Technically, 'cannot' should read 'can', but the negative element in 'want' elicits denial ('cannot') which becomes intensification.

<sup>8</sup> monstrous Pronounced trisyllabically ('monsterous') for the metre.

<sup>10</sup> fact deed, action.

<sup>12</sup> pious loyal, dutiful (*OED* Pious 2, where the earliest citation is from 1626, but the Latin *pius* means 'dutiful'). The phrase 'pious rage' is almost an oxymoron.

<sup>13–14</sup> Did . . . sleep See 1.7.63–8.

<sup>13</sup> thralls slaves (*OED* Thrall *sb'* 1b, quoting this line).

<sup>15–16</sup> For . . . deny't The kind of double-talk needed if every listener may be a spy or a 'traitor': Lennox's remark means both that persons who believed Macbeth would be angered by the grooms' allegedly false denials and that the dead Duncan (who is not a 'heart alive') cannot confirm the grooms' innocence.

<sup>17</sup> borne Compare 3 and 3.1.81.

<sup>18</sup> under his key locked up, imprisoned.

<sup>19</sup> an't if it. F's 'and' was a common early modern English synonym for 'if'.

<sup>20</sup> So should Fleance i.e. were Macbeth to have Fleance 'under . . . key' (18), he would be condemned for murdering Banquo.

<sup>21</sup> peace hush, be silent.

<sup>21</sup> broad plain, unreserved. Compare 3.4.23 and n.

<sup>21</sup> 'cause because (aphetic form).

<sup>21</sup> failed The word recalls Macbeth's injunction (3.1.29) to Banquo, who did 'attend'.

His presence at the tyrant's feast, I hear  
 Macduff lives in disgrace. Sir, can you tell  
 Where he bestows himself?

LORD

The son of Duncan,  
 From whom this tyrant holds the due of birth,  
 Lives in the English court and is received  
 Of the most pious Edward with such grace,  
 That the malevolence of fortune nothing  
 Takes from his high respect. Thither Macduff  
 Is gone to pray the holy king upon his aid  
 To wake Northumberland and warlike Siward,  
 That by the help of these, with him above  
 To ratify the work, we may again  
 Give to our tables meat, sleep to our nights,  
 Free from our feasts and banquets bloody knives,  
 Do faithful homage and receive free honours,  
 All which we pine for now. And this report  
 Hath so exasperate their king that he  
 Prepares for some attempt of war.

LENNOX Sent he to Macduff?

25

30

35

40

**24** son] *Theobald*; Sonnes F    **31** Siward] F (*Seyward*); thus throughout play    **38** their] F; the *Hanmer*

**24** son Malcolm. Compare other mentions of Donaldbain, 3.1.32 and 5.2.7. Compositor B may have remembered 'Duncan's sons' (18).

**25** holds withholds.

**25** due what is owed.

**27** Edward Edward the Confessor (King of England, AD 1042–66).

**28–9** malevolence of fortune . . . high respect i.e. exile from Scotland and deprivation of the kingship have not affected the great esteem shown Malcolm (see *OED* Respect sb 16b).

**30** Is gone As 46–8 clarify, Macduff has departed for the English court, but has not yet (in 3.6) arrived.

**31** Northumberland . . . Siward *Scotland*, p. 175b, makes clear in text and margin that 'Siward' is the family name of the historically appropriate earls of Northumberland. Apparently, father (who died, historically, two years before Macbeth) and son are referred to here, though the son is later described as having 'lived but till he was a man' (5.9.6), making 'warlike' an odd epithet; Blackfriars speculates that 'Northumberland' = 'the people of this northern English county'.

**32** him above God.

**33** ratify confirm, make valid.

**34–5** Compare the homily, 'An Exhortacion

concernyng Good Ordre' (1547), regularly read aloud in church: 'Take awaye kynges, princes, rulers, magistrates, judges and such states of Gods ordre, no man shal ride or go by the high waie unrobbed, no man shall slepe in his awne house or bed unkillid, no man shall kepe his wife, children and possessions in quietnes' (R. B. Bond (ed.), *Certain Sermons or Homilies*, 1987, p. 161).

**35** The syntax is unusual: Free our feasts and banquets from bloody knives; 'banquets' may recall 'Banquo'.

**36** Do . . . homage Give faithful allegiance. The Lord implies that men render loyalty to Macbeth not out of faith and duty, but fear; see 5.2.19–20.

**37** pine yearn, long (*OED* Pine v 6).

**37** this report i.e. information about Malcolm's actions in England and Macduff's flight. The 'report' may be, however, Malcolm's account (to Edward) of events in Scotland.

**38** exasperate exasperated (see Abbott 342).

**38** their king King Edward, Northumberland's and Siward's ('their') king. This reading is controversial; see Textual Analysis, p. 261 below, and 'this report' (37 and n.).

**39** attempt attack, assault (*OED* Attempt sb 3a, citing this line).

LORD He did. And with an absolute, 'Sir, not I',  
 The cloudy messenger turns me his back  
 And hums, as who should say, 'You'll rue the time  
 That clogs me with this answer.'

LENNOX And that well might  
 Advise him to a caution t'hold what distance      45  
 His wisdom can provide. Some holy angel  
 Fly to the court of England and unfold  
 His message ere he come, that a swift blessing  
 May soon return to this our suffering country  
 Under a hand accursed.

LORD I'll send my prayers with him.      50  
*Exeunt*

#### 4.I Thunder. Enter the three WITCHES [with a cauldron]

FIRST WITCH Thrice the brindled cat hath mewed.

SECOND WITCH Thrice and once the hedge-pig whined.

41 'Sir . . . I,'] Pope (*subst.*); Sir . . . I F      43–4 'You'll . . . answer.'] *Theobald* (*subst.*); you'l . . . Answer. F      45 t'hold] F  
 (t hold)      Act 4, Scene 1 4.1] F (*Actus Quartus. Scena Prima.*)      o SD with a cauldron] *Padua, Rowe* (*subst.*)      i  
 brindled] F (brinded)      2 Thrice] F; Twice *Theobald*

41 absolute positive, decided (*OED Absolute*  
 11). Macduff is peremptory.

41 'Sir, not I' These are Macduff's words (Muir,  
 Additional Notes).

42 cloudy sullen, frowning (*OED Cloudy* 6b,  
 quoting *The Rape of Lucrece* 1084 and this line as the  
 earliest examples).

42 turns me his back This phrase is slightly  
 confusing for two reasons: the Lord continues to  
 report an event he apparently did not witness di-  
 rectly, and he employs an 'ethical dative' ('me') to  
 emphasise his astonishment at the messenger's dis-  
 courtesy and to convey that reaction – 'Can you  
 imagine? he turned his back.' See Peter J. Gillett in  
*Reader*, p. 119.

43 hums murmurs discontentedly (see *OED*  
 Hum v<sup>1</sup> 2a).

43 rue the time regret the occasion. The line  
 probably puns on the herbs thyme and rue; compare  
 'Rue and time grow both in one garden' (Dent R198,  
 citing only *John* 3.1.323–5).

44 clogs burdens, hampers (*OED Clog* v 3).

45 caution taking heed, precaution (*OED Cau-*  
*tion* sb 5)

49–50 suffering . . . accursed i.e. country suf-  
 fering under an accursed hand. For the grammar,  
 Muir cites 'As a long-parted mother with her child'  
*(R2* 3.2.8).

#### Act 4, Scene 1

The location of this scene is as doubtful as its  
 narrative connection with 3.6 (see Textual Analysis,  
 pp. 261–2 below). Hecate says it will be the 'pit of  
 Acheron' (3.5.15), and it is an outdoor scene (horses  
 gallop up at 139) and a place where the cauldron and  
 apparitions may exist, but also an interior ('come in,  
 without there' (134)), where a lock and knock may  
 be imagined (46), a place where Lennox and pre-  
 sumably other courtiers are within earshot. The  
 Padua promptbook stipulates the needed cauldron,  
 and Rowe identifies the scene as 'A dark Cave, in  
 the middle a great Cauldron burning'. The witches'  
 'cooking' inverts and contrasts with the banquet of  
 3.4 (see Knight, *Imperial*, p. 138, and Michael  
 Hawkins, 'History, politics and *Macbeth*', in *Focus*,  
 p. 166). Garrick, Macklin, and others developed  
 elaborate sets for this scene. On various theatrical  
 versions of Macbeth's behaviour here, see p. 79  
 above.

1 brindled Having fur marked by streaks of a  
 darker colour. F's 'brinded' is archaic.

2 Thrice Theobald emended to 'Twice' (so that  
 'Twice and once' would = three times) because  
 'three and nine are the Numbers us'd in all  
 Inchantments, and magical operations'; Compositor  
 B's eye might have caught 'Thrice' (1), but the  
 repetition is also aurally effective.

2 hedge-pig hedgehog. This line is *OED*'s earli-

THIRD WITCH Harpier cries, "Tis time, 'tis time."

FIRST WITCH Round about the cauldron go;

In the poisoned entrails throw.

5

Toad, that under cold stone

Days and nights has thirty-one

Sweltered venom sleeping got,

Boil thou first i'th'charmèd pot.

ALL Double, double toil and trouble;

10

Fire burn, and cauldron bubble.

SECOND WITCH Fillet of a fenny snake,

In the cauldron boil and bake:

Eye of newt, and toe of frog,

Wool of bat, and tongue of dog,

15

Adder's fork, and blind-worm's sting,

Lizard's leg, and howlet's wing,

For a charm of powerful trouble,

Like a hell-broth, boil and bubble.

ALL Double, double toil and trouble,

20

Fire burn, and cauldron bubble.

THIRD WITCH Scale of dragon, tooth of wolf,

Witches' mummy, maw and gulf

<sup>3</sup> "Tis . . . time."] *Cam.*; 'tis . . . time. F      5 throw.] *Rowe*; throw F      7 thirty-one] *Capell*; thirty one: F      8 Sweltered] F (Sweltred)      10, 20, 35 double] *Steevens*; double, F      23 Witches'] *Theobald*?; Witches F

est citation for the word. Fairies sing a song guarding the sleeping Titania from 'spotted snakes with double tongue' and 'Thorny hedgehogs . . . Newts and blind-worms' (*MND* 2.2.9–11); compare Timon's accusatory sequence 'toad . . . adder . . . newt . . . eyeless venomous worm' (*Tim.* 4.3.181–2) and 16.

<sup>3</sup> Harpier Presumably the name of a familiar (see 1.1.9n.); compare 'Graymalkin' and 'Paddock' (1.1.9–10).

<sup>7</sup> thirty-one In Elizabethan pronunciation, a true rhyme with 'stone' (6); see 5.9.41–2 and Cercignani, p. 136.

<sup>8</sup> Sweltered Exuded like sweat (as if) by heat (*OED* Sweltered *ppl a* 1, treating this meaning as a Shakespearean coinage and later uses as quotations from or allusions to it).

<sup>8</sup> venom poison. Toads were popularly supposed to be poisonous; compare *AYLI* 2.1.13. Agnis Thompson, one of the witches James VI interrogated, allegedly 'gathered the venome' of 'a blacke Toade' to poison the Scottish king (*Newes*, p. 16).

<sup>10</sup> toil severe labour (*OED* Toil *sb<sup>1</sup>* 3a). Other

meanings are relevant: 'dispute, controversy' (*OED* Toil *sb<sup>1</sup>* 1) – witches were often accused of spreading dissension among neighbours; 'net' or 'snare for wild beasts' (*OED* Toil *sb<sup>2</sup>* 1–2). Compare 4.2.34.

<sup>12</sup> Lengthwise slice or section ('Fillet') of a snake from marshlands (fens). See illustration 11, p. 55 above.

<sup>14</sup> newt A small, tailed amphibian similar to the salamander.

<sup>15</sup> Wool Soft under-hair, down (*OED* Wool *sb* 1c, quoting 'The powder of the wooll of a Hare burned . . . fasteneth the haire from falling off' (*Topsell*, p. 274)).

<sup>16</sup> fork split tongue (supposed to carry venom). See 2 and n.

<sup>16</sup> blind-worm slow-worm (a reptile with tiny eyes); adder (*OED*).

<sup>17</sup> howlet owl, owlet (not archaic according to *OED*).

<sup>18</sup> charm incantation, magical rhyme; compare 3.5.18–19.

<sup>23</sup> mummy mummia, 'a pitch used for embalming, and, hence, embalmed flesh' (*Webster*, *White Devil* 1.1.16n., and see *White Devil* 2.1.249: 'Pre-

Of the ravined salt-sea shark,  
 Root of hemlock, digged i'th'dark;  
 Liver of blaspheming Jew,  
 Gall of goat, and slips of yew,  
 Slivered in the moon's eclipse;  
 Nose of Turk, and Tartar's lips,  
 Finger of birth-strangled babe,  
 Ditch-delivered by a drab,  
 Make the gruel thick and slab.  
 Add thereto a tiger's chawdron  
 For th'ingredience of our cauldron.

25

30

24 salt-sea] Capell; salt Sea F 34 cauldron] F (Cawdron)

serve her flesh like mummia'); preparation for magical purposes, made from dead bodies (*Lexicon*). The only witchcraft statute of James's reign, 1 Jac. I, c. 12 (1604), specified death for persons who exhumed bodies and their parts for use in witchcraft, as the Scottish witches James interrogated had allegedly done (*Newes*, pp. 16–17); compare James's description of how the Devil causes witches 'to ioynt dead corpses, & to make powders thereof' (*Daemonologie*, p. 43). The Jacobean statute is reprinted in Robbins, pp. 280–1, and compared with those of Henry VIII and Elizabeth I (Robbins, p. 166). The handkerchief Othello gave Desdemona 'was dy'd in mummy which the skilful / Conserved of maidens' hearts' (*Oth.* 3.4.74–5).

23 maw stomach.

23 gulf 'that which devours or swallows up anything' (*OED Gulf sb 3*); a bawdy meaning, 'vagina', was well established (Williams). The phrase 'maw and gulf' may be hendiadys for 'gulf-like maw', hence 'voracious appetite' (*OED Gulf sb 3b*) or 'ravenous appetite' (Muir).

24 ravined Compare 2.4.28 and n.

25 hemlock poisonous herb.

25 digged i'th'dark Lucianus will 'kill' the Player King with poison, a 'mixture rank, of midnight weeds collected, / With Hecat's ban thrice blasted, thrice infected' (*Ham.* 3.2.257–8). The apothecary was warned against 'superstitiouslie' selecting 'choyse days or hours . . . in gathering . . . herbes or other simples for the making of his drouges' (Andreas Gerardus (?), *The True Tryall and Examination of a mans owne selfe*, trans. Thomas Newton (1586), p. 39); in another witchcraft scene, several demonic ingredients 'must be taken in th'increasing of the Moone: / Before the rising of the Sun, or when the same is down' (*Fidele and Fortunio* lines 373–4). Compare 'moon's eclipse' (28) and n.

26 blaspheming i.e. denying that Jesus was the

Messiah. With Turks and Tartars (29), Jews and the 'birth-strangled babe' (30) would be especially vulnerable because unbaptised as Christians; see the Good Friday Collect: 'Have mercy upon all Jews, Turks, infidels, and heretics . . . And so fetch them home . . . that they may be saved' (*The Elizabethan Prayer Book*, ed. John E. Booty, 1976, p. 144). The Duke (or Doge) similarly associates Turks, Tartars, and Jews in *MV* 4.1.32–4.

27 goat Traditionally, a lecherous, irascible beast (compare 37n.), hence its gall, or bile (see 1.5.46n.), is appropriate for the witches' poisonous brew.

27 yew The yew tree was long associated with death (see Gerard, p. 1188, cited by H. T. Price, 'The yew-tree in *Titus Andronicus*', *N&Q* 208 (1963), 98–9), churchyards, and funerals. Compare 'My shroud of white, stuck all with yew' (*TN* 2.4.55) and 'Lay a garland on my hearse of the dismal yew' (*Maid's Tragedy* 2.1.72).

28 Slivered Cut off as a sliver or slip (from a tree).

28 moon's eclipse Traditionally, a lunar eclipse was the best time to collect magical and medicinal herbs. Compare 25 and n.

30 birth-strangled i.e. throttled by the umbilical cord during labour, or killed after birth by a mother who could not support her infant.

30 babe The word rhymed with the modern pronunciation of 'drab' (31) and 'slab' (32); see Cercignani, p. 178.

31 Ditch-delivered Born in a ditch (without the customary attendance of midwife and female friends or relatives).

31 drab prostitute; slattern.

32 slab semi-solid, viscid. This line is the sole use by Shakespeare and earliest citation at *OED Slab a<sup>1</sup>*.

33 chawdron entrails. This line is the sole use by Shakespeare.

34 ingredience See 1.7.11n.

ALL Double, double toil and trouble,  
Fire burn, and cauldron bubble.

SECOND WITCH Cool it with a baboon's blood,  
Then the charm is firm and good.

*Enter HECATE, and the other three Witches*

HECATE O well done! I commend your pains,  
And every one shall share i'th'gains;  
And now about the cauldron sing  
Like elves and fairies in a ring,  
Enchanting all that you put in.

*Music, and a song, 'Black spirits, etc.'*

[*Exeunt Hecate and the other three Witches*]

SECOND WITCH By the pricking of my thumbs,  
Something wicked this way comes;  
Open locks, whoever knocks.

*Enter MACBETH*

MACBETH How now, you secret, black, and midnight hags!  
What is't you do?

ALL THE WITCHES A deed without a name.

38 SD HECATE] F (*Hecat*) 43 SD.1] F (*Musicke and a Song. Blacke Spirits, &c.*) 43 SD.2] Muir; not in F; Hecate retires / Globe; Exit Hecate / Dyce 48 SH ALL THE WITCHES] Oxford; All F (and for remainder of scene)

37 SH, 44 SH In 1.1 and 1.3, the sisters speak in numerical sequence except when responding to First Witch's questions or commands; 4.1 has established a similar pattern, varied by the chorus (10–11, 20–1, 35–6). To preserve the earlier pattern, the speech at 37 certainly, and the one at 44 possibly, should therefore be assigned to First Witch, though it is odd to find the same witch speaking consecutively for her triad. Some Shakespearean dialogue was probably deleted when 38 SD–43 SD was inserted (see n.).

37 baboon Through demonic contraries, this animal's notoriously 'hot' blood appropriately cools the witches' brew: baboons 'are evill mannered and natured, wherefore also they are pictured to signifie wrath . . . they are as lustfull and venerous as goats, attempting to defile all sorts of women' (Topsell, p. 11). Compare the association of baboons and human lust at *TNK* 3.5.34–5 and 132, *Per.* 4.6.178–9, and Dekker (and Thomas Middleton), *The Roaring Girl* 4.2.129. The word is accented on the first syllable.

38 SD–43 SD F's text and associated SDS are almost certainly not by Shakespeare, but belong to a pre-Folio revision-adaptation of *Macbeth* designed to increase the play's spectacle. See Textual Analysis, pp. 257–9 below, and Appendix 2, p. 270.

38 SD *the other three Witches* Many editors delete these figures as superfluous, but they appropriately dignify Hecate's entrance and seem to be singers (unlike the witches of 1.1 and 1.3), needed for the song of 43 SD.1.

41 sing The cue for musicians (who may have been visible to the original audiences) to prepare to play. Compare 128n.

42 ring Dancing fairies were supposed to create 'fairy rings', circles of darker grass in lawns or fields; compare *MND* 2.1.9, 86.

43 SD.2 Some editors direct Hecate (and presumably 'the other three Witches' who entered with her) to remain on stage, silent and inactive until the final demonic dance (see 131 SD n.), while other editors (Oxford, Brooke) and a few twentieth-century productions (e.g. Peter Hall and J. R. Brown's, National Theatre, London, 1978) incorporate here an extensive interlude from *Witch*.

44 pricking tingling.

45 Many editors add *Knocking* after 'comes', but Second Witch may speak metaphorically.

46 Scot records 'A charme to open locks' (xii, 14).

47 black baneful, malignant, deadly (*OED* Black a 8).

MACBETH I conjure you by that which you profess,  
 Howe'er you come to know it, answer me.  
 Though you untie the winds and let them fight  
 Against the churches, though the yeasty waves  
 Confound and swallow navigation up,  
 Though bladed corn be lodged and trees blown down,  
 Though castles topple on their warders' heads,  
 Though palaces and pyramids do slope  
 Their heads to their foundations, though the treasure  
 Of nature's germen tumble altogether  
 Even till destruction sicken: answer me  
 To what I ask you.

FIRST WITCH Speak.

SECOND WITCH Demand.

THIRD WITCH We'll answer.

FIRST WITCH Say, if thou'dst rather hear it from our mouths,  
 Or from our masters?

MACBETH Call 'em, let me see 'em.

FIRST WITCH Pour in sow's blood, that hath eaten  
 Her nine farrow; grease that's sweaten

55 warders') F (Warders) 56 slope] F; stoop *conj.* Capell ('Notes', sig. 2civ) 58 germen] F (Germaine); germins Theobald. See Commentary 61 thou'dst] Capell; th'hadst F 62 masters?] Capell; masters. F; masters? Pope

49 conjure call on solemnly (*Lexicon*), entreat in the name of something sacred.

49 profess claim to have knowledge of (*OED* Profess v 5).

52 yeasty foamy, frothy (*OED* Yeasty 3, quoting this line as its first example).

53 navigation shipping, or ships considered collectively (sole use in Shakespeare and earliest citation at *OED* Navigation 4).

54 bladed corn i.e. corn when the blade still surrounds the ear. Staunton cited 'Some [affirm] that they [witches] can transferre corne in the blade from one place to another' (Scot, 1, 4).

54 lodged flattened, broken down (by wind and rain).

55 warders guardians, persons in charge.

56 pyramids Shakespeare and other contemporary writers probably confused pyramids with obelisks; see W. Watkiss Lloyd, *N&Q* 83 (1891), 283, and 'a Pyramis or piller' (Thomas Bell, *The Anatomy of popish Tyranny* (1603), sig. H2v).

56 slope bend down. This line is the sole use in Shakespeare and the earliest citation at *OED* Slope v<sup>1</sup> 3.

58 F ends this line with a comma that makes all

the 'though'-clauses govern 'Even till destruction sicken' (59); the punctuation adopted here treats that phrase as a consequence of 58.

58 germen 'seeds or material essences of things' (Hunter), the material (as opposed to divine or spiritual) sources from which all creation springs. W. C. Curry, *Shakespeare's Philosophical Patterns*, 1937, pp. 30–49, explains the patristic sources for this idea. The word is apparently a collective noun (not recorded in *OED* Germen before 1759), but F elsewhere makes the word plural: 'Crack nature's moulds, all germins spill at once' (*Lear* 3.2.8, where some editors read 'germens'). Compare 'seeds of time' (1.3.56) and 'make Nature fight / Within herself' (*Queens* 1.35–6).

59 sicken i.e. become ill through consuming too much. Destruction is personified as a glutton.

61 thou'dst thou hadst.

62 masters The sisters have not previously suggested they had 'masters' or superiors (here, the Apparitions or the entities that control them).

63–4 Pour . . . farrow The natural history is accurate: sows sometimes eat their young ('farrow').

64 sweaten exuded (Shakespeare invented the -en form for the rhyme).

From the murderer's gibbet throw  
Into the flame.

ALL THE WITCHES Come high or low:  
Thyself and office deftly show.

*Thunder. [Enter] FIRST APPARITION, an armed Head*

MACBETH Tell me, thou unknown power —

FIRST WITCH He knows thy thought;  
Hear his speech, but say thou nought.

FIRST APPARITION Macbeth, Macbeth, Macbeth: beware  
Macduff,

Beware the Thane of Fife. Dismiss me. Enough. *Descends*

MACBETH Whate'er thou art, for thy good caution, thanks;

Thou hast harped my fear aright. But one word more —

FIRST WITCH He will not be commanded. Here's another,  
More potent than the first.

70

75

*Thunder. [Enter] SECOND APPARITION, a bloody Child*

SECOND APPARITION Macbeth, Macbeth, Macbeth.

MACBETH Had I three ears, I'd hear thee.

SECOND APPARITION Be bloody, bold, and resolute; laugh to  
scorn

65 murderer's] F (Murderers) 67 SD *Thunder . . . Head* F (*Thunder. / 1. Apparition . . . Head*) 68 power -] *Rowe*; power. F 70 SH] F (*1 Appar.*) 71 SD *Descends*] *Rowe*; *He Descends* F 73 more -] *Rowe*; more. F 75 SD *Thunder . . . Child* F (*Thunder. / 2 Apparition . . . Bloody Childe*) 76 SH] F (*2 Appar.*) 77 P'd] F (Il'd) 78 SH] F (*Appar.*)

65 **gibbet** The gallows, a structure on which the condemned were hanged; structure from which hanged bodies were suspended and displayed (*OED* *Gibbet sb<sup>1</sup> 1*). On the latter meaning, see *Scotland*, p. 169a (quoted in 1.2.23 n.).

67 **office** duty; particular responsibility (*OED* *Office sb* 2a-b). Compare 'Do you your office, or give up your place' (*MM* 2.2.13) and 2.1.14 n.

67 SD-93 For the contemporary context of this prophetic episode, see Jaech.

67 SD **armed Head** armoured, or helmeted, head. Critics, variously, have supposed the Apparition represents Macbeth's head (at the play's end), the mature Macduff, or Macdonald's head (at the play's beginning).

71 **Thane of Fife** Macduff.

71 SD This SD (like 80 SD and 93 SD) suggests that the Apparition exits through a trap-door in the stage. Compare 105 and n.

72 **caution** word of warning (*OED* *Caution sb 3*).

73 Thou hast Probably elided ('Thou'st'); see Cercignani, pp. 288-9.

73 **harped** guessed, hit upon (*OED* *Harp v 7*). This line is the sole use by Shakespeare in this sense and *OED*'s earliest citation.

73 **But one word more** Compare 99-104 and 1.3.68 ff.

75 SD **bloody Child** This Apparition may represent: baby Macduff, born by Caesarean section; Fleance, attacked by the Murderers; the phantasmagoric children of Banquo who will succeed Macbeth; any children who threaten tyrant Macbeth. It might thus prefigure (Halio) Macduff's murdered son (see 4.2); Halio cites various more elaborate possibilities.

77 The line may sound comical, but it stresses Macbeth's eagerness: even superhuman senses ('three ears') would await this information; alternatively, it may be bravado: no amount of supernatural speech or human hearing will frighten Macbeth.

78-9 Macbeth may 'scorn' 'The power of man' because all men are 'of woman born'. See Adelman, *passim*.

The power of man, for none of woman born  
Shall harm Macbeth.

*Descends* 80

MACBETH Then live, Macduff, what need I fear of thee?  
But yet I'll make assurance double sure  
And take a bond of fate: thou shalt not live,  
That I may tell pale-hearted fear it lies,  
And sleep in spite of thunder.

*Thunder.* [Enter] THIRD APPARITION, a Child crowned, with a tree  
in his hand

What is this,

85

That rises like the issue of a king  
And wears upon his baby-brow the round  
And top of sovereignty?

ALL THE WITCHES Listen, but speak not to't.

THIRD APPARITION Be lion-mettled, proud, and take no care  
Who chafes, who frets, or where conspirers are.  
Macbeth shall never vanquished be until  
Great Birnam Wood to high Dunsinane hill  
Shall come against him.

*Descends*

MACBETH That will never be:  
Who can impress the forest, bid the tree  
Unfix his earthbound root? Sweet bodements, good.

95

82 assurance] Pope; assurance: F 85 SD Thunder... hand] F (*Thunder / 3 Apparition... Childe Crowned... Tree... hand*) 89 sh] F (3 Appar.) 89 lion-mettled] Q1673 (Lion-mettled); Lyon metled F 93 SD Rowe; Descend F 95 bodements, good.] F (bodements, good); bodements! good! Rowe

79 of woman born all humankind. This and similar biblical phrases (Job 14.1, 15.14, 25.4, Matt. 11.11, Luke 7.28) add solemnity and ambiguity to the Apparition's supposed promise. Compare 5.7.12, 14, and 'one of woman born' (5.8.13).

82 assurance The word has two main groups of meanings: 'the action of assuring' (what the Apparitions do to Macbeth); 'the state of being assured' (Macbeth's response to the Apparitions). See *OED* Assurance.

83 bond contract, legal surety. By killing Macduff, Macbeth will make it impossible for Fate to break the promise ('bond') given by the Second Apparition. Compare the meanings of 'bond' at 3.2.49 and n.

84 pale-hearted Compare 2.2.68, 3.4.116, 5.3.11, 5.3.15–17, and nn.

84 it Fear (personified); the Second Apparition.

85 SD The immediate *Thunder* makes Macbeth's 'in spite of thunder' ironic, or bravado.

86 issue progeny, children.

87 round royal crown, recalling 'golden round' (1.5.26).

88 speak not to't Traditionally, witnesses to conjured figures were warned not to interrogate them; when Helen of Troy appears, Faustus advises the Scholars, 'Be silent then, for danger is in words' (Marlowe, *Dr Faustus* 5.1; line 1696), and Steevens<sup>2</sup> cites 'be mute, / Or else our spell is marred' (*Temp.* 4.1.126–7). Compare 3.4.117–18.

89 lion-mettled having a lion's qualities (here, the lion's traditional courage).

90 Who Whoever (Abbott 251).

92 Dunsinane The word sometimes receives primary stress on the first syllable (5.2.12), sometimes on the second, as here. Forman (II, 338) spelled it 'Dunston Anyse'.

93–100 Macbeth adopts the Apparitions' couplets.

94 impress press-gang, force to join an army (see *OED* Impress v<sup>2</sup> a, where this line is the second citation after 1H4 1.1.21).

95 Sweet bodements Attractive prophecies, happy predictions. This line is the earliest citation at *OED* Bodement.

Rebellious dead, rise never till the wood  
 Of Birnam rise, and our high-placed Macbeth  
 Shall live the lease of nature, pay his breath  
 To time and mortal custom. Yet my heart  
 Throbs to know one thing. Tell me, if your art  
 Can tell so much, shall Banquo's issue ever  
 Reign in this kingdom?

100

**ALL THE WITCHES** Seek to know no more.

**MACBETH** I will be satisfied. Deny me this,  
 And an eternal curse fall on you. Let me know.

[Cauldron descends.] *Hautboys*

Why sinks that cauldron? And what noise is this?

105

**FIRST WITCH** Show!

**SECOND WITCH** Show!

**THIRD WITCH** Show!

**ALL THE WITCHES** Show his eyes and grieve his heart,  
 Come like shadows, so depart.

110

[Enter] *a show of eight kings, and [the] last with a glass in his hand;*  
*Banquo's Ghost following]*

**MACBETH** Thou art too like the spirit of Banquo. Down!  
 Thy crown does sear mine eyeballs. And thy hair,

96 *Rebellious dead*] F; *Rebellious Head Theobald; Rebellion's head Hanmer* 97 *our high-placed*] Rowe; *our high plac'd F; on's high place Oxford* 104 SD] Rowe (subst.) after 102; not in F 104 SD *Hautboys*] F (*Hoboyes*) at right margin opposite 104 110 SD] Cam. (subst.); *A shew of eight Kings, and Banquo last, with a glasse in his hand.* F 112 *hair*] F (*haire*); air Johnson; heir conj. Jackson

96 **Rebellious dead** i.e. Banquo and his ghost (compare 3.4.75–83 and 3.4.93–6). Duncan faced living rebels (see e.g. 1.2.9ff.), Macbeth faces the resurrected dead.

97 **our high-placed** our high-ranking. The phrase is odd, Oxford's emendation ingenious.

98 **lease of nature** i.e. the limited time nature grants one to live (Macbeth's natural life span). Compare 3.2.38 and 49; 'if I might have a lease of my life for a thousand years' (2H6 4.10.5–6); 'No man has lease of his life' (Dent M327).

99 **mortal custom** i.e. the usual (customary) length of human ('mortal') life.

103 **I will be satisfied** I must have an answer.

105 **sinks** An implicit SD suggesting that the cauldron disappears through a trap-door in the stage; the playing of hautboys (104 sd; see 1.6.0 SD and n.) conceals the sounds of the trap-door and, perhaps, of the Apparitions' entry.

110 SD.1 **eight kings** When *Macbeth* was composed, eight Stuart kings and one Stuart queen had ruled Scotland, but James VI and I's mother, Mary

Stuart, Queen of Scots, does not appear, perhaps because including her would recall her execution in 1587 (at Elizabeth's implicit order) and that event was politically too sensitive to be acknowledged (see Brooke, pp. 73–4). These spectral beings pass across the stage and exit by the time Macbeth says 'What, is this so?' (123). For the entire SD, see Supplementary Note, p. 243 below.

110 SD.1 **glass** magic crystal permitting visions of the future (see 119–20); not a looking-glass or mirror. See *OED Glass* sb<sup>1</sup> 8e and compare 'like a prophet / Looks in a glass that shows . . . future evils' (MM 2.2.94–5).

111 **Thou . . . Banquo** i.e. the first king too closely resembles Banquo's 'spirit' or ghost (frightening Macbeth as the ghost had in 3.4 and confirming his fear that Banquo's sons will rule Scotland).

112 **hair** F's 'haire' was an available spelling for 'heir' (the question of inheritance that so concerns Macbeth here), but the grammar of 'thy' and 'Thou' (113), both apparently addressed to the second king, make 'heir' less likely.

Thou other gold-bound brow, is like the first;  
 A third, is like the former. — Filthy hags,  
 Why do you show me this? — A fourth? Start, eyes!      115  
 What, will the line stretch out to th'crack of doom?  
 Another yet? A seventh? I'll see no more.  
 And yet the eighth appears, who bears a glass  
 Which shows me many more. And some I see,  
 That two-fold balls and treble sceptres carry.      120  
 Horrible sight! Now I see 'tis true,  
 For the blood-boltered Banquo smiles upon me,  
 And points at them for his.

[*Exeunt show of kings and Banquo's Ghost*]  
 What, is this so?

FIRST WITCH Ay, sir, all this is so. But why

Stands Macbeth thus amazedly?

125

Come, sisters, cheer we up his sprites,  
 And show the best of our delights.  
 I'll charm the air to give a sound,  
 While you perform your antic round  
 That this great king may kindly say,  
 Our duties did his welcome pay.      130

113 gold-bound brow] F (Gold-bound-brow)      116 to th'crack] F3; to'th'crack F      118 eighth] F3–4; eight F, F2      122 blood-boltered] F (Blood-bolter'd); blood-baltered Brooke      123 SD] Oxford (subst.); not in F      123 What,] Pope; What? F      124 SH FIRST WITCH] F (1); HECATE Oxford (conj. Cam.)

113 gold-bound brow i.e. head surrounded ('bound') by a crown ('gold').

115 Start Jump from your sockets (so Macbeth does not have to witness Banquo's succession); see 'I could a tale unfold whose lightest word / Would . . . / Make thy two eyes like stars start from their spheres' (*Ham.* 1.5.15–17).

116 crack of doom thunder ('crack') accompanying the Last Judgement ('doom'). Compare 2.3.72 and n.

118 eighth F3's 'eighth' is consistent with the other ordinal numbers in the passage, but F's 'eight' might refer to the number of Stuart males who had ruled Scotland (see 110 SD.1 n.). Ordinals and cardinals were used interchangeably; see e.g. 'Harry the Eight' (Jonson, *Alchemist* 1.1.113).

120 two-fold balls and treble sceptres two balls and three sceptres. The line may refer to King James (see Supplementary Note, pp. 243–4 below), but whatever the precise referent, Macbeth sees a long line of increasingly powerful kings. See illustration 12, p. 59 above.

122 blood-boltered matted, clogged with blood

(from the twenty wounds of 3.4.27 and 3.4.81). For 'blood-boltered', see *OED* Blood *sb* 21, where a link between 'bolter' and the archaic 'balter' is suggested but not substantiated; see also *OED* Balter *v* 4: 'clot or clog with anything sticky'.

123 his i.e. his sons. The *show* presents Banquo's royal descendants.

124–31 SD These lines explaining Hecate's and the witches' departure were probably written by Thomas Middleton; see Textual Analysis, pp. 257–9 below.

125 amazedly as in a maze (see 2.4.19 and 5.1.68 n.). The word rhymed with modern pronunciation of 'why' (124).

126–31 The witches offer a macabre version of a Jacobean courtly entertainment.

126 sprites spirits. See 2.3.73 n.

128 A cue for music (see 41 and n.).

129 antic round bizarre dance. See 1.3.33 n.

131 duties expressions of deference or respect.

131 did his welcome pay showed him the respect due to a monarch.

*Music. The Witches dance, and vanish*

MACBETH Where are they? Gone? Let this pernicious hour,  
Stand aye accursèd in the calendar.  
Come in, without there!

*Enter LENNOX*

LENNOX What's your grace's will?

MACBETH Saw you the weird sisters?

LENNOX No, my lord.

MACBETH Came they not by you?

LENNOX No indeed, my lord.

MACBETH Infected be the air whereon they ride,  
And damned all those that trust them. I did hear  
The galloping of horse. Who was't came by?

LENNOX 'Tis two or three, my lord, that bring you word  
Macduff is fled to England.

MACBETH Fled to England?

LENNOX Ay, my good lord.

MACBETH [Aside] Time, thou anticipat'st my dread exploits;  
The flighty purpose never is o'er took  
Unless the deed go with it. From this moment,  
The very firstlings of my heart shall be

131 SD] F (*Musicke . . . Dance . . .*); *Globe adds / with Hecate*

135 weird] *Theobald; Weyard* F

131 SD Some editors treat this interlude as a dance of six witches and Hecate (see 43 SD.2 and n.), but Shakespeare's original three witches earlier performed macabre dance routines and may again do so alone here.

132-3 On beliefs about propitious and unlucky days, see *John* 3.1.81-95 and Thomas, pp. 615-23.

133 aye ever.

135 Macbeth expects Lennox to recognise the witches; knowledge of them has apparently spread beyond Banquo and Macbeth.

137 air . . . ride A common belief about witches, but perhaps also a hint of early stage effects (see 3.5.34-5 and 3.5.35 n.).

138-9 I did hear / The galloping of horse See 3.3.8.n.

139 galloping Earliest citation under *OED* Galloping *vbl sb* (Schäfer).

141 Macbeth's ignorance here is inconsistent with speeches in 3.6; see Textual Analysis, pp. 261-2 below.

143-55 This speech may be an aside, with 154-5 addressed to Lennox, but Dessen, 'Problems', p. 143, cautions: 'To designate the speech as an aside . . . is to enforce . . . one choice at the expense

of other . . . options.' The question and command of 154-5 mark a substantial break, although they may indicate that Macbeth has become aware of Lennox, having delivered the preceding lines 'aloud' and not 'aside'.

143 thou anticipat'st you forestall, deal with beforehand (*OED* Anticipate v 3, where this line is the earliest citation); Blackfriars speculates that the word also means 'accelerates'.

143 dread terrible, fearsome.

143 exploits Stressed on the second syllable (Cercignani, p. 38).

144-5 The flighty . . . with it Trying to rationalise the metaphors, Capell (*Notes*, p. 23) found 'something like blunder' in these lines: 'if purpose and deed go together, *o'ertaking* can not be predicated of either'.

144 flighty swift, quick. Compare Lady Macbeth's description of Macbeth's attitude before the murder of Duncan (1.7.51-4).

146-7 The very firstlings . . . of my hand The division of motive and act into heart (or head) and hand is characteristically Shakespearean; various combinations (along with 'tongue') serve as images of sincerity, insincerity, determination, in-

The firstlings of my hand. And even now  
 To crown my thoughts with acts, be it thought and done.  
 The castle of Macduff I will surprise;  
 Seize upon Fife; give to th'edge o'th'sword  
 His wife, his babes, and all unfortunate souls  
 That trace him in his line. No boasting like a fool;  
 This deed I'll do before this purpose cool,  
 But no more sights. — Where are these gentlemen?  
 Come, bring me where they are.

150

155

*Exeunt*

## 4.2 Enter [LADY MACDUFF], her SON, and ROSS

LADY MACDUFF What had he done, to make him fly the land?

ROSS You must have patience, madam.

LADY MACDUFF He had none;

His flight was madness. When our actions do not,  
 Our fears do make us traitors.

ROSS You know not

Whether it was his wisdom or his fear.

LADY MACDUFF Wisdom? To leave his wife, to leave his babes,  
 His mansion, and his titles in a place

5

154 sights. —] Capell; sights. f.; flights. — Collier<sup>2</sup>; sprites. White      Act 4, Scene 2 4.2] f (Scena Secunda.)      O SD LADY  
 MACDUFF] Rowe; Macduffes Wife f      1 SH LADY MACDUFF] Rowe (subst.); Wife f (and throughout scene)

decision, and the like. Compare, among many examples, 'Yea . . . didst let thy heart consent, / And consequently thy rude hand to act' (*John* 4.2.239–40) and Claudius's praise of Polonius, 'The head is not more native to the heart, / The hand more instrumental to the mouth' (*Ham.* 1.2.47–8).

146 *firstlings* first things (here, impulses or thoughts); *firstborn*. See *OED* Firstling a–b. Macbeth's figurative language invokes children – those who will not succeed him, those (of Macduff) he will kill, those (of Banquo's line) who will rule Scotland. See p. 18 above.

148 *crown* add the finishing touch to (*OED* Crown v<sup>1</sup> 9). Echoes (1.3.142 and 1.5.40) link this violent moment with Macbeth's earlier career.

148 *be it thought and done* Proverbially, 'No sooner said than done' (Dent s117).

150 *Fife* See 1.2.48 n.

152 *trace him* follow him, walk in his footsteps (*OED* Trace v<sup>1</sup> 5).

152 *line* descendants, collateral relatives; 'those that may be traced up to one common stock from

which his line is descended' (Heath, p. 401).

152 *No boasting like a fool* Compare 2.1.60–1.

154 *sights* Macbeth apparently refers to the 'show' (110 SD.1–2), but editors have been puzzled. The echo of 'sight' (1.3.89) can be emphasised vocally, as it was in Richard Eyre's production (Royal National Theatre, London, 1993).

## Act 4, Scene 2

This scene takes place in some private room of Macduff's castle in Fife (4.1.149–50). Macduff's flight, his family's murder, and his testing by Malcolm are recorded in *Scotland*, pp. 174b–175b, but there Macduff knows his loss *before* he flees to England, where he hopes Malcolm will help 'revenge the slaughter'. Eighteenth- and nineteenth-century productions omitted all or most of this scene; Davenant wrote a substitute.

7 *titles* entitlements; assertions of right, claims (*OED* Title sb 7c, not citing this line). Lady Macduff refers to more than her husband's titles of nobility.

From whence himself does fly? He loves us not.  
 He wants the natural touch, for the poor wren,  
 The most diminutive of birds, will fight,  
 Her young ones in her nest, against the owl.

10

All is the fear, and nothing is the love;  
 As little is the wisdom, where the flight  
 So runs against all reason.

ROSS

My dearest coz,

I pray you school yourself. But for your husband,  
 He is noble, wise, judicious, and best knows  
 The fits o'th'season. I dare not speak much further,  
 But cruel are the times when we are traitors  
 And do not know ourselves, when we hold rumour  
 From what we fear, yet know not what we fear,  
 But float upon a wild and violent sea,  
 Each way and none. I take my leave of you;  
 Shall not be long but I'll be here again.  
 Things at the worst will cease, or else climb upward  
 To what they were before. My pretty cousin,

15

20

25

<sup>10</sup> diminutive] F (diminutive)    <sup>20</sup> not . . . fear,] F (feare,); not . . . fear; *Theobald*    <sup>21</sup> sea,] Capell; Sea F    <sup>22</sup> way and none] *NS* (*conj. Clarendon*); way, and moue F

**9** wants the natural touch i.e. lacks the sensibility or feeling that is the effect of being part of nature; perhaps a reference to Macduff's motherlessness.

**9** wren The word begins a series of avian analogies and metaphors; compare 2.3.51 n., 32–6 below, and the appearances of birds real and metaphoric throughout the play.

**11** Her . . . nest i.e. her young ones being in the nest (and therefore vulnerable to the owl); an absolute construction. Editors have noted that wrens do not behave this way.

**14** coz cousin (a general, friendly appellation, not a specific term of kinship).

**15** school discipline, bring under control (*OED* School v<sup>1</sup> 4b, quoting this line).

**17** fits See 3.2.23 and n.; Steevens<sup>3</sup> cites Menenius's advice, 'The violent fit a'th' time craves . . . physic' (*Cor.* 3.2.33).

**17–22** I dare . . . and none Modern punctuation hobbles F's complexity. F ends a major clause or sentence at 'ourselves' with a colon, but elsewhere uses only commas to separate clauses before the stop at 'none'; it therefore leaves uncertain whether the 'when'-clauses refer back to 'times' (18) or forward to 'what' (20).

**19–22** For a similar rhetoric of indecision, compare Isabella's speech in *MM* quoted at 1.3.140–1 n.

**19** do not know ourselves Like 2.2.76, this

phrase may recall the proverbial 'Know thyself' (Dent K175).

**19–20** when . . . From what we fear i.e. when we create rumours out of those things we fear. Compare 'Present fears / Are less than horrible imaginings' (1.3.136–7); here, the imaginings generate rumours of their own truth.

**22** Each way and none i.e. (move) in many directions yet settle on no one direction. Circumstances ('the times' (18)) and fears ('what we fear' (20)) urge us to act, but we dart this way and that without finding a satisfactory course of action. In Elizabethan handwriting, 'none' and 'move' (written as 'moue'; see F) are differentiated by a single pen-stroke. The phrase has been much emended, but since it echoes the oracular 'nothing is, / But what is not' (1.3.140–1), a graphically plausible and Delphic emendation seems appropriate.

**23** Shall It shall. Some versions (e.g. Roman Polanski's 1971 film) literalise Ross's promise and make him an accomplice of the murderers (76 sd).

**24–5** Things . . . before A stoic counsel recalling Edgar's 'The lamentable change is from the best, / The worst returns to laughter' and his own rebuttal, 'The worst is not / So long as we can say, "This is the worst"' (*Lear* 4.1.5–6, 27–8). Compare the proverbial 'When things are at the worst they will mend' (Dent T216).

**25** cousin i.e. Lady Macduff's son.

Blessing upon you.

LADY MACDUFF Fathered he is, and yet he's fatherless.

ROSS I am so much a fool, should I stay longer

It would be my disgrace and your discomfort.

I take my leave at once.

*Exit*

LADY MACDUFF Sirrah, your father's dead,

30

And what will you do now? How will you live?

SON As birds do, mother.

LADY MACDUFF What, with worms and flies?

SON With what I get I mean, and so do they.

LADY MACDUFF Poor bird, thou'dst never fear the net, nor lime,  
the pitfall, nor the gin.

35

SON Why should I, mother? Poor birds they are not set for.

My father is not dead for all your saying.

LADY MACDUFF Yes, he is dead. How wilt thou do for a father?

SON Nay, how will you do for a husband?

LADY MACDUFF Why, I can buy me twenty at any market.

40

SON Then you'll buy 'em to sell again.

LADY MACDUFF Thou speak'st with all thy wit, and yet i'faith  
with wit enough for thee.

SON Was my father a traitor, mother?

LADY MACDUFF Ay, that he was.

45

SON What is a traitor?

LADY MACDUFF Why, one that swears and lies.

SON And be all traitors, that do so?

LADY MACDUFF Every one that does so is a traitor and must be  
hanged.

50

30 SD] F (*Exit Rosse*)    48 so?] F3; so. F

27 He is 'Fathered' (= procreated), but he lacks a father (he is 'fatherless'). For the verbal inventiveness, see Kathleen Wales in *Reader*, pp. 186 and 189 n. 33. See also pp. 22–3 above.

29 Ross apparently says he will 'disgrace' himself and 'discomfort' Lady Macduff through compassionate tears (compare 'fool' (28)), but the line could also refer to their joint danger from Macbeth's spies (see 3.4.132). Compare Macduff mourning his family's destruction (4.3.224 and 233).

30 Brooke understands (App. A, p. 224) F as employing prose from this line through 50, but while it may be true that there is 'a sharp contrast of tone after Ross's exit' the shift to prose need not occur instantly. The next lines may be half-verse, half-prose, though Capell felt 'a prose so near approaching to verse is not sufferable' (Capell, *Notes*, p. 24).

30 Sirrah Here, a bantering form of abuse; compare 3.1.46 and n.

30 dead Macduff is metaphorically 'dead' because he is absent and cannot aid his family.

34 lime Lime placed on twigs and branches causes birds' feet to stick to the tree.

35 pitfall A trap for birds in which a cover falls over a hole.

35 gin snare, trap (for game).

36 Poor . . . for Inferior birds have no traps set for them.

41 Lady Macduff could have no use for twenty husbands unless she plans to resell (deceive) them, as in the proverbial 'To be bought and sold' (Dent B787) and in *RJ* 5.3.305.

47 swears vows, takes an oath.

SON And must they all be hanged that swear and lie?

LADY MACDUFF Every one.

SON Who must hang them?

LADY MACDUFF Why, the honest men.

SON Then the liars and swearers are fools, for there are liars and  
swearers enough to beat the honest men and hang up them. 55

LADY MACDUFF Now God help thee, poor monkey, but how wilt  
thou do for a father?

SON If he were dead, you'd weep for him; if you would not, it were  
a good sign that I should quickly have a new father. 60

LADY MACDUFF Poor prattler, how thou talk'st!

*Enter a MESSENGER*

MESSENGER Bless you, fair dame. I am not to you known,

Though in your state of honour I am perfect;

I doubt some danger does approach you nearly.

If you will take a homely man's advice,

Be not found here. Hence with your little ones. 65

To fright you thus, methinks I am too savage;

To do worse to you were fell cruelty,

Which is too nigh your person. Heaven preserve you,

I dare abide no longer.

*Exit*

LADY MACDUFF Whither should I fly?

I have done no harm. But I remember now

I am in this earthly world where to do harm

Is often laudable, to do good sometime

Accounted dangerous folly. Why then, alas,

Do I put up that womanly defence,

75

59 you'd] F (you'l'd)    66–7 ones. / . . . thus, methinks . . . savage;] F2–4 (subst.); ones / . . . thus. Me thinkes . . . sauage:  
F    70 SD] F (*Exit Messenger*)    70 Whither] F (Whether)

57 monkey Term of playful contempt, especially for a child (*OED* Monkey 2b), based, presumably, on childish mimicry.

61 prattler chatterer.

63 Though I know very well your status and reputation (Brooke subst.).

64 doubt fear, suspect.

65 homely simple, plain, unpolished (*OED* Homely a 4b, quoting this line), but perhaps implying 'common' (not 'gentle' or aristocratic).

67 methinks it seems to me.

68 fell deadly.

69 nigh near, close to. The messenger refers to the deadly danger already threatening Lady Macduff.

72–4 She recognizes . . . that conventional moral categories may be inadequate to actual human dilemmas . . . Macduff's abandonment of his family and disloyalty to his king may be "to do good" (C. W. Slights, *The Casuistical Tradition*, 1981, p. 122).

To say I have done no harm?

*Enter MURDERERS*

What are these faces?

A MURDERER Where is your husband?

LADY MACDUFF I hope in no place so unsanctified,  
Where such as thou mayst find him.

A MURDERER

He's a traitor.

SON Thou liest, thou shag-haired villain.

A MURDERER

What, you egg!

80

Young fry of treachery!

[*Kills him*]

SON

He has killed me, mother,

Run away, I pray you!

*Exit [Lady Macduff] crying 'Murder'[, pursued by  
Murderers with her Son]*

76 SD] NS; *Enter Murtherers*. F (after faces) 77 SH, 79 SH, 80 SH] F (*Mur.*); 1. M. / Capell; *First Mur. / Cam.* 80 shag-haired] Hudson (conj. Steevens<sup>2</sup>); shagge-ear'd F 81 SD *Kills him*] Brooke; *not in F* 82 SD *Exit . . . Son*] Brooke; *Exit crying Murtherer F*

76 I have The metre requires contraction ('I've').

76 SD MURDERERS Customarily, two in number and not always identifiable as being drawn from those in 3.1, 3.3, or 3.4; see 23n.

76 What are these faces? Lady Macduff may rebuke her son, but the Murderers' entrance may be misplaced in F, in which case she addresses them and comments on their grim appearance. The staging adopted here assumes the latter.

77 SH, 79 SH, 80 SH F does not differentiate the Murderers, and its SH, *Mur.*, might indicate that they are to speak in unison (compare 3.1.76, 114, and 138), but the dialogue here seems better suited to a single speaker.

78 unsanctified unhallowed, not consecrated (to religious uses). Lady Macduff may regard the murderers as unbelievers, or as men excommunicated for previous crimes, or as hunted men who have temporarily left 'sanctuary' (hence 'unsanctified') to attack her; on the 'holy privilege / Of blessed sanctuary', see R3 3.1.40–56.

80 shag-haired with long, shaggy hair. Such hair was a villain's mark; compare 'a shag-hayr'd craftie Kerne' (2H6 TLN 1673), 1.2.13 ('kerns'), and the nightmare vision of two Gunpowder plotters: 'Two Monsters skullies, which never plotted good, / Grim, gasty, pale, shag-hayre, sulphured eyes . . .' (Edward Hawes, *Trayterous Percyes and Catesbyes Prosopopeia* (1606), sig. A3r); the adjective is also

used of villains in *King Leir* (1605), ed. W. W. Greg, MSR, 1907, line 2277, and *The Faire Maide of Bristow* (1605), sig. EIV. Two anecdotes originally told of Thomas Cromwell are conflated and applied to Thomas More when he condemns one Falkner, 'a ruffian' with 'shag hair', to Newgate prison until he cuts his hair (V. Gabrieli and G. Melchiori (eds.), *STM*, 1990, 3.1.46 SD and 3.1.105). F's 'shag-ear'd' has been modernised as 'shag-eared' and explained as the result of judicial punishment: 'convicted villains frequently had their ears slit' (Brooke). Convicted individuals' noses were slit; ears, however, were bored or cropped and not, apparently, slit or slashed (so as to produce a grotesquely shaggy appearance). See, for instance, the punishment for vagabonds in the statute 27 Hen. VIII c. 25 (1535) and L. O. Pike, *A History of Crime in England*, 2 vols., 1873–6, II, 73 and 97–8. Phonological evidence (Cercignani, pp. 233–5) cannot discriminate between 'shag-eared' and 'shag-haired' for F's reading.

80 egg Contemptuous epithet for a young person (*OED* Egg sb 2b, citing only this line and another from 1835); the Murderer agrees with the proverbial 'An evil bird lays an evil egg' (Dent B376). Once again, avian imagery links this moment with the Son's earlier conversation and with all the ominous and ironically positive birds of the play.

81 fry offspring, progeny.

4.3 *Enter MALCOLM and MACDUFF*

MALCOLM Let us seek out some desolate shade and there  
Weep our sad bosoms empty.

MACDUFF Let us rather

Hold fast the mortal sword and like good men  
Bestride our downfall birthdom; each new morn,  
New widows howl, new orphans cry, new sorrows  
Strike heaven on the face, that it resounds  
As if it felt with Scotland and yelled out  
Like syllable of dolour.

MALCOLM What I believe, I'll wail;

What know, believe; and what I can redress,  
As I shall find the time to friend, I will.

What you have spoke, it may be so perchance.

This tyrant, whose sole name blisters our tongues,  
Was once thought honest; you have loved him well –  
He hath not touched you yet. I am young, but something  
You may discern of him through me, and wisdom

5

10

15

Act 4, Scene 3 4.3] F (*Scaena Tertia.*) 4 downfall] F; down-fall'n Johnson (conj. Warburton) 15 discern] F  
(discerne); deserve *Theobald*

## Act 4, Scene 3

The setting is uncertain: near enough the out-of-doors to make seeking a 'desolate shade' (1) plausible, but close to a room of state where King Edward touches for the Evil (139 ff.) This scene often puzzles audiences and has an unsettling effect upon the play's treatment of its own representation; see pp. 88–93 above.

3 fast firmly, tightly.

3 mortal fatal, death-dealing.

3–4 like good men . . . birthdom The image is of soldiers standing astride a fallen comrade to protect him from further injury; Capell (*Notes*, p. 24) cites Falstaff's request before the Battle of Shrewsbury: 'Hal, if thou see me down in the battle and bestride me, so; 'tis a point of friendship' (1H4 5.1.121–2).

4 downfall downfallen, fallen from prosperity. The modern form is 'downfallen', but 'downfall' is needed metrically and also occurs in F at 1H4 1.3.135 (where Q reads 'down-trod').

4 birthdom inheritance, birthright; perhaps 'native kingdom'. This line is *OED*'s sole citation for the word.

8 Like Similar, identical.

8 dolour sadness.

8 wail bewail, lament.

10 to friend as a friend, on my side (*OED Friend sb* 6b).

11 spoke See 1.4.3 n.

12 sole alone, unaccompanied (*OED Sole a* 6). Macbeth's name alone is sufficient to blister 'our tongues'. The line may recall the proverbial 'Report has a blister on her tongue' (Dent R84).

14 He hath not touched you yet Either (1) Macduff follows Macbeth loyally and is therefore safe, or (2) Macduff continues to love Macbeth only because Macduff has not yet been 'touched' (as Malcolm has).

15 You may discern of him through me Macduff may see ('discern') a future Macbeth in Malcolm. Theobald's emendation is plausible ('discerne' and 'discerue' are easily confused in manuscript) and treats the line as Malcolm's fear that Macduff seeks advancement through betraying Malcolm to Macbeth, but the change devalues 'I am young' (14).

15 and wisdom 'i.e. you may discern the wisdom' (Brooke), or 'and 'tis wisdom' (Upton, pp. 314–15).

To offer up a weak, poor, innocent lamb  
T'appease an angry god.

MACDUFF I am not treacherous.

MALCOLM But Macbeth is.

A good and virtuous nature may recoil  
In an imperial charge. But I shall crave your pardon:  
That which you are, my thoughts cannot transpose;  
Angels are bright still, though the brightest fell.  
Though all things foul would wear the brows of grace,  
Yet grace must still look so.

MACDUFF I have lost my hopes.

MALCOLM Perchance even there where I did find my doubts.

Why in that rawness left you wife and child,  
Those precious motives, those strong knots of love,  
Without leave-taking? I pray you,  
Let not my jealousies be your dishonours,  
But mine own safeties; you may be rightly just,  
Whatever I shall think.

MACDUFF Bleed, bleed, poor country.

Great tyranny, lay thou thy basis sure,  
For goodness dare not check thee; wear thou thy wrongs,

17 god] F (God)

16 innocent lamb In the Christian tradition, the lamb emblematises innocence, and a proverbial expression, 'As innocent as a lamb' (Dent L.34.1), appears about the time *Macbeth* was composed.

18–20 Malcolm seems to worry that Macduff's originally noble nature has decayed under Macbeth's royal command, but the lines may also reflect upon Macbeth's own degeneration and thus recall Holinshed's praise (*Scotland*, pp. 171b and 172b) for the historical Macbeth's first ten years on the throne.

19 recoil fall back, degenerate (*OED Recoil* v<sup>1</sup> 3b, quoting as its last example 'Be revenged, / Or she that bore you was no queen, and you / Recoil from your great stock' (*Cym.* 1.6.126–8)). Shakespeare uses the word only three times in this sense; it might have been suggested here by *Scotland*, p. 175b, where 'recoiled' describes Macbeth's withdrawal to Dunsinane.

20 charge burden.

20 crave beg, ask (*OED Crave* v 2b); not 'yearn for' (*Crave* v 5).

21 Compare 'your mistrust cannot make me a traitor' (*AYLI* 1.3.56).

22 the brightest Satan, one of whose names is

'Lucifer' (light-bearer). Brightness is no assurance of truth: 'for Satan himselfe is transouermed into an angel of lyght. Therefore it is no great thyng though [if] his ministers also be transouermed as the ministers of righteousnesse' (2 Cor. 11.14–15); compare Banquo's worry, 1.3.122–3.

23 brows face, or appearance (a figuratively extended meaning).

25 there i.e. Scotland, or under Macbeth's tyranny, or Macduff's leaving of his family (?).

26 rawness imperfection, incompleteness. This line is the only citation for a figurative meaning under *OED Rawness* 1. Clarendon compares Williams's challenge to the king concerning dead soldiers' 'children rawly left' (*H5* 4.1.141). Here, the 'rawness' is partly social: Macduff did not bid his family good-bye, but the aborted ceremony also stands for a failure of love and duty (compare Lady Macduff's anger, 4.2.1 ff.).

29 jealousies suspicions, mistrust (*OED Jealousy* 5).

32 basis foundation, base. This line is the first citation at *OED Basis* 8.

33 check limit, control.

20

25

30

The title is affeered. Fare thee well, lord,  
I would not be the villain that thou think'st  
For the whole space that's in the tyrant's grasp,  
And the rich East to boot.

35

**MALCOLM**

Be not offended.

I speak not as in absolute fear of you:  
I think our country sinks beneath the yoke;  
It weeps, it bleeds, and each new day a gash  
Is added to her wounds. I think withal  
There would be hands uplifted in my right,  
And here from gracious England have I offer  
Of goodly thousands. But for all this,  
When I shall tread upon the tyrant's head,  
Or wear it on my sword, yet my poor country  
Shall have more vices than it had before,  
More suffer, and more sundry ways than ever,  
By him that shall succeed.

40

**MACDUFF**

What should he be?

**MALCOLM** It is myself I mean – in whom I know  
All the particulars of vice so grafted  
That when they shall be opened, black Macbeth

45

34 The] F; Thy Malone 34 affeered] Hanmer; affear'd F

34 The title is affeered Either (1) the epithet ('tyranny') is confirmed (= 'affeered'), or (2) the valid claim and claimant are frightened ('afeared': see *OED* Afear). These two possibilities, one referring to Macbeth, the other to Malcolm, depend upon a pun: affeered/afeared. Malone's emendation, 'Thy', is graphically possible, but F's sentence seems to alternate between clauses devoted to Macbeth ('Great tyranny . . .' and 'wear thou . . .') and clauses devoted to Malcolm ('For goodness . . .' and 'The title . . .').

37 to boot in addition.

38 absolute perfect, entire (*OED* Absolute 4, 5, 6, especially 5).

39–100 The sequence of lament for Scotland, of vices recounted and elaborated, and of Macduff's responses, closely follows *Scotland*, pp. 174b–175b, but may also owe something to Samuel's attempt to dissuade the Israelites from adopting monarchical government (1 Sam. 8.9–20), a passage quoted and extensively discussed by James VI in *True Lawe*, pp. 62–7.

39–41 I think . . . wounds These lines may allude to Jesus's suffering on the way to crucifixion.

40 gash The word recalls the 'twenty entrenched gashes' (3.4.27) inflicted upon Banquo.

43 England i.e. the King of England, Edward the Confessor.

44 thousands i.e. thousands of soldiers (to support Malcolm's claim).

48 sundry various, diverse.

49 What Who (Abbott 254, citing numerous examples of 'What is he' to mean 'Of what kind or quality is he'). Macduff is not dehumanising or treating as a monster Macbeth's hypothetical successor.

50–1 myself . . . so grafted Compare 'I will chide no breather in the world but myself, against whom I know most faults' (*AYLI* 3.2.280–1).

51 grafted 'made part of my being' (NS). The botanical metaphor describes the gardener's joining of one plant or species with another; compare the 'ingrafted love' Antony 'bears to Caesar' (*JC* 2.1.184) and 'an engraff'd madness' (*TNK* 4.3.48–9).

52–4 Many proverbial analogies and phrases – 'As white as snow' (Dent s591), 'To make black white' (Dent b440), 'As pure as snow' (Dent 11), 'As innocent as a lamb' (Dent 134.1) – may make Malcolm's speech plainly ironic.

52 opened i.e. born, made known. The metaphor is of a flower's bud (see 'grafted' (51 and n.)), but

Will seem as pure as snow, and the poor state  
Esteem him as a lamb, being compared  
With my confineless harms.

MACDUFF Not in the legions  
Of horrid hell can come a devil more damned  
In evils to top Macbeth.

MALCOLM I grant him bloody,  
Luxurious, avaricious, false, deceitful,  
Sudden, malicious, smacking of every sin  
That has a name. But there's no bottom, none, 60  
In my voluptuousness: your wives, your daughters,  
Your matrons, and your maids could not fill up  
The cistern of my lust, and my desire  
All continent impediments would o'erbear  
That did oppose my will. Better Macbeth, 65  
Than such an one to reign.

MACDUFF Boundless intemperance  
In nature is a tyranny; it hath been  
Th'untimely emptying of the happy throne  
And fall of many kings. But fear not yet  
To take upon you what is yours: you may  
Convey your pleasures in a spacious plenty  
And yet seem cold. The time you may so hoodwink.  
We have willing dames enough; there cannot be  
That vulture in you to devour so many  
As will to greatness dedicate themselves,

59 smacking] F; smoaking F2-4    72 cold.] F; cold, *Theobald*    72 hoodwink.] F (hoodwink:)    74 you] *Collier*; you, F

may also include 'dissection . . . Malcolm and Macbeth as moral cadavers' (Mackinnon, p. 73).

55 confineless unconfined, limitless. This line is the sole citation under *OED* Confineless (Schäfer).

55 legions multitudes, hordes. The word is used biblically of angels (Matt. 26.53); compare 22.

58 Luxurious Lecherous, lascivious. See 'rumpfed' (1.3.5 and n.).

59 Sudden Rash, impetuous (*OED* Sudden 2b).

59 smacking having the flavour of. The later Folios' reading is a variant spelling.

63 cistern (water) tank; large vessel (especially for holding liquor). The Shakespearean connotations are always negative; see *Oth.* 4.2.61, *Ant.* 2.5.95, and *TNK* 5.1.46-7.

64 continent self-restraining (*OED* Continent a 1). The word has resonances – of 'containing' and

'land-mass' – which join with 'cistern' (63) to make Malcolm's imagined lust a watery force of nature overwhelming the land; compare the aftermath of Duncan's murder (2.3.106-7 and n.).

66-7 Boundless intemperance . . . tyranny Limitless uncontrol is a form of natural tyranny (?). Macduff analogises 'voluptuousness' (61) or 'lust' (63), private sins, with 'tyranny', a political sin. His next words (67-9) suggest how the two cannot be separated in the behaviour (and the fate) of a king.

71 Convey Carry on, manage (*OED* Convey v<sup>1</sup> 12).

72 hoodwink blindfold, deceive.

73-6 there cannot be . . . inclined i.e. you cannot be so voracious as to consume the many women who will volunteer to serve (sexually) your high rank, once it is known you desire them.

Finding it so inclined.

MALCOLM With this, there grows  
 In my most ill-composed affection such  
 A stanchless avarice that, were I king,  
 I should cut off the nobles for their lands,  
 Desire his jewels, and this other's house,  
 And my more-having would be as a sauce  
 To make me hunger more, that I should forge  
 Quarrels unjust against the good and loyal,  
 Destroying them for wealth.

MACDUFF This avarice  
 Sticks deeper, grows with more pernicious root  
 Than summer-seeming lust, and it hath been  
 The sword of our slain kings; yet do not fear,  
 Scotland hath foisons to fill up your will  
 Of your mere own. All these are portable,  
 With other graces weighed.

MALCOLM But I have none. The king-becoming graces –  
 As justice, verity, temp'rance, stableness,  
 Bounty, perseverance, mercy, lowliness,  
 Devotion, patience, courage, fortitude –  
 I have no relish of them, but abound  
 In the division of each several crime,

76 **With this** Along with this.

77 **affection** disposition, state of mind (*OED*  
*Affection sb* 4).

78 **stanchless** unstoppable. ‘Stanch’ refers particularly to stopping the flow of liquids (water, blood, and other bodily fluids especially); this line is *OED*’s earliest citation for the word (Schäfer). Compare ‘continent’ (64 and n.).

79 **cut off** put to death, kill.

81-2 **my more-having . . . hunger more** Proverbially, ‘The more a man has the more he desires’ (Dent M1144).

82 **forge** fabricate (Clarendon).

85 **Sticks** See 3.1.51 n.

85 **root** The metaphor recalls ‘For love of money, is the roote of all evyll’ (1 Tim. 6.10), echoed in Holinshed, where Makduffe comments on Malcolm’s claim of ‘unquenchable avarice’: ‘avarice is the root of all mischief’ (*Scotland*, p. 175a).

86 **summer-seeming lust** i.e. ‘lust befits [= beseems] summer’ (Vivian Salmon in *Reader*, p. 201); ‘summer-seeming’ evokes ideas of heat and brevity (so *Lexicon*, following Capell, *Notes*, p. 25).

87 **sword of our slain kings** i.e. the means by

which our kings died. Macduff may refer, anachronistically, to the numerous later Scottish kings who were murdered (see p. 13 above), or to kings who died in wars motivated by greed.

88 **foisons** harvests.

89 **mere** very.

89 **portable** bearable (*OED Portable a* 2, quoting ‘How light and portable my pain seems now’ (*Lear* 3.6.108), hence ‘acceptable’).

90 **weighed balanced** (*OED Weigh v<sup>1</sup>* 11b); counterbalanced (*OED Weigh v<sup>1</sup>* 16e).

92 **verity** truthfulness, sincerity.

92 **temp'rance** For the syncopation, see 3.4.107 n.

93 **perseverance** Accented on the second syllable.

93 **lowliness** humility, meekness.

95 **relish trace** (*OED Relish sb<sup>1</sup>* 1c); slightest hint.

96 **division partition(s), sub-division(s)**. This line is *OED*’s only evidence for a figurative meaning from musical vocabulary: ‘variation, modulation’ (*OED Division 7b*).

96 **several individual, particular**.

Acting it many ways. Nay, had I power, I should  
 Pour the sweet milk of concord into hell,  
 Uproar the universal peace, confound  
 All unity on earth.

MACDUFF O Scotland, Scotland!

100

MALCOLM If such a one be fit to govern, speak.

I am as I have spoken.

MACDUFF Fit to govern?

No, not to live. O nation miserable!  
 With an untitled tyrant, bloody-sceptred,  
 When shalt thou see thy wholesome days again,  
 Since that the truest issue of thy throne  
 By his own interdiction stands accursed  
 And does blaspheme his breed? Thy royal father  
 Was a most sainted king; the queen that bore thee,  
 Oft'ner upon her knees than on her feet,  
 Died every day she lived. Fare thee well,  
 These evils thou repeat'st upon thyself  
 Hath banished me from Scotland. O my breast,  
 Thy hope ends here.

105

MALCOLM Macduff, this noble passion,

110

Child of integrity, hath from my soul

115

<sup>100</sup> Scotland!] *Rowe*; Scotland. F    <sup>102 SH</sup> MACDUFF] *Rowe* (*subst.*); *Mac.* F    <sup>104</sup> bloody-sceptred] *Pope*; bloody Sceptred F    <sup>105</sup> again,] *Theobald*; againe? F    <sup>107</sup> accursed] F2–4 (*subst.*); accuse F    <sup>109</sup> sainted king] F (*Sainted King*)    <sup>113</sup> Hath] F; Have *Rowe*

98 milk of concord Compare 1.5.15 and n.

99 Uproar Throw into confusion. Accent on second syllable. This line is the first of two citations at *OED* Uproar *v 1*.

100 confound Accent on second syllable.

104 untitled without right to the title ('king'). The earliest citation at *OED* Untitled *ppl a<sup>1</sup>*.

105 wholesome healthy, free from taint (*OED* Wholesome 3b, quoting this line as its second example and suggesting an element also of sense 1: 'salutary', 'beneficial').

106 issue child, offspring.

107 interdiction authoritative prohibition (*OED* Interdiction 1). The word has a specialised meaning in Scottish law (various forms of restraint placed upon people incapable of managing their own affairs) inapplicable here, but the Scottish association has attracted editors.

107 accursed Some editors print 'accus'd', but *OED* offers no evidence for F's 'accust' as a past

tense of 'accuse', or a form of 'cuss' (which developed from 'curse' in the nineteenth century). See Cercignani, p. 358.

108 blaspheme his breed slander or calumniate his heritage, his family line (= 'breed').

111 Died . . . lived i.e. she lived each day as virtuously as if she were to die that day (and face divine judgement). Compare St Paul's claim, 'I dye dayly' (*1 Cor. 15.31*).

112–13 These evils . . . Scotland The very evils Malcolm has recited are those which, in Macbeth, made Macduff flee Scotland. By implication, these evils will prevent Macduff from helping Malcolm return to Scotland.

113 Hath Singular verb in -th with plural subject (Abbott 334).

115 Child Macduff's honesty is metaphorically joined with the new generations that will defeat Macbeth (see Knight, *Imperial*, pp. 149–50).

Wiped the black scruples, reconciled my thoughts  
 To thy good truth and honour. Devilish Macbeth  
 By many of these trains hath sought to win me  
 Into his power, and modest wisdom plucks me  
 From over-credulous haste; but God above  
 Deal between thee and me, for even now  
 I put myself to thy direction and  
 Unspeak mine own detraction, here abjure  
 The taints and blames I laid upon myself,  
 For strangers to my nature. I am yet  
 Unknown to woman, never was forsworn,  
 Scarcely have coveted what was mine own,  
 At no time broke my faith, would not betray  
 The devil to his fellow, and delight  
 No less in truth than life. My first false speaking  
 Was this upon myself. What I am truly  
 Is thine, and my poor country's, to command:  
 Whither indeed, before thy here-approach,  
 Old Siward with ten thousand warlike men  
 Already at a point was setting forth.  
 Now we'll together, and the chance of goodness  
 Be like our warranted quarrel. Why are you silent?

MACDUFF Such welcome and unwelcome things at once,  
 'Tis hard to reconcile.

133 thy] F2; they F    133 here-approach] *Pope*; heere approach F

116 scruples doubts, troubling thoughts (*OED* Scruple *sb<sup>2</sup>* 1). They are 'black' because they concern Malcolm's suspicions that Macduff is evil.

118 trains stratagem, trick. Malcolm feared that Macduff was an *agent provocateur* pretending disloyalty to Macbeth in order to trick Malcolm into returning to Scotland.

119 plucks restrains forcibly.

120 over-credulous too quick to believe. The adjective is transferred from Malcolm to his 'haste'; 'over-credulous' is a neologism (Garner).

122 put myself to thy direction submit myself to your guidance.

123 abjure disavow.

125 For As being (Abbott 148).

126 Unknown to woman i.e. not having had sexual intercourse with a woman, but perhaps recalling 'none of woman born' (4.1.79).

126 forsworn perjured, (one who) betrayed an oath.

133 thy here-approach your coming here. See 'my here-remain' (150).

135 at a point prepared, in readiness. Compare Goneril's ironic remark about her father, 'to let him keep / At point a hundred knights' (*Lear* 1.4.323–4).

136 Now we'll together i.e. now we'll journey together.

136–7 chance . . . quarrel i.e. may the result be as fortunate as our grievances are justified.

136 chance of goodness good fortune or outcome. Etymologically, 'chance' derives from Latin *cadere*, to fall, hence its meanings 'to befall', 'to happen'. See p. 40 above.

138–9 Such . . . reconcile Macduff's puzzlement at Malcolm's trickery is never resolved; see pp. 92–3 above.

## Enter a DOCTOR

MALCOLM

Well, more anon. —

Comes the king forth, I pray you?

DOCTOR Ay, sir: there are a crew of wretched souls  
 That stay his cure; their malady convinces  
 The great assay of art, but at his touch,  
 Such sanctity hath heaven given his hand,  
 They presently amend.

Exit 145

MALCOLM I thank you, doctor.

MACDUFF What's the disease he means?

MALCOLM 'Tis called the Evil.

A most miraculous work in this good king,  
 Which often since my here-remain in England  
 I have seen him do. How he solicits heaven  
 Himself best knows, but strangely visited people  
 All swell'n and ulcerous, pitiful to the eye,  
 The mere despair of surgery, he cures,  
 Hanging a golden stamp about their necks  
 Put on with holy prayers, and 'tis spoken  
 To the succeeding royalty he leaves  
 The healing benediction. With this strange virtue,  
 He hath a heavenly gift of prophecy,

150

155

139 anon. —] *Capell*; anon. F  
 F 153 swell'n] F (swolne)

145 SD *Exit*] F; *Exit Doctor / Capell* (after 1.6)  
 156 on with] F corr.; on my with F uncorr.

150 here-remain] *Pope*; heere remaine

139 SD For the location of this SD, see Textual Analysis, pp. 246–7 below.

139–61 Well . . . grace These lines have been regarded as interpolation or revision; see Textual Analysis, pp. 262–3 below.

141 crew company, group.

142 stay his cure await his healing touch (Clarendon).

142 convinces overcomes. See 1.7.64.

143 assay best effort (*OED* Assay *sb* 14, quoting this line).

145 SD The Doctor's exit might follow Malcolm's thanks, but thanks (or dismissal?) and departure are probably simultaneous.

148 Evil The King's Evil, scrofula (an inflammation of the lymph nodes, often in the neck, causing swelling and suppuration). An early account (c. 1066) describes Edward the Confessor's cure of what may be this ailment (Barlow, pp. 8–9), and Scot (xii, 14) offers a remedy. For the belief that monarchs of France and of England could cure this affliction, see Bloch, pp. 11–91, Barlow, pp. 14–15,

and, on the ceremony in the Tudor and Stuart period, Bloch, pp. 181–92, and Supplementary Note, p. 244 below.

151 solicits entreats, petitions.

154 mere very, entire.

155 stamp coin, medal (*OED* Stamp *sb*<sup>3</sup> 15). Elizabeth and James gave a gold coin, an 'angel' depicting the Archangel Michael, to those they touched. See Bloch, pp. 65–7, 210–12.

156 holy prayers The English ceremony for 'touching' involved a special prayer said by the monarch.

157 succeeding royalty following monarchs. The power to cure the Evil supposedly descended in the royal line and was popularly associated with the monarch's anointing at his or her coronation.

158 benediction kindly favour, grace (*OED* Benediction 2).

158 strange unusual, inexplicable.

158 virtue ability, merit (*OED* Virtue *sb* 5a); power, efficacy (*Lexicon*).

And sundry blessings hang about his throne  
That speak him full of grace.

160

*Enter ROSS*

MACDUFF

See who comes here.

MALCOLM My countryman, but yet I know him not.

MACDUFF My ever gentle cousin, welcome hither.

MALCOLM I know him now. Good God betimes remove  
The means that makes us strangers.

ROSS

Sir, amen.

165

MACDUFF Stands Scotland where it did?

ROSS

Alas, poor country,

Almost afraid to know itself. It cannot  
Be called our mother, but our grave, where nothing,  
But who knows nothing, is once seen to smile;  
Where sighs, and groans, and shrieks that rend the air  
Are made, not marked; where violent sorrow seems  
A modern ecstasy. The deadman's knell  
Is there scarce asked for who, and good men's lives  
Expire before the flowers in their caps,

170

162 *not*] F (*nor*)    170 *rend*] F (*rent*)161 *speak* bespeak, proclaim.161 *sd* For the placing of this *sd*, see Textual Analysis, pp. 246–7 below.

162 My . . . not Malcolm recognises Ross as a Scot through his costume. See Supplementary Note, p. 244 below.

164 *betimes* in due time, before it is too late; compare 3.4.133 and n.165 *means* interposed (or intervening) conditions (*OED* Mean *sb<sup>2</sup>* 6, quoting ‘So do I wish the crown, being so far off, / And so I chide the means that keeps me from it’ (*H6* 3.2.140–1)).166 *Stands Scotland where it did* Is Scotland in its former condition.167–75 *It cannot . . . sicken* This passage has been held to describe exactly ‘the lamentable condition of London in this terrible summer [1603] of plague; see F. P. Wilson, *The Plague in Shakespeare's London*, 1927, p. 98.167 *Almost afraid to know itself* Ross so described the Scots (4.2.17 ff.).168 *mother . . . grave* On the simultaneity of birth and death in nature, see ‘The earth that's nature's mother is her tomb; / What is her buryinggrave, that is her womb’ (*Rom.* 2.3.9–10) and ‘Time's the king of men / He's both their parent, and he is their grave’ (*Per.* 2.3.45–6).168–9 *nothing . . . nothing* no one – no ‘thing’ – except those who know nothing; ‘i.e. children or idiots’ (Brooke).169 *once ever*.170 *rend* tear. F's ‘*rent*’ is an obsolete form.171 *marked* noticed.172 *modern* present; common, everyday.172 *ecstasy* See 3.2.22 n.172–3 *The deadman's . . . who* Death is so common in Scotland no one asks for whom the bell tolls. The church bell was rung ‘when anye Christian bodye is in passing . . . and after the time of his passinge . . . one shorte peale: and one before the burial, and another shorte peale after the burial’ (*Advertisements . . . for due order in . . . common prayers* (?1565), sig. B1r). See 2.1.63, 3.2.43–4, 5.9.17, and pp. 55–6 above.172 *deadman's* F's ‘*Deadmans'* represents an earlier form and metrical stress (see *OED* Deadman), different from most modern editors' reading, ‘dead man's’.

Dying or ere they sicken.

MACDUFF

O relation

175

Too nice, and yet too true.

MALCOLM

What's the newest grief?

ROSS That of an hour's age doth hiss the speaker;

Each minute teems a new one.

MACDUFF

How does my wife?

ROSS Why, well.

MACDUFF And all my children?

ROSS

Well, too.

MACDUFF The tyrant has not battered at their peace?

ROSS No, they were well at peace when I did leave 'em.

MACDUFF Be not a niggard of your speech: how goes't?

ROSS When I came hither to transport the tidings

Which I have heavily borne, there ran a rumour

Of many worthy fellows that were out,

Which was to my belief witnessed the rather

For that I saw the tyrant's power afoot.

Now is the time of help. [To Malcolm] Your eye in  
Scotland

Would create soldiers, make our women fight  
To doff their dire distresses.

MALCOLM

Be't their comfort

180

185

190

182 goes't] F (gos't)

175 or ere they sicken before the flowers show signs of illness. The comparison (173–5) expresses both the brevity of 'good men's lives' and the suddenness of their deaths.

175 relation account, statement. See 3.4.124n.

176 nice carefully accurate, precise. See *OED*  
Nice a 7–9 for the connotative range of this complex word. Ross's account is terrible because it accurately conveys the horror of life in Scotland.

176 newest most recent, most worthy of being told as news. See 5.9.20 and n.

177 hiss mock, accuse sarcastically (*OED* Hiss v 3).

178 teems breeds, gives birth to.

179 well . . . Well, too Proverbially, 'He is well since he is in Heaven' (Dent H347); Steevens' compares 'we use / To say the dead are well' (*Ant.* 2.5.32–3).

179 children Trisyllabic ('childeren').

181 at peace in harmony; dead. Legally, Ross tells the truth; he left Macduff's family before

their slaughter. Ross, hesitating to deliver bad news (or fearing the consequences of telling what he knows), becomes another Scot who knows but cannot speak a truth, or act upon it: compare 1.7.77, 3.6.7n., 5.1.32–3, and p. 92 above.

182 niggard miser, withdrawer.

183–90 Ross dodges Macduff's direct question about his family.

185 out abroad, in the field (preparing for battle). This line is the earliest citation at *OED* Out *adv* 15c.

186–7 witnessed . . . afoot Macbeth's forces on the march confirm that their opponents are also mobilising.

187 power army, military forces.

188 help aid, assistance (*OED* Help *sb* 1a), but probably also 'relief, cure, remedy' (*OED* Help *sb* 5a).

188 eye i.e. person. An example of synecdoche, where 'eye' stands for Malcolm's body; compare 1.7.24 and n.

190 doff put off (another image of clothing).

We are coming thither. Gracious England hath  
Lent us good Siward and ten thousand men –  
An older and a better soldier none  
That Christendom gives out.

ROSS

Would I could answer

This comfort with the like. But I have words  
That would be howled out in the desert air,  
Where hearing should not latch them.

195

MACDUFF

What concern they?

The general cause, or is it a fee-grief  
Due to some single breast?

ROSS

No mind that's honest

But in it shares some woe, though the main part  
Pertains to you alone.

200

MACDUFF

If it be mine,

Keep it not from me; quickly let me have it.

ROSS Let not your ears despise my tongue forever

Which shall possess them with the heaviest sound  
That ever yet they heard.

MACDUFF

H'm – I guess at it.

ROSS Your castle is surprised; your wife and babes

Savagely slaughtered. To relate the manner  
Were on the quarry of these murdered deer  
To add the death of you.

MALCOLM

Merciful heaven –

What, man, ne'er pull your hat upon your brows:  
Give sorrow words; the grief that does not speak,  
Whispers the o'erfraught heart and bids it break.

205

197 they?] *Theobald*; they, F 205 H'm –] *Brooke*; Humh: F197 *latch receive* (*OED* *Latch* v<sup>1</sup> 4a).198 *general cause* everyone's (= all Scotland's) interest.198–9 *fee-grief . . . single breast* grief owned entirely by one person ('some single breast'); a grief concerning one individual. The metaphor may derive from legal terminology: 'An estate in fee simple is the most nearly absolute and perpetual estate in land known to the law' (Clarkson and Warren, p. 50; for this line, see p. 51 n. 22).204 *possess them with* inform them.204 *heaviest saddest*.208 *quarry* Heap made of the deer killed at a hunting (*OED* *Quarry* sb<sup>1</sup> 2a; 2b is a transferred meaning, 'pile of dead [human] bodies').208 *deer* animals; beloved ones (= 'dear').210 *pull your hat upon your brows* A conventional gesture of sorrow or melancholy. Elizabethan actors usually wore hats, while modern ones do not, making this moment difficult to stage realistically.211–12 *the grief . . . bids it break* The contrast is between 'speak' (say aloud) and 'whisper' (speak softly). Compare the proverbial 'Grief pent up will break the heart' (Dent G449) and the Senecan tag, 'curae leves loquuntur, ingentes stupent' (*Hippolytus* [*Phaedra*] 607: supportable griefs speak, unbearable ones stupefy), often echoed in early modern plays (e.g. 'Dear woes cannot speak', *Dutch Courtesan* 4.4.56). In this period, 'break' was pronounced to rhyme with modern 'speak' (Cercignani, p. 161).

MACDUFF My children too?

ROSS Wife, children, servants, all  
That could be found.

MACDUFF And I must be from thence?  
My wife killed too?

ROSS I have said.

MALCOLM Be comforted.  
Let's make us med'cines of our great revenge  
To cure this deadly grief.

MACDUFF He has no children. All my pretty ones?

Did you say all? O hell-kite! All?

What, all my pretty chickens and their dam  
At one fell swoop?

MALCOLM Dispute it like a man.

MACDUFF I shall do so;  
But I must also feel it as a man;  
I cannot but remember such things were  
That were most precious to me. Did heaven look on,  
And would not take their part? Sinful Macduff,  
They were all struck for thee. Naught that I am,  
Not for their own demerits but for mine,  
Fell slaughter on their souls. Heaven rest them now.

MALCOLM Be this the whetstone of your sword, let grief  
Convert to anger. Blunt not the heart, enrage it.

MACDUFF O, I could play the woman with mine eyes

215 SH ROSS] F corr. (*Roffe*); *Roffe* F uncorr. 219 say] F, F2-4; see Q1673 228 struck] F (strooke)

214 from thence i.e. away from home.

215 I have said A proverbial phrase (Dent S118.1).

216-17 Proverbially, 'To lament the dead avails not and revenge vents hatred' (Dent D125) and 'A desperate disease must have a desperate cure' (Dent D357). Compare the metaphors of 5.2.3-5, 27-9.

218 He has no children The phrase has several possible meanings depending upon the referent for 'He'. Malcolm ('He') has no children and cannot therefore understand Macduff's pain; see the proverbial 'He that has no children knows not what love is' (Dent C341). Macbeth ('He') has no children and (1) cannot therefore know what their loss means or (2) therefore has no one upon whom Macduff may exact a fitting revenge for the loss of his children. On the last, see 'You have no children, butchers; if you had, / The thought of them would have stirred up remorse, / But if you ever chance to have a child, / Look in his youth to have him so cut off / As, deathsmen, you have rid this sweet young

prince!' (3H6 5.5.63-7).

219 hell-kite hellish bird of prey; hence, figuratively, a human predator.

220 dam female parent. Like 'chickens' (compare 'chuck' (3.2.45)), the metaphor treats humans as animals; 'dam' is usually contemptuous when applied to humans: 'This brat is none of mine, / ... Hence with it, and together with the dam / Commit them to the fire!' (WT 2.3.93, 95-6).

221 At one fell swoop Shakespeare seems to have invented this now-proverbial phrase (Dent S1046.1), echoed in 'at one swoop' (Webster, *White Devil* 1.1.6).

221 fell fierce, savage, cruel.

222-6 Macduff's conception of 'manliness' joins those of Macbeth (1.7.46-7, 2.3.101-4, 3.4.99-108) and of Ross (4.2.28-30).

227 part side, cause.

228 Naught Wicked (*OED* Naught adj 2).

223 play the woman with mine eyes weep. The phrase was becoming proverbial (Dent W637.2;

And braggart with my tongue. But gentle heavens,  
Cut short all intermission. Front to front  
Bring thou this fiend of Scotland and myself;  
Within my sword's length set him. If he scape,  
Heaven forgive him too.

235

**MALCOLM**

This tune goes manly.

Come, go we to the king; our power is ready;  
Our lack is nothing but our leave. Macbeth  
Is ripe for shaking, and the powers above  
Put on their instruments. Receive what cheer you may:  
The night is long that never finds the day.

240

*Exeunt*

### 5.1 Enter a DOCTOR OF PHYSIC, and a WAITING-GENTLEWOMAN

**DOCTOR** I have two nights watched with you, but can perceive no truth in your report. When was it she last walked?

236 myself;] *Capell*; my selfe F    238 tune] *Rowe*<sup>2</sup>; time F    Act 5, Scene 1 [5.1] F (*Actus Quintus. Scena Prima.*)  
1 two] F (too)

earliest citation from 1598); see 'I was forced to turn woman, and bear a part with her. Humanity broke loose from my heart, and streamed through mine eyes' (*Widow's Tears* 4.1.45-7).

234 braggart with my tongue Compare Macbeth's boasting followed by self-correction at 2.1.60-1 and 4.1.152.

235 intermission pause, interval in action. Compare Macbeth's decision (4.1.145-8), to which this one directly answers.

235 Front to front Face to face (or forehead to forehead).

237-8 If... too In Roman Polanski's film *Macbeth*, Macduff (Terence Bayler) strongly emphasises 'too', suggesting that if Macbeth escapes Macduff's vengeance, he might possibly earn God's forgiveness, but not Macduff's.

237 scape escape (an aphetic form, as *OED* Scape notes).

238 tune style, manner; temper, mood (*OED* Tune *sb* 4a, 5). F's 'time' and 'tune' look very similar in Secretary hand, but 'F' might be defended as "rhythm" (*OED* [Time *sb*], 12a) (Oxford) and hence as a reference to some martial music for which there is no *so*. The proverbial 'Times change and we with them' (Dent T343) may support F.

239 power army, force.

240 leave official permission (to depart).

241 ripe for shaking i.e. ready to fall (from the fruit tree, from the throne).

241 powers above heavenly influences (recalling King Edward and his holiness: see 143-5, 158-61).

242 Put on Don, clothe themselves in.

242 instruments agents, tools; here, probably 'weapons' (*OED* Instrument *sb* 2a).

243 Proverbially, 'After night comes the day' (Dent N164); compare 1.3.146.

### Act 5, Scene 1

This scene occurs in Lady Macbeth's private rooms, probably in the castle at Dunsinane (5.2.12). Like Macduff, who lost 'His wife, his babes, and all unfortunate souls / That trace him in his line' (4.1.151-2), Macbeth here loses his closest relation and dearest confidant. Shakespeare often employs prose when a character who ordinarily speaks verse becomes deranged; see *Oth.* 4.1.35-43. For a similar scene in which a doctor observes a disturbed person, see *TNK* 4.3.

o SD DOCTOR OF PHYSIC Physician. The specificity implies costume or props and distinguishes this actor from the common Elizabethan and Jacobean use of 'Doctor' as a title for a cleric. Lady Macbeth's condition is represented as a medical rather than a spiritual one; she needs physical therapy, not the exorcism a Roman Catholic (but not a Protestant) clergyman might claim to offer. See 64n., and *Textual Analysis*, pp. 262-3 below.

o SD WAITING-GENTLEWOMAN Personal attendant who is 'gentle', not 'common'. In the Jacobean court, the queen's personal attendants were aristocrats; in Shakespeare's imagined courts, the attendants' ranks are often unclear.

1 watched observed; perhaps 'stayed awake observing' (*OED* Watch v 2).

GENTLEWOMAN Since his majesty went into the field, I have seen  
her rise from her bed, throw her night-gown upon her, unlock  
her closet, take forth paper, fold it, write upon't, read it, after-  
wards seal it, and again return to bed, yet all this while in a  
most fast sleep.

DOCTOR A great perturbation in nature, to receive at once the  
benefit of sleep and do the effects of watching. In this slumbery  
agitation, besides her walking and other actual performances,  
what at any time have you heard her say?

GENTLEWOMAN That, sir, which I will not report after her.

DOCTOR You may to me, and 'tis most meet you should.

GENTLEWOMAN Neither to you, nor anyone, having no witness to  
confirm my speech.

*Enter LADY [MACBETH], with a taper*

Lo you, here she comes. This is her very guise and, upon my  
life, fast asleep. Observe her, stand close.

DOCTOR How came she by that light?

GENTLEWOMAN Why, it stood by her. She has light by her con-  
tinually, 'tis her command.

9 watching.] F; watching! Dyce 15 SD LADY MACBETH] Rowe; Lady F

3 his majesty Macbeth.

3 went into the field mobilised an army for  
battle.

4 night-gown See 2.2.73 n., where it was 'a  
means of deceit'; here, however, it is an 'icon of  
human mortality' (Houston Diehl, 'Horrid image,  
sorry sight, fatal vision: the visual rhetoric of  
*Macbeth*', *S.S.* 16 (1983), 196).

5 closet cabinet; lockable chest or box for val-  
uables. 'Closet' often means small private chamber,  
but the usage here is supported by JC 3.2.129 and  
*Lear* 3.3.11.

5 fold In early modern practice, a letter-writer  
usually folded or creased a sheet of paper to form  
the left- and right-hand margins of the text-area  
before writing the letter itself; once the letter had  
been completed, the sheet was folded several more  
times to create its own 'envelope', a blank outside  
upon which directions for its delivery were written.  
See next note.

6 seal Place a personal mark in hot wax upon a  
document as a sign of authenticity. Shakespeare's  
contemporaries ensured the privacy of letters by  
folding them and sealing over the fold. Seals were  
also used to validate legal documents.

9 effects appearances, outward manifestations  
(OED Effect sb 3a).

9 watching waking (OED Watch v 1).

9 slumbery sleepy, slumberous (OED).

10 actual active (OED Actual a 1, quoting this  
line).

13 meet fitting, appropriate.

14-15 The Waiting-Gentlewoman fears to repeat  
what she has heard without a witness because it  
would be treasonable; the same issue appears when  
Cymbeline asks the queen's ladies to confirm  
Cornelius's account of her confession (*Cym.* 5.5.61-  
2).

15 SD taper candle.

16 Lo See 3.4.69 n.

16 very guise exact manner, custom, or habit.

16-17 upon my life An oath.

17 close concealed, hidden, out of sight. The  
word expresses the speaker's anxiety at being a wit-  
ness; she ignores the fact that the sleepwalking Lady  
Macbeth sees nothing (22) even though, uncannily,  
'her eyes are open' (21).

18 The Doctor's realistic question (why does a  
sleepwalker need light?) leads to an eerie inference:  
awake or asleep, Lady Macbeth evidently fears the  
dark. Unlike her famous predecessor, Hannah  
Pritchard, who emblematically indicated the 'spot'  
(30) by looking at her palm (see the illustration  
reproduced in 'Macbeth in the twentieth century',  
*TQ* 1, 3 (1971), 21), Sarah Siddons set down the  
taper so that she could mime hand-washing at lines  
23, 27, 30; see Sprague, p. 271.

DOCTOR You see her eyes are open.

GENTLEWOMAN Ay, but their sense are shut.

DOCTOR What is it she does now? Look how she rubs her hands.

GENTLEWOMAN It is an accustomed action with her, to seem thus washing her hands; I have known her continue in this a quarter of an hour.

LADY MACBETH Yet here's a spot.

DOCTOR Hark, she speaks; I will set down what comes from her to satisfy my remembrance the more strongly.

LADY MACBETH Out, damned spot! Out, I say! One, two. Why then 'tis time to do't. Hell is murky. Fie, my lord, fie, a soldier, and afeard? What need we fear? Who knows it, when none can call our power to account? Yet who would have thought the old man to have had so much blood in him?

DOCTOR Do you mark that?

LADY MACBETH The Thane of Fife had a wife. Where is she now? What, will these hands ne'er be clean? No more o'that,

<sup>22</sup> are] F, F2–4; is Q1673      <sup>30</sup> spot!] Steevens; spot: F      <sup>30</sup> say!] Steevens; say. F      <sup>32</sup> afeard] F (afeard'd)      <sup>32</sup> fear? Who knows] F (fear? who knowes); fear who knows Rowe<sup>2</sup>      <sup>33</sup> account] F (accomp)      <sup>34</sup> him?] Rowe; him. F

<sup>22</sup> are The plural verb may have been influenced by 'their', as Muir suggests, but compare 'Their wives have sense like them' (*Oth.* 4.3.94), where 'sense' is plural, and Sonnet 112.10–11, where the word seems a collective noun.

<sup>25–6</sup> a quarter of an hour The Waiting-Gentlewoman can still tell time and relies upon its stability. See p. 20 above.

<sup>28</sup> set down write down, note. An implicit sd: the Doctor uses a pocket notebook (compare 1.3.150–1 and n.).

<sup>29</sup> satisfy meet the needs of, content (*OED* Satisfy v 4b).

<sup>30</sup> One, two Presumably, the striking of a bell (e.g. that mentioned at 2.1.62) or a clock (e.g. the Porter's 'second cock' (2.3.20)).

<sup>31</sup> murky gloomy, dark. Sleepwalking, Lady Macbeth relives her experiences and (unheard) dialogue with Macbeth in 2.3; here, the audience may imagine she repeats words that the audience supposes Macbeth said.

<sup>32</sup> afeard afraid.

<sup>32–3</sup> Who knows . . . account The murder of Duncan cannot be said to be 'known' because no one has the power or authority to hold the Macbeths responsible; compare her assurance before the murder: 'Who dares receive it other' (1.7.77). Rowe<sup>2</sup> and most later editors change F's punctuation to create a more straightforward question: 'what need we fear who knows it, when none can call our Power to

account –'; Rowe apparently assumed that the question mark after 'fear' was superfluous, although Q1673 retains F's punctuation and Davenant compromises with 'what need we fear? who knows it? There's none dares call our Power to account.' F often includes more question marks than modern conventions demand (see e.g. the collation for 1.3.130, 133), yet these lines make a difficult but appropriate sense, and I have retained F's punctuation.

<sup>33–4</sup> Yet . . . him Lady Macbeth's surprise depends upon the conventional assumption that ageing dries the blood and diminishes its movement; see 'Time hath not yet so dried this blood of mine' (*Ado* 4.1.193) and 1.5.41–2 n. The flat, almost disinterested, phrasing – 'who would have thought' – and the neutral reference to Duncan, who earlier reminded her of her father (2.2.12–13), as 'the old man' suggest Lady Macbeth's despair, a guilty helplessness represented as sleepwalking and very different from her energetic action in 1.7, 2.2, and 3.4.

<sup>36</sup> Thane of Fife Macduff.

<sup>37</sup> What . . . clean Lady Macbeth may speak of her own hands (see 23–6 and 42–3), or she may be repeating something Macbeth said. Steevens<sup>3</sup> compares 'here's a white hand: / Can blood so soon be wash'd out?' (Webster, *White Devil* 5.4.82–3). See 2.2.63–4 and n.

my lord, no more o'that. You mar all with this starting.

DOCTOR Go to, go to; you have known what you should not.

GENTLEWOMAN She has spoke what she should not, I am sure of  
that. Heaven knows what she has known. 40

LADY MACBETH Here's the smell of the blood still; all the per-  
fumes of Arabia will not sweeten this little hand. O, O, O.

DOCTOR What a sigh is there! The heart is sorely charged.

GENTLEWOMAN I would not have such a heart in my bosom for  
the dignity of the whole body. 45

DOCTOR Well, well, well –

GENTLEWOMAN Pray God it be, sir.

DOCTOR This disease is beyond my practice; yet I have known  
those which have walked in their sleep who have died holily in  
their beds. 50

LADY MACBETH Wash your hands, put on your night-gown, look  
not so pale. I tell you yet again, Banquo's buried; he cannot  
come out on's grave.

DOCTOR Even so? 55

LADY MACBETH To bed, to bed; there's knocking at the gate.  
Come, come, come, come, give me your hand; what's done  
cannot be undone. To bed, to bed, to bed. Exit

DOCTOR Will she go now to bed?

GENTLEWOMAN Directly. 60

DOCTOR Foul whisp'lings are abroad; unnatural deeds  
Do breed unnatural troubles; infected minds

38 this] F; not in F2–4    42 the blood] F; of blood F3–4    47 well –] Rowe; well. F    58 SD] F (*Exit Lady.*)

38 starting flinching, recoiling nervously (as Macbeth did upon meeting the witches; see 1.3.49).

39 Go to Come, come (a remonstrance).

40 spoke spoken (see 1.4.3 n.). This obsolete usage may arise from Compositor B's desire to justify the line of type.

42–3 perfumes of Arabia Spices (from which perfumes that 'sweeten' (43) are made) and the legendary phoenix (which died and was reborn in aromatic flames) are the commonest early modern literary associations with (Saudi) Arabia; see Sugden under Arabia; 'your daughter's womb . . . that nest of spicey' (R3 4.4.423–4); the 'innocent cradle, where, phoenix-like, / They [flowers] died in perfume' (TNK 1.3.70–1). Lady Macbeth's phrase allusively links crime (the smell of blood, the hand that cannot be sweetened) with scent and reproduction (the phoenix) and the failure of Macbeth's line (see 'unlineal' (3.1.64)).

44 sorely charged grievously burdened, heavily loaded.

46 dignity rank, status (as queen).

49 practice professional skill, art (Brooke).

53 pale Compare 2.2.61 and n.

54 on's of his.

57–8 what's done cannot be undone The dialogue's third use (see 1.7.1 and 3.2.12) of the proverbial 'Things done cannot be undone' (Dent T200).

57 give me your hand This gesture has a profound history in the play; see 1.2.21 and 2.2.63–4 and nn., 37.

60 Directly At once, straightforward.

61 whisp'lings For the syncopation (which also saves space in a very full line of type in F), see 3.4.107 n., and contractions in Macbeth's letter (1.5.2) and the Porter's prose (2.3.3–6).

To their deaf pillows will discharge their secrets.  
 More needs she the divine than the physician.  
 God, God forgive us all. Look after her;  
 Remove from her the means of all annoyance,  
 And still keep eyes upon her. So, good night,  
 My mind she has mated, and amazed my sight.  
 I think, but dare not speak.

65

GENTLEWOMAN

Good night, good doctor.

*Exeunt*

**5.2 Drum and colours. Enter MENTEITH, CAITHNESS, ANGUS, LENNOX, Soldiers**

MENTEITH The English power is near, led on by Malcolm,  
 His uncle Siward, and the good Macduff.  
 Revenges burn in them, for their dear causes

Act 5, Scene 2 5.2] F (*Scena Secunda.*) 3 them,] Oxford; them: F; them; Collier

64 More needs she . . . physician i.e. she is beyond medical help and requires spiritual counsel. The line rests upon proverbial comparisons: 'Where the Philosopher ends, the Physician begins; and he ends . . . where the Divine begins' (Samuel Purchas, *Purchas his Pilgrimes* (1619), sig. 2s1v as quoted in Dent, *PLED* p252.11, 'Where the Philosopher ends the phisition begins'). When Bardolph reports that Falstaff is 'In bodily health', Poins replies, 'Marry, the immortal part needs a physician, but that moves not him: though that be sick, it dies not' (2*H4* 2.2.103–5).

66 The Doctor anticipates that Lady Macbeth might commit suicide (a conventional literary consequence of the Christian sin of despair, or loss of belief in God's grace), as Malcolm later suggests she did (5.9.37–8).

66 annoyance injuring, troubling (*OED* Annoyance 1, quoting this line).

67 still always.

68 she has The phrase is probably elided in performance ('she's'); see Cercignani, pp. 288–9.

68 mated daunted, stupefied (*OED* Mate v<sup>1</sup> 4).

68 amazed astonished. The word derives from 'maze'; the Doctor is in a mental labyrinth. Compare 2.4.19, 4.1.125, and 'like a labyrinth to amaze his foes' (*Venus and Adonis* 684).

69 I think . . . speak Like the Waiting-Gentlewoman (14–15), the Doctor is afraid to acknowledge the evidence of regicide he now possesses. This line is the earliest known evidence for the proverbial 'One may think that dares not speak' (Dent 1220).

**Act 5, Scene 2**

This scene is located in Scotland, where the native nobles await the arrival of the joint Scottish and English army, and represents the first action against Macbeth's tyranny, although 3.6 and the end of 4.3 anticipate it. For analysis of the final battles, see Brennan, pp. 156–63, who notes 'how much Shakespeare emphasizes the role of Macbeth and his isolation' (p. 162).

6 SD *Drum and colours* Drummer and flag-bearer(s). Like F's *Hautboys* (players of hautboys) and *Torch* (torch-bearer) at 1.6.0 sd, these two words indicate actors performing a function; the sd calls for a military presence and martial sounds.

1 power military force. Elision ('pow'r') helps the metre.

2 His uncle Siward According to *Scotland*, p. 171a, Siward was Malcolm's maternal grandfather, but (as NS notes) F's 'Vnkle' is metrically more convenient.

3–5 Revenges . . . man The clearest meaning of this complex clause is that Malcolm and Macduff's motives for revenge are powerful enough to make a dead, or near-dead, man answer the call to arms. Mahood (pp. 136–7) notes the hint of resurrection in these lines and links them with 4.1.96; see, more appositely, 2.3.69–74.

3 Revenges Desires to repay injuries by inflicting hurt in return (*OED* Revenge sb 1b, citing 'my revenges were high bent upon him' (*AWW* 5.3.10)).

3 dear honourable; precious. 'Dire, grievous' (*OED* Dear a<sup>2</sup> 2) is another possible meaning, as in 'dear peril' (*Tim.* 5.1.228).

Would to the bleeding and the grim alarm  
Excite the mortified man.

ANGUS

Near Birnam Wood

5

Shall we well meet them; that way are they coming.

CAITHNESS Who knows if Donaldbain be with his brother?

LENNOX For certain, sir, he is not. I have a file

Of all the gentry; there is Siward's son

And many unrough youths that even now

Protest their first of manhood.

10

MENTEITH

What does the tyrant?

CAITHNESS Great Dunsinane he strongly fortifies.

Some say he's mad; others that lesser hate him

Do call it valiant fury, but for certain

He cannot buckle his distempered cause

15

Within the belt of rule.

ANGUS

Now does he feel

His secret murders sticking on his hands.

Now minutely revolts upbraid his faith-breach;

Those he commands, move only in command,

Nothing in love. Now does he feel his title

20

Hang loose about him, like a giant's robe

Upon a dwarfish thief.

MENTEITH

Who then shall blame

10 unrough] F (vnrasse) 11 tyrant?] F4; Tyrant. F

4 **bleeding** running with blood (*OED* Bleeding *ppl a* 1b); the flowing of blood (*OED* Bleeding *vbl sb* 1a); the letting of blood (*OED* Bleeding *vbl sb* 2).

5 **mortified** dead; insensible.

7 The first mention of Donaldbain since 3.6.9, and the last in the play.

8 **file** list. Compare 3.1.94 and n.

10 **unrough** i.e. unbearded, young.

11 **Protest** Affirm, proclaim.

11 first beginning, first part (*OED* First quasi-*sb* 5c).

12 Dunsinane See 4.1.92n.

15–16 **buckle . . . belt of rule** i.e. contain his sick government through control.

17 **sticking on** adhering to (a figurative meaning of *OED* Stick *v* 8c, where this line is quoted). The words recall the blood on Macbeth and Lady Macbeth's hands (2.2.62–70) and Macbeth's fears of Banquo's 'royalty of nature' (3.1.50–2). For clothing that does not 'stick' on Macbeth, see 20–2 below.

18 **minutely** happening every minute. This

line is the first citation under *OED* Minutely *a* (Schäfer).

18 **upbraid** reproach, reprove (*OED* Upbraid *v* 2).

18 **faith-breach** broken loyalty; treason. A noun has been made from the common phrase 'breach of faith'; this line is the only citation at *OED* Faith *sb* 14.

19–20 **only . . . love** Compare 'He knows that you embrace not Antony / As you did love, but as you feared him' (*Ant.* 3.13.56–7).

20 **Nothing** Not at all (*OED* Nothing *adv* 1a). 'Nothing', like 'only' (19), modifies 'move' (19); only 'command' (19), not 'love', motivates Macbeth's followers to obey him.

20–2 **Now . . . thief** The conclusion of the metaphors linking titles, clothing, and ambition; compare 1.3.106–7, 1.3.143–5, 2.4.38, and Sebastian's exchange with Antonio: 'I remember / You did supplant your brother Prospero. / True. / And look how well my garments sit upon me, / Much feater than before' (*Temp.* 2.1.270–3, cited by Slater, p. 168).

His pestered senses to recoil and start,  
When all that is within him does condemn  
Itself for being there?

CAITHNESS

Well, march we on  
To give obedience where 'tis truly owed;  
Meet we the med'cine of the sickly weal,  
And with him pour we in our country's purge,  
Each drop of us.

LENNOX

Or so much as it needs  
To dew the sovereign flower and drown the weeds.  
Make we our march towards Birnam.

25

30

*Exeunt, marching*

### 5.3 Enter MACBETH, DOCTOR, and Attendants

MACBETH Bring me no more reports, let them fly all;  
Till Birnam Wood remove to Dunsinane,  
I cannot taint with fear. What's the boy Malcolm?  
Was he not born of woman? The spirits that know  
All mortal consequences have pronounced me thus:

5

<sup>25</sup> there?] *Pope*; there. F Act 5, Scene 3 5.3] F (*Scaena Tertia*). 5 consequences] F; consequents, *Stevens*<sup>3</sup> omitting here; consequence, *Singer*

23 pestered vexed, plagued. Compare the description of Macdonald (1.2.11–12).

23 recoil See 4.3.19n.

23 start See 1.3.49, 5.1.38, and nn.

24–5 When . . . there i.e. Macbeth is in rebellion against himself. Compare 2.2.76.

27 med'cine physician (*OED* Medicine *sb<sup>2</sup>*), i.e. Malcolm (the ‘him’ of 28). Compare ‘I have seen a medicine / That’s able to breathe life into a stone’ (*AWW* 2.1.72–3) and the medical language of 5.3.40–8, 51–7.

27 weal state; community; common weal (*OED* Weal *sb<sup>1</sup>* 3b). Other available meanings include ‘well-being, happiness’ (*OED* Weal *sb<sup>1</sup>* 2).

28 purge cleansing; purgative, a medicine causing the bowels to empty.

30 dew moisten (*OED* Dew *v* 2). The liquid Caithness (28–9) and Lennox have in mind is blood, not water. Compare Lennox on the ‘due of birth’ (3.6.25).

30 sovereign royal; supreme; efficacious. Mahood (p. 135) notes that this last meaning (by extension, ‘healing’) ‘recalls the curative powers of the holy [King] Edward’ described at 4.3.149–58.

30 weeds Metaphorically, the moral and political chaos of Scotland; compare Hamlet’s description of ‘this world’ as ‘an unweeded garden / That grows to seed’ (*Ham.* 1.2.134–6) and the analogy between government and gardening in *R2* 3.4. There may be wordplay on ‘weeds’ = clothing.

31 SD *marching* This sd indicates drumming as well as a martial, ordered departure.

### Act 5, Scene 3

The imaginary location is Macbeth’s castle, Dunsinane.

o SD Macbeth’s first appearance since 4.1; for the play’s complex patterns of characters’ presence and absence, see Appendix 1, pp. 265–6 below.

1 them The ‘false thanes’ (7) who desert Macbeth.

3 taint lose courage, become weak (*OED* Taint *v* c.3b, where this citation is the first of only two, the second from 1639).

5 mortal human.

5 consequences outcomes, eventualities. ‘Sequence, succession, course’ (*OED* Consequence *sb* 2b) is not quite apposite. Adopting Singer’s emen-

'Fear not, Macbeth, no man that's born of woman  
 Shall e'er have power upon thee.' Then fly false thanes  
 And mingle with the English epicures;  
 The mind I sway by and the heart I bear  
 Shall never sag with doubt nor shake with fear.

10

*Enter SERVANT*

The devil damn thee black, thou cream-faced loon.  
 Where got'st thou that goose-look?

SERVANT There is ten thousand —

MACBETH Geese, villain?

SERVANT Soldiers, sir.

MACBETH Go prick thy face and over-red thy fear,  
 Thou lily-livered boy. What soldiers, patch?  
 Death of thy soul, those linen cheeks of thine  
 Are counsellors to fear. What soldiers, whey-face?

15

SERVANT The English force, so please you.

MACBETH Take thy face hence!

[*Exit Servant*]  
 Seyton! — I am sick at heart,

6–7 'Fear . . . thee.') Singer (*subst.*); Feare . . . thee. F 12 goose-look?] F4; Goose-looke. F 13 thousand —] Rowe; thousand. F 19 SD] Collier<sup>2</sup>; not in F 19 Seyton! —] Rowe; Seyton, F

dation, 'consequence', NS says 'Both style and metre support the change', and Shakespeare elsewhere uses only the singular, which would here give the line a universal, timeless application. Further, compositors seem prone to add or drop s, but since F's line is perfectly intelligible, emendation here is really editorial 'improvement'.

8 epicures gluttons, sybarites.

9 The mind I sway by The mind that rules me; the mind by which I rule (Chambers).

11 On stage, Macbeth sometimes (e.g. Laurence Olivier, Old Vic, London, 1937; Alan Howard, Royal National Theatre, London, 1993) assaults the Servant here; see 5.5.34 n.

11 cream-faced having a face the colour of cream (i.e. pale). Compare 'blanched with fear' (3.4.116).

11 loon rogue. The word is a Scotticism; for his English audience, Patten explains (sig. 18v, margin), 'A lound is a name of reproach as a villain or such a lyke.' See also *OED* Loon sb<sup>1</sup> 1 and F4's spelling, Lown.

12 goose-look foolish or witless appearance. Proverbially, geese were 'giddy' and only ironically 'wise' (Dent G347.1 and G348).

14 over-red redder over, cover with red (*OED* Over-red, quoting only this line and an allusion from 1826). Macbeth urges the Servant to replace pale fear with ruddy courage.

15 lily-livered having a liver (traditionally the organ of courage) the colour of a lily, white, hence cowardly. Compare 'the liver white and pale, which is the badge of pusillanimity and cowardice' (2H4 4.3.104–6, cited by Steevens<sup>2</sup>) and 'A white-livered fellow' (Dent F180).

16 Death of thy soul May your soul die (a curse).

16 linen white (i.e. cowardly). 'As white as linen' is an ancient analogy (Dent L306.1).

17 counsellors advisers (*OED* Counsellor 1a fig), confidants (*Lexicon*). The word seems both active and passive: the effect (white cheeks) is an associate of the cause (fear) as well as the stimulus to others' fear (including Macbeth's?).

17 whey-face face the colour of whey (i.e. milky pale with fear).

19 Seyton This proper name may have been pronounced as 'Satan'; if so, Macbeth summons an attending officer who also represents demonic power. See Supplementary Note, p. 244 below.

When I behold – Seyton, I say! – this push  
 Will cheer me ever or disseat me now.  
 I have lived long enough. My way of life  
 Is fall'n into the sere, the yellow leaf,  
 And that which should accompany old age,  
 As honour, love, obedience, troops of friends,  
 I must not look to have; but in their stead,  
 Curses, not loud but deep, mouth-honour, breath  
 Which the poor heart would fain deny, and dare not.  
 Seyton!

20

*Enter SEYTON*

SEYTON What's your gracious pleasure?

MACBETH What news more? 30

SEYTON All is confirmed, my lord, which was reported.

MACBETH I'll fight till from my bones my flesh be hacked.

Give me my armour.

SEYTON 'Tis not needed yet.

MACBETH I'll put it on;

35

Send out more horses; skirr the country round.

Hang those that talk of fear. Give me mine armour.

How does your patient, doctor?

DOCTOR

Not so sick, my lord,

20 behold – . . . say! –] *Rowe*; behold: . . . say, F 21 disseat] F (dis-eat); disease F2–4 36 more] F (mo)

20 push attack; thrust (of a weapon).

21 cheer comfort, console; gladden (*OED* Cheer v 2; 4). There is probably a pun on 'chair' (= throne).

21 disseat unseat. *OED* Disseat doubts this reading; if the word is correctly printed (it also appears at *TNK* 5.4.72), it is Shakespeare's neologism.

22 way course, manner (*OED* Way sb<sup>1</sup> 14). The word also has overtones of 'freedom of action' (*OED* Way sb<sup>1</sup> 6) and 'pilgrimage, journey' (*OED* Way sb<sup>1</sup> 7e).

23 sere dry, withered. The word hovers between being an adjective modifying 'leaf' and a noun ('the sere') meaning something like 'the withered state' (see C. T. Onions, *TLS* 24 October 1935, p. 671).

23 yellow leaf i.e. the season when leaves of deciduous trees lose their green colour and winter approaches; metaphorically, period shortly before death. Compare 'That time of year thou mayst in me behold / When yellow leaves, or none, or few, do hang / Upon those boughs . . . where late the sweet birds sang' (Sonnet 73.1–4) and 4.3.173–5.

25 troops flocks, swarms (*OED* Troop sb 1d,

quoting *Err.* 5.1.81 as the earliest example).

25 friends followers, retainers, supporters.

26 stead place. F's 'steed' probably represents a contemporary pronunciation with a lengthened vowel (Cercignani, p. 83).

27 mouth-honour i.e. respect and duty merely verbal (hence insincere, not from the heart). Compare 4.1.146–7 n., and Timon's curse for those who deceived him, 'You knot of mouth-friends' (*Tim.* 3.6.89). H. B. Sprague (ed.), *Macbeth*, 1889 (quoted in Furness), cites 'Therfore thus hath the Lorde sayd: Forsomuche as this people when they be in trouble, do honour me with their mouth and with their lippes, but their heart is farre fro[m] me, and the feare whiche they have unto me proceedeth of a commaundement that is taught of men' (*Isa.* 29.13).

28 fain gladly; gladly under the circumstances (*OED* Fain adv).

36 horses i.e. warriors mounted on horses.

36 skirr pass rapidly over, scour (*OED* Skirr v 3, where this line is the earliest citation). Compare 'scour' (57).

38 sick i.e. physically (as opposed to mentally) ill.

As she is troubled with thick-coming fancies  
That keep her from her rest.

MACBETH

Cure her of that.

40

Canst thou not minister to a mind diseased,  
Pluck from the memory a rooted sorrow,  
Raze out the written troubles of the brain,  
And with some sweet oblivious antidote  
Cleanse the stuffed bosom of that perilous stuff  
Which weighs upon the heart?

DOCTOR

Therein the patient

Must minister to himself.

MACBETH Throw physic to the dogs, I'll none of it.

Come, put mine armour on; give me my staff. –  
Seyton, send out. – Doctor, the thanes fly from me. –  
[To Attendant] Come sir, dispatch. – If thou couldst,  
doctor, cast

50

The water of my land, find her disease,  
And purge it to a sound and pristine health,  
I would applaud thee to the very echo  
That should applaud again. – Pull't off, I say! –  
What rhubarb, cynne, or what purgative drug  
Would scour these English hence? Hear'st thou of them?

55

DOCTOR Ay, my good lord; your royal preparation

40 Cure her] F2-4; Cure F 49-51 staff. – / . . . out. – . . . me. – / . . . dispatch. –] *Capell* (*subst.*); Staffe. / . . . out: . . . me: / . . . dispatch. F 53 pristine] F (*pristiuie*) 55 again. – Pull't . . . say! –] *Singer* (*subst.*); againe. Pull't . . . say, F 56 cynne] *This edn*; Cyme F; Cæny F2-3; senna F4

39 thick-coming crowding (*Lexicon*). Compare the tales and posts of 1.3.95-6.

40 Cure her F2-4 add the pronoun which may therefore be the result of vulgarisation, over-scrupulous metrics, or false modernisation; *OED* Cure v<sup>1</sup> 1a-b cites absolute uses that support F, or the compositor's error.

41 Compare 'she has a perturbèd mind, which I cannot minister to' (*TNK* 4.3.59-60).

43 Raze Eradicate, uproot.

44 oblivious causing forgetfulness or oblivion.

45 The repetition of 'stuffed . . . stuff' has been considered an error (compare 3.2.20 n.), but no emendation (NS provides a comic list) is persuasive. In the theatre, the actor (e.g. Roger Allam, Stratford, 1996) may pause before 'stuff', indicating a tired inability to find another word.

48 physic medicine (*OED* *Physic sb* 4).

51 dispatch make haste.

51-2 cast / The water analyse ('cast') the urine ('water'). Inspection of urine and other bodily se-

cretions (especially of female patients) was common practice in early modern medicine. Compare 'To look to one's water' (Dent w109).

52-7 This passage recalls the commonplace analogies of human body and political state, microcosm and macrocosm; see 'single state' (1.3.139 and n.).

53 pristine former, ancient. F's 'pristiuie' may contain a 'turned' *n* or result from Compositor B's (easy) misreading of manuscript *n* for *u*.

56 rhubarb A medicinal plant, the so-called Chinese rhubarb, and not the common or garden European and New World variety (*OED* *Rhubarb sb*). See next note.

56 cynne senna (medicinal plant prescribed as both emetic and purgative). Gerard (p. 1115) recommends mixing senna and rhubarb as a purge. F's 'cyme' may be a misreading of 'cyne' or 'cynne', spellings of 'cæny' (F2-3) or 'sene', the word Gerard and others use for 'senna' (F4's spelling, adopted by many editors though it creates a hypermetric line).

Makes us hear something.

**MACBETH** Bring it after me. —

I will not be afraid of death and bane,  
Till Birnam Forest come to Dunsinane.

60

[*Exeunt all but Doctor*]

**DOCTOR** Were I from Dunsinane away and clear,

Profit again should hardly draw me here.

*Exit*

**5.4 Drum and colours.** Enter MALCOLM, SIWARD, MACDUFF, *Siward's son*, MENTEITH, CAITHNESS, ANGUS, and SOLDIERS, marching

**MALCOLM** Cousins, I hope the days are near at hand  
That chambers will be safe.

**MENITEITH** We doubt it nothing.

**SIWARD** What wood is this before us?

**MENITEITH** The Wood of Birnam.

**MALCOLM** Let every soldier hew him down a bough,  
And bear't before him; thereby shall we shadow  
The numbers of our host and make discovery

5

59 me. —] Capell; me: F 61 SD] This edn (after Steevens<sup>3</sup>); not in F. See Commentary 63 SD] Steevens<sup>3</sup>; Exeunt F Act 5, Scene 4 5.4] F (Scena Quarta.) 0 SD.1 SIWARD] F (Seyward); old SIWARD Capell 0 SD.2 Siward's son] F (Seywards Sonne) 3 SH SIWARD] F (Syew.)

59 it Either the piece of armour or other equipment referred to at 49, 51, 55, or 'something' (59), news or reports of the enemy.

60 bane murder, death, destruction (*OED* Bane sb<sup>1</sup> 3, quoting this line).

61 SD—63 SD F offers only a general *Exeunt* at the scene's very end; the Doctor's lines must therefore be marked as an aside (Hanmer) or Macbeth and others must be directed off after 61, with the Doctor's couplet spoken directly to the audience (Steevens<sup>3</sup>). I select the latter because: (1) Macbeth's abruptness (59) and couplet (60–1) are more effective if he immediately leaves the stage; (2) the Doctor's satirical couplet makes a better contrast with Macbeth's couplet if it stands alone; (3) comic scene-ending closers seem often to have been directed to the audience (see e.g. *John* 1.1.276 and *Lear* 1.5.51–2).

63 A joke about physicians' greed, already an ancient satiric target.

#### Act 5, Scene 4

This scene occurs wherever and before whatever

the audience imagines as Birnam Wood (3). *Scotland*, p. 176a, records the ruse by which Malcolm and his army conceal themselves from Macbeth's scouts. It appears earlier in British history as a legend concerning the county of Kent's defiance of William the Conqueror through a similar trick; see Raphael Holinshed, *The Third Volume of Chronicles* (1587), p. 2a, and John Selden's discussion of Drayton's *Poly-Olbion*, song 18 (Michael Drayton, *Works*, ed. J. W. Hebel *et al.*, corr. edn, 5 vols., 1661, IV, 385–6).

0 SD *Drum and colours* See 5.2.0 SD n.

0 SD SIWARD Editors rename this character 'Old Siward' in SDS and SHs to distinguish him from his son, called *young Seyward* at 5.7.4 SD and *Y.Sey* in the SHs for his few speeches in 5.7, but F's distinction of son from father is sufficient without introducing a distinction of father from son.

2 chambers rooms (but with the extended sense of 'private dwellings').

6 discovery military reconnaissance, reconnoitring (*OED* Discovery 3b, where *Lear* 5.1.53 is the first citation).

Err in report of us.

A SOLDIER It shall be done.

SIWARD We learn no other, but the confident tyrant  
Keeps still in Dunsinane and will endure  
Our setting down before't.

MALCOLM 'Tis his main hope,  
For where there is advantage to be given,  
Both more and less have given him the revolt,  
And none serve with him but constrainèd things  
Whose hearts are absent too.

MACDUFF Let our just censures  
Attend the true event and put we on  
Industrious soldiership.

SIWARD The time approaches  
That will with due decision make us know  
What we shall say we have and what we owe;  
Thoughts speculative their unsure hopes relate,  
But certain issue strokes must arbitrate.  
Towards which, advance the war.

10

15

20

*Exeunt, marching*

## 5.5 Enter MACBETH, SEYTON, and Soldiers, with drum and colours

MACBETH Hang out our banners on the outward walls;

7 SH] F (Sold.) 8 SH] F (Syw.) 11 given] F (giuen); taken Keightley 16 SH] F (Sey.) 20 arbitrate.] Pope; arbitrate;  
F; arbitrate: Theobald Act 5, Scene 5 5.5] F (Scena Quinta.)

7 Err Mistake, make an error.

8 no other i.e. no other news, no other reports, of Macbeth's plans.

8 but except.

10 setting down laying siege, encamping.

11 given yielded (? an impersonal use of *OED* Give v 40). If the line has been accurately set, its obscurity presumably results from wordplay on 'given' (12).

12 more and less i.e. aristocrats and commoners.

12 given him the revolt have revolted from his service.

14-15 Let . . . event Let a true evaluation ('just censures') of military matters await the battle's outcome ('event'). Macduff advises patience and prudence; Siward expands the point (16-21). Compare Lucius's pre-battle remark to Cloten: 'the event / Is yet to name the winner' (*Cym.* 3.5.14-15), and 'Let th'event, / That never-erring arbitrator, tell us /

When we know all ourselves' (*TNK* 1.2.113-15).

19 unsure Accented on the first syllable (Cercignani, p. 33).

20 issue result, outcome (*OED* Issue sb 10). For the word here and earlier, see p. 53 above.

21 After the couplet (19-20) closing his elaboration of Macduff's speech, Siward presumably turns from the group of leaders to address the army at large.

21 war soldiers in fighting array (*OED* War sb<sup>1</sup> 6b, with earliest citation from 1667), war-party.

### Act 5, Scene 5

This scene occurs outside, or in a courtyard of, Dunsinane ('our castle' (2)), where a gathering of soldiers is possible (o SD), but close enough to Lady Macbeth's rooms for the 'cry of women' (8) to be heard.

o SD *drum and colours* See 5.2.0 SD n.

The cry is still, ‘They come.’ Our castle’s strength  
 Will laugh a siege to scorn; here let them lie  
 Till famine and the ague eat them up.  
 Were they not forced with those that should be ours,  
 We might have met them dareful, beard to beard,  
 And beat them backward home.

*A cry within of women*

What is that noise?

SEYTON It is the cry of women, my good lord.

MACBETH I have almost forgot the taste of fears;

The time has been, my senses would have cooled  
 To hear a night-shriek and my fell of hair  
 Would at a dismal treatise rouse and stir  
 As life were in’t. I have supped full with horrors;  
 Direnness familiar to my slaughterous thoughts  
 Cannot once start me. Wherefore was that cry?

SEYTON The queen, my lord, is dead.

MACBETH She should have died hereafter;  
 There would have been a time for such a word.  
 Tomorrow, and tomorrow, and tomorrow

<sup>2</sup> ‘They come.’] *Pope* (*subst.*); *they come*: F      7 SD] F (*after noise*)      8 lord.] F; lord. *Exit.* / *Collier*<sup>2</sup>      15 me.] F; me. *Re-enter* SEYTON *Collier*<sup>2</sup>

4 **ague** violent fever, shaking fit.

5 **forced** strengthened, reinforced (*OED* Force v<sup>t</sup> 13a).

6 **dareful** full of defiance. This line is *OED*’s first citation for the word, with only one other (from 1614).

6 **beard to beard** i.e. face to face. Compare the ancient proverb ‘To meet in the beard’ (*Dent* B143.1).

8–16 Clarendon conjectures a servant who enters and tells Seyton what the ‘cry’ (8) signifies, while Dyce and other editors add SDS for Seyton’s exit and re-entrance (so as to learn off-stage what ‘the cry of women’ means), but Dessen (pp. 5–7) argues that such additions may be over-realistic and reduce F’s eeriness.

9–13 These lines initiate a series of echoes of, or allusions to, earlier moments when Macbeth’s mind, body, and conscience responded differently to horrifying sounds and images. Compare 1.3.134 ff.

11 **fell head, shock.**

13 **As As if** (Abbott 107); see 1.4.11 n.

13 **supped full with horrors** Figuratively,

‘filled up with, dined full of, horrors’, but literally ‘had supper with Banquo’s Ghost’ at Macbeth’s banquet in 3.4.

14–15 **Direnness . . . me** i.e. my murderous thoughts have made me familiar with fearsome things that no longer have the power to frighten me. Compare Macbeth’s terror at the knocking that follows Duncan’s murder (2.2.60–1).

14 **Direnness Horror**. *OED*’s earliest citation for the word (Schäfer).

14 **slaughterous** murderous, destructive (*OED* sv).

16–17 **She . . . word** Two meanings seem possible: (1) Lady Macbeth would have died sooner or later, a time would inevitably come for her death; (2) it would have been more suitable had Lady Macbeth died at some future time, when word of her death might receive proper mourning. On the former, see 3.2.38; on the latter, see 4.3.232–8, when war interrupts and displaces Macduff’s mourning. Booth (p. 95) notes that ‘hereafter’ (Macbeth’s last reference to his wife) ‘echoes Lady Macbeth’s first words to Macbeth’ (1.5.53); see also ‘hereafter’ at 1.3.48 and 1.4.38.

Creeps in this petty pace from day to day  
 To the last syllable of recorded time;  
 And all our yesterdays have lighted fools  
 The way to dusty death. Out, out, brief candle,  
 Life's but a walking shadow, a poor player  
 That struts and frets his hour upon the stage  
 And then is heard no more. It is a tale  
 Told by an idiot, full of sound and fury  
 Signifying nothing.

20

25

*Enter a MESSENGER*

Thou com'st to use thy tongue: thy story quickly.

MESSENGER Gracious my lord,

I should report that which I say I saw,  
 But know not how to do't.

30

MACBETH

Well, say, sir.

30 I say] F; I'd say *Hammer*; omitted by Keightley

19 **petty** small; hence, 'trivial, insignificant'. The word (like the speech) moves from physical to figurative, from tiny steps to the journey's pointlessness.

20 **syllable** smallest portion, merest trace. Compare 4.3.8.

20 **recorded** written; told, narrated; recollected, remembered (*OED Record* v<sup>1</sup> 9a, 8a, 4, respectively). Given the atemporal mood of the speech, its sense of being out of or beyond time, Mason's gloss (p. 151) seems right: 'not only the time that *has been*, but that also which *shall be* recorded'.

22 **Out, out, brief candle** Compare Lady Macbeth's 'Out . . . Out' (5.1.30) and her taper (5.1.15 sd).

23–5 Jones (*Origins*, p. 280) compares Seneca's description of 'this drama of human life, wherein we are assigned the parts which we are to play so badly'; Seneca then contrasts the actor's humble circumstances and the royal parts he plays: 'Yonder is the man who stalks upon the stage with swelling port and head thrown back . . .' (Seneca, *Epistle* 80.7, trans. R. M. Gummere).

23 **walking shadow** Grey (ii, 154) cites biblical passages where the brevity and insubstantiality of human life are compared with a shadow: 1 Chron. 29.15, Job 14.2, Ps. 102.11, and Eccles. 8.13, for example. Compare also 'Life is a shadow' (Dent f629.1) and the lines Chapman derived from Pindar via Plutarch and Erasmus, 'Man is a Torch borne in the wind; a Dreame / But of a shadow, summ'd

with all his substance' (Chapman, *Bussy D'Ambois* 1.1.18–19).

23 **poor player** bad actor. For similar contempt, see the 'strutting player, whose conceit / Lies in his hamstring' (*Tro. 1.3.153–4*).

24 **frets chafes**, worries. The underlying theatrical metaphor suggests that the player's willingness to adopt a feigned passion makes him lose his individuality. Clarendon compares the taunting 'Stamp, rave, and fret' (3H6 1.4.91) addressed to the captive Richard of York, and Dent (f672.1, ss19, ss21) records combinations of 'fret', 'fume', 'stamp', 'stare', and 'rave' as common satirical responses to boasting, 'raging', bravado, and the like treated as theatrically overdone.

24 **stage** i.e. life. Proverbially, 'This world is a stage and every man plays his part' (Dent w882); see Jaques's speech beginning 'All the world's a stage . . .' (AYLI 2.7.139–66).

25–6 **It is a tale / Told** Compare 'For when thou art angry, al our dayes are gonue; we bring our yeeres to an ende, as it were a tale that is tolde' (Ps. 90.9), prescribed for the burial service by the Book of Common Prayer; the same psalm is the source for 2.4.1. There may be a pun on 'told'/'tolled' (a bell rung); compare 3.2.40–4 and 4.3.172–3.

30 **report . . . saw** i.e. relate that which I have already claimed to see (?). The sentence seems to have a surplus verb, 'I say', which Compositor B's eye may have caught from 31.

MESSENGER As I did stand my watch upon the hill  
 I looked toward Birnam and anon methought  
 The wood began to move.

MACBETH Liar and slave!

MESSENGER Let me endure your wrath if't be not so;  
 Within this three mile may you see it coming.  
 I say, a moving grove.

MACBETH If thou speak'st false,  
 Upon the next tree shall thou hang alive  
 Till famine cling thee; if thy speech be sooth,  
 I care not if thou dost for me as much.  
 I pull in resolution and begin  
 To doubt th'equivocation of the fiend  
 That lies like truth. 'Fear not, till Birnam Wood  
 Do come to Dunsinane', and now a wood  
 Comes toward Dunsinane. Arm, arm, and out!  
 If this which he avouches does appear,  
 There is nor flying hence nor tarrying here.  
 I 'gin to be aweary of the sun  
 And wish th'estate o'th'world were now undone.  
 Ring the alarum bell! Blow wind, come wrack;  
 At least we'll die with harness on our back.

35

40

45

50

50

*Exeunt*

37 false] F (fhlse)    38 shall] F; shalt F2    43-4 'Fear . . . Dunsinane'] Pope; Feare . . . Dunsinane F

34 Rowe added *Striking him* after 'slave', which may represent Restoration theatre-practice; the sđ persisted until Singer's edition, where it was omitted in response to the objections of a celebrated actor, J. P. Kemble, in *Macbeth and King Richard the Third*, enlarged edn, 1817, pp. 109-11, though stage Macbeths have continued 'ignobly' to strike the Messenger.

36 mile i.e. miles. This use of the singular 'mile' with a plural number was common into the nineteenth century (*OED* Mile *sbl*); Travers regards 'Within this three mile' as a Scotticism.

39 cling shrivel, parch (*OED* Cling *v*<sup>1</sup> 3c, quoting this line). The Messenger's hanging body will shrink and contract without food.

39 sooth truth, true.

41 pull in rein in, arrest, withdraw. This line is the earliest citation for *OED* Pull *v* 26d, which does

not offer a satisfactory definition.

42 equivocation See 2.3.26 n.

42 fiend i.e. the Third Apparition, whose 'lies like truth' (43) Macbeth now recalls (43-4); see 4.1.89-93.

45 out i.e. sally forth, attack the enemy.

46 avouches claims, states.

47 nor . . . nor neither . . . nor.

47 tarrying staying, remaining (*OED* Tarry *v* 4).

48 'gin begin (an aphetic form).

49 estate o'th'world the world's settled order (Clarendon).

50 Ring the alarum bell The command may be a sound-cue. Macbeth repeats Macduff's cry when he discovers Duncan's body (2.3.68); words (and sound?) link crime and approaching punishment.

50 wrack See 1.3.113 n.

51 harness armour.

**5.6 Drum and colours. Enter MALCOLM, SIWARD, MACDUFF, and their army, with boughs**

MALCOLM Now near enough; your leafy screens throw down  
 And show like those you are. You, worthy uncle,  
 Shall with my cousin your right noble son  
 Lead our first battle. Worthy Macduff and we  
 Shall take upon's what else remains to do,  
 According to our order.

SIWARD Fare you well.

Do we but find the tyrant's power tonight,  
 Let us be beaten if we cannot fight.

MACDUFF Make all our trumpets speak; give them all breath,  
 Those clamorous harbingers of blood and death.

5

10

*Exeunt*

*Alarums continued*

**5.7 Enter MACBETH**

MACBETH They have tied me to a stake; I cannot fly,

Act 5, Scene 6 5.6] F (*Scena Sexta.*) 0 SD SIWARD] F (*Seyward*); old SIWARD Capell Act 5, Scene 7 5.7] F (*Scena Septima.*); scene continues, Rowe (with no further divisions)

**Act 5, Scene 6**

Malcolm's army and that represented in 5.2 have apparently joined and approach Dunsinane, screened with boughs hewn from Birnam Wood. Dessen, 'Problems', p. 149, outlines the producer's difficulties created by F's absence of SDS at this scene's start. If the soldiers enter with boughs (realistic or otherwise), are the boughs thrown down at 2 and later 'picked up and carried off'? Are they thrown down at the end of the scene? Do they remain in view for the rest of the play? Or (a possibility Dessen omits) does 'throw down' (1) mean 'lower', with each soldier revealing himself but not releasing the 'bough' he holds and then later carries off-stage? This last possibility seems practicable and is consistent with F (although any proposal might be construed as consistent with silence), but Dessen makes a case for the symbolic values, some positive, some negative, of leaving the stage strewn with greenery from this moment forward.

0 SD *Drum and colours* See 5.2.0 SD n.

2 show . . . are Like Malcolm testing Macduff (4.3.44 ff.), the anti-Macbeth forces do not first appear 'as [they] are' any more than Macbeth himself initially appears as he is (see e.g. 1.5.61–4).

2 uncle See 5.2.2 n.

4 battle An army, or one of its main divisions. See 1.1.4 n. and OED Battle sb 8.

4 we Malcolm uses the royal plural prematurely.  
 7 power military forces.

10 harbingers See 1.4.45 n.

10 SD.2 *Alarums continued* Battle sounds minimise the change of time or place between 5.6 and 5.7; the audience's imagination is transferred to another part of the battlefield.

**Act 5, Scene 7**

This scene takes place before or within the castle of Dunsinane.

1–2 Compare 'Their valiant temper / Men lose when they incline to treachery, / And then they fight like compelled bears, would fly / Were they not tied' (TNK 3.1.66–9).

1 tied me to a stake Macbeth finds himself a bear, chained ('tied') to a post ('stake') and attacked by dogs for spectators' entertainment, an event that often occurred in some of early modern London's public theatres, at the Tower of London (for the pleasure of King James and his guests), and in other places of amusement. Compare Octavius's desper-

But bear-like I must fight the course. What's he  
That was not born of woman? Such a one  
Am I to fear, or none.

*Enter YOUNG SIWARD*

YOUNG SIWARD What is thy name?

5

MACBETH Thou'l be afraid to hear it.

YOUNG SIWARD No, though thou call'st thyself a hotter name  
Than any is in hell.

MACBETH My name's Macbeth.

YOUNG SIWARD The devil himself could not pronounce a title  
More hateful to mine ear.

MACBETH No, nor more fearful.

10

YOUNG SIWARD Thou liest, abhorred tyrant; with my sword  
I'll prove the lie thou speak'st.

*Fight, and young Siward slain*

MACBETH Thou wast born of woman.

But swords I smile at, weapons laugh to scorn,  
Brandished by man that's of a woman born.

*Exit [with young Siward's body]*

*Alarums. Enter MACDUFF*

MACDUFF That way the noise is. Tyrant, show thy face!

15

If thou be'st slain, and with no stroke of mine,  
My wife and children's ghosts will haunt me still.  
I cannot strike at wretched kerns whose arms

4 SD YOUNG SIWARD] F (*young Seyward*)    14 SD.1 *Exit . . . body*] This edn (after Oxford); *Exit F*    16 be'st] F (beest)

ate remark, 'for we are at the stake, / And bayed about with many enemies' (JC 4.1.48–9), and 'To be bound to a stake' (Dent s813.1).

2 course attack (by dogs baiting a bear); see *OED* Course sb 27b, where this line is the earliest citation. More generally, the word means 'continuous process of time, succession of events' (*OED* Course sb 17a).

2–3 What's . . . born of woman Adelman (p. 131) points out that this question 'mean[s] both itself and its opposite': only one not of woman born can conquer Macbeth; there is no one not of woman born.

8 Than any is Than any which is.

12 Thou wast born of woman A chilling sardonism, recalling the Bible (see 4.1.79 n.) and Macbeth's remark to First Murderer (3.4.14).

14 SD.1 *with young Siward's body* E. K. Cham-

bers (*William Shakespeare: A Study of Facts and Problems*, 2 vols., 1930, I, 472) thought the absence of an SD for removing this corpse indicated textual corruption, and Swander speculates that this body should remain on stage, as it does in some productions, but F may here assume a conventional act (see 3.3.25 SD n.), and Ross says the body was 'brought off the field' (5.9.10). See Textual Analysis, p. 249 below, n. 5.

14 SD.2 The stage has been cleared of actors, and a new scene might be marked here and, for the same reason, at 24 SD; Oxford does so. The continued sound effects, however, and the sense that the Malcolm–Siward dialogue (25–30) concludes the mass battle justify letting F stand. See headnotes to 5.8 and 5.9 and, more generally, Textual Analysis, pp. 249–50 below.

18 kerns See 1.2.13 n.

Are hired to bear their staves; either thou, Macbeth,  
Or else my sword with an unbattered edge  
I sheath again undeeded. There thou shouldst be;  
By this great clatter, one of greatest note  
Seems bruited. Let me find him, Fortune,  
And more I beg not.

Exit

*Alarums. Enter MALCOLM and SIWARD*

**SIWARD** This way, my lord; the castle's gently rendered. 25  
The tyrant's people on both sides do fight;  
The noble thanes do bravely in the war.  
The day almost itself professes yours,  
And little is to do.

**MALCOLM** We have met with foes  
That strike beside us.

**SIWARD** Enter, sir, the castle. 30

*Exeunt**Alarum***[5.8] Enter MACBETH**

**MACBETH** Why should I play the Roman fool and die  
On mine own sword? Whiles I see lives, the gashes

24 SD.2 *Alarums*] F (at right margin opposite 24) 24 SD.2 **SIWARD**] F (*Seyward*; old *Seyward* / *Capell* 25 SH **SIWARD**]  
F (*Sey.*); thus throughout remainder of play 30 SD.1-2] F (as one line following castle) Act 5, Scene 8 5.8] *Dyce*; scene  
continues F

19 staves lances (*Lexicon* under Staff).

19 either thou, Macbeth i.e. either I strike at you, Macbeth.

20 unbattered undamaged (by use in battle).

21 undeeded having done nothing (*Lexicon*), without accomplishment or 'deed'. This line is *OED*'s sole citation for the word.

21 There i.e. where I hear the most noise ('this great clatter') (22).

22 The line puns on 'note' as musical sound ('clatter') and as 'reputation' or 'fame'; compare the imagery of 3.2.43-4 and nn.

23 bruited noised, reported.

23-4 Let . . . not A prayer to the goddess who momentarily favoured Macdonald (1.2.9-15).

25 gently rendered calmly (i.e. without further loss of life) or 'nobly' surrendered.

29-30 foes / That strike beside us Either 'enemies who deliberately miss when they attack', or 'enemies who fight on our side'.

**Act 5, Scene 8**

F does not mark a scene division here, and the action might be continuous with 5.7, but the stage has been cleared (a customary sign of a scene's conclusion), and it is not evident that this scene takes place within 'the castle' Malcolm and Siward entered at 5.7.30. More likely, it takes place on the battlefield before that castle. Edelman (pp. 160-2) compares this scene with the duel ending R3.

1-2 play . . . sword Roman honour required a defeated warrior to commit suicide rather than be captured; see *Ant.* 4.14 and *JC* 5.3, 5.5.

2 Whiles While.

2 lives living creatures (*Lexicon* Life sb 1, though *OED* Life sb 6c cites this line for 'Vitality as embodied in an individual person').

Do better upon them.

*Enter MACDUFF*

MACDUFF

Turn, hell-hound, turn.

MACBETH Of all men else I have avoided thee,

But get thee back, my soul is too much charged  
With blood of thine already.

MACDUFF

I have no words;

My voice is in my sword, thou bloodier villain  
Than terms can give thee out.

*Fight. Alarum*

MACBETH

Thou losest labour.

As easy mayst thou the intrenchant air  
With thy keen sword impress as make me bleed.  
Let fall thy blade on vulnerable crests;  
I bear a charmèd life which must not yield  
To one of woman born.

MACDUFF

Despair thy charm,

And let the angel whom thou still hast served  
Tell thee, Macduff was from his mother's womb  
Untimely ripped.

MACBETH Accursèd be that tongue that tells me so,  
For it hath cowed my better part of man;

8 labour.] *Collier*; labour *f*

5 charged weighted, burdened. The Doctor uses the same word of Lady Macbeth (5.1.44).

8 terms words, expressions (*OED* Term *sb* 14a).

8 *sd* *Alarum* Battle continues elsewhere.

8 Thou losest labour You waste effort. The remark is proverbial (Dent 19).

9 easy easily. See 2.3.130 n.

9 intrenchant incapable of being cut. This line is the only citation at *OED* Intrenchant *a<sup>1</sup>* (Schäfer) and Shakespeare's sole use of the word. The context of sword and flesh parallels 'Let not the virgin's cheek / Make soft thy trenchant sword' (*Tim.* 4.3.115–16).

10 keen sharp; eager, ardent (*OED* Keen *a* 3a and 6a). This 'keen sword' answers Lady Macbeth's 'keen knife' (1.5.50).

10 impress mark, press (*OED* Impress *v<sup>1</sup>* 5a, quoting *LLL* 2.1.236 and this line as its earliest examples). The word 'impress' appears here when Macbeth's supposed invulnerability fails, just as it appeared when he was first assured of it (4.1.94–5).

11 vulnerable The earliest citation for the word in *OED* (Schäfer).

13 one of woman born See 4.1.79 n.

13 charm magical incantation; amulet (?). The latter meaning might be supported theatrically with some prop. See 3.5.19 and 4.1.18 and nn.

14 angel i.e. 'genius', tutelary deity. See 3.1.57–8 and n.

16 Untimely ripped i.e. born by Caesarean section. Having to choose, early modern medical practitioners sought to save the baby rather than the mother; Caesarean section always killed the mother. See the popular guide for physicians and midwives, Eucharius Roesslin, *The Birth of Mankynde*, trans. and enlarged by Thomas Raynald (1565), sig. P2r, and p. 22 above.

18 cowed intimidated, dispirited. This line is the first citation at *OED* Cow *v<sup>1</sup>* a.

18 my better part of man larger proportion ('more than half') of my courage. Compare Falstaff's maxim, 'The better part of valour is discretion' (*iH4* 5.4.119–20) and *OED* Better *adj* 3b, where 'better half' is first cited from c. 1580 and 'better part' from 1586. *OED* Better *adj* 3c partly defines 'better part' as 'soul', an appropriate mean-

And be these juggling fiends no more believed  
 That palter with us in a double sense,  
 That keep the word of promise to our ear  
 And break it to our hope. I'll not fight with thee.

20

**MACDUFF** Then yield thee coward,  
 And live to be the show and gaze o'th'time.  
 We'll have thee, as our rarer monsters are,  
 Painted upon a pole and underwrit,  
 'Here may you see the tyrant.'

25

**MACBETH** I will not yield  
 To kiss the ground before young Malcolm's feet  
 And to be baited with the rabble's curse.  
 Though Birnam Wood be come to Dunsinane  
 And thou opposed being of no woman born,  
 Yet I will try the last. Before my body,  
 I throw my warlike shield. Lay on, Macduff,

30

23 *thee coward*,] F (*Coward*); *thee, coward*, *Rowe*    27 'Here . . . tyrant.'] *Pope*; *Heere . . . Tyrant*. F

ing here (see 'fiends' (19)); a passage not cited in *OED* makes this second meaning evident: 'Let comme that fatall howre . . . Yit Shall the better part of mee assured bee too clyme / Aloft above the starry skye' (Ovid, *Metamorphoses*, trans. Arthur Golding (1567), ed. W. H. D. Rouse, 1904, xv, 986, 989–90).

19 **juggling** deceitful, cheating (*OED Juggling ppl a*). Early audiences might have associated the word with the (Roman Catholic) exorcists who claimed to heal possessed individuals (see 5.1.0 SD n.).

20 **palter** equivocate, deal evasively, trick (*OED Palter v 3*, quoting 'what other bond / Than secret Romans, that have spoke the word / And will not palter' (*JC* 2.1.124–6) as the earliest instance).

20 **double sense** equivocal meaning.

21–2 **keep . . . hope** fulfil the prophecy (of kingship) in a (merely) verbal way, the way we hear (= 'to our ear'), or wish to hear, 'the word of promise' (21), and fail to fulfil 'it' (the promise) as we expected (= 'our hope'). Macbeth now recognises the effective difference between the sisters' ambiguous prophetic speech and his own ambitious hope. See 5.3.27 n.

23 **yield thee coward** surrender yourself as a coward; state (or concede) you are a coward. On the second meaning compare 'to yield myself / His wife who wins me' (*MV* 2.1.18–19) and 'Antonio's dead! If thou say so, villain, / Thou kill'st thy mistress; but well and free, / If thou so yield him, there is gold' (*Ant.* 2.5.26–8, quoted as sole citation for *OED*

Yield v 12b). See also *OED Yield v 18*, and Celia Millward in *Reader*, pp. 302–4. Rowe and most other editors regard the noun as a vocative: 'yield thee, coward, . . .'

25–7 An accurate, and humorous, description of the circuslike or carnival atmosphere and sights available at a local fair or tavern. Compare Benedick's ultimately futile boast: 'if ever the sensible Benedick bear it [the "yoke" of marriage] . . . let me be vividly painted, and . . . let them signify under my sign, "Here may you see Benedick the married man"' (*Ado* 1.1.262–8); Lovewit's question: 'What should my knave advance, / To draw this company? He hung out no banners / Of a strange calf, with five legs, to be seen? / Or a huge lobster, with six claws?' (Jonson, *Alchemist* 5.1.6–9); Trinculo's first impulse when he encounters Caliban: 'Were I in England now . . . and had but this fish painted [in a sign], not a holiday fool there but would give a piece of silver' (*Temp.* 2.2.27–30); Richard D. Altick, *The Shows of London*, 1978, chapters 1 and 3. See p. 7 above.

28 **To kiss the ground** A proverbial phrase (Dent D651) for surrender or abnegation.

29 **baited taunted**.

29 **rabble** crowd, common people, multitude.

32 **try the last** experience (or undergo) the conclusion (or extremity). See *OED Last a, adv.* and *sb<sup>b</sup> 9c and 9g*; 'I will run the hazard to the end' (*Lexicon Last a*).

33 **shield** Probably a 'target' or 'targe', 'held . . . by straps around the forearm' (Edelman,

And damned be him that first cries, 'Hold, enough!'

*Exeunt[,] fighting. Alarums*

*Enter [Macbeth and Macduff,] fighting[,] and Macbeth slain*

[*Exit Macduff, with Macbeth's body*]

[5.9] *Retreat, and flourish. Enter with drum and colours, MALCOLM, SIWARD, ROSS, Thanes, and Soldiers*

MALCOLM I would the friends we miss were safe arrived.

SIWARD Some must go off. And yet by these I see,  
So great a day as this is cheaply bought.

MALCOLM Macduff is missing and your noble son.

ROSS Your son, my lord, has paid a soldier's debt; 5  
He only lived but till he was a man,  
The which no sooner had his prowess confirmed  
In the unshrinking station where he fought,

34 'Hold, enough!'] Johnson (*subst.*); hold, enough. F 34 SD.2 *fighting*] F (*Fighting*) 34 SD.3 *Exit . . . body*] Oxford; not in F Act 5, Scene 9 5.9] NS; scene continues F; SCENE VIII Pope 0 SD.2 SIWARD] F (*Seyward*); old *Seyward* / Capell

p. 34, contradicting *OED* Target *sb<sup>1</sup> 1*). One contemporary theatre company had numerous targets made of iron, of copper, and of wood; see Henslowe, p. 320.

34 Hold, enough Stop, I surrender. Compare 1.5.48–52.

34 SD.1–2 Many editors have doubted F's SDS here, suggesting that they are confused, or imprecise, or represent two different stagings (one for the outdoor, one for the indoor theatre?). However inadequate, the SDS convey a shifting duel, moving from place to place on stage. See Textual Analysis, p. 247 below.

34 SD.3 Malcolm's comment (5.9.1) seems to stipulate a stage empty of dead bodies, and Macduff needs to remove Macbeth's body in order to 'be-head' it. On customary dramatic practice, see 3.3.25 SD n.

### Act 5, Scene 9

F does not mark a new scene here, although many editors since Pope have done so with at least two good reasons: the stage has emptied of actors, and the audience needs some conventional encouragement to imagine a change of place from wherever Macbeth and Macduff fight to wherever Malcolm

and his company are when they receive the news and evidence of Macbeth's defeat and death. See Textual Analysis, pp. 249–50 below.

0 SD.1 *Retreat* 'A signal on the trumpet to recall a pursuing force' (NS). The SD presumably indicates that Macbeth's remaining supporters withdraw (or surrender) off-stage.

0 SD.1 *drum and colours* See 5.2.0 SD n.

0 SD.2 *Thanes* F treats the supporting noblemen collectively. Malone lists Lennox, Angus, Caithness, and Menteith.

2 go off die (Clarendon). Compare 'goes hence' (1.5.57).

5–9 Once again, Ross tells a father of his child's death; compare 4.3.194 ff.

5 soldier's debt what a soldier owes (i.e. his death). See 1.4.10 n. Compare the proverbial 'Death pays all debts' (Dent D148) and 'To pay one's debt to nature' (Dent D168), and Hal's remark to Falstaff before the Battle of Shrewsbury: 'Why, thou owest God a death' (1H4 5.1.126).

8 unshrinking station i.e. brave act of standing. 'Station' is the martial posture (*OED* Station *sb* 1) young Siward adopted when he would not retreat (shrink) from Macbeth's attack.

But like a man he died.

SIWARD Then he is dead?

ROSS Ay, and brought off the field. Your cause of sorrow  
Must not be measured by his worth, for then  
It hath no end.

SIWARD Had he his hurts before?

ROSS Ay, on the front.

SIWARD Why then, God's soldier be he;  
Had I as many sons as I have hairs,  
I would not wish them to a fairer death.  
And so his knell is knolled.

MALCOLM He's worth more sorrow,  
And that I'll spend for him.

SIWARD He's worth no more;  
They say he parted well and paid his score,  
And so God be with him. Here comes newer comfort.

*Enter MACDUFF, with Macbeth's head*

MACDUFF Hail, king, for so thou art. Behold where stands  
Th'usurper's cursèd head. The time is free.

9–20 Siward's reaction – ‘heartiness . . . phlegmatic grief’ (Ernst Honigmann, *Shakespeare: Seven Tragedies*, 1976, p. 144) – has bothered critics, but it is the play's final response to a loved one's death (compare Malcolm and Donaldbain in 2.3, Macduff in 4.3, Macbeth in 5.5), with the difference that this loss directly serves the cause of freeing Scotland, as Siward's pun on ‘hairs’ (see 15 n.) suggests. Raphael Holinshed, *The First . . . Volumes of Chronicles* (1587), p. 192a, briefly and confusingly reports this incident, but William Camden may provide a more convincing ‘source’ (see p. 15 above, n. 2). Compare ‘Friends, I owe mo[r]e tears / To this dead man than you shall see me pay’ (JC 5.3.101–2).

10 brought off the field i.e. the body recovered (for burial).

12 hurts before wounds on the front (of his body), i.e. wounds gained while he fought the enemy, rather than wounds ‘behind’, on his back, which would indicate he died running away. The idea that only ‘hurts before’ were honourable has classical origins; see ‘Life of Pelopidas’ in Plutarch, *The Lives of the Noble Grecians and Romans, Complete*, trans. Thomas North (1595), p. 315.

15 hairs Siward echoes the biblical use of ‘the hairs of my head’ as a periphrasis for ‘a very large number’ (see e.g. Ps. 40.13 and 69.4). Mahood (p.

141) finds a homophonic pun on ‘heirs’ and ‘hairs’ (see 4.1.112 n.): ‘Young Siward’s death represents the last blind attempt of Macbeth to render his enemies childless’, without heirs (or ‘hairs’); Cercignani (p. 335) doubts the pun.

17 knell (church) bell rung to mark the death of a member of the congregation. See 2.1.63 and 4.3.172–3 and n.

19 score bill, amount owing. The word could mean something as mundane as a tavern debt, but here alludes to the soul one owes God. See 5 n.

20 newer more recent, fresher. Compare *OED* New adj 6a and 4.3.176.

20 SD *Macbeth's head* Malone added *on a pole*, following *Scotland*, p. 176a, and other bloodthirsty SDS (e.g. Collier<sup>2</sup>'s *Sticking the pike in the ground*) may record stage-practice; compare 1.2.23 n., and see illustration 4, p. 31 above. Modern productions rarely follow r's SDS; for both early and later, see William W. French, ‘What “may become a man”: image and structure in *Macbeth*’, *College Literature* 12 (1985), 191–201.

21 Hail The word, repeated twice here (26) and common in Act 1, has not been used since ‘all-hail’ (1.5.53) and ‘hailed’ (3.1.61); it now links Macbeth with Malcolm, the sisters with the victorious Scots.

21 so thou art i.e. evidence of Macbeth's death (the head) confirms Malcolm's kingship.

I see thee compassed with thy kingdom's pearl,  
 That speak my salutation in their minds;  
 Whose voices I desire aloud with mine.  
 Hail, King of Scotland.

25

ALL

Hail, King of Scotland.

*Flourish*

MALCOLM We shall not spend a large expense of time  
 Before we reckon with your several loves  
 And make us even with you. My thanes and kinsmen,  
 Henceforth be earls, the first that ever Scotland  
 In such an honour named. What's more to do  
 Which would be planted newly with the time, –  
 As calling home our exiled friends abroad  
 That fled the snares of watchful tyranny,  
 Producing forth the cruel ministers  
 Of this dead butcher and his fiend-like queen,  
 Who, as 'tis thought, by self and violent hands  
 Took off her life, – this and what needful else  
 That calls upon us, by the grace of Grace  
 We will perform in measure, time, and place.  
 So, thanks to all at once and to each one,  
 Whom we invite to see us crowned at Scone.

30

35

40

*Flourish**Exeunt*

FINIS

[26 SH] F (All.); ALL BUT MALCOLM Oxford      [27] time, –] Capell; time, F      [28] life, –] Capell (subst.); life. F      [29] SD.1–2] F (Flourish. Exeunt Omnes.), as one line

**26 pearl** finest members or parts, noble examples (*OED Pearl sb<sup>1</sup> 3a*).

**28 reckon** settle accounts with (*OED Reckon v 11*, quoting this line). See 19, 29, and nn.

**28 several** separate, distinct.

**29 make us even** square our accounts, make us quits. The phrase is the last of several commercial or financial metaphors: 'spend . . . expense . . . reckon' (27–8).

**29–31** My thanes . . . named Among the thanes made earls, *Scotland*, p. 176a, specifies Fife (i.e. the play's Macduff), Menteith, Caithness, Ross, and Angus.

**31–2** What's . . . time As Booth (p. 91) notes, Malcolm's metaphor echoes Duncan's, addressed to Macbeth (1.4.28–9); the cycle of trust and betrayal renews itself, as it does more plainly in Polanski's

filmed *Macbeth* (see p. 87 above).

**33 exiled friends abroad** i.e. friends exiled abroad. Compare 5.2.7n.

**37–8 by self . . . life** Malcolm's guess that Lady Macbeth committed suicide (see 5.1.66 and n.) is not supported by the text, and *Scotland* is silent, though it reports (p. 169a) that Macdonald killed 'his wife and children, and lastlie himselfe' to escape captivity. See above, p. 34.

**39 calls upon** invokes (*Lexicon*); demands, summons.

**39 grace of Grace** 'the grace of God, apostrophized as the essence of graciousness' (Brooke).

**40 measure** due proportion (*OED Measure sb 11a*).

**42 Scone** Compare 2.4.31, 4.1.7, and nn.

## SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

**1.1.0 SD WITCHES** A hint of the witches' early costuming appears in a Jacobean satire: 'my *Lady* . . . holdeth on her way, perhaps to the *Tyre makers Shoppe*, where she shaketh out her Crownes [*'coins*', but punning on the 'crown' of the head] to bestowe upon some new fashioned *Atire*, that if we may say, there be deformitie in Art, uppon such artificall deformed *Periwigs*, that they were fitter to furnish a *Theater*, or for her that in a *Stageplay*, should represent some *Hagge* of Hell, then to bee used by a Christian woman . . .' (Barnaby Rich, *The Honestie of this Age* (1614), sigs. B3v–4r). Wardrobe records from 1602 mention 'a wi[t]ches gowne' (see Henslowe, p. 218) as if it were a conventional garment, and by 1634, a witch's – even, perhaps, a Scottish 'weird' sister's – costuming may have become a theatrical convention. In *The Late Lancashire Witches*, a mother panders to her daughter's social aspirations: 'Ile . . . weare as fine clothes, and as delicate dressings as thou wilt have me', and the daughter scornfully describes the mother's present garb: 'Is this a fit habite for a handsome young Gentlewoman's mother . . . you look like one o'the Scottish wayward sisters' (*Lancashire*, sig. c2v).

Productions have represented the witches as comic and ridiculous (see p. 68 above), as young and beautiful women (see e.g. one of Goethe's Weimar productions, discussed in Simon Williams, *Shakespeare on the German Stage: 1586–1914*, 1990, p. 95, and Bryan Forbes's production (Old Vic, London, 1980)), as hideously masked figures, and in many other ways. The 'weird sisters' derive from the three classical Fates (see Supplementary Note to 1.3.30), who were often represented in early modern graphic art as an old, a middle-aged, and a young woman; see David Acton's catalogue entry for Pierre Milan's 'The Three Masked Fates' (after Rosso Fiorentino) in Cynthia Burlingham, Marianne Grivel, and Henri Zerner (comp.), *The French Renaissance in Prints*, 1994, pp. 298–300. Roman Polanski's film, *Macbeth* (1971), and Trevor Nunn's 1976–8 RSC production and the Thames Television production based on it (directed by Philip Casson, 1978; broadcast 1979), partly follow this pattern in representing the sisters.

**1.2.0 SD.2** This direction seems to mean either that actors enter separately (e.g. from doors at the back of the stage) to indicate joint arrival at a new location, or that one group (mentioned first) enters to find another already present. This latter type of direction is common in Thomas Middleton's plays, uncommon elsewhere (Brooke, p. 58, citing unpublished work by R. V. Holdsworth).

In addition to this example, *meeting* occurs in five other SDS in Shakespeare's works:

*Thunder. Enter the three Witches, meeting Hecate.* (*Macbeth* TLN 1429–30/3.5.0 SD)

*Enter Bast. and Curan meeting.* (*Lear* Q (1608), sig. D3v.1/2.1.0 SD)

*Enter Varro's man, meeting others.* (*Timon* TLN 1117/3.4.0 SD)

*Enter three Senators at one doore, Alcibiades meeting them, with attendants.* (*Timon* TLN 1255–6/3.5.0 SD)

*Enter two Gentlemen, meeting one another.* (*H8* TLN 2377/4.1.0 SD)

Remarkably, of these examples only the one from *Lear* has not been challenged as non-Shakespearean: the Hecate passages in *Macbeth* may be Middleton's (see Textual Analysis, pp. 256–9 below); the first six scenes of Act 3 of *Timon* are now generally considered to be by Middleton (see e.g. *Textual Companion*, p. 501); Act 4, Scene 1 of *H8* is thought to be by John Fletcher, Shakespeare's collaborator on that play (see Cyrus Hoy, 'The shares of Fletcher and his collaborators in the Beaumont and Fletcher canon', *SB* 15 (1962), 71–90, especially 80–1, and *Textual Companion*, p. 618).

Whether *Macbeth* Act 1, Scene 2 is partly or entirely by Thomas Middleton, then, it seems likely that the opening direction is, or imitates, his. With *meeting*, Middleton always places an actor or actors on stage before the entrance of one or more other actors; thus, early stagings of *Macbeth* probably placed the wounded messenger on stage and directed the king's company to enter to him.

**1.3.30 weird** This word does not appear in F. The characters called 'witches' in the SDS name themselves 'sisters' (see 1.1.0 SD n.), and Macbeth so names them (3.1.58). They are thrice called 'weyward' (Compositor A: TLN 130, 355, and 596) and thrice 'weyward' (Compositor B: TLN 983, 1416, 1686). *OED*

(Weird *a*) says ‘weyward’ ‘was no doubt due to association with *wayward*’, an appropriate, if less colourful, adjective. ‘Weird’ in various forms does occur, however, in texts Shakespeare and his audiences either knew or could have known. From at least 1400, Scottish texts apply ‘weird sister’ to the three classical Fates, the Parcae (see *OED* Weird *a 1*); by about 1420, Andrew of Wyntoun begins to domesticate these figures – making ‘the weird sisters’ (emphasis added) into ‘weird sisters’ – when he writes that Macbeth ‘saw thre women by gangand’ in a dream: ‘And thai three women than thocht he / Thre weird sisteris like to be’ (*The Original Chronicle*, ed. F. J. Amours, 6 vols., 1903–14, IV, 274–5). The fanciful *Scotorum historiae* (1526 and 1575) of Hector Boethius (or Boece) calls these beings ‘the fates’ and ‘prophesying nymphs’: ‘Verum ex eventu postea parcas aut nymphas aliquas fatidicas diabolico astu preditas fuisse interpretatum est vulgo’ (Book 12, f. 258r; sig. K2r) and later on the same page, ‘the sisters’ (*sorores*). And John Bellenden’s Scots translation-adaptation of Boece, *The Hystory and Croniklis of Scotland* (?1540), reports that Macbeth and Banquo ‘met be ye gait thre wemen clothit in elrage [eldritch] & uncouth weid [weed = clothing]. They were Jugit be the pepill to be weird sisteris’ (f. 173r) and uses ‘weird sisteris’ three further times on the same page. The 1531 manuscript of Bellenden’s translation here reads ‘thre weird sisteris or wishes’; see *The Chronicles of Scotland*, ed. R. W. Chambers and E. C. Batho, 2 vols., 1938–41, II, 150. Aware of both Boece and Bellenden, Holinshed (*Scotland*, pp. 170b–171a) says these beings resembled ‘creatures of elder world’ and were thought to be ‘the weird sisters, that is (as ye would say) the goddesses of destinie, or else some nymphs or feiries’.

While no one of these antecedent texts needs dictate the language of *Macbeth*, they are united in calling the beings who prophesy to Macbeth ‘weird’ rather than ‘wayward’. Beside spellings unique in F – neither ‘weyward’ nor ‘weyward’ is a recorded form of *wayward* – other evidence suggests that the composers of *Macbeth* would not have hesitated to set some more recognisable form of ‘wayward’ if that were the word they thought they saw in the play’s manuscript. Compositor B, for instance, uncomplicatedly set ‘wayward’ (3.5.1), and he and Compositor A had no difficulties elsewhere in F: Compositor A set both ‘way-ward’ (sig. B5r/TGV TLN 211) and ‘waiward’ (sig. 14v/Ado TLN 472), and Compositor B set ‘wayward’ four times (sig. H6r/Err. TLN 1284; sig. c3r/R2 TLN 786; sig. r1r/R3 TLN 494; sig. t15r/Oth. TLN 1927). Compositor B’s consistent ‘wayward’ elsewhere in F makes his equally consistent ‘weyward’ in *Macbeth* seem a deliberately composed unusual word rather than an accidental and unique form of *wayward*, or (pace Cercignani, p. 365) an historical pronunciation of it. Moreover, when Compositor B met this word in the first column of Folio *Macbeth* that he composed, he would have had few preconceptions about the play and little familiarity with his copy’s handwriting and is therefore likely to have set what he thought was before him. Compositor A also met the word he set as ‘weyward’ in his first stint on *Macbeth*; it first occurs three lines after ‘Wrackt, as homeward he did come’ (TLN 127), and a kind of ‘compositor’s antonymy’ – ‘homeward’/‘awayward’ – may have influenced him toward ‘weyward’. Such errors may be much rarer than the substitution of synonyms, but they do apparently occur (see *Textual Companion*, pp. 519 and 526, on *Lear Q* (1608) 16.10 and 24.166, respectively). Later Folios leave Compositor A’s spelling unchanged, but modify Compositor B’s: TLN 983 is normalised to A’s spelling (‘weyward’), while TLN 1416 and 1686 become ‘wizard’ and ‘Wizard’ (or, in F4, ‘Wizards’), respectively. Although ‘weyward’ and ‘wizard’ might be confused in Secretary handwriting, ‘wizard’ may be a ‘correction’ from Holinshed where the phrase ‘certeine wizzards’ (*Scotland*, p. 174b; ‘haruspicibus’ in Boece, f. 261r) occurs in the text paralleling *Macbeth* TLN 1416 and 1686.

The question of what F’s composers saw and therefore what modern word or words F’s ‘weyward’ and ‘weyward’ might represent cannot be decided. Adopting ‘wayard’, as A. P. Riener does (*The Challis Shakespeare*, 1980), is unsatisfactory not least because it is a nonce-word, but ‘wayard’ also contradicts F and almost 200 years of earlier Scots and English *Macbeth*-narratives. In the Everyman edition of *Macbeth* (1993), John Andrews retains F’s two spellings, believing them to be the same word with double meaning, modern ‘wayward’ and archaic ‘wyrd’ (see his 1.3.30n.), but that decision substitutes commentary for modernisation. Post-*Macbeth* uses of ‘wayward’, as in ‘the Scottish wayward sisters’ (*Lancashire*, sig. c2v; compare Hunter, *New*, II, 162), or of ‘weird’, as in Peter Heylyn’s equation of ‘Witches’ with ‘Weirds’ (*Microcosmos*, 2nd edn (1625), p. 509), have no evidentiary value. Thus, there are reasons to doubt that Compositor A mis-set manuscript ‘wayward’ as ‘weyward’ and reasons to believe that Compositor B’s ‘weyward’ is an honest effort at what modern English represents as ‘weird’. In sum, and especially in view of Compositor B’s practice in *Macbeth* and elsewhere in F, Theobald’s emendation of ‘weyward’ and ‘weyward’ to ‘weird’ seems a plausible and metrically justifiable change.

1.3.89 sight F reads 'fight', but Compositor A could have easily confused 'fight' and 'sight' in Secretary handwriting; moreover, the ligatured types *f* and *ſ*, each cast on a single body, are also easily confused since they were side-by-side in the compositor's case. The traditional reading is 'fight', printed in Cam. and Furness without comment; Oxford and Brooke print 'sight', also without comment or collation.

2.2.8 SD Dorothea Tieck's German translation of *Macbeth* has Macbeth enter *oben* (*above*) to deliver this line, exit, and enter again to speak 14; Oxford and Brooke attribute this staging to E. K. Chambers's 'Red Letter Shakespeare' (1904) where it does not appear, although Chambers does adopt it in his 'Warwick Shakespeare' edition of *Macbeth* (1893). Other editors have instructed Macbeth to speak 8 *within* (i.e. off-stage). All seek to explain Lady Macbeth's apparent ignorance that it is her husband who speaks line 8 (see 9–10 n.). One effective staging (accepted here and compatible with F's directions) construes her puzzlement as the consequence of the stage's (imaginary) darkness: two anguished actors, uncertain of each other's identity but in full view of the audience, deepen the scene's terror. Dessen, 'Problems', pp. 154–6, usefully discusses F's staging here, although it is also possible that F prints the sp too early.

2.3.0 SD *a PORTER* The apocryphal gospel of Nicodemus recounts Jesus's release of Adam, Eve, Moses, and others from limbo; this episode (the 'Harrowing of Hell') appears widely in medieval art and verse, and in all four of the surviving Corpus Christi dramatic cycles which often represent hell as a castle-like location, occasionally with Porter-like speakers. Several Middle English poems on the subject specify a devil-porter (compare 14: 'I'll devil-porter it no further'), as do, apparently, several graphic works (see e.g. British Library MS. Additional 47682, f. 34, upper image – the horn used there by one devil atop the battlemented limbo identifies him as a porter (W. O. Hassall, *The Holkham Bible Picture Book*, 1954, p. 139) – and illustration 9, p. 50 above). Although none of the Corpus Christi cycle plays clearly identifies a devil as a porter, John Heywood's interlude, *The Four PP* (first printed about 1545), includes a lying contest in which the Pardoner describes a visit to hell where he encounters a 'deuyll that kept the gate' [i.e. a devil-porter], and the Pardoner 'at laste / Remembred hym [this devil] . . . For oft in the play of Corpus Christi [i.e. one of the cycle plays?] / He hath played the deuyll at Coutry' (Adams, p. 378). See further, Jones, *Origins*, p. 32, Wickham, 'Castle', and, for a summary of previous interpretations, Anne Lancashire in *Mirror*, pp. 223–41, especially pp. 224–7.

2.3.74 In the Folio, this and the following line appear as:

To countenance this horror. Ring the Bell.  
*Bell rings. Enter Lady.*  
*Lady. What's the Businesse?*

'Ring the Bell' repeats Macduff's earlier order, 'Ring the Alarum Bell' (68), and F's TLN 835 is immediately followed by *Bell rings. Enter Lady*. Brooke, echoing Keightley, says, 'since Macduff's order in . . . [68] has not yet been obeyed, his impatience is intelligible'. A widely accepted, if over-realistic, objection was offered by Lewis Theobald, who omitted the phrase 'Ring the Bell': 'if the Bell had rung out immediately, not a Word of What he [Macduff] says could have been distinguish'd. *Ring the Bell*, I say, was a Marginal Direction in the *Prompter's Book* for him to order the Bell to be rung, the Minute that *Macduff* ceases speaking.' Theobald continues with a metrical argument: 'we may observe, that the Hemistich ending *Macduff's* Speech ['To countenance this horror'], and that beginning *Lady Macbeth's* ['What's the businesse?'], make up a compleat Verse'. Theobald's realistic argument and Shakespeare's largely unrealistic practice coincide: sound effects frequently follow a character's speech no matter when they have been commanded. I agree, therefore, with Theobald's view and have deleted the phrase.

2.3.83 SD Capell removed Ross from F's SD (*Enter Macbeth, Lenox, and Rosse*) and explained (*Notes*, II, 13), 'he is no speaker [in 2.3], went not out with them [i.e. Macbeth and Lennox at 67 SD], [and] enters too immediately [at the start of 2.4] in another place after what should be his exit in this'. In fact, F's 2.3 provides no exit for Ross by name; he could leave in the final *Exeunt* (139 SD) or, as several editors have suggested, he could help Lady Macbeth off-stage at 112 or 118, though even that action is debatable. If Ross does exit at the scene's end, it would be most unShakespearean for him to begin the next scene; even an exit with Lady Macbeth would allow him an unusually short time off-stage to help the audience understand the gap of time and change of place between 2.3 and 2.4. Ross is a mysterious character; he has, for instance, been proposed

as Third Murderer (see 3.3.1 SH n.), and his political allegiances are particularly unclear (in 4.2, for instance, he might be played as sympathetic to Lady Macduff or as Macbeth's agent ensuring that she and her children remain unalarmed long enough for their murderers to arrive – a directorial choice Roman Polanski seems to have adopted in his film (1971) of the play). Although Oxford retains Ross here because 'a "ghost" [i.e. a mute character once intended to enter and perhaps to speak but forgotten by the playwright] seems unlikely in a prompt-book', much, if not all, of his 'mystery' is probably the result of a script that theatrical professionals tidied up as a matter of course without influencing the written copy for F. Editors do not have such latitude, and it seems best to delete him here, especially since no actor will lose lines.

**3.1.91–107** Although this speech at first seems a distended analogy (dogs and men are alike in their variety, some good, some bad), Macbeth's rhetorical tactics contradict his criminal purposes. The varied plenitude of dogs and men to which Macbeth appeals represents a universal and social order he has violated and now seeks to violate further; the premise of varied quality leads as easily to negative valuations of the men as to positive; 'bounteous nature' has given each a different 'gift', but Macbeth's analogy holds that nature has given his hearers the 'gift' of destroying nature. Some of the inherent moral contradictions appear in 'Not i'th'worst rank' (102), which for Macbeth means 'capable of murder' and recalls such self-contradictory phrases as 'Worthy to be a rebel' (1.2.10). This speech appeals to the men's pride in their manhood and is, therefore, Macbeth's version of Lady Macbeth's earlier speech (1.7.35 ff.); her appeal and her threatened contempt pivot on a comparison between herself and Macbeth ('had I so sworn / As you have done . . .'), but her husband's speech weakly and self-defeatingly turns on the man/dog comparison and promises the love of a man, Macbeth, self-described as 'sickly' (106).

John D. Rea proposed that this passage 'is probably taken from Erasmus' colloquy *Philodoxus*' ('Notes on Shakespeare', *MLN* 35 (1920), 378), where a few general, moralised analogies between human and canine behaviour are mentioned. It seems more likely that Shakespeare here transformed matter from Dr John Caius, *Of Englishe Dogges, the diversities, the names, the natures, and the properties*, trans. Abraham Fleming (1576). Fleming's delightful translation of Caius's Latin text (1570) is incorporated whole in Topsell, pp. 164–81, and matches *Macbeth* 3.1 in taxonomic rigour ('A gentle kind . . . A homely kind . . . A currisse [kind] . . .'). John Caius, who gave his name to the Cambridge University college Gonville and Caius, as well as (perhaps) to the French doctor in *Wiv.* (see Lord McNair, 'Why is the French doctor in *The Merry Wives of Windsor* called Caius?', *Medical History* 13 (October 1969), 311–39), devoted a section of his book to 'other Dogges . . . wonderfully ingendered . . . The first bred of a bytch and a wolfe' (sig. f2r), that is, a 'demil-wolf', the offspring of a dog and a wolf specified at 3.1.93 (see n.). Of this cross-breed Caius observes: 'we have none naturally bred within the borders of England. The reason is for the want of wolfes, without whom no such kinde of Dogge can be engendered.' Note, as a measure of its popularity, that Caius's book on dogs attracted the attention of the king, as recounted in a famous anecdote: 'When King James passed through this college [Gonville and Caius], the master thereof presented him a [book by] Caius "De Antiquitate Cambridgiae", fairly bound; to whom the king said, "What shall I do with this book? give me rather Caius "De Canibus" [i.e. *Of Englishe Dogges*], a work of the same author, very highly praised, but hardly procured" (Thomas Fuller, *The History of the Worthies of England*, new edn, P. Austin Nuttall, 3 vols., 1840, II, 490).

**3.2.38 in them Nature's copy's not eterne** Lady Macbeth asserts that Banquo and Fleance are not immortal. So much is unquestioned, but the meaning of individual words has been disputed. The line may mean that Banquo and Fleance are 'copies' of a natural pattern for the human body, or that they are patterned after nature's model. More controversial is an interpretation most succinctly represented by Joseph Ritson's note in Steevens': 'an estate for lives held by copy of court roll'; this explanation refers 'copy' to a form of common law possession of land called 'copyhold', one way in which a tenant occupied and could bequeath land technically owned by his lord. Since some copyholds could be terminated by the death of the tenant, critics were attracted to the legal interpretation of the line. An article by P. S. Clarkson and C. T. Warren, 'Copyhold tenure and *Macbeth*', III, ii, 38', *MLN* 55 (1940), 483–93, has led Muir and Brooke to reject this interpretation. Clarkson and Warren, however, depend upon a legalistic understanding of Shakespeare, of Ritson, and of other editors, and ignore the fact that dramatists often used legal terms loosely, as Clarkson and Warren themselves amply document in their magisterial *The Law of Property in Shakespeare and the Elizabethan drama*, 1942. As in most legal arguments, the pros and cons of 'copy' = 'copyhold' are complex, but they turn on (1) who is the lord and who the tenant and (2) how Macbeth

understands his wife's remark. I suggest that Lady Macbeth's intervention forwards her husband's thoughts: if Banquo and Fleance are tenants 'for life', their deaths (which her line prompts Macbeth to consider directly) will terminate their tenure in 'Lord' Nature's land (i.e. in existence); they will die. Clarkson and Warren consider this interpretation – 'Banquo and Fleance would be the tenants and *Nature would be the lord*' – but reject it because 'Macbeth then would have no right to terminate the tenure, and it would be no comfort to him that Nature might at some time do so' (*MLN* 55 (1940), p. 493). The objection is not pertinent. Macbeth's 'right' cannot be an issue; his wife invites him to consider murder, not some action at the common law. Lady Macbeth's line, whatever interpretation we adopt, is no more than a commonplace: people die. Reminded so starkly of this fact – indeed, virtually told that killing Banquo and Fleance will relieve his scorpion-filled mind – Macbeth takes heart: 'There's comfort yet, they are assailable.' Clarkson and Warren are probably right (Shakespeare gets his law wrong); yet they forget that Shakespeare invokes legal language not before a court, the King's Bench, but for an audience that might (must?) have had as vague, or as figurative, an understanding of legal terminology as he did. The main point is that the law is to be broken – the common law, the law of land-tenure, the law of the Ten Commandments, 'Thou shalt not kill.'

**3.2.45 chuck** An aristocratic couple's use of such an endearment is quite unusual, at least in the drama. Shakespeare elsewhere uses 'chuck' variously: four times (*LLL* 5.1.111 and 5.2.661, *TN* 3.4.113, *H5* 3.2.25) humorously by a male character to males; three times (*Oth.* 3.4.49 and 4.2.24, *Ant.* 4.4.2) between husband and wife or lover and lover. In a scene that may be John Fletcher's work, Theseus calls Hippolyta 'sweet heart' (*TNK* 3.5.148). Realistic and unromantic Crispinella rebukes her sister Beatrice who has called her fiancé 'love': 'Prithee, call him not love: 'tis the drab's phrase; nor sweet honey, nor my cony, nor dear duckling: 'tis the citizen terms' (*Dutch Courtesan* 3.1.129–31). For the contemporary English use of, and controversy over, endearments, see Houlbrooke, p. 101, and William Gouge's pastoral rebuke to his congregation over couples' public use of affectionate nicknames, including 'chick' [= 'chuck'] (A. C. Carter, 'Marriage counselling in the early seventeenth century: England and the Netherlands compared', in J. Van Dorsten (ed.), *Ten Studies in Anglo-Dutch Relations*, 1974, p. 117), and compare 'You jig and amble . . . you nickname God's creatures and make your wantonness your ignorance' (*Ham.* 3.1.144–6).

**3.6.6–7** Q1673 lacks 'Whom you may . . . walk too late'; at the same point Davenant prints only 'Men must not walk so late'. These omissions may have some particular topical origin, but the Restoration evolution of 'night-walker' as 'prostitute' and 'ruffian' (see *OED* Night-walker) has a long history: 'night-walking' had been a misdemeanour since 1331 (see 'Nightwalkers' in *Jowitt's Dictionary of English Law*, 2nd edn, ed. John Burke, 2 vols., 1977). See also 'night-walking heralds' (i.e. sexual go-betweens, *R3* 1.1.72) and 'This is enough to be the decay of lust and late-walking through the realm' (*MWW* 5.5.143–5). Shakespeare's lines may have become unacceptably comic by 1673, or the omission may arise from a desire to avoid even a hint of wrong-doing among the legendary ancestors (Banquo, Fleance) of James's grandson, Charles II, king when Q1673 and Davenant were printed.

**4.1.110 SD** F's dialogue contradicts its SD by giving Banquo, rather than the eighth king (118), the *glass*; in F's text, Banquo (or his ghost, or 'shadow') comes last (122–3), following the 'show' of eight kings, the last of whom 'bears a glass' (118). Early revision and theatrical changes probably made the copy for F's SD inconsistent with its dialogue, and Cam.'s SD (following Hanmer) resolves the contradiction with the fewest changes to F.

**4.1.120 two-fold balls and treble sceptres** Upon being crowned and on other formal occasions, the monarch carries symbolic accoutrements (orb, sceptre); editors and critics have tried to link this line with the historical circumstances of King James, monarch of both Scotland and England. NS quotes E. K. Chambers: '[This phrase] can have nothing to do . . . with the triple style of King of Great Britain, France, and Ireland, adopted . . . [by James I on] 20 Oct. 1604. The earlier English style was triple, and there were no sceptres for France and Ireland. The "two-fold balls" must be the "mounds" borne on the English and Scottish crowns, and the "treble sceptres" the two used for investment in the English coronation and the one used in the Scottish coronation.' (A 'mound' is an orb of gold, often topped by a cross; mounds surmount the Scottish and English royal crowns.) For 'balls', 'sceptres', and 'mounds', see illustration 12, p. 59 above. The 'treble sceptres' may, however inaccurately, refer to England, Scotland, and Wales; in a letter to James VI, Henry Percy, ninth Earl of Northumberland, foresees James's accession to the English throne as 'the anexing of theas thrie kingdomms' and describes how James will integrate his Scottish subjects, 'to wnite

[unite] the tuo nations . . . to make them one, as nowe england and walles are' (John Bruce (ed.), *Correspondence of King James VI. of Scotland*, Camden Society 78 (1861), 53 and 56). In 1541–2, the Irish Parliament and Henry VIII himself declared the English king, 'King of Ireland' (J. J. Scarisbrick, *Henry VIII*, 1968, pp. 424–5), and E. B. Lyle, 'The "twofold balls and treble scepters" in *Macbeth*', *SQ* 28 (1977), 516–19, persuasively concludes that the spectral kings 'bear triple scepters in token of rule over Great Britain, France, and Ireland, and double orbs signifying that Great Britain was formed by the union of Scotland and England' (p. 519).

**4.3.148** John Ernest, Duke of Saxe-Weimar, witnessed James touching for the King's Evil after divine service on 19 September 1613:

When it [the service] was concluded, his Majesty stood up . . . immediately the Royal Physician brought [the sufferers] who were afflicted . . . and bade them kneel down . . . and as the Physician had already examined the disease (which he is always obliged to do, in order that no deception may be practised), he then pointed out the affected part . . . to his Majesty, who thereupon touched it, pronouncing these words: *Le Roy vous touche, Dieu vous guéry* (The King touches, may God heal thee!) and then hung a rose-noble round the neck [of the sufferer] . . . with a white silk ribbon . . . The ceremony of healing is understood to be very distasteful to the King, and it is said he would willingly abolish it . . .

(W. B. Rye, *England as seen by Foreigners*, 1865, p. 151).

Arthur Wilson's hostile account (*History of Great Britain*, 1653, p. 289) claims James's ceremonies were a politic fraud: 'he [King James] knew a *Device*, to aggrandize the *Virtue* of Kings, when *Miracles* were in fashion . . . though he smiled at it, finding . . . the strength of the *Imagination* a more powerful *Agent* in the *Cure*, than the *Plasters* his *Chirurgions* prescribed for the *Sore*'. For evidence of James's early (?September–October 1603) ambivalence about the ceremony, see F. David Hoeniger, *Medicine and Shakespeare in the English Renaissance*, 1992, pp. 281 and 371 n. 14.

**4.3.162** While the invention of the clan tartan lay two centuries in the future, Highland males (that is, most of the cast of *Macbeth*) already had for Jacobean audiences a well-known and distinctive regional costume:

Their habite is shooes with but one sole apiece; stockings . . . made of a warme stufte of divers colours, which they call Tartane: as for breeches, many of them, nor their forefathers never wore any, but a jerkin of the same stufte that their hose is of, their garters being bands or wreathes of hay or strawe, with a plead about their shoulders, which is a mantle of divers colours, much finer and lighter stufte than their hose, with blue flat caps on their heads, a handkerchiefe knit with two knots about their necke . . .

Nor, the English observer continues, is this costume restricted to the poor:

any man of what degree soever that comes amongst them, must not disdaine to weare it . . . if men be kind unto them, and be in their habite; then are they conquer'd with kindnessse . . .

(John Taylor, *The Pennyles Pilgrimage* (1618), in Taylor, *Works*, 1630, p. 135)

Contemporary English dramatic representations of Scots almost always included the blue flat cap and a short sword called a 'whinyard'.

**5.3.19** Seyton Critics have frequently suggested that the name would have been pronounced and heard as 'Satan'. Patten's explanation of why the Scots called the 1547 Battle of Pinkie, or Musselburgh, by a different name supports the claim: 'Sum of them cal it Seton felde (a toun hear ne too) by means of a blynd prophecie of theirs, whiche is this or sum suche toy, Betwene Seton & the sey [sea], many a man shall dye that daye' (Patten, sigs. a7r–v), where 'sea', 'day', and the first syllable of 'Seton' apparently rhyme. The 'prophecy' is very old: a version appeared in the fourteenth century (see *The Romance and Prophecies of Thomas of Erceloune*, ed. James Murray, 1875, pp. 34 ff.), and another is current in *Prophesie* (sig. A4r), a volume originally published to mark the fulfilment of one of Merlin's most celebrated prophecies, the union of Scotland and England. See also Nosworthy in *Mirror*, pp. 216–17, where he argues that Seyton = Satan on internal evidence and notes the oddity of stressing 'Seyton', given the extreme rarity of proper names in the play's dialogue.

## TEXTUAL ANALYSIS

### General editorial procedures

The First Folio (F) divides *Macbeth* into acts and scenes; editors have changed that division in Acts 2 and 5 (see below). F's divisions are recorded in the collation, along with plausible editorial versions. In the dialogue, personal names (e.g. Fleans, Lenox) and place names (e.g. Envernes, Fiffe) and their derivatives (e.g. Norwegian) have been silently modernised (Fleance, Lennox, Inverness, Fife, Norwegian, respectively) unless the change affects the metre. Many uncontroversial modernisations have not been included in the collation; for example, changes of F's 'I' (for 'ay'), 'Ille' (for 'I'll'), and 'then' (for 'than') have not been recorded, and F's 'Oh' and 'enow' become 'O' and 'enough' without note. Among the less obvious silent modernisations, F's 'bad' (the past tense of 'to bid') appears here as 'bade'; so, too, F's 'ha's', 'do's', and 'Prey's', for example, appear as 'has', 'does', and 'preys'. On the same principle, F's various spellings for the 'hautboy', a musical instrument which is not the modern oboe, have been silently normalised. Fairly consistently, the Folio represents the syncopated -ed in past tenses and past participles as -d, the stressed as -ed; in this edition, these suffixes are represented as -ed and -ēd, respectively, and the collation silently treats earlier editions as observing the same conventions.<sup>1</sup> Similarly, other merely conventional differences (archaic spelling, punctuation, etc.) between earlier editions and this one are not noted in the collation. In this text, F's italics for proper nouns have been silently omitted, along with its archaic and merely conventional capitalisation; its obsolete abbreviations (e.g. y<sup>u</sup> for 'thou' at 4.3.33/TLN 1852 and 5.3.57/TLN 2279) are silently expanded. (Quotations from F in the collation are treated differently; see below.) Folio *Macbeth* only once uses the apostrophe to mark a singular possessive ('Life's Feast', 2.2.43/TLN 696); elsewhere it does not distinguish among plural nouns and singular and plural possessives. All such distinctions are editorial and for a reader's convenience, since the differences would often be hard to hear in the theatre; these editorial distinctions are not noted in the collation but doubtful instances appear in the Commentary. Other uncontroversial, normalising, and modernising editorial punctuation (of contractions, marks of exclamation, and vocatives, for instance) has not been collated, but any changes of or additions to punctuation (e.g. quotation marks and changes of address marked by dashes) that affect sense or theatrical delivery as I understand them have been collated and usually are discussed in the Commentary.

<sup>1</sup> Thus, at 4.3.34 the collation records Hanmer's edition as the first to replace F's 'affear'd' with the different word 'affeered', though Hanmer's conventions led him to print 'affeer'd', and the conventions used in this edition did not appear until S. W. Singer's first edition (1826), where he prints 'affeered'; in my collation, Hanmer is credited with the change, and Singer is unmentioned. Albrecht Wagner, *Shakespeares Macbeth . . . mit den Varianten der anderen Folios*, 1890, meticulously collates F *Macbeth* with the later seventeenth-century folios.

Directions for a character to speak *to* another or *aside* are all editorial, and most derive from eighteenth-century editions; such directions are placed within square brackets and should be regarded with caution. Substantive changes and additions to F's stage directions appear in square brackets, and all are collated, but uncontroversial modernisations like that made in the dialogue proper and the imposition of New Cambridge Shakespeare series conventions (e.g. no final punctuation in entry- and exit-directions, capitals for the names of speakers in entry-directions) are not collated.

Most speech headings are silently expanded and normalised unless F's ascription might seem confusing (e.g. *Mac.* for Macduff, not Macbeth, at 4.3.102/TLN 1930), or where there is a wide, local variation (as in the three different speech headings for Siward in the short Act 5, Scene 4) or where the assignment of a speech has been changed or plausibly conjectured; in such cases, the collation records F's reading and any change or conjecture. Where F indicates a member of a category (witch, murderer, apparition) by a number, the speech heading has been expanded (e.g. FIRST WITCH, THIRD MURDERER, SECOND APPARITION) and the change collated. It has often been suggested that as Shakespeare composed he sometimes thought (and wrote) of the speakers not by name but by social status or familial relation. F's speech headings always refer to Duncan as *King.*, to Malcolm as *Mal.* (or *Malc.* or *Malc,*), to Lady Macbeth as *Lady.* (or *La.*, *La:* or *Lad.*), to Lady Macduff as *Wife.*, to her male child as *Son.*, and to Macbeth as *Mac.* (or *Macb.*); some or all of the implied patterns and distinctions may be Shakespeare's.<sup>1</sup> These speech headings have been normalised: 'Duncan', 'Malcolm', 'Lady Macbeth', 'Lady Macduff', 'Son', and 'Macbeth', respectively.

Like the speech headings, the Folio's stage directions also reflect a professionally abbreviated nomenclature: Lady Macbeth is once *Macbeths Wife* (1.5.0 SD/TLN 348), once *Macbeths Lady* (3.2.0 SD/TLN 1151), at all other times, *Lady*; Lady Macduff is *Macduffes Wife* (4.2.0 SD/TLN 1711); Duncan is always *King*. Such usages are normalised here (e.g. as 'Lady Macbeth' and 'Lady Macduff', respectively); the collation records their first occurrence and, where appropriate, notes that they appear '*throughout*', as do similar collation entries for speech headings. At 3.1.10 SD/TLN 992, F reads *Enter Macbeth as King*, and this theatrical direction (which indicates or implies costume, props, blocking, and the like) authorises the insertion of similar directions for Macbeth and Lady Macbeth in Act 3, Scene 4. On several occasions (see the SDS at 1.2.44/TLN 66, 2.3.34/TLN 784, 2.4.20/TLN 949, 3.4.37/TLN 1299, 3.4.88/TLN 1363, and 4.3.139/TLN 1968), the Folio contains so-called 'anticipatory' stage directions

<sup>1</sup> Speech headings in *Macbeth* and their variants are listed in Marvin Spevack, *A Complete and Systematic Concordance to the Works of Shakespeare*, 9 vols., 1968–80, vii (1975), pp. 753–5. The claim that type-names or social or familial designations for characters derive from the author (rather than the theatre or printing-house) appears in R. B. McKerrow, 'A suggestion regarding Shakespeare's manuscripts', *Review of English Studies* 11 (1935), 459–65; it has been roundly trounced in Paul Werstine, 'McKerrow's "Suggestion" and twentieth-century Shakespeare textual criticism', *RenD*, n.s. 19 (1988), 149–73, but in part at least supported by Random Cloud, '"The very names of the Persons": editing and the invention of dramatik character', in David Scott Kastan and Peter Stallybrass (eds.), *Staging the Renaissance: Reinterpretations of Elizabethan and Jacobean Drama*, 1991, pp. 88–96.

signalling the moment an actor stepped on to the Globe's capacious stage or when the book-holder alerted an actor to prepare to enter rather than the moment the actor 'entered' the dialogue or was noticed verbally by other speakers. Since many entrances, especially those of Banquo's Ghost in Act 3, Scene 4, have great theatrical potential – a potential the reader may at least partly share with the spectator – I have not moved F's directions to their more 'regular' places according to modern stage conventions.

Quotations from F in the collation retain original orthography (except for 'long' s) and italicisation, with various forms of the ampersand represented as '&' and abbreviations silently expanded. Unless original orthography is relevant to the argument, quotations from F elsewhere and from other sources follow modern conventions for u and v, i and j, and 'long' s even if, for example, the modern editions I cite preserve original spelling. In these quotations, abbreviations are silently expanded, ampersand forms appear as '&', and texts originally using black letter with roman or italic type for emphasis appear as roman with italic for emphasis.

### **Copy for the Folio**

The manuscript from which Folio *Macbeth* was printed probably originated in the theatre, either having served as the promptbook for contemporary productions or being a specially prepared transcript of such a promptbook. Regarding the former view as 'beyond reasonable doubt', W. W. Greg noted particularly that 'the record of entrances and exits is almost complete' and 'there is practically no inconsistency, much less ambiguity, in the designation of the characters'.<sup>1</sup> More minor features of F's text also support this view: for example, a theatrical instruction 'Ring the bell' has apparently been incorporated in the text of Act 2, Scene 3 (see Supplementary Note on 2.3.74, p. 241 above), and numerous stage directions for sound and lighting, *Oboes. Torches.* (1.7.0 SD), and supernumeraries, *Drum(me) and Colours* (5.2.0 SD, 5.4.0 SD, 5.5.0 SD, 5.6.0 SD, 5.9.0 SD), for instance, are professionally terse. The Folio is not, however, flawless as a theatre script. Greg complains that two different stagings of Macbeth's death seem to be conflated in F's stage directions,<sup>2</sup> and on at least one other occasion (the end of Act 3, Scene 5, discussed below as an example of adaptation) two inconsistent stagings seem to appear in the directions.

Whatever processes prepared F's manuscript copy for performance or printing, or the normalisation imposed by that printing itself, have removed most traces of any putative Shakespearean spelling habits, and it seems most unlikely that his holograph went to Jaggard's printing-house. Greg did, however, accept Richard Flatter's contention that the unique '*Banquo*' (1.2.34/TLN 54) represented Shakespeare's own version

<sup>1</sup> Greg, p. 395; 'F's copy may itself have been the prompt-book, or a transcript of it' (*Textual Companion*, p. 147; see also p. 543). See also Gary Taylor and John Jowett, *Shakespeare Reshaped 1606–1623*, 1993, pp. 46, 85, 87, and 240, where it is claimed that *Macbeth* is a scribal transcript that 'derives from a late theatrical text' (p. 87). Some of the evidence for F's copy is far from unassailable; early theatrical professionals probably tolerated, or had to tolerate, more inconsistency (in shs and sds, for example) than modern scholars imagine they did.

<sup>2</sup> Greg, p. 394. NS strongly defends F's staging of this moment; see Edelman (pp. 165–7) for a summary of editorial and critical comment and theatrical practice.

of Holinshed's spelling, 'Banquo'.<sup>1</sup> Further, 2.2.15/TLN 667 and 2.3.48/TLN 805 contain two unusual spellings, 'schreame' and 'Schreemes', respectively. *OED* records these forms only here and comments (*OED* Scream v): 'In Shakespeare's [spellings] . . . sch probably stands for (sk) after the spelling of words of classical derivation.'<sup>2</sup> Whatever the merit of *OED*'s speculation – I suppose it refers to such classical names as 'Moschus' – it has long been recognised that Shakespeare probably wrote some other words beginning with *s* in an unusual way. For instance, the spelling *scilens* (silence) occurs, so far as is known, only in the portion of the manuscript of *The Booke of Sir Thomas More* supposed to be in Shakespeare's handwriting and eighteen times (text and didascalia) in the quarto of 2*H4* (1600), believed to have been set from autograph copy or from copy that retained authorial spellings.<sup>3</sup> Elsewhere, there occur numerous unusually spelled proper names (which compositors might hesitate to normalise): 'Sceneca' (*Hamlet* Q2 (1604), sig. F3, line 1, for 'Seneca'); 'Scicion' (*Ant.* 1.2.113, 114, 119, for 'Sicyon'); 'Scicinius' (*Cor.* 2.1.204 SD and *Scicin.* or *Scici.* in some SHs, for 'Sicinius').<sup>4</sup> Given this admittedly patchy evidence, it seems possible that 'schreame' and 'Schreemes' in Folio *Macbeth* represent Shakespeare's own autograph spellings.<sup>5</sup>

### Scene division in the Folio

Shakespeare and other early modern English playwrights apparently composed their plays in scenic units defined by location and time.<sup>6</sup> A new scene begins when the stage empties of actors, and the audience is asked to imagine that the following action takes

<sup>1</sup> Richard Flatter, "'The true original copies' of Shakespeare's plays: outline of a new conception", *Proceedings of the Leeds Philosophical and Literary Society* 7, part 1 (July 1952), 31–42; p. 36.

<sup>2</sup> Although other parts of the words were gradually modernised, the unusual *h* disappears from 'schreame' and 'Schreemes' only in f4 (1685); the compositors of Q1673 and F2 and F3 evidently felt the spelling unusual enough to forbear changing it. The same may have been true of the F compositor when he read his manuscript copy.

<sup>3</sup> See Vittorio Gabrieli and Giorgio Melchiori (eds.), *STM*, 1990, 2.3.55 and n.; Matthias A. Shaaber (ed.), 2*H4*, 1940, pp. 488–94; Giorgio Melchiori (ed.), 2*H4*, 1989, p. 189. A. C. Partridge, *Orthography in Shakespeare and Elizabethan Drama*, 1964, p. 62, has, however, found very similar early printed and manuscript spellings: 'scylens' and 'scilence'.

<sup>4</sup> Hinman, 1, 380–1 and 383–4, treats the last spelling as characteristic of Compositor A, who set both 'schreame' and 'Schreemes', and the *sc*-forms of the proper names mentioned here are not unknown in other contemporary works.

<sup>5</sup> This argument naturally makes one suspect other words beginning *sch-* in *Macbeth*, particularly the famous crux 'Banke and Schoole of time' (1.7.6/TLN 480), and might in that instance seem to support modernising the crucial word as 'school' rather than 'shoal', the reading I adopt. The oddity of 'schreame' and 'Schreemes', however, lies in those spellings (like 'scilens') not having been found thus far outside Shakespearean texts, though there are some near approaches; the spelling 'Schoole' for 'shoal' is well documented elsewhere and represents a plausible scribal or compositorial choice. For other proper and common nouns in *sc-* where contemporary orthography preferred *s*, see n. 4 above and Lee Bliss, 'Scribes, compositors, and annotators: the nature of the copy for the First Folio text of *Coriolanus*', *SB* (forthcoming), esp. n. 14.

<sup>6</sup> The few surviving early modern English manuscript plays by professional playwrights exhibit all the possible variations: no divisions marked, acts only marked, complete or partial act and scene division. For comment and a tabular summary, see Anthony Munday, *Fedele and Fortunio*, ed. Richard Hosley, 1981, pp. 68–73.

place at a later time or in a new location, or both.<sup>1</sup> Printed designations of scene changes appear only sporadically in vernacular plays between Thomas Sackville and Thomas Norton's *Gorboduc* (1565), divided into acts, and John Lyly's *Mother Bombie* (1594), divided into acts and scenes; the practice becomes common in the first decade of the seventeenth century.<sup>2</sup> It is important to stress, however, that scene divisions are a printed, not a theatrical, phenomenon. Where a printed text marks a new scene, the stage will exhibit a blank, an absence of actors. The marking of scenes and of acts (the grouping of scenes) is thus mainly a convenience for readers, for devotees of print culture, and for those who require a succinct reference-system.<sup>3</sup> What the reader experiences as marks on the page the spectator experiences as a shifting of bodies and voices on the stage. Thus, and significantly for *Macbeth*, editorial scene division affects readers very differently from the way the stage action affects spectators.

Even though Elizabethan and Jacobean conventions for scene division seem relatively clear, ambiguous cases do arise. Aside from Alexander Pope and a few others who sought to impose a neo-classical system on the Folio's plays, editors have plausibly altered *Macbeth*'s Folio scene divisions only in Acts 2 and 5. Nicholas Rowe, the first named editor of the play, and others have found F's division of Act 2, Scene 2, from Act 2, Scene 3, unnecessary, in part because the location does not change from some vaguely imagined 'Macbeth's Castle'.<sup>4</sup> Puzzlement over the setting is understandable, because it is here unusually fluid, but the stage has emptied of speakers, the customary indication of a scene-break, and F's division makes readerly sense.

The series of conflicts ending Act 5 has proved more controversial. As a coda to an unconvincing argument that young Siward's body should remain on stage after his death, Homer Swander claims that F's *Scena Septima* (the last it marks in Act 5) is 'a clear, straightforward, efficiently theatrical unit', but that modern editors '[u]nanimously . . . deform it, either enlarging it by joining it with Scene Six or (more often) cutting it up into whatever small units the editor finds attractive'.<sup>5</sup> Linking F's Scenes 6 and 7, G. K. Hunter notes that the play's ending is

[u]sually printed as four separate scenes, but logic would demand either more divisions . . . or none at all. The battle is a series of spotlights but the action must be continuous. The alternation

<sup>1</sup> See James Hirsh, *The Structure of Shakespearean Scenes*, 1981.

<sup>2</sup> See Trevor Howard-Hill, 'The evolution of the form of plays in English during the Renaissance', *Renaissance Quarterly* 43 (1990), 112–45, p. 142, and W. T. Jewkes, *Act Division in Elizabethan and Jacobean Plays*, 1583–1616, 1958.

<sup>3</sup> Scene and especially act divisions have some theatrical uses, of course, particularly once pauses between sections of action become conventional.

<sup>4</sup> Bevington, pp. 130–1, argues against dividing 2.2 from 2.3; Mark Rose, *Shakespearean Design*, 1972, argues (pp. 39–43) that the first three scenes of Act 2 'should be considered a single scene' (p. 39), and Rowe, Theobald, and White, among others (see Furness), do so.

<sup>5</sup> Homer Swander, 'No exit for a dead body: what to do with a scripted corpse?', *Journal of Dramatic Theory and Criticism* 5 (1991), 139–52; quotation from p. 149. On reasons to think Swander wrong about young Siward's corpse, see 5.7.14 SD.1 n., 3.3.25 SD n., and Edelman, p. 163; Roy Walker, *The Time Is Free*, 1949, p. 220, seems the first to suppose that young Siward remains, dead, on stage; for productions that keep the corpse on stage, see Rosenberg, pp. 632 and 650, and Richard Eyre's 1993 Royal National Theatre (London) production, which also cut the part of (Old) Siward.

between sides that has marked Act V so far now speeds up, till the two blur into one victory and one defeat.<sup>1</sup>

While I have chosen Hunter's alternative of 'more divisions' rather than 'none at all', his view seems to me unassailable and theatrically neutral, since printed scene divisions – any one, all, or none – need have no theatrical consequence whatsoever, and the Folio's divisions are quite probably not Shakespeare's at all.<sup>2</sup> The headnotes to Scenes 7, 8, and 9 and the Commentary on 5.7.14 SD.2 discuss specific local issues of scene division in Act 5.

### Compositors and the printing of the Folio

It is generally agreed that two compositors, customarily called 'A' and 'B', converted manuscript *Macbeth* into printed *Macbeth*. Exigencies of early modern printing required the two compositors to set the text in an order different from the one we read. This is the sequence: 1.1.0–1.3.103/TLN 1–210 (Compositor A); 2.3.66–2.4.19/TLN 827–947 (A); 2.4.19–3.1.21/TLN 948–1006 (Compositor B); 3.1.22–77/TLN 1007–70 (A); 2.2.50–2.3.65/TLN 704–826, 3.1.78–3.2.37/TLN 1071–1195, 2.1.6–2.2.49/TLN 579–703, and 3.2.38–3.3.25/TLN 1196–1252 (A); 3.4.0 SD–3.4.45/TLN 1253–1310 (B); 1.6.21–2.1.5/TLN 457–578 (A and B); 3.4.46–3.5.5/TLN 1311–1435 (B); 1.4.50–1.6.21/TLN 338–456 (A); 3.5.6–4.1.28/TLN 1436–1555 (B); 1.3.104–1.4.49/TLN 211–337 (A); 4.1.29–134/TLN 1556–1685, 5.4.15 – *Finis*/TLN 2311–2530, 5.2.15–5.4.15/TLN 2192–2310, 4.3.224–5.2.14/TLN 2071–2191, 4.3.112–223/TLN 1939–2070, 4.3.0 – 111/TLN 1812–1938, and 4.1.135–4.2.82 SD/TLN 1686–1811 (B).<sup>3</sup> After collating over fifty copies of the Folio, Charlton Hinman (I, 300–1) found only six press-corrections (changes made after some surviving pages were printed) in *Macbeth*; only two (both on sig. nn2) are substantive. The collation records those two (at 4.3.156 and 4.3.215 SH).

Compositors made characteristic changes (or errors) in setting their copy.<sup>4</sup> In plays where the Folio was set from an earlier, surviving printed text, for example, it can be shown that compositors sometimes omitted small or substantial amounts of text if they had underestimated how much space would be required to convert their copy into print. If they miscalculated in the opposite direction and allowed too much space for transferring manuscript copy to print, compositors employed detectable techniques for stretching their copy to fill the available space. And there are other typical flaws in compositors' work. Each compositor mistakes characters' names in the first batch of text he set. Not yet aware that the play's king is named Duncan, Compositor A did not

<sup>1</sup> Hunter, p. 186.

<sup>2</sup> Swander maintains (p. 150) that questioning the 'Shakespearean authority' of F leaves us 'as readers, in the chaotic world of editorial disagreement'; indeed it does, but such questioning and the editorial redision that follows in no way restrict equally chaotic theatrical reshapings of the play's conclusion, and 'Shakespearean authority' is nebulous.

<sup>3</sup> See Hinman, II, 182–219 and 516, T. H. Howard-Hill, 'Macbeth': *Oxford Shakespeare Concordances*, 1971, pp. xi–xii, and *Textual Companion*, p. 154.

<sup>4</sup> On Compositors A and B in particular, see Werstine and, for a summary of studies of all the Folio compositors, *Textual Companion*, pp. 148–9.

set a comma in the entry *s.d.* for Act 1, Scene 2, and amalgamated the king and his elder son: *Enter King Malcome*. Compositor B, similarly unaware that Lennox is a thane and that Macbeth's wife is consistently referred to as *Lady*, treated two characters, Macbeth's Queen (or *Lady*) and the Thane of Lennox, as one – *Enter Macbeth as King, Lady Lenox . . .* (TLN 992) – in the first column of text he composed.<sup>1</sup>

In Folio *Macbeth*, however, the main difficulty partly created by A and B is the play's lineation, its setting out of verse and prose and the regularity of its verse. Compositor A 'had a regrettable tendency to rearrange normal blank verse into a succession of irregular lines', while B 'had a tendency to set up prose as though it were verse'.<sup>2</sup>

### Lineation in the Folio

Protesting against the rearrangement and rewriting of short and/or unmetrical lines, especially by George Steevens, Charles Knight complained:

We admit that it will not do servilely to follow the original in every instance where the commencement and close of a line are so arranged that it becomes prosaic; but on the other hand we contend that the desire to get rid of hemistichs, without regard to the nature of the dialogue, and so to alter the metrical arrangement of a series of lines, is a barbarism which ought to be corrected as swiftly as possible. But when this barbarism is carried a degree farther, and the text is daubed over after the fashion of a sign-painter mending a Claude, we hold that the offence of republishing such abominations is a grave one . . . we proceed on our work of restoration.<sup>3</sup>

Since Knight wrote, the 'work of restoration' has come to seem less clear cut; critics now admit a greater flexibility (or 'looseness') in Shakespeare's metrics, especially in the latter half of his career, and recognise the influence of those (including Shakespeare) who prepared the plays' manuscripts for performance and the compositors who set those manuscripts in type.<sup>4</sup> Most critics agree that the Folio obscures one Shakespearean metrical practice, the sharing between two or more speakers of a single iambic pentameter line. In the clearest cases, these shared lines represent a syntactical or thematic unit. Since the late eighteenth century, editors have reproduced such units typographically by indenting the words that complete the line.<sup>5</sup> Question and answer are obvious examples:

<sup>1</sup> As Werstine observes in 'McKerrow's "Suggestion"', p. 160, what may be a contemporary promptbook of Anthony Munday's *John a Kent and John a Cumber* omits commas in *s.d.s* in such a way as to amalgamate characters. Unfamiliarity with the word modernised here as 'weird' may also explain the compositors' choice of 'weyward' and 'weyward', respectively; see the Supplementary Note to 1.3.30, pp. 239–40 above.

<sup>2</sup> *Textual Companion*, p. 637, summarising Werstine. For relineation in this edition, see Appendix 3, p. 275 below.

<sup>3</sup> Knight (ed.), *Tragedies*, II, 9 note c.

<sup>4</sup> Note, too, that F does not always mark the contractions (especially of pronouns before verbs) and other forms of syncopation and slurring (e.g. 'em' for 'them', 'th' for 'the') required to manifest a moderately regular blank verse.

<sup>5</sup> Although Steevens<sup>3</sup> established this convention for later editions of verse drama, Ben Jonson had employed a similar convention in the Jacobean period, and it is fully and elegantly established in Robert Gomersall's possibly unacted *Tragedy of Lodovick Sforza* (1628) (see W. W. Greg, *A Bibliography of English Printed Drama*, 4 vols., 1939–59, IV, clx); *Gorboduc* (1565) occasionally indents the second part-line (see Howard-Hill, 'Evolution', p. 142 n. 82) and, as Werstine (pp. 117–18) shows, so does the manuscript of the medieval Towneley plays.

MACBETH How now, you secret, black, and midnight hags!  
What is't you do?

ALL THE WITCHES A deed without a name.

Here F prints 'A deed . . .' immediately following the speech heading. Moments later, the typographic convention helps actors and readers perceive a choric response to Macbeth's question:

FIRST WITCH	though the treasure Of nature's germen tumble altogether Even till destruction sicken: answer me To what I ask you.
SECOND WITCH	Speak.
THIRD WITCH	Demand. We'll answer.

The Folio prints each of the witches' speeches as a separate line, flush left after the speech heading, whereas modern conventions dictate that 'To what . . . We'll answer' be regarded as a single line. Current convention also underscores visually such ironic moments as the instant of Banquo's murder:

BANQUO It will be rain tonight.  
FIRST MURDERER Let it come down.

and reinforces dramatic tension metrically in such moments as

MACDUFF I am not treacherous.  
MALCOLM But Macbeth is.

or

ATTENDANT The king comes here tonight.  
LADY MACBETH Thou'rt mad to say it.

In these cases, again, the Folio aligns successive speeches immediately after the respective speech headings. These examples and scores more demonstrate that Shakespeare, like his contemporaries, used metrically shared lines for dramatic effect.<sup>1</sup>

So metrically complex a play as *Macbeth* provides instances where adopting or relining the Folio approaches arbitrary choice. As illustrations, here are two examples – in one, this edition follows the Folio; in the other, its lines have been rearranged. G. K. Hunter appropriately draws attention to the moment Macbeth returns to his wife after murdering Duncan.<sup>2</sup> The Folio supplies:

*Lady.* I heard the Owle schreame, and the Crickets cry.  
Did not you speake?  
*Macb.* When?  
*Lady.* Now.  
*Macb.* As I descended?  
*Lady.* I.

<sup>1</sup> For an ample discussion of Shakespeare's use of short and shared lines, see George T. Wright, *Shakespeare's Metrical Art*, 1988, pp. 116–42.

<sup>2</sup> Hunter, p. 196.

Like many modern editors, Hunter prints:

LADY	I heard the owl scream and the cricket's cry.
	Did not you speak?
MACBETH	When?
LADY	Now.
MACBETH	As I descended?
LADY	Ay.

This layout does not represent graphically a plausible enactment: while the sharing of a pentameter (but which words should make up the line?)<sup>1</sup> might indicate the Macbeths' joint fear and collective guiltiness, few audiences will be able to hear, and fewer actors will be eager to convey, the line's metrical integrity. Such integrity, of course, is not the only sort dramatic speech may have: Mozart's or (sometimes) Verdi's quartets and quintets, for example, blend multiple voices into an enveloping unity-of-difference, but musical or sonic unity (also available in the theatre) is not necessarily metrical, as Shaw's effort to orchestrate the voices speaking his *prose* demonstrates: 'Opera taught me to shape my plays into recitatives, arias, duets, trios, ensemble finales, and bravura pieces.'<sup>2</sup> Imposing a hypermetrical but nominally single line on the reader's eyes violates my sense of the theatrical moment in *Macbeth* Act 2, Scene 2.<sup>3</sup> For whatever reasons of typographical convenience or printer's convention, the Folio's layout stipulates less, leaves the text more open to both reader and actors, than the conventional modern one, and I have therefore followed the Folio:

LADY MACBETH	I heard the owl scream and the crickets cry.
	Did not you speak?
MACBETH	When?
LADY MACBETH	Now.
MACBETH	As I descended?
LADY MACBETH	Ay.

By contrast, a reader or speaker of a passage in Act 4, Scene 3, of the Folio benefits from having the underlying metrical shape revealed typographically:

... and good mens lies

Expire before the Flowers in their Caps,  
Dying, or ere they sicken.

*Macd.* Oh Relation; too nice, and yet too true.

*Malc.* What's the newest grief?

*Rosse.* That of an hours age, doth hisse the speaker,

<sup>1</sup> As many editors note in discussing these matters, vocatives (usually proper names) and interjections (here, 'Ay') seem to have been excluded from the metrics of shared pentameters. Marlowe's far more regular practice almost always excludes vocatives from the line's metre; see C. F. Tucker Brooke, 'Marlowe's versification and style', *SP* 19 (1922), 186–205.

<sup>2</sup> Quoted in Michael Holroyd, *Bernard Shaw*, 5 vols., III (1991), 357. I owe the operatic objection to Brian Gibbons; the Shavian rebuttal is my own.

<sup>3</sup> The editorial or typographical choice (single pentameter or metrically unrelated and disjointed reactions) is truly a theatrical choice: Lisa Harrow, a distinguished Shakespearean actor, has forcefully claimed to me that the exchange echoes the 'heartbeat' of Lord and Lady Macbeth and should, therefore, be treated as a shared pentameter. The editorial choice here probably indicates a hesitant, stunned Macbeth rather than an eagerly conspiratorial one.

Each minute teernes a new one.

*Macd.* How do's my Wife?

*Rosse.* Why well.

*Macd.* And all my Children?

*Rosse.* Well too.

*Macd.* The Tyrant ha's not batter'd at their peace?

(TLN 2007–18)

In this edition, the passage appears as:

and good men's lives  
Expire before the flowers in their caps,  
Dying or ere they sicken.

**MACDUFF** O relation

Too nice, and yet too true.

**MALCOLM** What's the newest grief?

**ROSS** That of an hour's age doth hiss the speaker;

Each minute teems a new one.

**MACDUFF** How does my wife?

**ROSS** Why, well.

**MACDUFF** And all my children?

**ROSS** Well, too.

**MACDUFF** The tyrant has not battered at their peace? (4.3.173–80)

If 'children' is trisyllabic (as it is elsewhere in Shakespeare's verse), this rearrangement produces regular pentameters that graphically represent the dialogue's association of ideas and emotions. Whether this second example is clearly or sufficiently different from the first, only the reader or actor can say.

*Macbeth* includes sequences of three separate lines which might form two different combinations of one and one-half pentameter lines. Consider this exchange between Macbeth and Seyton in the Folio:

*Macb.* Ile fight, till from my bones, my flesh be hact.

Glue me my Armor.

*Seyt.* 'Tis not needed yet.

*Macb.* Ile put it on: (TLN 2251–4)

'Tis not needed yet' might be joined metrically with either the preceding or following part-line; it is an 'amphibious' line. Recent editorial practice has been to follow the Folio's lineation on these occasions and not to force the amphibious line into metrical marriage with one or the other of its possible partners, and I have been content to imitate this irenic practice. And nowhere have I rearranged the Folio's lines on the assumption that some stage action can be – or was by Shakespeare in planning his verse lines – substituted for one or more metrical feet.<sup>1</sup>

One further common occurrence is a part-line at the beginning or, more often, at the end of a regularly lined speech which is itself framed by regularly lined

<sup>1</sup> Compare Fredson Bowers, 'Establishing Shakespeare's text: notes on short lines and the problem of verse division', *SB* 33 (1980), 74–130, pp. 91–2, and 'the completion of a line may patently depend on a dramatic pause, or even an action; but it must be clearly realized that there is no consistency about this: many pauses, moves, etc., are certainly required which have, as it were, to be extra-metrical – the verse continues without regard to them' (Brooke, App. A, p. 215).

speeches.<sup>1</sup> When Duncan names Malcolm Prince of Cumberland, his speech ends with a part-line and is immediately followed by a thoroughly plausible pentameter:

But signs of nobleness like stars shall shine  
On all desp'rs. From hence to Inverness  
And bind us further to you.

MACBETH The rest is labour which is not used for you . . .

(1.4.41–4)

Unless compositorial malfeasance can be suspected, these part-lines have been allowed to stand. At certain places, especially in the work of Compositor A, no rearrangement seems to restore a regular metre and no obvious principle seems to govern the Folio's lineation. Thus, to choose an early example:

For brave Macbeth – well he deserves that name –  
Disdaining Fortune, with his brandished steel  
Which smoked with bloody execution,  
Like Valour's minion carved out his passage  
Till he faced the slave,  
Which ne'er shook hands, nor bade farewell to him,  
Till he unseamed him from the nave to th'chaps . . .

(1.2.16–22)

These moments may, of course, indicate cutting, revision, printing catastrophe, or any combination of these or other events, but whatever intervention has occurred cannot now be guessed at or rectified. Part-lines must therefore be accepted, perhaps as theatrically motivated, perhaps as accidental.

### Thomas Middleton's contribution to the Folio

Collaborative writing was common in Tudor and Stuart theatre: 'as many as half of the plays by professional dramatists in this period incorporated the writing at some date of more than one man'.<sup>2</sup> Folio *Macbeth* is probably no exception and may print passages not written by Shakespeare but (most probably) by Thomas Middleton; Act 1, Scene 2, has been especially controversial. On two occasions, the Folio may allude to, but does not print fully, texts that are also probably not by Shakespeare. Ever since Isaac Reed privately published *A Tragi-coomodie [sic], called The Witch* (1778) from a manuscript with a dedicatory epistle signed 'Tho: Middleton' (though not in his autograph), scholars have known that Middleton's play contains two songs verbally similar to fragmentary references in F's stage directions.<sup>3</sup> Neither song is especially well integrated into Folio *Macbeth* and each fits smoothly into Middleton's tragicomedy; so, while the date (composition or performance) of Middleton's play is unknown, these coincidences seem more than chance. They may thus be: the result of Middleton, and /

<sup>1</sup> Bowers, 'Establishing Shakespeare's text', pp. 78–9, demonstrates that part-lines more frequently end than begin speeches.

<sup>2</sup> G. E. Bentley, *The Profession of Dramatist in Shakespeare's Time 1590–1642*, 1971, pp. 199 and 205–6, and Carol Chillington Rutter (ed.), *Documents of the Rose Playhouse*, 1984, pp. 26–8.

<sup>3</sup> The manuscript is now MS. Malone 12 in the Bodleian Library, Oxford. Epistle and text were probably transcribed by Ralph Crane c. 1618–27; the 1778 'edition' is by George Steevens (see Edward J. Esche (ed.), *A Critical Edition of Thomas Middleton's 'The Witch'*, 1993, pp. 12 and 15).

or Shakespeare, and/or a third party sharing a source or sources; borrowings (in any direction) among the known plays, other printed texts, and hypothetical unknown texts; the result of deliberate adaptation of one or the other surviving play. The two instances are not identical and require separate discussion.

After TLN 1466, F reads ‘Sing within. Come away, come away, &c.’, and Thomas Middleton’s *The Witch* has a passage of song and action including ‘Come away: Come away: / Heccat: Heccat, Come away’ (*Witch* lines 1331–2). William Davenant’s adaptation of *Macbeth* (1674) incorporates a version of this song and the action that seems to accompany it, particularly Hecate’s ‘flying’ departure, which also seems to be called for in *The Witch*:

*Hec[ate].* hye thee home with ’em

Looke well to the House to night; I am for aloft.

*Fire[stone].* Aloft (quoth you ?) I would you would breake yo’ necke once,  
that I might haue all quickly: hark: hark Mother.

they are aboue the Steeple alredy, flying  
over your head with a noyse of *Musitians*

*Hec.* they are they indeed: help: help me: I’m too late els.

*Song: Come away: Come away:* }

} in y<sup>e</sup> aire.

*Heccat: Heccat, Come away* }

*Hec. I come, I come, I come, I come,*

*with all the speed I may*

*with all the speed I may.*

*wher’s Stadlin?*

*Heere* } in y<sup>e</sup> aire.

*Hec. going vp}.* Now I goe, now I flie,

*Malkin my sweete Spirit, and I.*

*oh what a daintie pleasure ’tis*

*to ride in the Aire*

*when the Moone shines faire*

*and sing, and daunce, and toy, and kiss . . .*

(*Witch* lines 1324–37, 1358–62)<sup>1</sup>

If Folio *Macbeth* refers to this song and to some or all of its accompanying action, it may therefore represent a performance in which Hecate leaves the stage through the use of a ‘machine’, a theatrical effect evidently possible in the Blackfriars theatre (the King’s Men’s city location after the winter of 1609), but not so certainly available at the Globe (which they continued to use – as a summer venue – after acquiring the Blackfriars).<sup>2</sup> Simon Forman, who says he saw *Macbeth* at the Globe in 1611, does not

<sup>1</sup> Appendix 2, p. 269 below, reprints Q1673’s version of part of this text and action, which also appears in Davenant’s adaptation.

<sup>2</sup> Simple ascents and descents were apparently used in medieval French and English religious drama (see e.g. Alan Nelson’s remarks in Jerome Taylor and Alan H. Nelson (eds.), *Medieval English Drama*, 1972, pp. 134–5, and David William Young, ‘Devices and Feintes of Medieval Religious Theatre in England and France’, unpublished Ph.D. thesis, Stanford University, 1960) and were widely used in Italian religious and secular drama in the sixteenth century (see e.g. Edward Carrick, ‘Theatre machines in Italy, 1400–1800’, *Architectural Review* 70 (1931), 9–36). Henslowe, p. 7, offers unquestionable evidence for a flying ‘throne’ at the Rose in 1595, but John H. Astington strongly argues that public theatres had, or

record any such spectacular moment, although F may also call for the witches to make a flying exit in Act 1, Scenes 1 and 3.<sup>1</sup> One explanation for the added song (and action?) in Act 3, Scene 5, is that the machinery that ‘flew’ Hecate off-stage (a human-powered winch seems likely) was both slow and noisy, and realistic illusion (if it were desired) therefore required extensive covering sound and action; that is, Middleton and/or the adapter(s) of *Macbeth* exploited necessity to add theatrical spectacle. This theoretical possibility does not explain, however, why no text ‘covers’ the two earlier moments when the witches have been thought to depart ‘flying’, incidents that similarly require – on the posited assumptions – dialogue and action to conceal noisy and/or slow machinery.

In sum, if a Jacobean Hecate departed Act 3, Scene 5, via some primitive flying machine, the time and noise of that operation may have demanded dialogue (and/or song and action), and Middleton’s *Witch*, or some adapted form thereof, may have provided the requisite words and action. As G. K. Hunter sagaciously remarks, however, ‘Shakespeare’s *Macbeth*, indeed, needs no more than the first two lines of the song [in Middleton’s play], to be followed by Hecate’s flying exit.’<sup>2</sup> And one is justified in asking why the witches’ putative flying exits in the first act lack analogous textual cover. Rather than insert text into *Macbeth* Act 3, Scene 5, especially since Act 1, Scenes 1 and 3, arguably require similar but unavailable text, I reprint lines from Middleton’s *The Witch* in Appendix 2 and suggest readers and producers make their own choices.

After TLN 1571, F reads ‘*Musicke and a Song. Blacke Spirits, &c.*’ and Thomas Middleton’s *The Witch* contains two seemingly relevant passages:

*Titty, and Tiffin, Suckin*

*and Pidgen, Liard, and Robin*

*white Spirits, black Spirits: gray Spiritts: redd Speritts:*

*Deuill-Toad: Deuill-Ram: Deuill-Catt: and Deuill Dam*

(lines 183–6)

and *A Charme Song: about a Vessell* that begins, ‘*Black Spiritts, and white: Red Spiritts, and Gray, / Mingle, Mingle, Mingle, you that mingle may.*’ (lines 1999–2000).<sup>3</sup>

could have had, at least simple ‘flying’ machinery as much as two decades before; see Astington, ‘Descent machinery in the playhouses’, *Medieval & Renaissance Drama in England* 2 (1985), 119–33. Shakespeare’s later plays, in particular *Cymbeline* and perhaps *The Tempest*, seem to call for ‘flying’ entrances or exits, but the textual evidence suggests that different stagings may have been employed at the Globe and the Blackfriars – that is, the texts are composite or hybrid and represent plural (and mutually incompatible) stagings. Reviewing the textual evidence concerning apparatus for flying actors at the Globe, T. J. King concludes: ‘such machinery was not required in the vast majority of plays, which suggests that it was also not available in the vast majority of playhouses’; see *Shakespearean Staging, 1599–1642*, 1971, pp. 36–7 and 148 n. 2. The Blackfriars theatre, however, apparently had effective and not noisy apparatus for flights; see Irwin Smith, *Shakespeare’s Blackfriars Playhouse, 1664*, pp. 414–18.

<sup>1</sup> For Forman, see pp. 57–8 above; for the witches’ exits, see 1.1.13 sd n. and Wickham, ‘Fly’. On the possibility that F conflates alternative stagings, see above, p. 247 and n. 2.

<sup>2</sup> See Hunter, 3.5.36n., although Hunter’s proposal may envisage more modern theatrical equipment than that available to the King’s Men. See also Peter Thomson, *Shakespeare’s Theatre*, 1983, where he describes 3.5 as ‘a “reminder scene” – “meanwhile the Witches . . .”’ (p. 152), and later remarks, ‘there are excuses for cutting it in performance. All that happens, after all, is that an overbearing, and presumably gorgeously costumed, Hecate scolds her inferiors and promises to stir up trouble for Macbeth, before heading off (and up) to a foggy cloud’ (pp. 152–3).

<sup>3</sup> For the complete *Witch* text, see Appendix 2, p. 270 below.

Middleton knew Reginald Scot's influential work, *The Discoverie of Witchcraft* (1584), which contains an appended 'Discourse upon divels and spirits'. Scot's 'Discourse' paraphrases *A true and just Recorde of the Information, Examination and Confessions of all the Witches . . . at S. Oses . . . Essex* (1582) by one 'W. W.' recounting an investigation by Brian Darcy, JP.<sup>1</sup> Echoing the pamphlet, or perhaps a ballad made from it, Scot writes of

he spirits and shee spirits, Tittie and Tiffin, Suckin and Pidgin, Liard and Robin, &c: his white spirits and blacke spirits, graie spirits and red spirits, divell tote and divell lambe, divels cat and divels dam . . .  
(Scot, p. 542)<sup>2</sup>

Scot's account, and W. W.'s, beg to be commercialised, and Middleton's play virtually quotes Scot.

In early modern England, no less than in many societies today, sensational events – accusations of witchcraft, gruesome murders, and the like – were fodder for every available medium (at that time, drama, pamphlet, and ballad), or, as one later contemporary wrote, such events were 'Staged, Book'd, and Balleted'; one witch pamphlet was published specifically to discredit 'the most base and false Ballets, which were sung at the time of our returning from the *Witches* execution'.<sup>3</sup> The similarities among the texts by W. W., Scot, Middleton and the Folio are striking, but they do not indicate any clear sequence of borrowing and indebtedness. Middleton certainly, and Shakespeare very probably, knew Scot's *Discoverie*; each may have known W. W.'s pamphlet; each may have known lost ballads, pamphlets, plays, letters, gossip, or other written or oral sources concerning contemporary witchcraft practices.<sup>4</sup> Moreover, the most distinctive verbal features linking the surviving documents (the coloured spirits, devilish animals, spirit names) hardly appear in the Folio, particularly since associating witches' spirits with various colours was a commonplace recalled, for example, by Mistress Quickly's invocation as Queen of Fairies, 'Fairies, black, grey, green, and white, / You moonshine revellers, and shades of night' (*Wiv.* 5.5.37–8).<sup>5</sup> Furthermore,

<sup>1</sup> Many have speculated that Darcy himself was in some way responsible for the pamphlet; it is reprinted in Rosen, pp. 104–57.

<sup>2</sup> I cite the original (1584) edition's page numbers, as given in Nicholson's 1886 reprint. The similarity among W. W.'s pamphlet, Scot, and Middleton was noted by Malone (iv, 386) and discussed by Nicholson, pp. 544–5. See *Witch*, pp. xi–xii, where W. W. Greg oddly claims that Middleton is unlikely to have known W. W.'s pamphlet because only two copies survive: for popular, ephemeral texts of this sort, the fewer the survivals the more likely it is that copies were read to destruction.

<sup>3</sup> See Thomas Taylor, *The Second Part of the Theatre of Gods Judgments* (title page dated 1642, but bibliographically integrated into the 1648 edition of Thomas Beard's earlier *Theatre of Gods Judgments*), sig. 3k2v, p. 94, and Henry Goodcole, *The wonderfull discoverie of Elizabeth Sawyer* (1621), sig. A3v, respectively. Goodcole later remarks that certain sensational events were 'shamelessly printed and openly sung in a ballad' (sig. D1r, margin), though no ballad of this episode survives. Compare the speed with which similar modern events reach print, film, television, popular songs, and other public representations.

<sup>4</sup> Hyder E. Rollins, *An Analytical Index to the Ballad-entries (1557–1709) in the Stationers' Register*, SP 21 (1924), 1–324, lists two witchcraft episodes which generated both books and ballads: the Chelmsford witches (1589) and the witches of Warboys (1593); see Rollins, pp. 131 and 124, and Rosen, pp. 182–9 and 239–97. For Shakespeare's likely knowledge of Scot, see Bulloch, I, 371–3 (on *A Midsummer's Night's Dream*).

<sup>5</sup> The witchcraft pamphlets reprinted by Rosen generally identify familiars by species and colour, e.g. two toads called Great and Little Browning, p. 70 (Dorset, 1566); two cows called Crow (black and white) and

in what seems indisputably to be Shakespearean text, the witches complete their brew – ‘Cool it with a baboon’s blood, / Then the charm is firm and good’ (4.1.37–8) – but the action that follows Middleton’s song in *The Witch*, action that Oxford and Brooke incorporate into *Macbeth*, includes further additions to the cauldron, accompanied by obscene analogies between sexual intercourse and putting in those ingredients. Adding Middleton’s witches to Shakespeare’s text confuses the audience and confounds the recipe.<sup>1</sup> These (Middletonian?) witches ‘are less successful than Shakespeare’s own arresting presentation because they speak not to Macbeth’s fears but to the audience’s . . .’<sup>2</sup>

Thus, while the Folio’s laconic ‘*Blacke Spirits, &c.*’ may point to the ‘*Charme Song*’ of Middleton’s *The Witch*, it may equally point to another passage in the same play (*Witch* lines 185–6) or to an entirely different and so far unknown song made from similar or identical materials. These possibilities, it seems to me, confound an editor who seeks a ‘snapshot’ of a pre-Folio Shakespeare–Middleton *Macbeth*. Rather than adding suspect text to Folio *Macbeth*, as editors have done or been tempted to do ever since *The Witch* was rediscovered, I have preferred to reprint Middleton’s text in Appendix 2, p. 270 below, where readers and producers may make what use of it they choose.

### Revision in the Folio

Given the almost inarguable presence of one other author’s writing in Folio *Macbeth*, it is not surprising that passages and even entire scenes have been regarded as non-Shakespearean. What E. K. Chambers famously called the ‘disintegration of Shakespeare’ was a peculiarly nineteenth-century phenomenon, and a less intuitive variant has reappeared in recent claims for revision or adaptation (by Shakespeare or others) during the early theatrical life of plays subsequently printed in F. Many arguments for non-Shakespearean writing (e.g. of the Porter’s speeches beginning Act 2, Scene 3) have been rejected as the product of a critic’s (or an age’s) assumptions or prejudice.<sup>3</sup> Here, I propose one example of possible revision (presumably by Shakespeare, but not necessarily so) and consider two other examples that have the most sustainable claims.

A section of Act 2, Scene 3 (TLN 885–94), begins and ends with identical lines: Macduff says, ‘Look to the lady’, and so does Banquo; the intervening five lines are Malcolm’s and Donaldbain’s *sotto voce* worries about who murdered their father and about their own futures.<sup>4</sup> Identical lines in close proximity often mark ‘repetition

Donne (red and white), p. 152 (Essex, 1582); two black frogs, Jack and Jill, p. 184 (Chelmsford, 1589); a thing called Blue, p. 283 (Huntingdon, 1593); Ball, a brown dog, p. 365 (Lancashire, 1613). W. W.’s pamphlet shows how colour and spirit may be combined casually: ‘*Tyffen* is like a white lambe’ (sig. A3v) and ‘*Tyffyn* her white spirit’ (sig. C8).

<sup>1</sup> Inga-Stina Ewbank, ‘The middle of Middleton’ (in Biggs, pp. 158–60), succinctly shows the difference between Shakespeare’s and Middleton’s witches.

<sup>2</sup> Mackinnon, p. 69.

<sup>3</sup> In Appendixes E–G of his Warwick Shakespeare edition, E. K. Chambers judiciously reviews the nineteenth-century debate over various passages and scenes.

<sup>4</sup> In the following discussion, I have supposed that the dramatist would avoid repeating the same line in close succession. Another, more theatrical (?), argument would hold that the repeated lines appropriately

brackets', signs of a copyist's or compositor's inaccurate treatment of added or deleted text. The mechanical details of how such repeated lines might have been included in a printed text are amply documented,<sup>1</sup> and they suggest that someone interrupted the scene's original development to add text (irregularly lined in F) 'covering' Lady Macbeth's business and motivating Malcolm's and Donaldbain's flight.<sup>2</sup> At some point before F's copy arrived at the form the compositors saw, the text might have read (modernised) something like this:

LADY MACBETH	Help me hence, ho!
MACDUFF	Look to the lady.
	And when we have our naked frailties hid,
	That suffer in exposure, let us meet . . .

Repetition brackets usually occur within the speech of a single character, and F's attribution of the first 'Look to the lady' to Macduff and the second to Banquo is slightly puzzling. If someone thought about Banquo's earlier status as one who had 'no less deserved' (1.4.18)<sup>3</sup> than Macbeth, however, that person might have decided to make Banquo the leading respondent to Duncan's murder. At some point, perhaps when Malcolm's and Donaldbain's speeches were written and their insertion marked (with the link, 'Look to the lady', or some similar phrase), the marking of (new) speech headings went slightly wrong.<sup>4</sup>

I propose that if (and when) the speeches by Malcolm and Donaldbain were inserted, 2.3.118–25 was transferred from Macduff, who came from outside the castle, to Banquo, the royal confidant important enough to spend the night inside the castle and the character who now takes charge of the crisis. This hypothetical change supports Banquo's status as near co-equal with Macbeth in the first part of the play and reserves Macduff for the prominence his flight, his family's murder, and his

draw attention to Lady Macbeth's behaviour, a claim similar to the one defending an earlier repetition at TLN 829 and 835/2.3.68, 74 (see Supplementary Note on 2.3.74, p. 241 above). In contrast, my argument assumes a common Shakespearean technique: several things are happening on stage at once, or nearly so (precisely when, for example, does Lady Macbeth exit?), and the printed text inescapably records those simultaneous stage-events as a temporal reading-sequence. Print cannot easily represent simultaneous events on stage: Lady Macbeth does whatever she does when she says 'Help me hence, ho'; some character says, 'Look to the lady'; Malcolm and Donaldbain speak; some character says, 'Look to the lady.'

<sup>1</sup> Robert Kean Turner, 'Revisions and repetition brackets in Fletcher's *A Wife for a Month*', *SB* 36 (1983), 178–90, summarises and develops the work of Wilson (who coined the term 'repetition bracket') and Greg (who showed how 'the brackets may theoretically indicate either addition or omission'). See John Dover Wilson, 'The copy for "Hamlet", 1603', *The Library*, 3rd ser., 9 (1918), 153–85, pp. 173–4, and Greg, pp. 165–6.

<sup>2</sup> See e.g. Halio 2.1.138 n., and Brooke speculates: 'It is possible that these lines were an afterthought, since they first articulate the suspicions that are previously only implicit in the dialogue, and F has similar problems with Malcolm and Donaldbain' in the scene's final dialogue (Brooke, App. A, p. 220).

<sup>3</sup> See also 2.1.15–16 n.

<sup>4</sup> Added speeches of the length of Malcolm's and Donaldbain's might be written in the manuscript's margin or more probably on slips pasted to the manuscript (thus producing the lineation oddities of F?). The manuscript (British Library Lansdowne MS. 807) of the so-called *Second Maiden's Tragedy* elaborately illustrates such amendments and additions and is notable for the way the 'link lines' (the cross-references telling a reader, copyist, or compositor where to add material) do not exactly duplicate the main text. See Anne Lancashire (ed.), *The Second Maiden's Tragedy*, 1978, and Eric Rasmussen, 'Shakespeare's hand in *The Second Maiden's Tragedy*', *SQ* 40 (1989), 1–26.

alliance with the English give him in the second part of the play. When the amended text was recopied and/or when it was set in type, none of the changes of speakers and all of the additions of speeches were made, producing the Folio text.

At the end of Act 3, Scene 4 (TLN 1410ff.), Macbeth worries about Macduff's absence from the banquet and asserts he 'will send' to learn the reason. In Act 3, Scene 6, an anonymous Lord tells Lennox that Macduff 'Is gone' to 'the English court' (3.6.30, 26) seeking military assistance, Lennox and the Lord acknowledge that Macbeth 'sent . . . to Macduff', the Lord relates how Macduff insulted Macbeth's messenger (41–4), and Lennox hopes that an angel will speed Macduff's message to Edward (46–8).<sup>1</sup>

All these matters are treated as past and known, but in Act 4, Scene 1, the 'galloping of horse' (4.1.139) Macbeth hears is the horses of messengers come to tell him that Macduff 'is fled to England' (141), news he greets perhaps with incredulity, perhaps with anger, certainly with surprise: 'Fled to England?' Macbeth determines upon more sudden and violent responses henceforth: 'From this moment, / The very firstlings of my heart shall be / The firstlings of my hand' (145–7). Act 3, Scene 6, also includes smaller puzzles: one popular emendation not accepted here makes F's apparent reference to the English King Edward, 'their king' (3.6.38), into a reference to King Macbeth (Hanmer and most other editors: 'the king'),<sup>2</sup> but nothing can be done to mitigate the abruptness with which Lennox introduces Macbeth and the anecdote of the 'cloudy messenger' whom Macduff rejects: 'Sent he to Macduff?' (40), where 'he' must be King Macbeth, not King Edward.

In the unlikely event of an audience paying minute attention to problems of this sort, the matter might just be resolved by a timetable:

- (1) Macbeth 'sends' to Macduff to demand a reason for his absence in Act 3, Scene 4.
- (2) The messenger is rebuffed.
- (3) Macduff starts for England; some Scottish courtiers, but not Macbeth, know that fact.
- (4) Reassured by the prophecies of Act 4, Scene 1, Macbeth first decides he has nothing to fear from Macduff (4.1.81) and then determines to kill him (83).
- (5) Lennox (who knew of Macduff's flight in Act 3, Scene 6) reports that messengers have arrived to say that Macduff 'is fled to England' (4.1.141).
- (6) Macbeth decides to attack Macduff's castle, family, and retainers (4.1.149–52).

A partial solution to these narrative inconsistencies would be to reverse the order of Act 3, Scene 6, and Act 4, Scene 1, but whatever further revision has taken place makes

<sup>1</sup> The main modern treatments of the apparent confusions at the end of Act 3 and the beginning of Act 4 are Muir, p. xxxiv (compare Muir's revised 9th Arden edition, 1962, pp. xxxiv–xxxv) and Brooke, pp. 51–3. The earliest comment I have found on the narrative and temporal problem here appears in 'Christopher North' [i.e. John Wilson], 'Dies Boreales. No. V', *Blackwood's Edinburgh Magazine* 66 (November 1849), 649–53. See also, and more generally, Brian Richardson, "Hours dreadful and things strange": inversions of chronology and causality in *Macbeth*', *PQ* 68 (1989), 283–94.

<sup>2</sup> The confusion of abbreviated 'the' and 'their' would have been easy in contemporary (Secretary) hand, since each might consist of *y* followed by a single suspended symbol.

that switch unsatisfactory, since Lennox's speeches (3.6.40–50 and 4.1.140–1) in the two scenes would remain realistically inconsistent.<sup>1</sup> A reversal of F's order redistributes, but does not solve, the inconsistencies, and has the further liability of juxtaposing the play's final witch-scenes (3.5 and 4.1 in F).<sup>2</sup>

The original sequence, if it was different, may have attributed one or the other of Lennox's speeches to a different character, as Muir suggests (p. xxxiv). The speeches assigned to 'Lennox' throughout *Macbeth* are puzzling: in Act 3, Scene 4, the character appears a courteous, if confused, guest at his new king's banquet; in Act 3, Scene 6, he seems an opponent of Macbeth, as he does in Act 5, Scene 2; in Act 2, Scene 3, and Act 4, Scene 1, he seems to support, or at least to accept, King Macbeth. There are various possible explanations: consistent characterisation was not important to the dramatist(s); Lennox's speeches may have been incorrectly identified; a revision may not have been carried through completely; 'Lennox' may have been chosen as chorus in Act 3, Scene 6; 'Lennox' is a vague type-designation meant to be clarified and rationalised in performance.<sup>3</sup>

Even granting that the time references of Act 3's final three scenes and of Act 4, Scene 1, may be neither precise nor clear, and granting that the timetable above makes 'Lennox' markedly inconsistent (or the victim of incomplete revision), an audience of narrative and dramatic accountants is hard to imagine. And in fact such an audience has not been imagined by producers who, since before Davenant (see p. 61 above), have regularly cut, trimmed, or adapted the Folio's otherwise excellent Act 3, Scene 6. The reason is obvious: rationalised or not, Act 3, Scene 6, destroys the theatrical effect of time (and Macduff) overtaking Macbeth's schemes and of Macbeth's appallingly violent reaction in Act 4, Scenes 1 and 2.

Act 4, Scene 3, lines 139–61 (TLN 1968–91), Malcolm's dialogue with the doctor and his explanation of the King's Evil, have been regarded as an interpolation by Shakespeare or another author into a pre-existing text,<sup>4</sup> and it is true that Macduff's 'Tis hard to reconcile' (4.3.139) makes a pentameter line with his 'See who comes here' (161). Linked or 'linkable' part-lines of this sort have been claimed as signs of revision,<sup>5</sup> and it is certainly arguable that F does not resolve Macduff's justified puzzlement at Malcolm's earlier words and behaviour. A further objection to this passage, and one not hitherto considered, is the description of the entering character as a *Doctor*

<sup>1</sup> According to Muir (p. xxxiv), the reversal was first suggested by G. Crosse, 'Spurious passages in *Macbeth*', *N&Q* 90 (1898), 321–2, but Ludvig Josephson's 1880 Stockholm production apparently used (with cuts?) the Folio's scenes in the sequence 4.1, 3.5, 3.6; see Ann Fridén, '*Macbeth*' in the Swedish *Theatre 1838–1986*, 1986, p. 53.

<sup>2</sup> The banquet scene (3.4) and the cauldron scene (4.1) would, however, not adjoin as Muir (p. xxxiv) claims.

<sup>3</sup> Further, at some point in *Macbeth*'s composition or revision the sequence of events may have been contaminated by memories of Holinshed's account, where Macduff's flight occurs after his family's slaughter (*Scotland*, pp. 174b–175a).

<sup>4</sup> See Clarendon, pp. x–xi; NS, pp. xxxii–xxxiii; and the vigorous objections of Nevill Coghill, '*Macbeth* at the Globe, 1606–1616 (?): three questions', in Joseph G. Price (ed.), *The Triple Bond*, 1975, p. 231. The passage is frequently cut in performance.

<sup>5</sup> See e.g. W. A. Wright (ed.), *King John*, 1866, 3.4.68 n., where lines 21–67 are considered an interpolation because the preceding and following half-lines make a pentameter. Note also that what may be 'repetition brackets' appear in this passage: 'Bind up those tresses' and 'Bind up your hairs.'

(4.3.139 sd), evidently of medicine, whereas his Scottish counterpart in Act 5, Scene 1, is more specifically identified as *a Doctor of Physicke* (TLN 2093). The distinction may be fortuitous,<sup>1</sup> but the slacker terminology of Act 4, Scene 3, might point to a revising author's haste or inattention. There are, however, strong dramatic arguments for the passage's value as a development of the contrast between good and bad kingship represented in Malcolm's and Macduff's earlier conversation: Edward the saintly physician–doctor of his kingdom versus Macbeth the demonic murderer of his, a monarch haplessly asking his doctor-figure to 'cast / The water of my land' (5.3.51-2).<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See 5.1.0 sd n. on the distinction between a medical and a clerical 'doctor'. The distinction affects costuming and is significant in the demonic context of Act 5, Scene 1.

<sup>2</sup> Muir appropriately cites L. C. Knights, *Explorations*, 1946, p. 31, and G. W. Knight, *Wheel of Fire*, 1949, p. 148, in defence of the passage.

## APPENDIX 1: CASTING *MACBETH*

Modern accounts of acting styles and production practices in Shakespeare's theatre are largely guesswork. Contemporary evidence states that Richard Burbage first played Shakespeare's Richard III, Hamlet, Othello, and Lear for the Lord Chamberlain's and later the King's Men as well as many other important rôles (see Edwin Nungezer, *A Dictionary of Actors*, 1929). It seems likely that Burbage also originated Macbeth. Jacobean extolled Burbage for his naturalism and pathos in tragic rôles, but all such accounts employ unknowable standards and relative conventions. As acting styles and conventions in the silent and talking cinema show, one period's performance of genius becomes for another audience (in ten, or twenty, or fifty years) an overblown or underplayed failure.

We may guess that the King's Men's principal comic played the Porter (today often a nearly unperformable part), and that actor was probably Robert Armin, whose known rôles and writings suggest he was an actor who did 'not talk *with* but [was] heard by his audience . . . [an actor who] talks to his own alter ego rather than to the audience' (David Wiles, *Shakespeare's Clown: Actor and Text in the Elizabethan Playhouse*, 1987, pp. 151, 161), just as the Porter invents conversation-partners and stipulates the audience's reaction in Act 2, Scene 3, and just as the actor playing Falstaff might in his honour-catechism (*1H4* 5.1.129 ff.). For similar casting reasons, 'the Murderers were [in the eighteenth century] the proscriptive property of the low comedians' (William Archer and Robert W. Lowe, '"Macbeth" on the stage', *English Illustrated Magazine* (December 1888), 239).

Bartholomeusz (pp. 10–12) guesses that John Rice, a young actor of genius according to contemporary reports, played Lady Macbeth, but the early casts and how they filled their rôles cannot be convincingly recovered. Like several other Shakespearean heroines (Cleopatra and Volumnia in particular), Lady Macbeth proves a controversial case, and scholars have claimed that an adult male, not a pre-pubescent boy, played such rôles; for contrasting views, see G. E. Bentley, *The Profession of Player in Shakespeare's Time, 1590–1642*, 1984, pp. 113–14, and Carol Chillington Rutter (ed.), *Documents of the Rose Playhouse*, 1984, pp. 224–5.

While the list of speaking and silent characters is long, *Macbeth* was probably performed in Shakespeare's theatre with a relatively small number of actors, several of whom 'doubled' or even 'tripled' parts – that is, one actor played two or three speaking or silent rôles. Believing that the King's Men usually cast sixteen adult men and a variable number of boy-actors, David Bradley finds that the company had run out of available adult men in early productions of Act 5, Scene 3: 'the servant with the goose-look in *Macbeth* [5.3.12] must certainly be a boy, as Macbeth calls him, for although the term is sometimes used to mean "coward", all sixteen men in the cast, apart from the two attendants who enter with Macbeth, are fully occupied elsewhere, preparing

to enter as Malcolm's soldiers' (*From Text to Performance in the Elizabethan Theatre*, 1992, p. 39). A fine ensemble production of *Macbeth*, Trevor Nunn's Royal Shakespeare Company version with Judi Dench and Ian McKellen in 1976–8, employed only some fourteen actors (see p. 82 above), doubling Ian McDiarmid as Ross and the Porter and Tim Brierley as Donaldbain and Seyton (who also appeared in numerous Folio 'Messenger' rôles, as the actor of 'Seyton' had since Davenant's and Garrick's texts), for instance. 'Political' interpretations often double Ross: Roman Polanski's film (1971) made Ross both the Third Murderer of Act 3, Scene 3, and at least an accomplice of the murderers of Lady Macduff in Act 4, Scene 2. Lennox is also susceptible to such thematic, 'Machiavellian' doublings. Productions using a larger company will none the less often double a few rôles: Peter Hall's 1967 RSC production doubled Jeffery Dench as the Old Man of Act 2, Scene 4, and the Scottish Doctor of Act 5, Scene 1, and Daniel Moynihan as the Captain (or 'Sergeant') of Act 1, Scene 2, and the Lord of Act 3, Scene 6. Twentieth-century productions – for example, Glen Byam Shaw's (Stratford, 1955) – doubled Duncan and the Scottish Doctor very effectively; the 5 November 1928 London revival of Barry Jackson's modern-dress production (originally Birmingham Repertory) doubled Duncan with First Murderer, Banquo with the Scottish Doctor, and the latter doubling was repeated in Andrew Leigh's Old Vic (London) production the next year. The play's two principal female rôles, Lady Macbeth and Lady Macduff, are very rarely doubled. Nunn's production doubled Lady Macduff and one of the witches, and Braham Murray's Royal Exchange (Manchester) production set in a Nazi death camp more provocatively doubled Lady Macbeth (Frances Barber) and one of the witches 'in white shifts' (see *North West Times*, 4 November 1988, and Jeremy Kingston, *The Times*, 5 November 1988); Andy Hines's Bristol Theatre Royal production included what are probably Thomas Middleton's lines for Hecate and doubled the part with that of Lady Macduff (see B. A. Young, *Financial Times*, 10 November 1987). Lavish casts have one main advantage in Act 5: the series of short scenes documenting the Anglo-Scottish attack on Macbeth may demonstrate – through an ever-fuller stage – the volume of right's recoil upon wrong.

How old are Lord and Lady Macbeth? The Folio text gives little explicit help with this important decision for the producer. In his film, Polanski cast young actors as the couple and thereby emphasised both their naïveté and their sensuality, but middle-aged sensuality also has a powerful appeal (compare *Antony and Cleopatra*), and one Hungarian production, at least, made Lady Macbeth distinctly older than her husband and Macbeth consequently 'pliable' (Leiter, p. 386). Less obviously, the represented age of a relatively minor character, Lennox (who claims a 'young remembrance' (2.3.54)), can strongly influence the audience's experience.

When a character appears or does not appear on stage subtly affects the audience's responses: Macduff, for instance, first appears in Act 2, Scene 3, very late for so important a figure; Lady Macbeth appears often and crucially in the first three acts (1.5, 1.6, 1.7, 2.2, 2.3, 3.1, 3.2, 3.4) and then not again and finally until Act 5, Scene 1. Her continued presence and then her long absence measure a changing private as well as a changing public relation, both that of wife and husband and that of Lord/

King Macbeth with Scotland and his heart. This gap poses serious problems for the actor, and many productions prepare for the sleepwalking scene (Act 5, Scene 1) by having Lady Macbeth show incipient signs of mental or physical weakness at the end of the banquet scene (Act 3, Scene 4); in many productions, too, Macbeth explicitly dismisses her – with the possibly neutral line, ‘While then, God be with you’ (3.1.45) – before he meets the Murderers, thus indicating her diminished part in Macbeth’s plans. Macbeth disappears after Act 4, Scene 1, when about two-thirds of the play’s lines have been spoken, and returns in Act 5, Scene 3, when the audience has witnessed a further fifth of the play’s dialogue. While Macbeth is absent, the Anglo-Scottish political and military alliance gathers against him. (This absence is also a customary Shakespearean ‘rest’ for the principal tragic actor, who needs to gather energy for the play’s conclusion.)

Anthony Brennan’s statistics in *Onstage and Offstage Worlds in Shakespeare’s Plays* (1989) confirm many common impressions about the relative importance of Macbeth and Lady Macbeth compared with major rôles in some of Shakespeare’s other tragedies. Macbeth takes up a great deal of his eponymous play: he speaks more than 30 per cent of the play’s lines and is on stage for more than half the dialogue (Brennan, p. 97). Macbeth’s rôle accounts for a higher percentage of his play’s lines than the rôles of any other Shakespearean tragic character except (by tiny margins) the Prince in *Hamlet* and Iago in *Othello*. Only Hamlet, Titus, Romeo and Juliet, Richard II and Bolingbroke, Othello and Iago slightly outpoint Macbeth in the second category, presence on stage. These same statistics, however, do not confirm what might be another common impression. Measured in lines of dialogue, Lady Macbeth has a small part, only about 10 per cent of the play’s spoken lines (hers is the second-largest part in *Macbeth*, but smaller than Juliet’s in *Romeo and Juliet*, or Claudius’s in *Hamlet*, and about the size of Desdemona’s in *Othello*), though she is on stage for more than a quarter of the play’s spoken lines (Brennan, p. 97). She last appears with her husband (Act 3, Scene 4) after only slightly more than half the play’s lines have been spoken (Brennan, p. 17). Banquo, as a living figure and as a ghost, appears in nearly a third of the play’s scenes, almost the equal of the seemingly ubiquitous Ross, who speaks more lines.

Treating part-lines as full lines and using this edition’s lineation and attribution of speeches, here are some line-counts (compiled by Michael Cohen) for various rôles:

First Witch:	61 lines
Duncan:	69 lines
Malcolm:	206 lines
Lennox:	64 lines
Ross:	134 lines
Macbeth:	700 lines
Banquo:	112 lines
Lady Macbeth:	254 lines
Porter:	29 lines
Macduff:	174 lines

Lady Macduff: 42 lines

Siward: 30 lines

A modern, hypothetical Jacobean casting of *Macbeth* in T. J. King, *Casting Shakespeare's Plays*, 1992, finds that 'Nine men can play twelve principal male rôles, and eight boys play seven principal female rôles and Macduff's Son' (p. 91), and Bradley, *From Text to Performance*, p. 237, finds a cast of sixteen adults and four to eight boys 'probable'.

## APPENDIX 2: ADDITIONAL TEXT AND MUSIC

As the Textual Analysis argues (pp. 255–63 above), *Macbeth* has been revised, adapted, and otherwise changed from very early in the play's theatrical existence. Spectacle – especially the weird sisters and their appearance, and the action, songs and dances associated with them – has been the primary focus of change (see 'Macbeth in performance', pp. 57–84 above). Whatever changes we may guess the Folio records, the first documented evidence of adaptation or revision appears in Q1673, where the text mainly, though not exclusively, follows the Folio but has certain substantial additions, all connected with the sisters.

At the end of *Macbeth* Act 2, Scene 2, after 'Wake *Duncan* with thy knocking: / I would thou could'st. *Exeunt.*' (TLN 739–40), which Q1673 treats as a single line, the quarto prints (sig. D2):

*Enter Witches, and Sing.*

1. *Speak, Sister, is the Deed done?*
2. *Long ago, long ago.*

*Above twelve Glasses since are run.*

1. *Ill Deeds are seldom slow.*

*Nor single following Crimes on former wait  
The worst of Creatures fastest propagate.  
Many more murders must this one ensue,  
As if in Death were propagation too.  
He will, he shall, he must spill much more blood,  
And become worse to make his Title good.  
Now let's Dance. Agreed, agreed, agreed.*

*Chorus. We should rejoice when good Kings bleed.*

*When Cattle dye, about we go,  
What then, when Monarchs perish, should we do?  
We should, &c.*

At the end of *Macbeth* Act 2, Scene 3, after '*Exeunt.*' (TLN 922), the quarto prints (sig. D4v):

*Enter Witches, Dance and Sing.*

*Let's have a Dance upon the Heath,  
We gain more Life by Duncan's Death.  
Sometimes like brinded Cats we shew,  
Having no musick but our mew.  
Sometimes we Dance in some Old Mill,  
Upon the Hopper, Stones, and Wheel,  
To some Old Saw, or bardish Rhime,  
Where still the Mill-Clack does keep time.  
Sometime about a hollow Tree  
A Round, a Round, a Round Dance we:*

*Thither the chirping Critick comes,  
And Beetles singing drowsie hums.  
Sometimes we Dance o're Fens and Furrs,  
To howls of Wolves, and barks of Currts.  
And when with none of these we meet,  
We Dance to the Echoes of our Feet.*

[Exeunt.]

At the conclusion of *Macbeth* Act 3, Scene 5, after ‘Sits in a Foggy cloud, and stayes for me.’ (TLN 1466), Q1673 (sigs. f3v–f4r) replaces ‘Sing within. Come away, come away, &c.’ (TLN 1467) with song and action apparently derived from Thomas Middleton’s *The Witch* (see Textual Analysis, pp. 256–7 above):

- Sing within.
- 1 *Come away Heccat, Heccat, Oh, come away;*
  - 2 *I come, I come, with all the speed I may,  
I come, I come, with all the speed I may.*
  - 1 *Where's Stadling?*
  - 3 *Here.*
  - 1 *Where's Puckle?*
  - 4 *Here; and Hopper too, and Helway too;*
  - 1 *We want but you, we want but you.*  
*Come away, make up the 'count*  
*I will but noint, and then I mount*  
*I will, &c.*
  - 1 *Here comes one, it is*  
*To fetch his due, a kiss,*  
*I [Ay] A Cull, sip of blood;*  
*And why thou stayst so long, I muse,*  
*Since the Aire's so sweet and good;*  
*O art thou come! What News?*
  - [sig. f4r] 2 *All goes fair for our delight,*  
*Either come, or else refuse,*  
*Now I am furnish'd for the flight,*  
*Now I go, now I flee.*  
*Malkin my sweet spirit and I.*
  - 3 *Oh what a dainty Pleasure's this,*  
*To sail i'th' Air,*  
*While the Moon shines fair,*  
*To sing, to toy and kiss,*  
*Over Woods, high Rocks and Mountains,*  
*Over misty Hills and Fountains,*  
*Over Steeples, Towres and Turrets,*  
*We flee by night 'mongst Troops of spirits.*  
*Cho. No Ring of Bells to our ears sounds,*  
*No Howls of Wolves, nor Yelps of Hounds,*  
*No, nor the Noise of Waters breach,*  
*Nor Cannons Throats our height can reach.*

Q1673 then ends the action, as the Folio does (TLN 1468–9), with

i Come let's make hast, she'l soone be  
Backe againe.

Exeunt

The quarto of 1673, that is, places non-Folio text and action (some of it derived from *Witch*) at, respectively, the conclusions of Folio *Macbeth* Act 2, Scene 2, Act 2, Scene 3, and Act 3, Scene 5.

After the murder of Duncan, Davenant's adaptation, which exists in an incomplete early manuscript (see Christopher Spencer, *Davenant's 'Macbeth' from the Yale Manuscript*, 1961) and a quarto (1674), brings Macduff and Lady Macduff together on 'An Heath' to witness (quarto, pp. 26–7), abruptly, versions of 'Speak, Sister . . .' (headed 'First Song by Witches') and then 'Let's have a dance' (headed 'Second Song'), where there is an added quatrain:

At the night-Raven's dismal voice,  
Whilst others tremble, we rejoice;  
And nimbly, nimbly dance we still  
To th'echoes from an hollow Hill.

Davenant's scene ends with dialogue in which Macduff questions the sisters about his future as Macbeth and Banquo had earlier about theirs. Davenant then reverses *Macbeth* Act 3, Scenes 5 and 6, and extends (pp. 44–5) with minor variants the Folio's Act 3, Scene 5, as Q1673 had done, returning to the Folio text at the end of the scene, adding:

2. But whilst she moves through the foggy Air,  
Let's to the Cave and our dire Charms prepare.

Unlike Q1673, which repeats the Folio's laconic SD at 4.1.43 (TLN 1571: 'Musicke and a Song. Blacke Spirits, &c.'), Davenant's text expands 'Black spirits' with a version of lines apparently from Middleton's *The Witch*, where there are two possible 'sources' (see Textual Analysis, p. 257 above). The shorter is reprinted in the Textual Analysis (p. 257); the longer, headed '*A Charme Song: about a Vessell.*', follows:

*Black Spiritts, and white: Red Spiritts, and Gray,  
Mingle, Mingle, Mingle, you that mingle may.  
Titty, Tiffin: keepe it stiff in  
Fire-Drake, Puckey, Make it Luckey.  
Liand, Robin, you must bob in  
Round, a-round, a-round, about, about  
All ill come running-in, all Good keepe-out.*

1. *witch heeres the Blood of a Bat.*  
*Hec[ate]. Put in that: oh put in that.*
2. *heer's Libbards Bane*  
*Hec[ate]. Put-in againe*
1. *the Iuice of Toad: the Oile of Adder*
2. *those will make the yonker madder.*

*Hec[ate]. Put in: ther's all, and rid the Stench.*

*Fire[stone]. nay heeres three ounces of the red-haired wench.*

*all Round: around: around &c./.*

(*Witch* lines 1999–2014; compare Davenant, 1674, p. 47)

Along with *The Witch* and Davenant's slight reworking of its lines, several musical scores with slightly variant texts of 'Come away, come away' have survived; they are elaborately collated in Brooke, as are the available versions – *The Witch*, Davenant's manuscript, and the quarto of 1674 – of 'Black spirits and white'.

Just how and by whom the songs of the revised *Macbeth* may have been set to music before the famous Matthew Locke settings for Davenant's version is unclear. The best concise treatment of the seventeenth-century musical settings appears in Bryan N. S. Gooch et al., *A Shakespeare Music Catalogue*, 5 vols., 1991, II, 705–803; as the authors advise (II, 739), 'the chronology of this tradition can best be followed if [the relevant *Macbeth*] entries are read in the following order: 6925, 7013, 6971, 7101, and 6705'. For musical scores, John H. Long, *Shakespeare's Use of Music: The Histories and Tragedies*, 1971, pp. 193–5 and 199, offers the following possibilities:

Come a-way      come a-way:      Hec-cat      Hec-cat,      come a - way I

come, I come, I come, I come, with all the speede I may, with all the speede I may.

Wher's Stad-lin?      Heere wher's Puc-kle heere      and Hop-po too,

and Hell-waine too      we lack but you we lack but you.      Come a - way

make up the count      I will but noynt,      and then I mount,

and then I mount. Ther's one comes down to fetch his dues, a kisse, a Coll, a  
sip of Blood and why thou staist so long I muse, I muse Since the Air's so  
sweet, and good, oh art thou come what newes: what newes? All goes still to our de -  
light, El - ther come, or els Re - fuse: Re - fuse: Now I am fur - nished for the Flight.  
Now I goe, o now I flie, Mal - kin my sweete spirit, and I oh what a  
daine - tie plea - sure 'tis to ride in the Aire when the Moone shines faire, and  
sing, and daunce, and toy and kisse; O - ver Woods, high rocks, and Mountaines,

A musical score consisting of five staves of music. The music is in common time, with a key signature of one sharp (F#). The lyrics are as follows:

o - ver seas, [over] cris - tall] Fown-taines, o - ver Steep [ies]  
Towres, and Tur-retts, we fly by night, 'mongst troopes of Spir-itts,  
No ring of Bellis, to our Eares sounds, No howles of Woolves, no  
yelps of Hounds, No not the noise of wa - ters breache or  
Can - nons throat, our height can reach. No ring of Bellis, etc.

'Come away, come away', probably by Robert Johnson, in John H. Long's transcription from New York Public Library Drexel MS. 4175



'First Witches Dance', possibly by Robert Johnson, in John H. Long's transcription from Robert Dowland,  
*Varietie of Lute-Lessons* (1610)

## APPENDIX 3: RELINEATION OF THE FOLIO

With a few exceptions noted below, this appendix records places where F's lineation has been changed; using the customary short titles (see the List of Abbreviations, pp. xi–xxii above), each entry lists the source or sources (if more than one editor's relineation has been adopted in a single, continuous passage) of the relineation, F's line-division (represented by the terminal word of each line and an oblique bar to mark the line end), and any other plausible relineation. (For clarity, some notes cite more than a line's last word.) Since neither spelling nor punctuation is at stake here, quotations from F are modernised, readings from other editions are silently normalised as they are in the collation, and punctuation is omitted unless required for clarity. Centred SDS which form a separate line in F are omitted. On a few occasions, the notes record places where F has been retained, followed by a rejected change. Not recorded here are uncontroversial impositions of the modern typographical convention that when two or more speakers share a pentameter line, text should be indented to show that fact (see Textual Analysis, pp. 251–2 above). Also not recorded are the places where a metrically regular line was too long to fit into the space available in the Folio's rather narrow two-column format and where, therefore, the compositors had to 'turn over' one or more words and (as they quite often did) happened to capitalise the first word of the turned-over text, making it appear to be a new verse line; the note to 3.1.48–52 records what may be an exception to this practice. The few relineations involving changes in SHS are recorded in the collation.

[1.2]

35 *Oxford; as two lines eagles / . . . lion* F

41–2 *Oxford; Golgotha / . . . faint* F

46–7 *Hanmer; as three lines eyes / . . . strange. / . . . king.* F

58–9 *Brooke; as three lines happiness / . . . king / . . . composition* F

[1.3]

4 *Pope; as two lines munched / Give . . . I* F

76 *Pope; as two lines greeting / . . . you.* F

80 *Capell; as two lines wind. / . . . stayed.* F

106–7 *Capell; as three lines lives / . . . robes / . . . yet* F

130–1 *Rowe; good. / . . . success* F

139–41 *Pope; as four lines man / . . . surmise / . . . not / . . . rapt* F

142 *Rowe; as two lines king / . . . me* F

148–55 *Pope; favour / . . . forgotten / . . . registered / . . . leaf / . . . them / . . . upon / . . . time / . . . speak / . . . other / . . . gladly / . . . enough / . . . friends* F

[1.4]

1–8 *Capell (lines 1–2); Pope (lines 2–8); Cawdor / . . . returned / . . . back / . . . die / . . . he / . . . pardon / . . . repentance / . . . him / . . . died* F

23–7 *Pope; itself / . . . duties / . . . state / . . . should / . . . love / . . . honour / . . . hither* F

[1.5]

20-1 *Pope; as three lines win / . . . cries / . . . it F*

[1.6]

1-2 *Rowe; seat / . . . itself F*11-12 *Brooke; hostess / . . . trouble F*18-21 *Pope; broad / . . . house / . . . dignities / . . . hermits F*

[2.1]

4 *Rowe; as two lines sword: / . . . heaven F*7-9 *Rowe; as three lines sleep / . . . thoughts / . . . repose F*9-11 *Hanmer; there / . . . friend F*13-14 *F; divided pleasure and / Sent Cam.*16-17 *Pope; as three lines hostess / . . . content / . . . unprepared F*25-6 *Rowe; consent / . . . you F*

[2.2]

2-6 *Rowe; fire / . . . shrieked / . . . good-night / . . . open / . . . charge / . . . possets F*13-14 *Rowe; done't / . . . husband? / . . . deed / . . . noise F*19-20 *F; as one line Brooke; as two lines . . . descended? / Ay. Cam. See Textual Analysis,  
pp. 252-3 above*21-2 *F; as two lines Hark / . . . Donaldbain Steevens<sup>3</sup>*25-8 *Rowe; sleep / . . . other / . . . prayers / . . . sleep / . . . together F*36 *Pope; throat / . . . thought F*68-9 *Pope; white. Knock / . . . entry / . . . chamber F*72 *Pope; unattended. Knock / . . . knocking F*75-7 *Pope; thoughts / . . . deed, Knock / . . . self / . . . knocking / . . . could'st. Exeunt F*

[2.3]

20-1 *As prose Johnson; as verse cock / . . . things. F*40 *Steevens<sup>3</sup>; as two lines hour / . . . to him F*41-3 *As prose Brooke; you / . . . one / . . . pain / . . . door / . . . service F; as verse you / . . . one  
/ . . . call / . . . service Cam. See Commentary*44-5 *F; as one line Steevens<sup>3</sup>*46-8 *Rowe; unruly / . . . down, / . . . air / . . . death F*51-3 *Hanmer; as four lines time / . . . night / . . . feverous / . . . shake F*55-7 *F; it / . . . heart / . . . thee Rowe; it / . . . heart / . . . matter Steevens<sup>3</sup>*62-4 *F; as two lines life / . . . majesty? Cam. See Commentary*74-6 *Theobald; horror. Ring the bell. / . . . business / . . . parley / . . . Speak, speak / . . . lady  
F; trumpet / . . . house / . . . lady Brooke*79-80 *Theobald; as three lines fell / . . . murdered / . . . alas F*97-8 *F; as three lines pillows / . . . life / . . . them Steevens<sup>3</sup>*113-17 *Brooke; tongues / . . . ours / . . . here / . . . hole / . . . away / . . . brewed / . . . sor-  
row / . . . motion F*128-34 *Rowe; do / . . . them / . . . office / . . . easy / . . . England / . . . I / . . . safer / . . . smiles  
/ . . . bloody F*

[2.4]

14 *Pope; as two lines horses / . . . certain F*19-20 *Pope; as three lines so / . . . upon't / . . . Macduff F*32-3 *Brooke; as three lines invested / . . . body / . . . Colmkill F*

[3.1]

36-7 *Pope; as three lines horse / . . . night / . . . you F*44-5 *Theobald; as three lines welcome / . . . alone / . . . you F*48-52 *Capell; palace / Gate / . . . us / . . . thus / . . . deep / . . . that F*

- 73 *Pope; as two lines* utterance / . . . there F
- 77–90 *As prose Brooke; as verse then / . . . speeches / . . . past / . . . fortune / . . . self / . . . conference / . . . you / . . . crossed / . . . them / . . . might / . . . crazed / . . . Banquo / . . . us / . . . so / . . . now / . . . meeting / . . . predominant / . . . go / . . . man / . . . hand / . . . beggared / . . . forever / . . . liege F; as verse now / . . . Know / . . . you / . . . been / . . . you / . . . you / . . . instruments / . . . might / . . . crazed / . . . us / . . . now / . . . find / . . . nature / . . . gospelled / . . . issue / . . . grave / . . . liege Rowe. See Commentary*
- 109–10 *Steevens<sup>3</sup>; as three lines do / . . . world / . . . another F*
- 113–14 *Rowe; on't / . . . enemy / . . . lord F*
- 127 *Pope; as two lines you / . . . most F*  
[3.2]
- 16 *Pope; as two lines disjoint / . . . suffer F*
- 22 *Rowe; as two lines ecstasy / . . . grave F*
- 27–33 *Singer; on / . . . looks / . . . tonight / . . . you / . . . Banquo / . . . tongue / . . . lave / . . . streams F*
- 43–4 *Pope; as three lines peal / . . . note / . . . done F*
- 50–1 F; crow / . . . wood *Rowe. See Commentary*  
[3.3]
- 9–10 *Pope; as two lines he / . . . expectation F*
- 19–21 F; as two lines fly, fly fly / . . . slave *Hanmer*
- 22 *Steevens<sup>3</sup>; as two lines light / . . . way F*
- 24 *Pope; as two lines lost / . . . affair F*  
[3.4]
- 1–6 *As prose Brooke; as verse down / . . . welcome / . . . majesty / . . . society / . . . host / . . . time / . . . welcome F; last / . . . majesty (remainder as F) Capell*
- 16–17 F; as two lines cut / . . . cut-throats *Brooke*
- 20 *Collier; as two lines sir / . . . scaped F*
- 21 *Pope; as two lines again / . . . perfect F*
- 48 *Capell; as two lines lord / . . . highness F*
- 69 *Capell; as two lines there / . . . you F*
- 109–10 *Capell; as three lines mirth / . . . disorder / . . . be F*
- 122 *Rowe; as two lines say / . . . blood F*  
[3.5]
- 36 *Pope; as two lines be / . . . again F*  
[3.6]
- 1 *Rowe; as two lines speeches / . . . thoughts F*  
[4.1]
- 70 *Rowe; as two lines Macbeth / Beware Macduff F*
- 78 *Rowe; as two lines resolute / . . . scorn F*
- 85–6 *Rowe; as two lines thunder / . . . king F*
- 132 *Rowe; as two lines Gone / . . . hour F*  
[4.2]
- 27 *Oxford; as two lines is / . . . fatherless F*
- 34–50 *As prose Brooke; as verse bird / . . . lime / . . . gin / . . . mother / . . . for / . . . saying / . . . dead / . . . father / . . . husband / . . . market / . . . again / . . . wit / . . . thee / . . . mother / . . . was / . . . traitor / . . . lies / . . . so / . . . traitor / . . . hanged F*
- 57–8 *As prose Pope; as verse monkey / . . . father F*
- 76–7 *Oxford; as four lines harm / . . . faces / . . . Murderers / . . . husband F*  
[4.3]
- 17–18 *Steevens<sup>3</sup>; . . . God / . . . treacherous / . . . is F*

25 *Rowe*; there / . . . doubts F

102–3 *Pope*; as one line F

114 *Steevens*<sup>3</sup>; as two lines here / . . . passion F

139–40 *Muir*; as three lines reconcile / . . . forth / . . . you F

175–6 *Theobald*; as three lines sicken / . . . true / . . . grief F

213–15 *Capell*; as five lines children too / . . . found / . . . killed too / . . . said / . . . comforted F

[5.1]

23 *Pope*; as two lines now / . . . hands F

39 *Pope*; as two lines go to / . . . not F

43 *Pope*; as two lines hand / O, O, O. F

[5.6]

1 *Rowe*; as two lines enough / . . . down F

[5.9]

21 *Rowe*; as two lines art / . . . stands F

## READING LIST

This list includes details of certain books and articles which may serve as a guide to those who wish to undertake a further study of the play.

- Adam, R. J. 'The real Macbeth: King of Scots, 1040–54', *History Today* 7 (1957), 381–7
- Adelman, Janet. *Suffocating Mothers: Fantasies of Maternal Origin in Shakespeare's Plays, 'Hamlet' to 'The Tempest'*, 1992
- Anglo, Sydney (ed.). *The Damned Art: Essays in the Literature of Witchcraft*, 1977
- Bartholomeusz, Dennis. 'Macbeth' and the Players, 1969
- Booth, Stephen. 'King Lear', 'Macbeth', *Indefinition, and Tragedy*, 1983
- Bradley, A. C. *Shakespearean Tragedy*, 1904
- Brooks, Cleanth. *The Well Wrought Urn*, 1947
- Brown, John Russell (ed.). *Focus on 'Macbeth'*, 1982
- Calderwood, James L. *If It Were Done: 'Macbeth' and Tragic Action*, 1986
- Campbell, L. B. *Shakespeare's Tragic Heroes: Slaves of Passion*, 1930
- Campbell, O. J. 'Shakespeare and the "New Critics"', in *Adams Memorial Studies*, ed. James G. McManaway *et al.*, 1948, pp. 81–96
- Charlton, H. B. *Shakespearian Tragedy*, 1948
- Clark, Stuart. 'Inversion, misrule and the meaning of witchcraft', *Past and Present* 87 (May 1980), 98–127
- Crosse, Gordon. *Shakespearean Playgoing 1890–1952*, 1953
- De Quincey, Thomas. 'On the knocking at the gate in *Macbeth*', in *The Collected Writings of Thomas De Quincey*, ed. David Masson, 14 vols., 1889–90, x, 389–95
- Dollimore, Jonathan. *Radical Tragedy: Religion, Ideology and Power in the Drama of Shakespeare and his Contemporaries* (1984), 2nd edn, 1989
- Eagleton, Terry. *William Shakespeare*, 1986
- Edwards, Philip, *et al.* (eds.). *Shakespeare's Styles: Essays in Honour of Kenneth Muir*, 1980
- Empson, William. *Seven Types of Ambiguity* (1930), 3rd edn, 1953
- Farnham, Willard. *Shakespeare's Tragic Frontier* (1950), rpt. 1963
- Fergusson, Francis. "'Macbeth' as the imitation of an action", in *English Institute Essays 1951*, ed. Alan S. Downer, 1951, pp. 31–43
- Freud, Sigmund. 'Some character-types met with in psychoanalytic work', in *The Standard Edition of the Complete Psychological Works*, trans. James Strachey *et al.*, 24 vols., 1953–74, 14 (1957), pp. 311–30
- Gardner, Helen. 'Milton's "Satan" and the theme of damnation in Elizabethan tragedy', in F. P. Wilson (ed.), *English Studies* 1948, 1948, pp. 46–66

- Greenblatt, Stephen. 'Shakespeare bewitched', in Tetsuo Kishi *et al.* (eds.), *Shakespeare and Cultural Traditions*, 1994, pp. 17–42
- Honigmann, Ernst. *Shakespeare: Seven Tragedies*, 1976
- Howard-Hill, T. H. (ed.). 'Macbeth': *A Concordance to the Text of the First Folio*, 1971
- Jorgensen, Paul A. *Our Naked Frailties: Sensational Art and Meaning in 'Macbeth'*, 1971.
- Kliman, Bernice W. *Shakespeare in Performance: 'Macbeth'*, 1992
- Knight, George Wilson. *The Imperial Theme*, 1931  
*The Wheel of Fire*, 1930
- Knights, Lionel C. 'How many children had Lady Macbeth?' (1933), rpt. in Knights, *Explorations*, 1946, pp. 1–39
- Leiter, Samuel L., *et al.* (comp.). *Shakespeare Around the Globe*, 1986
- Mahood, M. M. *Shakespeare's Wordplay*, 1957
- Masefield, John. *A 'Macbeth' Production*, 1946
- Muir, Kenneth, and Philip Edwards (eds.). *Aspects of 'Macbeth'*, 1977
- Norbrook, David. 'Macbeth and the politics of historiography', in Kevin Sharpe and Steven N. Zwicker (eds.), *Politics of Discourse*, 1987, pp. 78–116
- Nosworthy, J. M. *Shakespeare's Occasional Plays: Their Origin and Transmission*, 1965
- Paul, Henry N. *The Royal Play of Macbeth*, 1950
- Rosenberg, Marvin. *The Masks of 'Macbeth'*, 1978
- Shakespeare, William. *Macbeth*, ed. Horace Howard Furness, rev. edn Horace Howard Furness, Jr, 1915
- Sinfield, Alan (ed.). 'Macbeth': *New Casebooks*, 1992
- Spencer, Theodore. *Shakespeare and the Nature of Man*, 1942
- Spender, Stephen. 'Time, violence, and Macbeth', in *Penguin New Writing*, ed. John Lehmann, 1941, pp. 115–26
- Sprague, Arthur Colby. *Shakespeare and the Actors: The Stage Business in his Plays 1660–1905*, 1944
- Trewin, J. C. *Shakespeare on the English Stage, 1900–1964*, 1964
- Wain, John (comp.). *Shakespeare: 'Macbeth': A Casebook*, 1968
- Waith, Eugene M. 'Manhood and valor in two Shakespearean tragedies', *ELH* 17 (1950), 262–73
- Walker, Roy. *The Time is Free: A Study of 'Macbeth'*, 1949
- Watson, Robert N. *Shakespeare and the Hazards of Ambition*, 1984
- Wells, Stanley (ed.). *The Cambridge Companion to Shakespeare Studies*, 1986
- Wells, Stanley, and Gary Taylor (eds.). *William Shakespeare: A Textual Companion*, 1987
- Wheeler, Thomas. 'Macbeth': *An Annotated Bibliography*, 1990
- Williams, George Walton. 'Macbeth: King James's Play', *South Atlantic Review* 47.2 (1982), 12–21
- Willson, Robert F., Jr. 'Macbeth the player king: the banquet scene as frustrated play within the play', *Shakespeare Jahrbuch* (Weimar), 114 (1978), 107–14